

THE PROSE BRUT

VOLUME III

HUNTERIAN MSS. T.3.12 AND V.5.13. TEXTS AND NOTES

(CONTINUED)

COMMENTARIES AND NOTES

Appendix: The Source of Queen Isabella's Letter

**ALL MISSING PAGES ARE BLANK**

**IN**

**ORIGINAL**



Of kyng Edwarde that was kyng Henres Sone Capitulo Centesimo Octoagesimo Primo.

And after this kyng henre regned hys son̄ Edwarde the worthiest knyght of all the worlde of honour ffor godes grace was in hym ffor he hade the wictorie of his enemyes And as sone as kyng henre deide he come to london̄ with afair companye of prelat̄is And (fol. 60<sup>a</sup>b) and<sup>b</sup> of Erles & of Barouns & alle maner men dede hym mochil honour ffor in anye place ther that sere Edward rode in london̄ the Stretis wer couered ouer his heede with Rich Cloth̄is of Silke & tapites<sup>c</sup> & with rich couerynge And for ioie of his comynge the noble Burgeises of the Citte caste owte at here wyndowes golde & siluere handes fulle in tokenynge of loue ande worschipe seruice<sup>3</sup> & reuerences. And owte of the condewitt of Chepe<sup>d</sup> ran white wyne and reede as stremes dop of water ande eueri man ther offe myght drynke at her owne wille And this kyng Edwarde was crounede & annoyntede as right heir of Engelande with mochil honour And after masse the kyng wente in to Palis for to holde riale feste among hem that him hade don̄ honour And whenne he was sette vn to his mete the kyng Alisaundre of Scotlonde come for to do hym honour and reuerence with aqueyntise and an hondrede knyghtes with hyme wel horsede and arraiede And whenne bei wer light doune of her stides thei lette heme goo whethir that bei wolde And who that myght take heme toke at herr owne wille with owten any Chalengynge And afterward come sere Simound<sup>1</sup> kyng Edwardis brothir a corteis knygh<sup>e</sup> & a gentil of renoune and the Erle of Cornuaylle and the Erle of Gloucestre And aftir hym come the Erle of Pembroke and the Erle of Garrenne and eche of hem be hem selfe lade in here handes a hundred kny3tes gaylich disgisede<sup>f</sup> in here Armes And whenne thei were

---

Fol. 60 <sup>1</sup>S partially blotted.

Of kyng Edward kyng Edwardis<sup>d</sup> sone

And aftyr thys kyng harry Reignyd his sone Edward worthiest  
 kyng of all þe worle for god was wyt hyme for anone aftyr  
 kyng herry dethe hys fadyr he come to london̄ wyt a fayr  
 company of lordys for all maner of men̄ ded hym much honour  
 and worschip in euyry plasse wer he come to london̄ in euyry  
 strett wyt many fayr clothys of gold And opyr Ryche  
 coueryng And þe burgesse kest oute of london̄ hand fullys  
 of money to do hyme worschip and honour And oute of þe  
 condytis Rone wythe wyne 7 Red wyne and euyry man̄ my3th  
 drynke þat wold And whene kyng Edward was Crownyd he walkyd  
 in to hys palyse for to hold a Riall fest A mongys heme  
 þat to hym had done worschip and onor And out of condites  
 of chepe Rane wyth wyne 7 Rede w<sup>5</sup> 7 ho honor A C kny3tys  
 wyt hem well A Rayd in harnes 7 her hors well trapyd And  
 thay wer come þay lit3 done 7 lett thayr hors go wher þey  
 wold So who þat wold my3th take þem wyt out Any chalange  
 and go wedyr þay wold And aftyr þis come in Syr Symond  
 kyng Edwardys Brother A gentyll kny3t of Renown̄ and the  
 Erle of Cornuall and þe Erle of gloucester and many  
 kny3tys wyt hyme And aftyr hym come the Erle of Penbroke  
 And þe Erle of Garrayn̄ and eche of theme wyt a grett mayne  
 of kny3tys and whene þay wer

---

<sup>5</sup>Stroked out.



light of her hors 7 lette heme goo whether pat heme likede  
 7 who pat myght heme take haue heme stille wyth owten any  
 lettynge And whanne al this was don kyng Edwarde dede hys  
 diligence and his myghte for to amende the reaume and  
 redresse the wronges in the beste maner that he myghte to  
 the honour of god 7 holy Cherch 7 to mayntene hys honour  
 7 to amende the noiaunce<sup>g</sup> of the comune peple

(fol. 60<sup>b</sup>a) How ydone that was Lewlyn's daughter of walys  
 prince and Aymer that was be Erles brothir of Mountfort  
 wer taken in the See Capitulo Centesimo lx<sup>mo</sup> Secundo

The ferste 3ere after that kyng Edwarde was crounede  
 Lewlyn Prince of walys wente in to ffraunce to Erle  
 Mountfort that pourgh counceill of his frendes the Erle  
 scholde wedde his daughter And the Erle po auisede him on  
 his thing and sente a 3ene to lewlyn and seide that he  
 wolde sende aftir his daughter 7 so he sente Aymer his  
 brothir after the damyselle And lewlyn arraied schippes  
 for his daughter and for sere Amyer 7 ffore her feir  
 companye that scholde wende with herr and this lewlyn dede  
 grett wrong for hit was couenaunt that hee scholde 3eue  
 his daughter to no maner man with owte councel 7 consent  
 of kyng Edward And so hit fille that Aburgeis of Brystowe  
 come in to the See with wyne lade 7 mette ham and ham  
 toke with myght 7 mayn 7 pouer And anon thee Burgeis sent  
 ham to the kyng And whanne Lewlyn herde this tyding hee  
 was wondir wroth and eke sorufowle and gan po for to werr  
 vp on kyng Edward 7 dede moch harme vn to the engelisshe  
 men. And bett adoune the kynges Castelles and be gan faste  
 to distroye kyng Edwardes londes. And whanne tydynges come  
 to kyng Edward of this thing he wente in to walys and so  
 moch he dede pourgh godes grace and his gret pouer that he  
 drof Lewlyn in to moch mysschef that he fley al maner  
 strength<sup>h</sup> and come and 3elde him to kyng Edward Ande 3af

lyth of thayr horsys thay lett hem goo wher pay wold take  
 ho wold And when all this (fol. 89<sup>a</sup>) was done kyng Edward  
 ded hys myzte 7 dyligens to Amend the lawys and the  
 tresspassyd þat wer doñ in the lond as sone as he myzth  
 in þe honour of god And of holy chyrche and for þe Esse  
 and Equite for the pepyll

Of ydoine prince lewlyns douztyr of walis Capitulo

And in the fyrst 3er of kyng herry Reygnid lewlyne Prynse  
 of waly<sup>a</sup> send in to fraunce in to þe Erle of Mondford þat  
 he was þur consell of hys frendys wed hys douzthre and the  
 Erle wyt a wysse mente<sup>b</sup> grauntyd þe same thyng And sayd  
 þat he wold send for hys douztyr Syr Amyr hys brother And  
 þane lewlyn<sup>1</sup> A Raid Schippys in the best wysse for Syr Amyr  
 and hys douztyr and syr Ameyr and thayr company And þis  
 lewlyn<sup>1</sup> ded grett wronge for couinand was þat he shuld  
 nott mary hys douztyr to no mañ wyt out wyll and sente<sup>c</sup>  
 of kyng Edward And so hit be fyll þat þe burgys<sup>2</sup> of  
 brestowe come in to þe hy See led wyt wyne from burdews  
 And mett syr Amayr And this damesell in her company and  
 tokyne hym and sent hem to kyng Edward And when lewlyne  
 herd this tydyngys he was wondyr wrothe And by gane faste  
 for to dystroy kynge Edwardys lond And when kyng Edward  
 herd of thys thyng he went into walys And purch goddys  
 grasse and hys myzte drowe lewlyne to gret myscheff 7  
 noyaunce h<sup>3</sup> þat he ne wyst what for to do And þane he  
 3eld hyme to þe kyng And 3aff

---

Fol. 89 <sup>1</sup>Second -l- over -y- by scribe. <sup>2</sup>Superscript -r-.  
<sup>3</sup>Stroked out.



hym vifty<sup>i</sup> thousand marke of seluer for to haue pees and  
toke the damysel and alle his heritage and made an  
obligacioun to kyng Edward to come to his parlement i j  
tymes of the 3er And in the seconde 3ere after that kyng  
Edward was crouned he helde a generale parlement at  
westmynster (fol. 60<sup>b</sup>) 7 there he made the statut<sup>3</sup> for  
defaute of lawe be comune assent of alle his baronage And  
att Estren<sup>j</sup> next comynge te kyng sente be his letter to  
lewlyn Prince of walis that he scholde come to the  
parlament for his lande And for his holdynge in Walis as  
te strength of the letter obligatorie wittnesseth Tho  
lewlyn hade Scorn 7 dispite of the kynges comaundement  
And for pure wrath be gan a3eien for to werr vp on kyng  
Edward and distroye his landis And þo kyng Edward herde  
this tyding he waxe vndir<sup>k</sup> wroth vn to lewlyn And in hast  
assembled his peple and wente him to ward walis and werrede  
so vp on lewlyn the prince til that he brought him in moch  
sorwe 7 disesse And lewlyn saw that his defence myght  
nought awaile and come a3ene 7 3elde hym to the kynges  
grace and cride him mercy and loṅg tyme knellede be fore  
the kynges fett Thee kyng hade of him pitte and comaunded  
hym for to arise and for his mekenesse for3af hym his  
wrath and to him saide that if he mystoke hym<sup>l</sup> a 3ens hym  
anothir tyme that he wolde distroye him for euermore Daid  
that was lewlynes brothir that same tyme dwelled with kyng  
Edward and was a fel man 7 a sotyl 7 aneneuous and ferr  
castyng<sup>m</sup> and moche tressoun thought 7 al wey helde hit  
stille for to wette 7 asprie the kynges wille And euermore  
made goode semblaunt and semede so trewe that no man  
myght perceive his falsnesse.

How lewlyn ~~thought~~<sup>2</sup> thourgh counsel of Daid his brothir  
werred a 3eine vp on kyng Edward Capitulo Centesimo lx<sup>o</sup> tercio

---

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out by scribe.

hyme 1. M<sup>1</sup> Marke of Sylwyr And he þane toke de damesell  
 and his herytage and mad a noblygacioun to kyng Edward  
 to come to hys parlemente to tymis (fol. 89<sup>b</sup>) of the 3er  
 And in the second 3er of kyng Edward reig he held a  
generall parlemente at westmestyr and þer he mad estatus<sup>d</sup>  
 for defaute of lawe by comen<sup>4</sup> A Sente and all þe lordys  
 of the lond And þane kyng Edward sent aftyr lewlyne to  
 come to his parlemente for hys holdyng in walys as hys  
 wrytyng oblygatory spesifithe And thane thys lewlyne had  
 Schorne of kyng Edwardus Sone<sup>e</sup> and of his comandement  
 and for pure wrathe he began to wrath vppon kyng Edward  
 a3ene and dystroy hys londes wher so euyr he come And  
 þane kyng Edward heryng her of A Semblyd A grett hoost  
 And werryd a3ens lewlyne saw þat his defens my3t nott  
 Awayll hym And come A3ene to kyng Edward and 3eld hym  
 And longtyme he knelyd afor kyng Edward And þe kyng had  
 of hyme pete and bad hyme Rysse And for gaff hyme hys  
 wrath And sayd And euyry take 3oue in anny mysse Anny  
 mor I wyll dystroy 3ou for euyr mor And oon Dauyd lawlys<sup>f</sup>  
 brother þat same tyme dwellyt wyt þe kyng and was a fell  
 mañ And Sotell and thouth much Sorow 7 tresoun ondyrneth  
 and held hem styll to wett and know þe kyngys wyll and  
 mad good Solempnite<sup>g</sup> þat nomañ my3th aspy his falsnes

Of lewlyn Prince of walis and of Dauid his brothir  
Capitulo

---

<sup>4</sup>MS. has coñ.



Hit was nought longe after that tyme þat kyng Edward 3af  
 to Daid that was lewlynes brothir the lordschip of  
 ffrodesham and made him akyght<sup>n</sup> And so moch honour dede  
 he neuer after to no man of walis for enchesoun of hym  
 kyng Edward helde his parlement att london whenne he hade  
 don in walis al that he wolde and chaunged hys mone that  
 þo was foule cott 7 rounded wher ffore the comune peple  
 playnde hem wondir sore. So that the kyng let enquere of  
 hem that swech trespas deden 7 iiij C wer atteynt of Swech  
 maner falsnesse Wherfore some (fol. 61<sup>a</sup>) were honged and  
 some drawe 7 afterward honged And afterwarde the kyng  
 ordeinede that the Sterlyng halpeny 7 the ferthing scholde  
 go þourgh owt his londe and comaundede þat no man fro that  
 day afterwarde 3af no feffed hous of Religioun with lande  
 ne tenement wyth owte special leue of the kyng and he that  
 dede hit scholde be punissede att the kynges wille and the  
 3effte scholde be for nought And hit was nought longe  
 affter that lewlyn prince of walis thourgh timent of  
 Daid his brothyr and be bothe here consent thei thoutt  
 to disherie kyng Edward in as moch as thei might so that  
 thorough hem bothe the kynges Pees was brokken. And whenne  
 kyng Edward herde this anone he sente his barouns in to  
 North humberland and the Surreis<sup>a</sup> al so that þey scholde  
 gon 7 take her viage vp on the treitoures lewlyn 7 Daid  
 And wondir harde was for to werre þo ffor hit es wynter  
 in walis whenne in othir countres hit es somer And lewlyn  
 lett ordeigne and well arraiede 7 wittaillede his goode  
 Castell of Swandon 7 was ther ynne an houghe noumber of peple  
 and plente of vitailles So that kyng Edward wiste not wher  
 for to entre And whenne the kyngs men hit perceiuede and  
 al so the Strengthe of walis thei lette come in the See  
 Barges 7 Bottes 7 grette planks 7 manye as they myghte  
 ordeigne 7 haue for to goon to that forsaide Castel of  
 Swandon with men on fette ande ekk on hors. But the  
 walsshmen hade so moch peple 7 werr so stronge that they

And in that same tyme kyng Edward gaff vn to lewlyns  
 brothyr þe maner of ffrodessham and so much honor ded he  
 neuyr to mañ of walys of enchosoun of hym And þane kyng  
 Edward held his parlement at london And when he had don  
 he chaungyd hys money that þan was vs as ffull and Rond  
 wher for so much pepyll was at tent 7 (fol. 90<sup>a</sup>) and<sup>a</sup>  
 punyssyd att þe kyngys wyll And in the same lawlyne pryns  
 of walys purch tycemente of Dauyd his brother and by bothe  
 payr Assente þay þou3te to dishert kyng Edward so that  
 purch hyme bothe þe kyngys pesse was brokyne in walys And  
 kyng Edward heryng her of he was sor A greuyd and sent in  
 to Northumbrelon þat þay shuld goo and take þer wyage  
 purch walys to weng hem vppon the traytur lewlyn and Dauyd  
 also And wondyr hard was for to werr in wyntyr tyme And  
 þane þis lawlyne lett A Ray hys castell and wytaylid hym  
 and arayd hyme and storyd hyme wyt hug nombyr of pepyll  
 so that kyng Edwardys meñ my3te nott entre And when the  
 kyngys meñ parsayvid thys day hordynid hem of plankys  
 pypis 7 tonnes 7 bargys to go to þe sayd castel wyt men  
 of foot And also of hors And þe walssmeñ ver so strong  
 þat þay



dreue þe engelysshmen a 3en so that there was so moche  
preesse of peple at the tournyng a3een that the scharge  
 and the berden of heme made þe Barges 7 bottles Synkke and  
 ther was drenched ful many a goode knyght that es to saye  
sere Roger of Clyfforde sere William of lindessey þat was  
sere Iohnes sone fitz Robert 7 sere Richarde Tauny 7 an  
 hounge number of othir folc and al was thourgh here ougne  
 foly ffor yf þat thei hade had goode esspyes they hade  
 nou3t ben harmed Whenne kyng Edward herde telle that his  
 peple was so drenched he mad sorwe ynowgh But þo com sere  
 Iohn the Vessye from (fol. 61<sup>a</sup>b) the kyng of Aragoun and  
 brought with him moche folke of Bachilers and of Gascoigne<sup>3</sup>  
 and wer souyours and duellyng with the kyng 7 vndirfonged  
 of hym wages 7 with him wer with holde 7 noble men hit werr  
 for to fight 7 brenned meny townys and quelledede moch peple  
 of walsshmen alle that they myghte take. And all þo with  
 pure strength and myght made assawte to the Castell of  
 Swandoun And gate the Castel And whenne dauid the princis  
broþer herde this tyding he ordeignede him to flight And  
 lewlyn the prince saw that his brothir dauid was flowen 7  
 sore was abasshed ffor he hade no pouer þo his werr to  
 mayntene And so lewlyn gan to fle and wende wel for to  
 haue aschaped But on morwe sere Roger the Mortemer mette  
 with him onlich with x knyghtes and sett him round aboute  
 7 to hyme wente 7 smote of hys hed 7 presented hyme to the  
 kyng Edward And in this manere the prince of walis was  
 taken 7 his heede y smetten of And alle his heires  
 disheriede for euermor þourgh rightful dome of the lordes  
 of the Reaume

Howe Dauid þat was lewlynes brothir was-~~put~~<sup>1</sup> prince of  
 walis was put to the deth Capitulo Centesimo lxxiiij<sup>o</sup>

---

Fol. 61 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out by scribe.

drowe þe Engliſmeñ A bake And drenchyd much pepyll att  
 turnyng Aſene And all this was her owñ folly for 7 þay had  
 good ſpyes thay had be ſawe I now And when kyng Edward  
 hard thys he whas wondyr Sorry And mad much ſorow But þat<sup>b</sup>  
 com ſyr Iohn of verry fro þe kyng of Dragoun and brouthe  
 wyt hyme a wonder grett Powr of Sowgers nobyll meñ and  
 bold and all þey mad a Sawt to þe caſtell and gett the  
 caſtell And when Dauyd herd this tydyng he fled And pryns  
 lewlyne ſaw hys brothe<sup>c</sup> was fled and ſor was A baſte and  
 went well to haue Aſchapyd And in<sup>1</sup> on þe morow ſyr Roger  
 mortene mett wyt hym wyt x knyztys And ſett hyme Rond A  
 bouthe and ſmott of hys hed (fol. 90<sup>b</sup>) and preſent yt to  
 kyng Edward And ſo was þe pryns lawlyne dyſhertyt for  
 euyr mor

Howe dauid lewlyñs brothir was putto deethe



Daudid was<sup>b</sup> the princes brothir of walis porugh pride wende  
 to haue ben prince of walis after his brotheris deth And  
 vpon that he sente after walsse men to his parloment att  
 dynebegge and follich<sup>c</sup> made wallys arise a 3eins the kyng  
 7 he gan to werr a 3ene the kyng and dede al the sorwe ande  
 dessese that he myght be his pouer whenne þat kyng Edward  
herde this thyng he ordeigned men to pursewe vp on him and  
 dauid ferslich hym defendede til that he come to the toune  
 of Seynt Morice and ther was dauid take as he fley And lad  
 to the kyng And the kyng comaunded that he scholde be  
 honged and y drawe 7 smeten of his hede 7 quarter hym 7  
 sende his hed to london And the iiij quarteres sende to  
 the iiij tounes chief of walis ffor they scholde take  
 ensample 7 ther of to be war And afterward kyng Edward  
 leett crie his pees þourgh owt al walis And (fol. 61<sup>b</sup>a)  
 sessede al the lande in to his hand Ande alle the grett  
 lordes of walis that wer lefte on liue come to do feaute  
 7 homage vn to the kyng as to her kyng lorde And þo lett  
 kyng Edward amende the lawes of walis þat wer defectif  
 And after he sente vn to alle the lordes of walis be his  
letter patent that thei scholde come alle to his parlement  
 And whene thei wer come the kyng saide to heme ful  
 curteislych lordynges 3e beth welcome and me be houep  
 3oure counseille and 3our help for to wende in to Gascoyne  
 for to amende the trespas that to me was ther don wenne  
 that y was ther And for to entrett pees be twen the kyng  
 of Aragoun and the prince of Money And alle the kynges  
 lige men Erles 7 Barouns concentede 7 graunted þer to and  
 tho wente the kyng in to Gascoyne 7 lett amende the trespas  
 that him was done in Gascoigne And of the debat þat was be  
 twen the kyng of Aragon and the prince of Morree he cessed  
 hit 7 made hem accorded And whilles the goode kyng Edward  
 and Elianore his quene wer in Gascoigne þe goode Erle of  
 Cornuaille was made wardeyn in Engeland til that kyng  
 Edward come a 3eiene And þo enquerede he of his

Dauyd Pryns of walys wente to haue by pryns after hys  
 brothers dethe And sent after all þe walscemen to his  
 parlemente at Dunhethe And mad walys to A Rysse azenst  
 their legauce And to wer azen kyng Edward and ded much  
 harme A 3ens þe kyngys legys And when kyng Edward herd  
 þer of he was wondyr wrothe And come wyt a gret host And  
 pursuyd azenes Dauyd tyll he come to þe town of Sent  
 mores And ther was Dauyd takyne as he fled and led to þe  
 kyng and kyng Comandyd þat he shuld be hangyd and drawyne  
 and hys hed smett off and hys iiij quarters to send to  
 iiij cheff townys of Englon for thay shull be war And  
 afterward kyng Edward let cry hys pesse þour out walys and  
 sesyd all þe grett lordys vnto hys hondys werfor all þe  
 grett lordys þat wer leftyn alyve ded feallte and homage  
 to gre<sup>d</sup> kyng Edward<sup>2</sup> And þan kyng Edward lett Amen all þe  
 lawys of walys And þan þe kyng Sent of all þe chef lordys  
 of wales to com to hys parlemente and þay wer all presente  
 ther The kyng sayd to hyme full Curtessly Syr 3e be  
 welcome And me behowyth 3our consell and help to A weng  
 me vppoñ myñ Enmyes in Gascoign 7 in normandy and othyr  
 wrongys þat I haue sufferd ther and all þe kyngys lege men  
 Assentyd ther too And than went þe kyng in to gascoynge 7  
 sett in correccioun meny thynis ther done and mad accord  
 by twene kyng Dragoun and the prynsse of of<sup>e</sup> Mory And in  
 this tyme was þe good Erle of Cornu (fol. 91<sup>a</sup>) wayll mad  
 wardoun of Englon And þane kyng Edward conquerd

---

<sup>2</sup>Superscript -r-.



traittoures that coniectede<sup>d</sup> falsnesse azeiens hym And eche  
 of heme alle vndirfongede here dome after thei hade  
 deserued But in þe mene tyme whilles that kyng Edward was  
 be 3onde the Se to don heme make a mondis that a 3ens him  
 hade trespased A fals treitour that men called Rys Meriedok  
 be gañ to make werr azeiens kyng Edward & that was for  
 enchesoun of sere Payn Tiptott wrongfully greuede &  
 dissesse the fforseide Rys vp Meredok And whene kyng  
 Edward herde this he sent be hys leteres to Ris p<sup>e</sup> vp on  
 Meredok that he scholde not be gynne to make no werr but  
 that hee scholde be in pees ffor his loue And he wolde do  
 amende al þat euer was msdone<sup>f</sup> (fol. 61<sup>b</sup>) the forseide  
 Ris vp Meredoke disspesed the kynges comaundement & sparede  
 nought for to do al the sorwe that he myzte to thee kynges  
 men of Engelande But anon after he was taken & lede to  
 3orke & ther he was drawe & hongede ffor his felonye

How kyng Edward was seissed in alle the lond of Scotlonde  
 pourgh concent and graunt of alle the lordes of Scottlond  
 Capitulo Centesimo Octoagesimo 0<sup>g</sup> Septimo anothir cronecl  
 scholde be be fore comeþ aftere .v.<sup>h</sup>

Hit was nought longe after that Alisander kyng of Scottlond  
 was ded and dauid Erle of huntynghoun that was the kynges  
 brothir of Scotlond axede & claymede the kyng dom of  
 Scottlond ffor enchesoun that he was rightful heir But many  
 grette lordes of Scotlonde saiden nay wherfore grett debat  
 aros be twen hame & here frendes ffor as moch as they wolde  
 nought concete to his coronacioun And in the mene tyme the  
 forseide dauit deide And so hit fill that þat same dauid  
 hade þre douhtres that worthily wer married The ferste  
 doughter was married to Baillol The seconde to Brus the  
 prede to hastynges And þe forsaide Baillol & Brus  
 chalangynge the lond of Scotlonde and grett debat & strif  
 aros be twen hem ther fore ffor encheson that iche of heme

hys traytors and sett all in reste and pesse And whilis kyng Edward was be 3one þe See a false traytur callyd Rysse ap Meredoke begane to make werr a3enst þe kyng by cause þat one syr payne Cystoste<sup>a</sup> wrongfully grewyd þe sayd Merdoke And thane kynge Edward heryng her of sent by hys lettres to Rysse Ap Meredoke þat he shull begyne to make no<sup>1</sup> wer but be in in<sup>b</sup> pesse And whane he come he well Redresse all all<sup>c</sup> maner thyngys And Rysse vpp Meredokke dysspysyd þe kyngys comandemente and ded all þe harme þat he myth to þe kyngys meñ of Englond But Anone aftyr he was hangyd and drawe and hys hed Smetyn of

Of þe redressing of kyng Edward made of his Iusticis

And whane kyng Edward had bene iij 3er in Gascoyne he come A 3ene in to Inglonde 7 was meny complayntys mad of hyme of his offecers Iustysys and Clerkys the wych had done meny falsnes þat hit was wondyr to wytt whethyr Syr Thomas of Waylond the kyngys Iustysse Eo<sup>d</sup> for Swor Englond att tour of london for falsnes þat meñ put vppon hym And when hyt was done the kyng lett A spy wer the Iewes wer And lett woydyn þeme for her falsnes vsyry and Symony that thay vsyd And Also for thayr false be lewe and for to disped thys thyng all þe comens of Englonde gaff to the kyng the xv peny of their goodys to drywyne out all Suche pepyll And þen went the Iewys in to france and dwellyth ther by lycens of kyng Philip of ffraunce

(fol. 91<sup>b</sup>) Howe kyng Edward was sesid in all Scotlonde

And in the same tyme deid kyng Alysaundyr of Scotlond and Dauyd Erle of hontyngtoun þat was þe kyngys brothyr of Scotlond cleymyth þe Reme of Scotlond as ry3te heyr to þe

---

Fol. 91 <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe.



wolde haue ben kyng Ande whenne the lordes of Scotlonde  
 Saw the debat be twen hame iij thei come to the kyng Edward<sup>e</sup>  
 of Englonde and seissede him in al the londe of Sottlonde<sup>i</sup>  
 as her schief lorde And whanne the kyng was seissede of the  
 lordes of Scottlond the forsaide Baillol Brus 7 hastynges  
 come to the kynges Court 7 axede of the kyng which of heme  
 scholde be kyng of Scottlond And kyng Edward that was ful  
 gentyl 7 trewe lett enquer be the Cronecles of Scotlonde  
 and of the grett lordes of Scottlond whech of heme was  
 eldest br<sup>2</sup> blod And hit was founde that Baillol was Eldest  
 And that the kyng of Scottlond scholde hold of þe kyng of  
 Englonde and do hym feaute and homage And after this was  
 Baillol went (fol. 62<sup>a</sup>) in to Scottlonde and ther was  
 crouned kyng of Scottlonde And the same tyme was vp on  
 the See grett werr be twene the Englishmen and the Normans  
 But on atyme the Normans arryuede alle att Douer and ther  
 thei marterede an holy man þat men callede seynt Thomas of  
 Douer And afterwarde wer the Normans quelled that ther  
 aschapede of hem nouht oñe And sone after kyng Edward  
 scholde lesse the duchiee of Gascoigne purgh kyng Phillip  
 of fraunce purgh fals castyng of dusseperez<sup>a</sup> of the lande  
 where fore sere Edmunde that was kyng Edwardes brothir 3af  
 vp his homage vnto the kyng of ffraunce And in that tyme  
 the clerkes of Englonde graunted to kyng Edward halfen  
 del atax<sup>b</sup> of holicherch goodis in helping for to recouere  
 his londe a3eien in Gascoigne and the kyng sente thedir  
 anoble compani of his Bachelleres and himself wolde haue  
 went to Portesmouth but he was let þour3 Maddok of walis  
 that had sessed þe Castel of Swandoun in to his hand And  
 for that enchesoun the kyng tournede a3en in to walis att  
 cristemasse And for enchesoun that the noble lordes of  
 Englonde wer<sup>c</sup> sent in to Gascoigne hade no conforte of  
 here lorde the kyng Edward thei wer y take of Sire Charles

---

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



londus by many gret lordys of the lond sayd nay per wythe  
 So þat grett Debate A Rosse by twene þe lordys of Scotlond  
 be as much as þay wold not consente to hys correccioun And  
 in the men tyme þe forsayd dawyd and iiij dousters þe wych  
 wer maryd þe fyrst to bayloll<sup>2</sup> þe cecond to Brus And þe  
 iiij to hastyngys Thes bayloll<sup>2</sup> 7 Brus chalonge de lond of  
 Scotlond So þat A debatt A Rosse by twene heme iiij for  
 cause eche of heme wold haue bene kynge of Scotlond And þan  
 kyng Edward lett enquer by the cronaclys<sup>3</sup> of Sotlond and  
 of þe grett lordys also wych of theme was þe eldest blod  
 And hit was fownde þat baylloll was þe Eldest and þat þe  
 kyng of Scottys Shuld hold of þe kyng of Englonde and do  
 hym fiaut and homage And whene all þis was done Baylloll  
 went to Scotlond 7 crownd hyme kyng of Scotlond And in  
 this same tyme was A strong wer by twene þe Englissmen and  
 the normans for þe normans har Arryvid vp þat tyme at Dowyr  
 and Marterd þer a man Callyd Syne<sup>e</sup> Thomas of dowyr But  
 afterward þe normans kyllyd þat none of þeme chapyd thens  
 And thane come tydyngys þat þe kyng of fraunce wold  
 dessherte kyng Edward (fol. 92<sup>a</sup>) of hys Rythe in normandy  
 purch falsse tachynge<sup>a</sup> of dussepers wherfor Syr Emond kyng  
 Edwardus brother gaff vp hys homage to þe kyng of fraunce  
 And in thys same tyme þe clerge of Englonde grantyd to kyng  
 Edward þe halfendell of her goodys to gett hys lond Agayne  
 in Gascoyne And the kyng send thethyr a nobyll company of  
 Bachelors for hym Self have goone to Portysmothe but he  
 was lett purch oon Madoke of walys þat had sesyd þe castell  
 of Swandoun in to his hond And per for kyng turnyd into  
 walys at Cristmas And for cause þe nobyll lordus had none  
 comforthe of Syr Edmond þay wer takyn of Syr charles

<sup>2</sup>Poss. -tt, not -ll.    <sup>3</sup>MS. has cronns.



of ffraunce that es to seye Sir Iohn of Britaigne ser  
Robertus Tiptott sere Raff Tauny sere hugh Bardolf 7 ser  
 Adam of Cretyng And right att Ascenciounē was Maddok take  
 in walis and anothir that men called Morgan And pei were  
 sent to the Toure of london and affterwarde thei wer be  
 heueded

Of thee redressynge that kyng Edward made of hys Iustices  
 and of his clerkes that pey hade done for here ffalsnes.  
 And howe he drofe the ~~fu~~<sup>1</sup> Iwes of<sup>2</sup> owt of Engeland ffor  
 her vserie and her mysbeleue Capitulo Centesimo Octoagesimo  
 Sexto

(fol. 62<sup>a</sup>b) Whenne kyng Edward hade dwelled iij 3er in  
 Gascoigne wille come to him for to come a3ene in to  
 Engelande And po he was come a3en he fonde somanye pleyntes  
 made to him of his Iusticis and of his clerkes pat pei hade  
 don so many wronges 7 falsnesses that wondir hit was to her  
 And for swech falsnesse sere Thomas of weilonde the kynges  
 Iustice for swor Engeland att pe Tour of london for  
 falssenes that men putte vp on him whereofe he was atteynt  
 7 proued fals And anone after whenne the kyng hade done  
 his wille of the Iustices po lette he enquere 7 asprie how  
 the ~~Iwis~~ Iuges<sup>3d</sup> disceyuede 7 be gillede 7 ~~disceyued~~<sup>1</sup>  
 his peple burgh her synne of falsnesse 7 vserie and lett  
 ordeigne a priue parlement among his lordes And thei  
 ordeigned amonge heme that alle the Iwys scholde voyde  
 Engeland ffor hir mysbeleue and al so for her fals vserie  
 that thei deden to cristen men And for to spede and make  
 an hende of bis thing al the comunte of Engeland 3af the  
 kyng the viftenpe<sup>e</sup> peny of all her godis meble<sup>f</sup> and so wer  
 the Iwis y dreuen owt of Engeland And po wente the Iwes

---

Fol. 62 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>f not crossed. <sup>3</sup>Iwis stroked  
 out; Iuges inserted above by corr.

That ys to Say syr Iohn of Bretayn and Robert Tiptoft<sup>1</sup>  
syr Raufe Tauny syr hugh Berdolfe and syr Adame of  
 gretynge And than att sencioun was Madoke takyn in wales  
 And a nothyr callyd Morgan and bay wer Sent to be tour of  
london 7 per be hedit

---

Fol. 92 <sup>1</sup>Poss. -st, not -ft.

in to ffraunce and there duelled purgh loue of kyng philip  
 þat þo was kyng of ffraunce.

Howe sere Iohn of Baillol kyng of Scotlond withsaide his  
 homage And sere Thomas Tourbeluile Capitulo Centesimo  
 Octoagesimo septimo

And whene sere Iohn Baillol kyng of Scottlond vndiestod<sup>4</sup>  
 that kyng Edward was werred in Gascoigne to whame the Reame  
 of Scotlond was deliuered falslich a 3ens his oth with  
 saide his homage þourgh procring of his folke. And sente  
 to the Court of rome be fals suggescioun to been assoi  
 (fol. 62<sup>b</sup>a) led of that Othe þat he swore vnto þe kyng of  
 Engelande and so he was be letters enbulled Tho schosen  
 thei of Scottlond dousseperes<sup>g</sup> for to benyme Edward his  
 righte And in that tyme come two Cardinalles fro the Court  
 of Rome fro the pope Celestine for to trette of acorde be  
 twen the kyng of ffraunce and thee kyng of Scottlond<sup>1</sup>  
 Engelande And as þo ij Cardinalles spaken of accorde  
 Thomas Tourbeluile that was taken att Ryouns made feaute  
 7 homage to the wardeyn of Paris And to him putte his ij  
 sones in hostage for that he thought goo in to Engelande  
 for to asprie the countre And telle heme whanne he come in  
 to Engelande that he hade broken the kynges prisone of  
 ffraunce be nyght and seide þat he wolde done alle the  
 walsshmen 7 al so Englisshmen to abowe to the kyng of  
 ffraunce and this thing for to bryng to the ende he swore  
 And vpon this couenaunt dedes wer made be twen hem and  
 that he scholde haue be 3er an hundred poundes worth of  
 londe to bryng this thing to ende This fals treitour nome  
 his leue and wente thens and come in to Engelande vn to  
 the kyng 7 saide that he was broken out of prisone and  
 that he hade putte him in sweche perille for his loue

---

<sup>4</sup>Poss. a blotted -r-, not -e-.



And when Sr Iohn Bayloll kyng of Scotlond w<sup>y</sup>st pat kyng Edward was werryd vppon in Gasscoyne þe same syr Iohn falsly a 3enst hys hoth w<sup>y</sup>t sayd hys homage þurch procuryng of his folke and sent to þe Corte of Rone<sup>b</sup> by A fase subieccyoun<sup>c</sup> to be Asoylyd of that othe þat he had mad to þe kyng of Englond and so he was be bollys in selyd and þan þe Scottys Schosyne dussypers for to be [. ]nym<sup>2</sup> kyng Edward hys Rythe And in the same tyme come þer A Cardenall to tre<sup>d</sup> fro þe pope of Rome Celestyng to trett of A corde (fol. 92<sup>b</sup>) by twene þe kyng of fraunce and þe kyng of Englond and in thys mene wylle oon Thomas Turbylwyld was take at Ryons<sup>3</sup> be cause he mad fealte 7 homage to þe warden of parys and to hyme he put hys ij Sonnez in hostage for he touth to come in to Englond he had put heme in gret Iebardy to breke oute of presone and he promysyd þe kyng of fraunce þat he shuld make wythssmen<sup>e</sup> 7 the Eng legemen<sup>4f</sup> shull obbay to hyme And for þis þing he shuld hawe And honderd ponde of lond by 3er And so he com in to Englond and told þat he was brokyn out of presoun

<sup>2</sup>Letter erased. <sup>3</sup>Downstroke of -y- erased or faded.

<sup>4</sup>lege- prob. by corr. over erasure; 3 dashes over minims of -m-.

wherfore the kyng cowde him moche thanke and ful glad was of his comynge And the false þef treitour fro that day asspiede al the doyng of the kyng and al so of his counsaille for the kyng louede him well ⁊ was with him ful priue But a clerk of Engelande<sup>h</sup> that was in the kynges hous of ffraunce herde of this tresoun and of the falsnesse and wrott to anothir clerk that was dwellyng with the kyng of Engelande al how Thomas Tourbeluyle hade don his fals coneittyng And al the counseil of Engeland was wrette forto (fol. 62<sup>b</sup>) haue sent to the kyng of ffraunce And þourgh the forseide Clerke be the letter that he sent fro ffraunce hit was founde vp on hym wer fore he was lade to london and drawen ⁊ on hongged there for his tresoun And his ij sones that he hade put in ffraunce for hostages were þoo be heueded

Of the conquest of Berewike Capitulo Centesimo Octoagesimo octauo

Whenne þo ij cardenalis were went a 3ene in to ffraunce for to trette the pees att Caunterburi the kyng sent thedyr of his Erles ⁊ barouns that es to seye sere Edmund his Brothir Erle lancastre and of leycestre sere henry lacy Erle of Nichole and william vessy baroun And of other baronettis aboute xiiij of the beste and wissest of Engeland And in the same tyme the kyng Edwarde nome his viage in to Scottlond ffor to werr vp on Iohn Baillol kyng of Scottlond And sere Robert Roos of Berewik fley fro the Englissh men and went to the Scottes And kyng Edwarde wente him toward Berewik and besegede the Toun and tho that wer with Inne manliche heme defendede And sette affter and brende ij of kyng Edwardes schippes and seiden in the disspitte ⁊ reprofe of him wende kyng Edwarde with his longe schankes haue geten Berewik al our outthankes gas pikis him and whenne he has gas dikis him<sup>i</sup> Whenne



and he waxid wondyr preuey<sup>5</sup> wyth þe kyng And euyr in the  
 meñ tyme he escapyd<sup>g</sup> all þe kyngys consell and wrot hyt  
 But A nyglysse<sup>h</sup> clerke was in the kyngys howse of fraunce  
 and wrot to A nothyr of Thomas Tyrbylwyle condycioun 7  
 falsnes and as he wrot he<sup>6</sup> hit was prouyd wher for he was  
 led to london 7 hanged and drawen And in hys too sonys  
 þat he had put in hostagys weryn be hedyd

And than thys Cardenall<sup>i</sup> went ouyr the See in to fraunce  
 fro Cantyrbury to trett of pesse And thane þe kyng sente  
 dedyr meny lordys both Sperituall and temperall xiiij of  
 nombyr of the wysyst lordys of Englonde And in þe same tyme<sup>7</sup>  
 kyng Edward toke hys wyage to Scotlon to wer vppon syr  
 Iohn bayloll kyng of Scotlond And Robert Rosse fled frome  
 þe Englysmen and went vn to þe Scottys And þe kyng Edward  
 þan come And be segit the towne of Berweke but þay wyt  
 hym<sup>j</sup> manly heme defendyd And set on feyr on kyng Edwardys  
 schip (fol. 93<sup>a</sup>) pys and sayd in dyspyte of hem went kyng  
 Edward wyt his long shankis / ffor to have gote Barwik al  
 a 3enst our þankis Ga piken hym Ga dik hym<sup>l</sup>

And<sup>2</sup> when

<sup>5</sup>-y by corr. over erasure. <sup>6</sup>Stroked out. <sup>7</sup>MS. has 2  
 minims for -m-. Fol. 93 <sup>1</sup>went ... h̄y by rubricator in  
 red; orig. written in right margin by scribe and then  
 erased. <sup>2</sup>Two-line blue initial.

kyng Edwarde herde this scorne anone þourgh his myghtinesse he passed ouer þe dichis and assailed the Touñ & come to þe gatis and gatte and conquerrede the touñ & þourgh his gracious pouer quellede xxv M<sup>l</sup> and vij hundred of Scottes And kyng Edwarde loste of his men no man of Renoun saue sere Richarde Coruwaile and him quelled afflemynge out of the red halle with a quarelle as the forsaid Richade dede of his helme & comaunded ham for to 3elde ham to the kynges grace And the Scottes wolde nought wherfore that al was brent and cast doune and al þo that wer with Inne wer brent And kyng Edwarde loste no mo men at þat viage of simple estat but xxviij englisshe men And the Wardeyn of the Castel 3af vp (fol. 63<sup>a</sup>) the keyes with outen any assaute. And ther was taken william Douglas and sere Simond ffrysell and the Erle Patrik 3elded him to the Pees but Ingham of humfreuile & Robert of Brus that wer with kyng Edward ffor sok kyng Edward & helde with the Scottes And afterwarde thei wer take and putt in to prisoun and afterward the kyng for 3af hem her trespase and deliuered heme out of prison And þo lette kyng Edwarde close yne Berewik wip wallis & with dikes And afterward Robert Rous wente to Tyndale and sette woxebrige afir and Oxtelham and lamerstok and quellede & robbede the folk of the countre And afterwarde he wente fro thens vn to Donbar And the ferste wednesday of March the kyng sent þe Erle of Garrenne sere hugh Percy & sere hugh Spenser with afair cumpanye for to be sege the Castel But on that men called sere Richard Styward attraitour afals man ymagende for to be gille the englissmen & sent to the englishe men hem to desceyue & saide that he wolde 3elde to heme the Castel if that þey wolde graunte hym viij daies of respite þat he myghte sende & telle to sere Iohn Bailole kyng of Scottlond how that his men ferde þat were in the Castell And sende him worde if that he wolde remeue the sege of English men that thei wolde 3elde the Castel to þe English mene The



kyng Edward had þis Scorne A none þour hys myȝtynes he passyd de dychis and come in to þe gatys 7 conquerd þe towne and kylllyd xxv M<sup>l</sup> 7 vj C scottys And þe kyng lest no mañ of Renoun Saue syr Rychard of Carnaby And hym kylllyd A fflemynge out of the Red hall as he put oppe his helme And bad hem ȝeld heme to þe kyngys grace but þe scotys wold nott werfor þat hall was brente and all þe Scottys þer in And kyng Edward lost but xxviij meñ of estate And þan þo wyt in þe castell com and ȝeld heme and brouth to þe kyng her cayys and ther was take syr william Douglas And syr symond frysell 7 patreke Ingham ȝeld hym þe pesse And Robert þe brus and oon Ingham hemfrevyle for Soke kyng Edward and held wyt þe þe<sup>a</sup> scottys and aftyr þay were put in to presoun but Sone aftyr Edward for gaff heme And thane he sclosyd berwekk wyt walys and dychys and aftyr hys broders<sup>b</sup> Brus did much harme to þis Reme and kylllyd and Robbyd And þane kyng Edward heryng þer of Sent meny of hys lordys to be sege þe castell of Rokysburch And oon Rychard Steward A falsse treytour þouȝte to dyssayve þe Englysmen and sayd to þe Englysmen And sayd þat þay wold ȝeld heme þe castyll ȝiff thay wold ȝeff hem vij dayis of respyte þat he myȝth send to Syr (fol. 93<sup>b</sup>) Iohn Baylloll ȝeff he wold Resayve<sup>c</sup> hym or noo And so A



messenger tho come to sere Iohn Baillol kyng of Scottlond  
 ther pat he was with his ost and his message tolde hyme  
 And sere Iohn nome tho his ost and com on the morwe erly  
 toward the Castel And sere Richarde Stwarde seygh him come  
pat was maister of the counsaile and kepper of pe castel  
 7 seide to the englissh men O god quod he now y se afloc  
 afair cumpany and well apareilede y wille goo a 3eins heme  
 and with heme to mette 7 hame assaille And sere hugh the  
 spenser saugh the ffalsnesse of him and the tresoun and  
 saide to him take o traitour take and proued<sup>1</sup> 3oure  
 falsnesse schal not availe 3ou and hugh the spenser  
 comaunded anon for to bynde hym and in haste wende a3ens  
 (fol. 63<sup>a</sup>b) our henemys And forth they wente 7 quelled  
 xxij M<sup>1</sup> for the Sottes<sup>a</sup> hade that tyme no man with hame  
 of honour saf sere Patrik Graham that manlich faught and  
 longe tyme and at the laste he was quelled and tho saide  
 the Englisshmen in reprofe of the Scottes pus statarand  
 Scottis holde we for sottyis of wrenchis vn warr Erly in  
 amornyng in an euel tymynge wente thei fro dunbarr<sup>b</sup> And  
 whenne tho that were in the castel sawe the scounfitur pei  
 3olden the castel vn to the english men and bounden her  
 bodies londes 7 castelles to the kyng Edward And so ther  
 wer taken in the Castel iiij Erles 7 viij Barouñs and  
 xxviij kny3tes and xj Clerkes and vij Pycardes and alle  
 wer presented vn to kyng Edward And he sent hem to the  
 toure of london for to ben kept per

How kyng Edward of his grette grace de lyuerde a3en out<sup>2</sup>  
 the Scottys outt of prisoune that wer cheueteynes of the  
 londe and thei drouh heme to the frensh men pur3 the  
 counsel of william Waleys Capitulo Centesimo Octoagesimo  
 nono

---

Fol. 63 <sup>1</sup>Superscript d by scribe. <sup>2</sup>Stroked out.

messenger came to syr Iohn baylloll and told hyme And syr  
 Iohn come vppon be morowe erly toward the castell And syr  
 Rychard saw heme comyne O quod thys Ryr<sup>d</sup> Richard Steward  
 I Se a fayr mayne com I wyll hem assaute And syr huge  
 Spenser saw be falsnes of heme pou traytur atteynte now  
prouy the falsnes and lett bynd hym in all be hast and  
 wente A 3enst hys Enmys and slow xxij M<sup>13</sup> of Scottys for  
 thay had no man of worschype wyt heme but syr Patrike  
 graham Amanfull man pat long fouzt but at be laste he  
 was slayne And pane sayd be Englysmen in Reprewe of  
 Scottys These pat in a erly mornyng In an euyl tyming  
 com bey fro Dunbare<sup>4</sup> And when pay wyt in be castell sawe  
 the dyscomfettetur<sup>e</sup> pay zelden vp be castell to be  
 Englymen And bond heme both body and goodys to kyng  
 Edward and ther was take iij Erlys vij barons xxviij  
 knyztys and xj clerkys And all thes wer presentyd to kyng  
 Edward And he send hem to london to be kepe in Sawe gard

---

<sup>3</sup>M<sup>1</sup> by corr. above. <sup>4</sup>These ... Dunbare by rubricator in red; orig. written in left margin by scribe and then erased.



Whenne kyng Edwarde hade made þo annende of the werr and  
 toke the cheueteynes of Scotlond þo come sere Iohn Baillol  
 and 3elde him to kyng Edward and putte him in his grace  
 and he was lade to london And whenne kyng Edward was comyn  
 thedir thei wer brought be for him And the kyng axede of  
 heme howe they wolde make amendis of that trespas and  
 losse that they hade done him and they putte hem in his  
 mercy lordynges quop the kyng I welle not 3our londes ne  
 non of 3oure goodes but y wille that 3e mak to me an ooth  
 vp on godes bodi for to ben trewe to me and neuer after  
 this tyme a 3eiens me ber Armes And alle they concented to  
 the kynges wille and swore vp on godes body that es to sey  
sere Iohn of Comyn and the Erle of Stratthorn the Erle of  
 Carryk And al so iiij bisshopis vndirtok ffor alle the  
 Clerkys And so the (fol. 63<sup>b</sup>a) kyng deliuerede heme 7 3af  
 hem safcondit to wende in to her owne londe And hit was  
 nought longe afterward that þei ne arresen a3ene kyng  
 Edwarde for enchesoun that thei wiste wel that kyng  
 Edwardes folke was taken in Gascoigne as be fore es saide  
 But sere Iohn Baillol kyng of Scottlond wiste wel that  
 his londe scholde haue sorwe 7 schame for her falsnesse  
 and in haste went hym ouere the see to his ougne landes  
 and there helde him and come neuer mor a 3ien wherfore the  
 scottes schossen to her kyng William Waleys arrebaude an  
 harlot<sup>c</sup> comen vp of nought and moch harme dedde to  
 Engelisshmen And kyng Edward<sup>3</sup> thought how that he myght  
 haue deliueraunce of his peple that wer taken in Gascoigne  
 and in haste wente ouer the see in to flaundres ffor to  
 werre vp on þe kyng of ffraunce And the Erle of flaundres  
 vndirfongede him with moch honour and graunted him alle  
 his londis at his ougne wille And whenne the kyng of  
 ffraunce hede telle that the kyng of Engeland was arryued  
 in fflaundres and come with an houghe pouer him for to

---

<sup>3</sup>By corr. over erasure.

And when kyng Edward had mad a nend of the gret lordys of  
 Scotlond þane come syr Iohn̄ Baylloll and 3eld heme to kyng  
 Edward and he was led to london̄ tell kyng Edward com  
 theddyr And thane he was brouth to for hyme And þane he  
 axid hyme wat Amendys he wold mak of þe harms þat he hath  
 done hyme And he put hyme in hys mercy þane sayd kyng  
 Edward I wol [.]<sup>5</sup>one of 3our goodys ne of your bodyes but  
 I wold (fol. 94<sup>a</sup>) þat 3e Swer vppon̄ godys body for to be  
 trew to me for euyrmor aftyr thys tyme Ne neuyr a3enst me  
 to ber armes And þer Sworne þat ys to say syr Iohn̄ of  
 Semond And þe Erle of Stratborn̄ the Erle of Marryke And  
 iiij bysshoppis for all þe clerge And So wer they delyidd<sup>a</sup>  
 and had saue condyt and goon in to theyr owne lond a3ene  
 And 3it þe Scottys aRysyne A3ene Oppon̄ kyng Edward for  
 cawse þat þay knew well þat kyng Edwardys folke wer taken̄  
 in gascoyne And syr Iohn̄ Baylloll west wel þat þay shuld  
 haue Sorowe and schame for the oth þay had mad to þ kyng  
 of Englond And went hyme ouyr þe See and held hem þer and  
 lyvid vppon̄ hys owne londys And thane þe Scottys chosse to  
 thayr kynge A Rebawde callyd wylliam walys And he ded much  
 harme to þe Englyssmen̄ And the kyng Edward pou3e howe he  
 my3the make his delyueraune<sup>b</sup> and hys men þat wer takyne in  
 Gascoyne and went ouyr the See And werryd vppon̄ kyng of  
 fraunce And the Erl of flaunders resaywyd hym wyt much  
 honour and grauntyd hyme hys body And his goodys at his  
 owne wyll And þe kyng of fraunce herynge þat þe kyng of  
 Englond was comynge wyt A grett pour d<sup>c</sup> to

---

<sup>5</sup>Letter erased, prob. d-.



distroie he praide him of trews for ij 3er so that the Englissh men marchauntis 7 al so frenche men myght sauelich go on bothe sides The kyng Edward graunted hit so that he myght haue his men owt of prisoun that wer in Gascoigne and the kyng off ffraunce graunted hem anoñe 7 so they were deliuered And in þe same tyme the Scottes sent bi Bisshop of seint Andrewis in to ffraunce to the kyng and to sere Charles his brothir that sere Charles scholde come with his pouer and þei of Scottlond wolde come with herr<sup>d</sup> and so thei scholde goon in to Engeland that lond for to distroie ffrome Scottlond til they come to kent And the Scottes triste moch vp on frenshmen. But of that þing (fol. 63<sup>b</sup>) they hade no manere graunt And natheles thee Scottes be gonne to robbe and to quelle in Northumberlande and dede moche harme.

How wylliam waleys leet sle Sir hugh of Cressingham And of the bataille of foukyrke Capitulo Centagesimo Octoagesimo ix<sup>o</sup>

Whene this tyding was come to kyng Edward that william waleis hade ordeigned swich astrong pouer And þat alle Scotlond to him was entendaunt and redy to quelle Englissh men and distroye the land he was sore annoyed and sent anoñ be letters to Erle of Garreyn and to sere henre percy And to sere william latomer and to sere hugh of Cressyngham hys tresorer that thei scholde take pouer and wende into Northumberland and so forth in to Scottlonde for to kepe the countres And whañ william walleis herde of her comynge he gan to flee and the Englishe men him folwede and drof hym til that he come Stryuelyn<sup>e</sup> and ther he helde hym in the Castel and the walsh men euerich day heme ascriede<sup>f</sup> and manaced and dede al the dispite that they myghten So that the englissh men vp on atyme in Amornyng went owt frame the Castell the mountenanse<sup>g</sup> of x mylle and passed

dystroy hyme and toke trewys for ij 3er So þat þe Englysch Marchandus and frenssh my3te goo in pesse ffryly in bothe Sydus (fol. 94<sup>b</sup>) And the kyng of Englonde grauntyh so þat he my3te haue hys meñ out of Presoun and þe kyng of fraunce grantyd hyme And in the same tyme Sent vnto þe byshop of Sent Andrewe to þe kyng of fraunce þat he shule send ouyr charlys hys sone to Scotlond And thay wold gone And dystroy Englund in lengith and bred But þe Scottys my3th haue none Answer of this thing And nethyrles the Scottys dyd much harme in Northumbrelond 7 Robbyd 7 kyllyd

And whene thys tydyng come vn to kyng Edward þat suche a grett company was Assemblid wyt wylliam walys And þat all Soctolond<sup>1</sup> was all Redy to dystroy þe Englysmen drowe hym to to Srewel[yn]<sup>2</sup> And held hym in the castell and euyry day þe walsmen hym hydously ascryd And þe Englysmen went forthe in a mornynge to or iij Myllys out of þe towne and passyd

---

Fol. 94 <sup>1</sup>Poss. Scett-, Sott-. <sup>2</sup>Erased.



ouer a brygge And william walleys come with astrong pouer  
 and droffe heme abake ffor the englissh men hade a3ens hem  
 tho no myght but fledde and þo that my3t take the brigge  
 aschapede But sere hugh the kyng[..<sup>4</sup>] tresorer ther was  
 slayn 7 many othir also wher fore was made moch sorwe Tho  
 hadde þe kyng spede alle hys nedis in fflaundres 7 was  
 comen a 3eien in to Engeland And in haste nome his way to  
 warde Scottlond and come thedir at Ascencioun And al that  
 he fonde he sette affir and brent But the pour peple of  
 Scottlonde come to him wondir þekke And praide him for  
 goddesloue that he wolde haue of hem mercy and pytte wher  
 fore the kyng þo comaundede that no man scholde doñ harme  
 to ham that werr 3olden to ham no to no man of ordour no  
 to no hows of Religioun ne no manere chirche But (fol.  
 64<sup>a</sup>) lett asspie al that he myght wher that he myghte  
 fynde any of his enemyes Tho come aspie to the kyng and  
 tolde wher that the Scottes wer assemblede for to abide  
 battaile And on seynt marie Magdaleyne day the kynge come  
 to foukirk and 3af battaile to þe Scottis And at that  
 batailled<sup>a</sup> wer quelled of Scottes xxiiij thousand and of  
 Engellissh men but xxviiij men and no mo of the which was  
 a worpi kny3t slayne that was a kny3t and an hospiteler  
 that me callede ffrer Brian Iay ffor wha<sup>n</sup> william waleys  
 fley fram the battaill that same frere Brian him pursewede  
 ferslich and his hors rane 7 stirtte vnto amar of maris<sup>b</sup>  
 vp to the belly And william waleys toured tho a 3een and  
 ther quelled the for saide Brian and that was moch harme  
 And whilles kyng Edward went þourgh Scottlonde ffor to  
 enquere if he myght fynde eny of his enemyes. And in that  
 lond hee dwelled as longe as him lyked and therin was non  
 enemy that durste him abide And sone aafterward kyng  
 Edward went in to southamtoun for he wolde not abiden  
 in Scottlonde in winter sessoun for esement of his peple

<sup>4</sup>Two letters erased, poss. long s and t'.

ouyr a bregge And wylliam walys come wyt a grett power and  
 droff hym abak and many was slayne and some fled and some  
 pepil was myschewyd And þane kyng Edward was full of  
 Sorowe And whene he had sped in fraunce he com in to  
 Englonð And toke hys wyag to Scotlonð and brent and kyllyd  
 and ded all þe harme þat he miȝte And þe por pepyll come  
 done and prayd hyme A pesse And thane he comandyd þat noman  
 shuld do hym harme but lett Aspy wher thes Scottys ys enmys  
 wer be come Thane come An espy and told wer the Scottys wer  
 And kyng Edward com to ffoukyrke and ȝaff þe Scottys A gret  
 batell<sup>3</sup> (fol. 95<sup>a</sup>) And ther was kyllyd xxxiiij M<sup>l</sup> Scottys  
 and of Englysmen but xviij 7 no mo And þane þe kyng Rod  
 for to asay ȝef he couvd fynd ony mo enmyes but he coud  
 fynd none and ther he dwellyd a while as long as hym lyked  
 And aftyr þe kyng went to Southamptoun for he wold nott A  
 byde in Scotlonð in the wyntyr sessoun for esement of hys  
 pepyll

---

<sup>3</sup>Catchword by scribe below: And ther was



And whenne he come to london he lett amende many mysdes<sup>c</sup> thatt wer don azeiens his pees and his lawe whilles he was in fflaundres.

Of the laste mariage of kyng Edward and how he wente the bride tyme in to Scotlond Capitulo Centesimo viij<sup>mo</sup> xj<sup>o</sup>

And afterwarde hit was ordeygned pourgh the Court of Rome that kyng Edward scholde wedde dame Mergarette kyng Phillips Sister of ffraunce And the Erschbisshop Robert of Wynchilse spousede hem to gider thourgh which pees was made be twen kyng Edward of Engelande and kyng Phillip of ffraunce kyng Edward went þo the predde tyme in too Scottlonde and þo with Inne the firste 3er he hade enfamynde the lande so that þer lefte nought but hit come to his mercye (fol. 64<sup>a</sup>b) saf þo that wer in the Castell of Estreuelyn that was well vitailed 7 stored for vij 3eier

Howe the Castell of Estreuelyn was be seged Capitulo Centesimo lx xij<sup>o</sup>

Kyng Edward come with an houghe pouer to the Castel of Estreuelyn 7 be seged the castel but it litil awailed for he myght don̄ the Scottes noñ harme for the Castel was strong and wel y kepte And kyng Edward saw that And be thought hym vp on a queyntise and lett anoñ make ther two peir of Galwes be fore the toure of the Castel and made his oth þat as manye as wer in the castel wer he Erl or Baroun and he werr take with strength but if he wolde thee rather him 3elde he scholde be honged vp on tho galwes And whenne þo þat wer with Inne the Castel herde this fforferde<sup>d</sup> thei come 7 3elded hem alle to the kynges mercy 7 grace And the kyng for 3afe heme all his male talent<sup>e</sup> 7 there were alle the grett lordes of Scottlond sworn to kyng Edward that thei scholde come to london̄ to euerich

7 whene he come to london he lett Amend meny myschewys  
and trespassyd done in hys Absente whils bat he was in  
flaundrus

And aftyr hit was hordynynd purch þe corte of Rome þat kyng  
Edward shuld weld dam Marget the kyngys douȝtyr of fraunce  
And the Ersbyschop of cauntyrbury spows heme to gidyr by  
the wyche maryag pesse was mad by twene kyng Edward of  
Englond and kyng philip of fraunce And thane kyng Edward  
went þe þird tyme and brouth þe Scottys in much myscheff  
and hall<sup>b</sup> halmost in famyld<sup>c</sup> heme but þo þat com to hys  
mercy Bot þo þer wer in þe castell of Estrewelyne bat was  
wytaylid for viij ȝer and mor

K ng<sup>d</sup> Edward come wyt a gret pour to the castell of  
Estrelweldoun and be segit but yt A wayll yt but lytyll  
I was so strong and so well I kepyd And kyng Edward þouth  
opon A queyntysse And lett make A payr of gallows 7 when  
þay wer wytin þe castell herd of thys þing þay ȝeld heme  
to kyng Edward he for gaff hym hys male entente And thane  
wer all þe grett lordys of Scotlond Sworne to kyng Edward  
bat þei (fol. 95<sup>b</sup>) shuld<sup>1</sup> com to london to euyry<sup>2</sup>

---

Fol. 95 <sup>1</sup>Poss. schule. <sup>2</sup>-y prob. over long s.



parlement and scholde stonde to his ordinaunce.

How Trailbastioun<sup>f</sup> was ferst ordeigned Capitulo Centesimo  
lx<sup>o</sup> xiiij<sup>mo</sup>

The kyng Edward went þenns to london and wende to haue  
reste and pees of his werr with the wich werr he was  
occupied xx 3er that es to seie in walis Gascoigne &  
Scottland and þought how my3te recouere his tresoure that  
he hade spende abowte his werr And let enquer þourgh the  
reaume of alle mystakynge and wronges don þourgh mysdoers  
in Engeland of al the tyme that he hade been owt of the  
Reame þat men called trailbastioun And ordeig (fol. 64<sup>b</sup>a)  
ned þerto Iustice3 And in the same manere the kyng  
recouerede tresour with owten nouber And his enchesoun  
was ffor he hade thought for to haue went in to the holy  
londe for to werr vp on goddes enemyes for enchesoun that  
he was croised lang tyme be fore And netheles that lawe  
that he hade ordeigned dede moch good þourgh al Engeland  
to ham that werr mysbode<sup>g</sup> ffor tho that trespassed were wel  
chastisede and afterward they were the mekker and the  
better and the þour comuners wer in moste rest and pees  
And the same tyme kyng Edward enprisonede his owgne sone  
Edward for enchesoun that walter of longetoun bisshop of  
Schestre that was the kynges tresorer hade y made vp on  
him conplaynt and saide that the forsaide Edward þourgh  
counsel & procrement of piers of Gauastoun asquier of  
Gascoigne hade broken þe perkes of the forsaide Bisshop And  
thee forsaide Peris counsaillde and ledde þe same Edward  
the kyngesone And for this cause kyng Edward exilled his  
sone owt of Engelande for euer more

Of the deth of William Waleys that fals treytour Capitulo  
Centesimo lxx<sup>o</sup> quarto



parlemente 7 ordenaunce

Kyng Edward went hym to lond done<sup>e</sup> and went to haue end of hys wer he was occopyd xx 3er In walys Gascoyn̄ and Scotlond and thouth howe he myzt Recowyr hys tresour A 3ene þat he had spente aboute hys werrys and lett enquer of all mys takingis or for fatys wyt in the Reme þe wych hordynance was callyd Trolobuston and by that meñ kyng Edward gadyrd tresurer wyt out nombyr for hys cause for he had went to goo to þe holy lond and to haue werryd vppoñ godys enmys for he was Crossyd long tyme be for And ded much good to many mañ þurch out Englonde for all mesdoers wer well chastysyd 7 þe comens wer well Sett in pesse and reste And in the same tyme kyng Edward enpresonyd Edward hys sone Be caus þat mastyr watyr langtoun Bysshop of chester had mad complaynte to kyng Edward That syr Edward þurch enchosyne of oon Piers of Gauastoun Brokyne the bysshopps parke of Chestyr and for þat chausse<sup>f</sup> kyng Edward exilid hys sone out of hys Reme

And whenne this kyng Edwardē hade his enemyes ouercome in  
 walis Gascoigne ⁊ Scottlonde and distroied his treittoures  
 but onclich the Ribaud william waleys that neuer to the  
 kyng wolde him zelde And at the laste in the touñ of Seynt  
 Domynik in the 3er of kyng Edwardes 3eer<sup>1</sup> regne xxxiiij 3er  
 that false tritour was take and presented to the kyng sawe  
 the kyng wolde not sen him but sente him to london to  
 vndirfong his Iugement And on seynt Bartilmewes eue he was  
 honged and went<sup>1</sup> drawe and his heued smeten of and his  
 boweles taken out of his body and brent and his bodi  
quaterede and sent to foure the best touñes of (fol. 64<sup>b</sup>)  
engelande<sup>1</sup> Scottlond And his hedd sette vp<sup>h</sup> asper<sup>r</sup> and  
 sett vp on london briggē en ensauple<sup>i</sup> pat the Scottes  
 scholde haue in mynde for to berr heme amys a 3ens her  
 lige lorde eftsounes.

How the Scottes comen to kyng Edwardē for to amende her  
trespas that they hade don a 3ens hym Capitulo Centesimo  
lxx quinto 7c'

And at the Michelmesse nex comynge kyng Edward helde his  
parlement att westmenstre and thedir come the Scottes pat  
 es to seyn the bisshop of seint andrewis Robert the Brus  
 Erle of Carrik Symound the ffrissel Iohn the Erle of Athell  
 and thei wer accorded to the kyng and bounde and by ooth  
 sworn that afterward if any of heme mysbar heme a 3eiens  
 kyng Edward that thei schold been disherited for euermor  
 and whan her pees was thus made they nome her leue  
privilich and went home in to her countre

Howe Robert the brus Challenged Scottlond Capitulo Centesimo  
Octogesimo Sexto



And wen kyng Edward had hys werrys endyt in Gascoyn walyz  
 Scotlond and ouyr come hys enmys Save honly Robert þe  
 brusse 7 wylliam walyz þe wych he was take in the towñ of  
 Sent Domnic And presentyd hyme kyng Edward but he woold  
 nott See hyme but sent hym into dirfong<sup>g</sup> thayr Iugymen  
 att london And [.]<sup>3</sup> oppoñ Sent (fol. 96<sup>a</sup>) mertelmesewyne  
 þay wer drawyn and haungyd And thayr hedys to Smetten of  
 and thayr bowellys [be]<sup>1</sup> tane out of her bodyis and brent  
 byforñ hyme And thayr bodyis quarterd in iiij or iiij  
 qaurters in to cheff townys of Scotlond And þeir hedys  
 vppoñ london bryge That euyry mañ shuld be war to done  
azenst her lord eftsones.

And at Mykelmes þan nex followynge þe kyng held hys  
 parlemente at westmestyr and þer by gane þe scottys þat  
 is to say þe bysshop of Sent Andrewe Roberd Brus Erle of  
 Carryke Symond frysyl and Iohn of Atheles and þay wer  
 accordyt wyt the kyng And thay wer bondoñ and Sworne to  
 kyng Edward 3if Any mañ mysbar hyme azenst hem and 3if þay  
 deddyn þay shuld be dysheryt for euyr mor // And when þay  
 had done all thes thynys they toke her leve preuylych  
and went home to her owne Cuntre

---

<sup>3</sup>Letter stroked out, either b or y. Fol. 96 <sup>1</sup>Erased.

And after this Robert the Brus Erle of Carrike sente bi his letteres to Erles & barouns of Scottlonde that thei scholde come to him to Stone<sup>j</sup> in the morwe after concepioun of our lady ffor heige nedis of Scottlond & the lordes come att the day assigned And att the same day sere Robert the Brus ffair lordes ful welle 3e witte hit that in my persone dwelleth the right of the Reame of Scottlonde & as 3ee witte wel as rightful heir Seth þat sere Iohn Baillol was 3oure kyng that was our kyng ws hath for sake and al so lefte his lande And þought hit be so that kyng Edward of engelond with wrongful pouer hath made me to him assent a 3eyens my wille if that 3ee wille graunt that i be kyng of Scottlonde y schal kepe 3ou a3eins kyng Edward and a 3ens alle maner of mene And with that worde the Abbot of Stone a roos and be fore ham alle saide that hit was resoun for to helpe him and the land to kepe & defende And þoo saide in presence of hem alle that he wolde 3ief him a thousande ponde for to mayntene the londe And all (fol. 65<sup>a</sup>) the othir grauntede the londe to him And with her pouere him to defende Ande helpe And saide that Robert Brus scholde be kyng of Scottlonde

Howe sere Iohn of Comyn gayn saide the crounyng of sere Robert þe Brus Capitulo Centesimo octogesimo decimo Septimo

Lordynges saide sere Iohn of Comyn thenkep vp on the treuth and þe oth that 3e made to kyng Edward of Engeland and as touching my selfe I welle nought breke myn oth for noman And so he wente fram the Companye at that tyme Wherefore Robert the Brus and alle oþer concented wer wondir wrooth and thoo manaced sere Iohn of Comyn Tho ordeignede thei anothir councail at donfris to the which come the fforsaide sere Iohn Comyn nought but dwelled ij.myle fro dounfrys there that he was wonede to Soyorne and abide



And~~ft~~<sup>2</sup> aytr thys Robert Brus when he com hom he Assemlyd  
 meny lordys and othyr and opyr pepyll to come to schewyn<sup>3</sup>  
 in þe morowe aytr the consep*c*ioun of our lady for hih  
 nedys of the lond And the lordys come at þe day Assaynid  
 And mad hym to vs A sente azenst her wyll 3if þat þe wyll  
 grante þat I my3te be kyng I shall kep 3ou azenst kyng  
 Edward and azenst all our opyr Enmys And wyt þat word þe  
 Abbot of Soyne sayd þat it was resoun to help hem þe lond  
 to kep and dyssend<sup>4</sup> 7 promysyd hyme a M<sup>l</sup> li for to mayntene  
 the lond wyt all þe tothyr þat grauntyd hym (fol. 96<sup>b</sup>)  
 booth for to help hym and socour hy<sup>a</sup> in all þat he my3the  
 7 defend knyng<sup>b</sup> Edward of Englond And sayd þat Robert de  
brus shall be kyng of Scotlond

Lordyngys quod the kyng<sup>c</sup> syr Iohn of Comyn þenke vppon the  
 othe þat 3e haue made to þe kyng of Englonde for as tochyng  
 my self I woll not breke myn hothe for no maner thyng and  
 so went þan beforne þat tyne<sup>d</sup> wer for Robert Brus was  
 wrothe and all þat wyt hym come to hym concentyte Thane  
 hordone þay Anothyr anothyr<sup>e</sup> parlemente at dunfris to þe  
 wych come syr Iohn of Comyne dwellyng fro thens but ij  
tyme<sup>f</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup>-ft' stroked out; -nd inserted by scribe, prob. after  
 stroking-out. <sup>3</sup>Poss. -o-, not -e-. <sup>4</sup>Crossbars on long  
 ss omitted.

How sere Iohn Comyn was tretrouslych quelled Capitulo  
Centesimo lxxx<sup>o</sup> xviiij<sup>o</sup>

Whenne Robert the Brus wiste that alle the grett lordes of  
Scottlond wer comen to Stone saf sere Iohn Comyn that  
Soiournede þo ney3 Stone he sent after him spesialich that  
sere Iohn Comyns<sup>a</sup> schold come to speke with him And vp on  
that he sente after him ser Iohn Comyns ij brethryn and  
praide him for to come and spek with him att the Grai  
freres of Dunfris And þat was the þorsday after candelmasse  
And sere Iohn grauntede heme for to wende with hem And  
whañ he hade herde messe he tok a sop and dranke And  
afterward he bistrod his palfray and rod his way and so  
he came to Dunfrys And Robert the Brus saw him come at at  
a wyndow as he was in his Chamber and þo he made yoie y  
nough 7 come a3ens him 7 colled him abowte the nekke<sup>b</sup> and  
made with him good semblaunt And whenne alle the Erles and  
Brouns<sup>c</sup> of Scottlond wer present Robert the Brus spake and  
saide Sers quoth he 3e wette wele enchesoun of this comyng  
And wher (fol. 65<sup>a</sup>b) for that hit es if that 3e welle  
graunte þat y mot be kyng of Scotlond as right heir of the  
londe And alle the lordes that wer ther seide with oo vois  
that he scholde be crounede kyng of Scottlonde and that  
thei wolde him helpe and him mayntene a 3eiens alle maner  
of men on lyue and for him if hit wer nede to deie The  
Gentyl knyght to Iohn of Comen þ<sup>d</sup> answerede and saide  
certis neuer for me ne for to haue of me as moch help as  
the valu of o botoune for that oth that y haue made to kyng  
Edward of Engeland I Schal holde hit whilis my lif last and  
with that word he wente fro þat companye 7 wolde haue went  
vp on his palfray And Robert thee Brus purseuede him with  
a drawen swerde and bar him þourgh the body<sup>e</sup> And sere Iohn  
Comyn fil doune to the erth But whenne Roger that was sere  
Iohn Comynes brothir saugh this falsenesse he stirte to  
sere Robert thee Brus and smott him with a knyfe but thee



And when Robert Brus west þat all þe lordys of Scotlond  
wer comyne to Scoyne Save syr Iohn̄ of Comyn̄ þat soiornd  
pens but Amyll and Robert þe brus Send aftyr syr Iohn̄ of  
Comyne by his to bretheryne þat he shuld come and speke  
wyt hym at gray frysse at Dounfrysse And syr Iohn̄ Grantid  
hyme And when he hard messe he toke A Soppe and d[.ȝ.]rink<sup>5</sup>  
and come hon̄ hys way And when Robērt brus sawe hym cone<sup>g</sup>  
he was wondyr glad I nowȝe 7 kullyd syr Iohn̄ Aboute þe  
nekke and sayd he was welcome And mad hym good solempnyte  
And when all thys lordys wer assemlyd Syr Robert brus said  
zir ȝe wott well þe cause of ȝour comyne ȝyf ȝe wyll graunt  
þat I myȝth be kyng of Scotlond and rytth her of the lond  
And all þe lordys of þe lond sayd wyt hone woys þat he  
shuld be crownyd kyng (fol. 97<sup>a</sup>) and þat [.]ay<sup>1</sup> wold hope<sup>a</sup>  
hyme and mayntyne hym in all maner thyng for to leff and  
dy for heme ȝif hit wer nede And Answerd Syr Iohn̄ Comyne  
and syrrys nevyr for me to have þe help worth a por<sup>2</sup> botone  
for that þat I haue mad to kyng Edward of Englund whils my  
lyff may Dur and wyt þat word he went fro þe company and  
wold haue gone to hys hors And Roberd the brusse pursuyd  
hyme wyt a dragone<sup>b</sup> Swerd and bar hym þour þe body and syr  
Iohn̄ fyll done in to þe erthe but when Ror þat was syr  
Iohn̄e Cosyne<sup>c</sup> brother say þe falsnesse and stert to Robert  
De brus and smothe hym wyt A knyff but þe

---

<sup>5</sup>-y- expuncted by triangle of 3 dots. Fol. 97 <sup>1</sup>Letter  
erased, poss. h-. <sup>2</sup>MS. has p.

fals treitour was armed vndir so that the strok myght don  
 him non harme And so moch help come aboute sere Robert the  
 Brus So that Roger Comyn was ther quelled and al to hewe  
 in smale Peccis And Robert the Brus tournede a zeien there  
 that sere Iohn Comyn þat noble Baroun lay wounded and  
 pynned to ward his deth be sides the heige auter in the  
 Chirch of the gray freres and saide vn to sere Iohn Comyn  
 O traitour þou schalt be ded and neuere after lette myn  
 auauncement and schok his swerde att the heigh auter and  
 smot him on hed þat the brayn fill douñ vp on the ground  
 and the blode stirte an heigh in to the wallis and 3iet  
 in to this day that blode es sene there that no water may  
 wasch hit a way and so deide that nobil knygh in holy  
 Cherch

How Robert the Brus was crowned and made kyng of Scottlond  
Capitulo Centesimo Octogesimo xix<sup>mo</sup>

And whenne the treitour sere Robert Brus saw that no man  
 poo wolde lette his coronacioun he comaunded alle ham that  
 wer of pouer schold come vn to his crounyng to seynt  
 Iohnes toune in Scottlond And so hit be fill that oure lady  
 day of the Annunciacioun the Bys (fol. 65<sup>b</sup>a) schop of  
 Glascoue and the bischop of Seynt andrewys crowned for  
 her kynk<sup>f</sup> Robert the Brus in Seynt Iohnys toune and made  
 him kyng and anon after he draf out alle thee englissh men  
 of Scottlonde and they fley 7 come to pleygne vn to kyng  
 Edward how Robert the Brus hade dreuen hem outt of þe lond  
 and disherited ham

Howe kyng Edward doubled<sup>g</sup> att westmenstre fourtene Score  
 knyzttes Capitulo Centesimo xx<sup>l</sup> iiij<sup>xx</sup>to



false traytor was harnes vndyr hys clopis þat no stroke  
 myth do hyme harme And such help come Aboute syr Roberte  
 þat brus þat Ryr<sup>d</sup> Roger Cossyne<sup>e</sup> was þer kyllyd 7 hewyne  
 ij<sup>f</sup> Small pessys And Syr þe brus turnyd A3ene ther as þe  
 good syr Iohn Comyn lay wondyd and pyined toward hys  
 dethe besyd the hyth of the chyrch of þe gray freys And  
 sayd vnto syr Iohn Comyn O traytur þou shalt be ded and  
 neuyr aftyr let myne A weingemens<sup>g</sup> And schoke his Swerd  
 at hys<sup>h</sup> Awtyr and smott hym one the hed that þe brayne  
 fyll downe vppoñ þe gronde an the blod stert on hygh on  
 þe wallys 7 3it in to þis day þat blod ys sene þat no  
 watyr may wasschyd A way and so ded þe nobyll knythe in  
 holy chirche

Howe Robert Brus was crowned 7 made kyng of Scotlonde  
 Capitulo sentesimo octogesimo

And when the traytur Roberd brus saue no mañ (fol. 97<sup>b</sup>)  
 wold let hys coronacioun he comandyd all þem þat wer ther  
 on hys party shuld come to hys Coronacioun to Sent Iohn ys  
 towne in Scotlond And so hit be fyll On our lady day  
 Anuñciacioun þe bysshop of Glasco and þe byschop of seynt  
 Andrewe Crownyd for her kynge Robert þe brus in Sent Iohns  
 ys towne And mad hym kyng And Anone aftyr he droff all þe  
 Englyssmeñ out of Scotlond And þay fled and complaynid hem  
 to kyng Edward how Robert þe brus had drw<sup>i</sup> hem out of þe  
 londe 7 dyscomfyd hem

Howe kyng<sup>3</sup> Edward dobbit at westmestyr iiij<sup>xx</sup> kny3tis

---

<sup>3</sup>Smudged.

And whenne kyng Edwarde herde of this myschef he swore that he wolde per of been auenged and saide that alle the treitours of Scottlond scholde ben honged and drawen and that thei scholde neuer been raumsomed And kyng Edwarde thought vp on this falsnesse that the Scottes hade doñ and sente after alle the bachelerie of Engelsonde that thei scholde come to london at witsonetid and he doubled at westmenstre fourtene Score kny3tes Tho ordeignede hym the noble kyng Edwarde for to wende in to Scottlonde to werr vp on Robert the Brus in And<sup>2h</sup> sente be fore him in to Scottlond sere Aymer the Valaunce Erle of pembrok And sere henri percy Baroun with a fair companye that pursewede Scottes and brent tounes 7 castelles And aftirwarde come the kyng him self with Erles and Barouns afair companye

How Robert the Brus was Sconfitede in Bataille and hou Simond frissell<sup>i</sup> was slayn Capitulo Centesimo Octogesimo primo.

The friday next be fore Assumpsione of our lady kyng Edward mette Robert the Brus be sides seynt Iohnes touñ in Scottlonde and with his companye of the which companye kyng Edward quelled seuen þousande whenne Robert the Brus sau this myschef he gan to flee 7 hedde him that men myght nought fynde hime But sere Simond ffrisell pursuede him soor so that he tournede a 3een 7 abode bataille ffor he was a worthi knyght and a bolde of body. And the englissh men pursuede euere sore in euery side and quelled the Stede þat sere Simond frissel rode vp on and they toke him and lade him to the oste And sere (fol. 65<sup>b</sup>) Simond gan to flatre and spak fair And saide lordes y schal 3eue 3ou .iiij. thousande marc of siluer and myn hors and myn harneis and al myn armur and by come abeger Tho Ansuerde

---

<sup>2</sup>A from S by scribe.



[A]nd<sup>4</sup> when kyng wyst þat he wold be Awengid and sayd þat þe traytour of Scotlond shuld be hongid and drawe and pay shuld neuyr be raunsonyd And þe kyng Edward thouth oppoñ the falsnes þat þe Scotys had done And sent aftyr all þe bysshops of Englund þat pay shuld come to london at wetsontyd And he dubbem<sup>j</sup> at westmestyr [x]iiij<sup>5</sup> Schor kny3this and horden deme for to wend in to Scotlond to wer oppoñ Robert De brus And sent hem by for hyme in to Scotlond Syr Amyr De walansse Erle of Penbroke and syr harry Percy Baroun wyt A fayr company þat porsud þe Sottys<sup>k</sup> and brent Townys and Castellys And aftyr ward com to þe kyng hym Self wyt Erls and barons A fayr company

¶ Howe Roberd the Brus was scomfetid in bataill ¶ And howe Symonde ffrysill was slayne Capitulo centesimo iiij xxj

(fol. 98<sup>a</sup>) [T]he<sup>1</sup> fryday next by for mett Robert De brus besydys sent Iohnes Towne in Scotlond 7 wyt his company kyng Edward kyllyd vij M<sup>1</sup> when Robērt þe brus sawe þis myscheff gan to flee and had hyme þat noman my3th hym fynd but Syr Symod<sup>a</sup> frysyll pursuyd hym so fer in euyry seyð þat he kyllyd þe same horse þat he Rood hond<sup>2</sup> vppoñ<sup>b</sup> And toke hym and led hym in to þe hoste And syr Robert be gane for to flatyr and speke fair and sayd lordys I Sall 3ew 3ou iiij thowsand Marke of Syluyr 7 myñ hors and myne harnes and all myne harmour 7 by come A begger Tho Answerd

<sup>4</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>5</sup>x erased. Fol. 98 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>2</sup>-d stroked out.

Theobaud of Peuens that was the kynges Archier Nou god me so helpe it es for nought that pou spekest for al the gold of Engelonde y wolde the nouzt lett goñ with outen comaundement of kyng ~~heare~~<sup>l</sup> Edward And tho was he lade to the kyng and the kyng wolde nouht see him but comaunded to lede him a way to haue his dome at london in our ladies euen the natiuite he was honged and drawe and his heuede y smeten of And honged azen with cheynes of Iren vp on the Galwes and his hede was sett vpp on london brigge vp aspere and a 3eiens cristemasse<sup>j</sup> the body was brent ffor encheson that men that kepte be nyzte saw many deuellis raumpande with yren crokys rennyng vp on the galwes and horriblich turmented the body and meny that hem saugh anoñ after they deide for drede or vaxen mad or sore sikenesse they hade. And in that bataille was take the Bisschop of Bastoun the Bisshop of seint andrewis and the Abbot of Stone all armed with yren as men of Armes as fals treitours and falce treitours and false prelat<sup>i</sup>is a 3ens here oth And thei were broght to the kyng and the kyng sent hem to the pope of Rome that he scholde do with hem what his wille wer

Howe Iohn Erle of Achelles<sup>k</sup> was taken & put to the deth  
Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> Secundo

And at that batail fley sire Iohn Erle of Achelles wente<sup>l</sup> in to a Chirch and there hidde him for drede But he mighte haue there no refutte<sup>m</sup> for encheson that the Chirch was entirdited pourgh generale centence And in the same Chirch he was take And this sere<sup>n</sup> Iohn wende wel haue aschaped fro the deth for encheson that he claymede kynrede of kyng Edward And the kyng wolde no lenger be taried with his tretouris and sent him to london in haste and there he was honged (fol. 66<sup>a</sup>) and his hede y smeten of & his body brent al to Asshes But atte praier of the quene Mergarete for enchesoun that he claimede of kyng Edwardes kynrede



Theobard of peuenes þat was þe kyngys Archer Now god me helpe yt ys all for no3te þat þew spekyst for all þe Gold of Englonð I uuold<sup>c</sup> þe gone wyt out Comandemeñ of kyng Edward And he was lad in to þe kyng and 1<sup>3</sup> the kyng wold nott See hyme but Comand to led hyme A way to haw hys dome at london̄ on our ladyes Ewyne the natyvite he was hangid And in that batayll was take þe byschop of bastoun and þe bysshope of Sent Andrewe 7 þe abbot of Stone All Armyd in Iryne and stell as A mane of harms and falsse traytours 7 false prelatys a3enst her oothe 7 þe wer brouzt to þe kynge and þe kyng sente heme to þe pope of Rome þat he shuld do wyt hym wat his wyll wer

Howe Iohn̄ Erle of Atheles was taken<sup>4</sup> And putto Deeth  
Capitulo

[A]nd<sup>1</sup> at þe batayll slee<sup>5</sup> syr Iohn̄ Erle of Atheles (fol. 98<sup>b</sup>) And went in to þe chyrch and þer he had hyme for dred but he my3te haue þer no Refute for in chosyne þat þe chyrche was interditid þur generall Sentens And in the same chyrche he was takyne And he went forto haue eschapyd for enchosyne of thate he cleymyth kynred of kyng Edward And þe kyng wold nott no lenger be tarryd of his traytours 7 sent hyme to london̄ in hast And þer he was hongid 7 his hedd Smettyn̄ off And hys body brente all to Asschys And þe quene Margarett for enchosyne of kyng Edwardys kenred

---

<sup>3</sup> Stroked out. <sup>4</sup> was taken smudged. <sup>5</sup> Crossbar on long s-omitted.

his drawyng was for 3eue.

How Iohn that was william walys brothir was putt to the  
deth Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> iiij<sup>o</sup>

Thenne<sup>a</sup> the gretteste maisteres of the londe was thus don  
to euel deth and schent for hire falsnesse Iohn that was  
william waleis brothir was taken 7 don to the deth as  
sere Iohn Erl of Achelles was

How Robert the Brus fleye fram Scottlonde to Norway  
Capitulo Centesimo Octagesimo quarto

And that same tyme was Robert the Brus moch hated among  
the peple of Scottlond so he wiste not what for to done  
And for to hide hym he wente in to Norweye to the kyng  
that hade spoused his sister 7 there he hilde hym socour  
for to haue And whene Robert thee Brus might not be founde  
in Scotlonde kyng Edwarde tho lette crie his pees pour3  
owt all the londe 7 his were vsede<sup>b</sup> and his mynistres  
seruede purgh out al thee londe.

How kyng Edwarde deide Capitulo Centesimo octogesimo  
quinto orate pro anima eius.

Whene kyng Edwarde hade abatted his enemyes he tornede a  
3en southward and amaladie tok him at bourgh vp on sand  
in the march of Scottlonde 7 he wist wel that his deth was  
ful neigh and called to him sire henry the lacy Erle of  
Nichole Sir Guy erle of warrwyk Sir Aymer valence erle of  
Penbrok and ser Robert the Clifford baroun and praide  
ham vp on the fay that they him owed that thei scholde  
mak Edwarde of Canaryfan kyng of Engelsonde his sone as  
rath<sup>c</sup> as thei myzte And that thei scholde nought soffre  
Piers of Gauestoun come a 3eien in to Engelsond for to make



hys drawyng was forʒeff hyme

Howe Iohn̄ þat was william walys brothir was putto dethe  
Capitulo octogesimo quarto

[W]hen<sup>1</sup> the grettyst mastyr of Scotlond was þus doñ to  
Ewyll dethe 7 shent for her falsnes Iohn̄ þat was wylliam  
walys brother was takyne 7 done to dethe as syr Iohn̄  
Erle of Atheles was

Howe Robert<sup>6</sup> þe Brus fled fro Scotlonde to norway Capitulo  
Centesimo octogesimo iiij<sup>o</sup>

[A]nd<sup>1</sup> at þat same tyme was Robert the brus much hathet  
Amongys þe Pepyll of Scotlond And sche<sup>d</sup> wyst not what for  
to done ne wher for to heid heme he went in to Norway to  
þe kyng þat had spousyd hys Sustyr ther for to haue socoure  
And whene Robert þe brus myȝt nott be fonde in Scotlond  
kyng Edward deid lett cry his pesse þour all þe lond and  
hys wer sesyd And this mynisterris serued þurch out All  
þe lond

[....]<sup>7</sup> kyng Edward deid Capitulo C<sup>o</sup> octegesimo v<sup>o</sup>

A[.]hen<sup>8</sup> kyng Edward had A batell of hys enmys 7 thurnyd  
A-ʒene<sup>9</sup> Southward 7 malady toke hyme at bur (fol. 99<sup>a</sup>)  
hoptoun sonde in the marke of Scotlond and he wyst well  
þat hys deth was full nyȝte<sup>a</sup> and callyd to hem to Syr harry  
delacy Erle of Nycolle syr Guy Erle of werweke syr Aymer  
valence Erle of Penbroke and syr Roberd of Clyfford Baroun  
a pray heme oppoñ the faythe þat pay to hym had mad þat pay

---

<sup>6</sup>Howe Robert smudged. <sup>7</sup>Word smudged, prob. Howe. <sup>8</sup>Blue initial smudged, but erron. guide-letter A visible.  
<sup>9</sup>Small stroke betw. A and ʒ-.

his sone vse riat ⁊ thei graunted hym with goode wille and the kyng nome his sacramentis of holi Chirch as a goode cristen man scholde ⁊ deide in veri repentaunce And whenne he hade ben kyng lv (fol. 66<sup>a</sup>b) 3ere he deide ⁊ was buriede at westmenstre with moch solempnite vp on wos soule god haue mercy

Of merelines prophecies that were declaredde of kyng Edwardde that was kyng henries sone. Capitulo Centesimo lxxx<sup>o</sup> Sexto.

And this of<sup>ld</sup> kyng Edwardde prophesiede Merlyn and callede him adragoun the seconde kyng of the vj laste kynges that schullen ben for to regne in Engeland and saide that he scholde be medlede with mercy and al so with sternesse that scholde kepe Engeland fro colde and fro heete and that he scholde opene his mouth toward walis and that he scholde sette his o fotte in wyke and he schullen closen with wallis that scholde don̄ moch harme to his sede And he saide soth ffor the goode kynge Edwardde was medled with mercy and with feersenesse With mercy a 3eiens his enemyes of walis And after of Scottlond with feersenesse. Whanne he putte ham to the dep̄ for her falsenesse and traittrie as they hadde deseruede hit and welle kepte he Engelande fro collde ⁊ hette sep̄ he kepte hit fram all maner enemyes that come vp on hem to do any wronge And wele opened he his mouth towarde walis and made hit quake pourgh the hedour of his mouth whenne he conquerde hit pourgh dynt of swerde ffor the Prince lewlyn and Daudid his brothir Rys and Morgan were putt vn to de<sup>e</sup> deth for hir falsenesse and here foly And he sette his fot in to wyk and conquerde Berewyk att the which conquest wer slayn xxv thousand ⁊ vij C<sup>o</sup> owt take heme that were brent in the Reed halle ⁊ the wallys that he lett make schal be noyous vn to his



shuld make edward of Carnarryvañ kyng of Englund hys sone  
 as Rathe as thay mythe And þat þay shuld nott Soffer ite  
 Piers of Gauastoun come A3ene vn to Englonde and make hys  
 sone to vse Ryot And thay grantyd hym wyt good wyll And þe  
 kynges nome hys sacramentys of holy chyrche as A good  
 Crystynmañ suld and deid in verry Repentauns whene he had  
 be kyng lv 3er he deid and was buryd at westmestyr wyt much  
 Solempnite vppon hosse sowle god hawe mercy

Of Merlyns prophicies þat were declarid of kyng E[....]<sup>d1</sup>  
 þat was kyng Edwardis sonne

[A]nd<sup>2</sup> of thys kyng Edward prophecied Merlyne that callyd  
 hyme Adragoune þe second kyng of the vj<sup>t</sup> last kyngys þat  
 shuld be for to Rayne in Englund And sayd þat he shuld me<sup>3</sup>  
 be medelyd wyt mercy And also for sternys þat shuld kepe  
 Englonde from cold And<sup>4</sup> frome hethe And he shuld hopyn his  
 moth toward walys and set hys fott in wyke And he shuld  
 chosse<sup>b</sup> wyt walys that shuld do mich harme to hes Seed and  
 he sayd sothe for þe good kyng Edward blod ys medelyd wyt  
 mercy and wyt fersnes wyt mercy a3enst hys henmysse of  
 walys 7 aftyr of Scotlonde wyt fersnes when he put hym to  
 dethe for her fallsnes (fol. 99<sup>b</sup>) and trayturous as thay  
 had defendyd<sup>c</sup> And well he kepe Englund fro cold 7 hett for  
 to kep hyt frome all maner of Enmys þat come vppon hyme  
 forto do hym anny wronge And well hopenyd he hys mowthe  
 toward walys and mad hit quake þour þe hedur of his mouthe  
 when he conquerd hyt þour dent of Swerd for the prynce  
 lewlyne And Dauyt hys brother Rysse at Morgane wer put to  
 dethe for her falsnes and her folley And he sett yt One  
 fott in to þe wykke and conquerd berwyke at wych conquest  
 wer slayne xxv þousand 7 vij C out take þem þat wer brent in  
 þe Red hall and þe wallys þat lett make shall bene noyanse in to

Fol. 99 <sup>1</sup>Smudged. <sup>2</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>3</sup>Stroked out.  
<sup>4</sup>Long s shape before And; prob. false start for frome.



sede as men schullen her after in the lif of sere Edward  
 of Carnaryuan his sone And 3iet saide Merlyn þat there  
 scholde come apeple out of the North west duryng the regne  
 of the forsaide Dragoun̄ that scholde be lade be an ille  
 grehounde that scholde the dragoun croune kynḡ that  
 afterwarde scholde flee ouer the see for drede of the  
 Dragoun̄ With owten comynge a 3eeien And that was proved  
 be sere Iohn Baillol that kyng Edward made to be kyng  
 (fol. 66<sup>b</sup>a) of Scotlonde that falsshlich aros a 3ens him  
 and after he fledde vn to here<sup>f</sup> ougne londis of ffraunce  
 and neuer come a 3eien in to Scotlonde for drede of kyng  
 Edward And 3iet saide Merlyn that the peple that scholde  
 lede the forsaide grehounde scholde be fadirles vn til  
 acertein tyme And he saide sooth ffor the peple of  
 Scottlonde grettlich werre disseised sitthe that sire  
 Iohn Bailoll here kyng fley fro Scottlond And 3iet saide  
 Merlyn that the sunne scholde be come in his tyme as red  
 as any blode in tokenynge of gret mortail deth of peple  
 and that was wel knowen whenne the Scottes were slayn And  
 sith saide Merlyn that pilke dragoun scholde norisshe a  
 fox that scholde meue gret werr a 3eiens him that scholde  
 not in his tyme be ended and that semede wel be Robert the  
 Brus that kyng Edward norissed in his Chaumbre and  
 sithenys stale away ande meuede grett werr a 3ens him  
 which werr was not endedid in his tyme. And afterward  
 Merlyn tolde that this dragoun̄ scholde be holde the beste  
 body of al the worlde And hee saide soth for the goode  
 kyng Edward was the worthieste knyght of al the worlde  
 in his tyme And 3iet saide Merlyn that the Dragoun̄ scholde  
 deie in the march of anothir lond and that this londe  
 scholde be longe with outen any goode keper and that men  
 scholden wepe for his deth fram the ylle of Schepe in to  
 the ylle of marcille wherfore Allas scholde been her  
 comune songe amonge peple fadirles in the londe wastede  
 And þat prophecie was knowen ouer al ful wel ffor þe goode



hys Sede as men shul her aftyr in hys lyff of Syr Edward  
 of Carnarywane And 3it sayd Merlyne þat he shuld make þe  
 Rywyr renne wyt blod and wyth brayne And semyd wel in hys  
 werrys ther þat he had þe mastery And 3it Merlyne sayd þat  
 þer shuld come A pepyll out of þe north weste duryng þe  
 reigne of the forsayd dragon þat shuld be led by A nold  
 grayhonde þat shuld the dragoun Croune kyng And aftyrward  
 shuld fle ouyre þe See for dred of de dragoun wyt oute  
 comynge A 3ene and was prowed by for syr Iohn baylloll þat  
 kyng Edward mad for to be kynge of Scotlond þat falslyche  
 A Roosse a3enst hyme and aftyr he fled in to his owne londos  
 in fraunce And me<sup>d</sup> come a3ene into Scotlond for dred of  
 kyng Edward And 3it said merlyne þat þe pepull þat shuld  
 (fol. 100<sup>a</sup>) led þe forsayd Grayhond shuld be fadyrles in<sup>1</sup>  
 on to A Sertene tyme And he sayd sothe for the pepil of<sup>2</sup>  
 Scotlond grocchid<sup>a</sup> and wer dyssesyde sith þat Iohn Bailloll  
 her kyng fled out of Scotlond 7 3it sayd Merlyne þat Dragone  
 shuld noryche A foxe þat shuld meve gret werr A3enst hem þat  
 shuld not tyme by endythe And þer semyd well be Robert þe  
 brus þat kyng Edward noryche in his chamber þat Sythens  
 stall A way and mevyd grett wer A3enst hem wych wer was nat  
 endith in his tyme And aftyr Melyne told þis Dragone shuld  
 be hold þe best body of thys world And he sayd soth for þe  
 good kyng Edward þe worthus<sup>b</sup> knythe of all þe world in his  
 tyme And 3it say Merlyne þe dragone shuld dye in the marche  
 of norlond<sup>c</sup> And his lond shall be long wyt out Anny good  
 kepere and þat men shull wepe for hys dethe from þe ele of  
 the Schipp tyll þe Ele of Marchell werfor Alasse shal be  
 ther A mong heme the pepyll fadyrles in þe lond wastyd And  
 þat profecy was knowyne ovyr all full well for the good

---

Fol. 100 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>Badly formed o- like a.

kyng Edwarde deigde vp on Burgh up sandes that es vp on the march of Scotlonde wherfore the Englisshe men grettly were discounfortede and gouernede ~~be-the-Seettes~~<sup>2</sup> in Northumberlande ffor enchesoun that kyng Edwardes sone no force for the riaute of Pieres of Caustoun<sup>g</sup> wherfore allas was the songe pourgh al Engelande for defaute of a goode warde fram the ylde<sup>h</sup> of Schipeye vn to the ylde of Marcylle the (fol. 66<sup>b</sup>) peple made moch sorue for goode kyng Edwardis deth ffor thei wende that the goode kyng Edwarde scholde haue goñe in to the holy londe ffor that was hollych his purpos vp on whos soule god.of blisse haue mercye

Of kyng Edwarde that was kyng Edwardes sone Capitulo Centesimo Octogesimo Septimo 7c

And after this kyng Edward regnede Edwarde his sone that was boren in Carnarian And this Edwarde wente into ffraunce and spoused Isabele the kynges doughter of fraunce the xv day of Ianiuer at the Chirch of oure lady at Boloigne in thee 3ere of oure lorde M<sup>l</sup> CCC vij And the xx day of ffeuerer the nexte 3ere that come after he was crounede solempnlich at westmenstre of the Bysschop Robert of wynchilsce of k<sup>2</sup> Caunterburi and there was so grett presse of peple þat sere Iohn Bacwelle was dede 7 mordred And a noñ as the goode kyng Edward was deed sere Edward his sone kyng of Engelande sent after Piers of Gauastoun in to Gascoigne 7 moch louede him that he called him his broþer and anone after he 3af him the lordeschip of wallyngforde And hit was not longe after that he ne 3af him the Erledome of Cornnewaille a 3ens alle the lordes wille of þe reaume And þoo broughte he sere walter of langtoun bisshop of Chestre in to prisoun in to the toure of london with ij

---

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



kyng Edward dethe in the burch of Sondes that ys hopyne þe  
 marche of Scotlond wer for þe Englymene wer grettly  
 dyscomfyte 7 gouernyd in norhumbrelonde for enchosyne þat  
 kyng Edward sone Sett by þe scottys no ffors for þe Riatt  
 of peres of Gauastoun wher for allas was song þour owt all  
 Englonde for the fauth of good ward from þe Eile of Scheppay  
 to þe the Eill of Marchill þe pepyll mad much (fol. 100<sup>b</sup>)  
 Sorow for good kyng Edward dethe þay went þat the good  
 Edward shuld goo in to þe holy londe and that was fullys<sup>3</sup>  
 hys porposse On hosse soull god haue mercy Amen

Of kyng Edward þat was kyng Edwardis sone Capitulo Cetesimo  
 octogesimo septimo

[A]nd<sup>4</sup> after kyng Edward Reignid Edwardus soñ þat was  
 borne at Carnarywane And this Edward went in to fraunce And  
 spowsyd Isabell þe kyngys doughter of fraunce the xxv day of  
 Ienever at A chyrch of our lady in bolene in the 3er of our  
 lord 7 M<sup>1</sup> CC vij And þe xx day of feuerer þane next  
 followynge was she crownyd Solemnyche at westmestyr of þe  
 Ersbyschop Robert of wenchylse of Cauntyrbury and ther was  
 so grett pesse<sup>d</sup> of pepyll þat Syr Iohn bakwell was ded 7  
 morderd And A none þe good kyng Edward was ded syr Edward  
 hys sone kyng of Englonde Sent after Pers of gauastoun in  
 to Gascoyne and so much lowyd hyme þat he callyd hym his  
 brother And A none aft he 3aff hym the lordschip of  
 walyngforthe And hit was nott long after þat he ne 3af hy<sup>e</sup>  
 þe Erldom of Cornuall Azens all þe lordys of the Reme sent  
 And tho bro3t he syr watyr of langtoun byschop of Chestyr  
 in to presone

---

<sup>3</sup> Stroked out. <sup>4</sup> Blue initial smudged.

knaues alone him to serue for enchesoun that the kyng was wroth with him for cause that the walter made aconpleynt on him to his fadir wherfore hee was put in to prisoun in to the tyme of troil bastioun And the forsaide Piers of Gaustoun made so grette maistries that he wente in to the kynges tresorie in the Abbay of westmenstre and nome the table of golde wip the trestiles of the same and many othir rich iuelles that sum tyme were the noble kyng artures<sup>i</sup> and tok hame to a marchaunt that men callede Amery of ffriscomband<sup>j</sup> for he scholde bere heme ouer the see in to Gascoigne and thei come neuer a3ene after wherd<sup>3k</sup> fore hit was gret losse in to this londe And whanne this Piers was so richely auanced he be come so proude and so stoutte where (fol. 67<sup>a</sup>) of alle the grette lordes of the Reame hade him indispite[...]<sup>1</sup> for his grette berynge Were fore serre henre the lacy Erle of Nichole and ser Guy Erle of Warewike the which goode lordes the goode kyng Edward chargede that Peres of Gauastoun scholde not come in to Engelande for to brynge his sone in to ryott And alle the lordes of Engeland assemblede att acertein day at the frer precheours att london and spoken of the dishonour that the kyng dede vn to his reaume and to his croune and so thei assentede alle both Erles and comunes that the forseide Peres of Gauastoun scholde been exiled out of Engeland and so hit was doñ ffor he forswore Engelande and wente in to Irland and therre the kyng made him cheueteyn & gouernour of the londe by his commisioun and there this pers was Cheueteyn of the londe and dede there al that him likede and hade pere what he wolde And that tyme wer the templers exiled pourgh al cristente for enchesoun that men putte on hem that they scholde doñ thing a3ens the feyth<sup>2</sup> and goode be leue And kyng Edward loued Pers of Gauastoun

---

<sup>3</sup>-d by corr. in right margin of column. Fol. 67 <sup>1</sup>Two letters erased. <sup>2</sup>th by corr. above.



in the tyme of troyll le bastoun̄ And the forsayd Piers of  
 gauastoun̄ mad so grett mastrys pat he went in to þe kyngys  
 tresory into þe Abbay of westmestyr̄ And a none<sup>f</sup> þe tabyll  
 of gold wyt þe trestelys of þe same and meny oþyr̄ Rych  
 Ieyellys pat sum tyme was þe nobyll kyng Archurs<sup>g</sup> and toke  
 hem to A (fol. 101<sup>a</sup>) marchand pat meñ callyd Aymere of  
 ffrysschoṁ bawd for he wold ber hem ouyr̄ the See in to  
 Gascoyne and þey came nevyr aȝene aftyr wherfor hit was  
 A gret lost to all thys lond And þis Piers was so Rychly  
 A wauncyd An<sup>l</sup> pat he by come so proud and so stowte wherfor  
 all þe grett lordys of þe Reme had at hy<sup>a</sup> dyspyte for his  
 grett beryng wher for Syr harry de lacy Erle of Nycholl  
 And syr̄ Guy Erle of werweke þe wyche good lordys þe kyng  
 chargyd pat piers of Gauastoun̄ shuld not come into london̄  
 for-to-kyng<sup>l</sup> kyng Edward lowyd Pers of Gauastoun̄

so moch that he myght nought for lette his companye And so moch the kyng 3af ande be height to the peple of Engelsonde that he exillynge of that forsaide Pers of Gauastoun scholde be reuoket at Staunforde pourgh ham that him exilede Wherfor Pers of Gauastoun come a3ene in to Engelsonde and whenne he was comen a3en in to this lond he dispised the grettest lordes of this reame and called sere Robert Clar Erle of Gloucestre horesone<sup>a</sup> and the Erle of Nichole and sere henre the lacy Broostbely<sup>b</sup> and sere Guy of Warewyk Blak hounde of Arderne And al so he callede the noble Erle and gentyl Thomas of lancastre Cherle<sup>c</sup> and many othir scornes and schames ham saide And by many other grett lordes of Engelsonde wherfore they wer towardses him ful angery and sore annoiede And in the same tyme deide the erle of Nichole but he chargede or he was (fol. 67<sup>a</sup>b) ded Thomas of lancastre Erle that was his sone in lawe that he scholde maynten his quarelle a 3eiens the same Piers of Gauastoun vp on his benisoun And so hit was ordeigned pourgh help of the erle of lancastre and of The Erle of Warewik that the forsaide Peris was be hedeed att Gauersiche be sides Warewik the xix day of Iuñ In the 3er of grace M<sup>1</sup> CCC<sup>0</sup> and xij wherfore the kyng was sore annoyed And praide god that he moste see that day to ben avenged vp on the deth of the forsaide Pieris And so hit fille afterward as 3e schulle her Allas<sup>3</sup> the tyme ffor the forsaide Erle of lancastre 7 many othir grette Barouns wer putt to pitous dep 7 martered for enchesoun of the forseide quarell The kyng was att london and helde aparlement and ordeignede the lawes of Simound Mountfort wherfore the Erle of lancastre and alle the erles and alle the clergie of Engelsond maden an ooth pourgh councel of Robert of wynchilsee for to mayntene þo ordinaunce3 for euermor

---

<sup>3</sup>A- from a- by corr.



come a3en in to Englonde And when he was comyne a3ene in  
 to þis lond he dyspysyd þe gret lordys of þe londe Aand  
 callyd syr Robert of clare Erle of Glowcestyr hore sone  
 And þe Erle of Nycholl syr harry delacye brost bely And  
 Syr Gui Erle of warweke blachonde And also callyd the  
 gentyl herell Thomas of langcastyr and many oþyr chornys  
 and schame had sayd be meny othyr grett lordys of Englonde  
 wher for þay wer toward hym sor Amewyd and full hangry  
 And in the same tyme dyid þe Erle Nycoll but he chargid  
 or he was ded Thomas<sup>2</sup> of lancastyr þat was hys sone in  
 lawe þat he shuld mayntene hys quarell A3enst the forsay  
 Pers of Gauastoun oppoñ his benesoun And so hit was  
 holpyne þour the Erle of lancastyr and þe Erle of warwyke  
 þat þe forsay Pers shall be hedyd Gauarsich by sydis  
 werweke in the xix day of Iune the 3er of grace M<sup>1</sup> CCC  
 xij wher for the kyng was sor A Mewyd And prayd to god  
 þat he my3t Se þat day to be Awengyd vppoñ hys dethe for  
 the for sayd Piers And so hit be fyll Aftyward as 3e  
 shall (fol. 101<sup>b</sup>) herr allas the tyme for the forsayd Erle  
 of lancastyrr Ameny oþyr worthy barons wer put to deth and  
 martryd for enchosyne of the forsayd quarell The kyng was  
 þo at london And held A parlemente and hordynyd Rewlys of  
 Syr Symond Monforte for the Erle of lancastyr and all þe  
 Erles and all þe clarge of Englonde madyne A nothe þour  
 consell of Robert of wynchystyr for to mayntyne de  
 hordynance for euyr mor

---

<sup>2</sup> au/a abbreviation-mark used.

How Robert the Brus come a3ene in to Scottlonde and gaderede a grett pouere of men for to werr vp on kyng Edwarde.

Capitulo Centesimo Octuagesimo Octauo 7c

And whenne sere Robert pe Brus that made him kyng of Scottlonde that was flede in to Norway for drede of dep of goode kyng ~~henre~~<sup>4</sup> Edwarde and herde of the debate that was in Engelsonde be twen pe kyng and his lordes he ordeigned an hooste and come in to Engelsonde into Northumberlande and faste distroiede the countrei And whenne kyng Edwarde herde this tyding he lett assemble his hoost and mett the Scottes att the Estryeulyn in the day of the Natiuite of Seynt Iohn the Baptiste in the 3er of his regne the vij. And in the 3ere of oure lorde ihesus Crist M<sup>l</sup> CCC xiiij allas the sorwe and lost that there was don ffor ther was slayn the nobil Erle Gilberde of Clare sere Robert of Clifforde baroun and many othir And of othir peple that no man cowpe noumber And there kyng Edward was discounfited and sere Edmonde of Maule the kyngestuard<sup>d</sup> for drede went and drenchede hm<sup>e</sup> in a fressh river that es called Bannokef Borne<sup>f</sup> wherefore the Scottes saide in reprof (fol. 67<sup>b</sup>a) and dispite of kyng Edwarde for as moch pat he louede for to goon be water and al so for he was descounfited att Bannokesborne there fore maidens made asonge therfor in that cuntre of kyng Edwarde of Engelsonde and in this maner thei songen Maidens of Engelsonde sare may 3e morne ffor tynt 3e hau lost 3oure lemañs at Bannokesbourne with he valogh what wende the kyng of Engelsonde haue ghet Scottlond with Rombylogh<sup>g</sup> Whenne kyng Edwarde was discountfited he was wondir sory and faste fledde with his floc<sup>h</sup> that was left alyue and wentte to Berwyk and there helde him And aftr he toke hostages that es to wretten<sup>i</sup> vij childeren of the chirche<sup>j</sup> of the

---

<sup>4</sup>Stroked out.



Howe Robert þe Brus come a 3ene in to Scotlonde 7 gadrit  
a grete power of men for to wer oppon kyng Edward Capitulo  
c<sup>3</sup>

[A]nd<sup>4</sup> when syr Robert þe brus þat mad hym kynge of  
Scotlond þat was fled in to norway for dred of þe dethe  
of the good kyng Edward And hard of debat þat was in  
Englond by twene þe kyng And hys lordys he hordynynd A nost  
And came in to Englond in to Northumbrelond And kyllyd much  
pepyll and distroyd the contray And whene kyng Edward hard  
this tydyns he lett A Semblyd hys host and met þe Scottys  
on the day of natyvite of Sent Iohn baptyst in the 3er of  
his Reyng þe vij 7 in þe 3er of our lord Ihesus Cryst a  
M<sup>1</sup> CCC xiiij Allas þe Sorrow þat þer was done for ther was  
slayne the nobyll Gylbard of Clare syr Robert the<sup>1</sup> Clefford  
baroun and many oþyr pepyll þat nomañ coud nombyr And kyng  
Edward was Comfytyd<sup>b</sup> And syr emond of maule went 7 drynche  
hem in A Reuyr for dred þat thay callyd Bannokke (fol. 102<sup>a</sup>)  
kebdoun wherfor the Scottys Sayd in Repreff of kyng  
Edwardus for he lovyd to go be watyr And that he was  
dyscomfyd at banokis born þerfor þe maydens song of kyng  
Edward in this maner // Maydyns of Englond sore may 3e  
morne that 3e haue loste 3our lemmannys<sup>1</sup> at banokysborn  
wyt havelauche // vhat went þe kyng of Englond hawe gotoñ  
Scotlond wyt Rombelow When kyng Edward was dyscomfyt he  
was vondur sory and fast fled wyt hys folke þat wer left  
a lywe And aftyr he went to berweke and þer held hym And  
aftyr he toke hostagys þat ys to say vij Chyldryne of the

<sup>3</sup>Badly formed c like s. <sup>4</sup>Blue initial smudged. Fol. 102  
<sup>1</sup>MS. has 5 minims for -mm-.

richest of þe touñ and the kyng wente to london and nome  
 counceille of thinges that wer nedefull vn to the Reame of  
 Engeland And in the same tyme hit be fille that ther was  
 in Engeland arribauðe that men called Iohn Tanner & he  
 wente and saide that he was the goode kyng Edwardes sone  
 and lett him calle Edward of Carnariuañ and there fore he  
 was taken at oxenforde and ther he chalengede the frere  
 carmes chirch<sup>k</sup> that kyng Edward hadde 3euen hem the which  
 chirch som tyme was the kynges halle And aftir warde was  
 this Iohn lade to Northampton and drawe & there hongede  
 for his falssnesse and or that he was ded he confessede  
 and saide be fore alle the folc that the devill be height  
 him that he scholde be kyng of Engelande and that he hadde  
 seruede the deuyll iij 3er

Howe the Toune of Berewyk was taken þourgh tresoun and how  
 ij Cardinales wer robbed in Engelande Capitulo Centesimo  
 iiij<sup>xx</sup> ix<sup>o</sup> 7c

And in mydlenten soneday in the 3er of oure lorde ihesus  
 crist M<sup>l</sup> CCC xvj Berwyk was lost þourgh falsse tresoun of  
 Piers of Spaldynge the which Pieres the kyng hadde putte  
 ther for to kepe thee same touñ with many burgeises of  
 thee touñ Wherfore the the childeren that were putt in  
 hostage þour3 the burgeyses of Berewik And the Burgeises  
 of Berwik foleweden the kynges Marchalsye<sup>l</sup> manye (fol.  
 67<sup>b</sup>) daies feterred in strong Irenes And after þat tyme  
 ther come ij Cardynalles in to Engeland as the pope hadde  
 heme sent for to make Pees be twen Scottlond and Engeland  
 And as thei went to warde Duresme<sup>m</sup> for to haue sacrede  
 maister lowys of Beaumonde bisschoþ of Dureham and as  
 thei wente þei were taken and robbed vp on the more of  
 wyngelsdoun of the which robborie sire Gilbert of  
 Middeltoun was atteynt and take and honged and drawe att  
 london And his hede smetten of and his bowelles brent and



Rechest mene and þe kyng went to london̄ and nome counsell  
 of thyngys þat wer nedffull in to þe Reme of Englonde And  
 in the same hyt be fyll þat þer was a<sup>2</sup> Rybaud That men  
 callyd Iohn̄ tanner and sayd þat he was good kyng Edwardus  
 sone and callyd heme Edward of Carnarryvañ And þer for he  
 was take at Oxinforthe and ther he chalenge the frers  
 carmes chyrch kyng Edward had geff hyme þe wych some tyme  
 was þe kyngys hall And aftyrward was thys Iohn̄ lad to  
 northamptoun and drawyng And ther hongid for hesse falsnes  
 And or þat he was ded he conffessid and sayd by for all þe  
 folke þat de dewyll by heith hyme that he shuld be kyng of  
 Englonde and þat he had Serwyd the Dewyll iij 3er

Howe þe towne of Berwik was taken purh treson 7 howe .ij.  
 Cardinallis were robbit in Englonde C iiij<sup>xx</sup> ij

(fol. 102<sup>b</sup>) [A]nd<sup>3</sup> in mydlensonday in þe 3er of our lord a  
 M<sup>1</sup> CCC xvj Barwyke was lost þour false tresoun of oon Piers  
 of Spaldynge the wyche piers the kyng had put to fore kepe  
 þe Same towne wyt meny burgesse of the towne Wer for the  
 chyldryñ wer put to hostagys and the burgesse of berweke  
 wer put vnto þe kynngys marchesy medeyis<sup>a</sup> feterd and strong  
 in presone And aftyr þat tyme came ij Cardenallys in to  
 Englonde as the pope had heme sente for to make pesse betwen  
 Scotlonde and Englonde as thay went doun fled<sup>b</sup> for to haue  
 Sacryd Mast<sup>c</sup> lauys of Bemounde Bysshop of dyrham as thay  
 went þey wer Robbyd on þe morrowe at wynchylse<sup>4</sup> of wych  
 Robbery Syr gylbard of medylltoun was takyn and hongen̄ And  
 drawyn̄ at london̄ and hys hed mett<sup>d</sup> of And hys bowellys<sup>5</sup>  
 take out and brente

<sup>2</sup>Inserted above by scribe. <sup>3</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>4</sup>-l-  
 over -s- by scribe. <sup>5</sup>Badly formed -o- like e.

his body quartered and his hede sette vp on aspere vp on Newgate And the iiij quarteres sett to foure Cittes of Engelande And that same tyme be felle many meschefes in Engelande ffor the pore peple deide in Engeland for hunger And so moch and so faste folke deiden that vnne<sup>2n</sup> men myght hame burie for aquarter of whette was worth forty schilynges And ij 3er and an halfe a quarter of whette was worth ij marc And ofte tyme the pore peple stale childeren 7 ette ham And ett al so the houndes pat thei myght take and hors and Cattes And after ther fylle a grette Pestelence among bestes in diuerse countres of Engeland duryng kyng Edwardes lif

Howe the Scottes robbed Northumbrland Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> decimo

And in the same tyme come the Scottes a 3een in to Engelande and distroiede Northumberlande and brennede the land and robbede hit and quelled men 7 wymen and Childeren that leyn in cradelles And brent al so holy Cherch and distroiede cristen dome and nome and bar a way Englisshmenes goodes as thei hade been Sarasynnes or paynymes and of the wikkednes that thei deden al the worlde spak ther offe pourgh al cristendome

How the Scottes wolde nough amende her trespasse and therefore Scottlond was enterdited Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> vndecimo 7c

And whenne pope Iohn the xxij after seynt Peter herde of the grette sorwe and myschef that the Scottes wroughte he was wondir sory that cristendome was so distroyed pourgh the Scottes And namelich ffor thei distroyed Soo holy chirch wherfor (fol. 68<sup>a</sup>) the pope sente a generale sentence vndir his bullis of lede<sup>a</sup> vn to the



And hys hed sa[.]t<sup>6</sup> oppoñ newgatte and þe iiij quartyr  
 send to Sertowne<sup>3e</sup> of Englonð And in the same tyme full  
 meny mysscheuys in Engloñ ffor the por pepyll stall  
 Schyldryne and hette hem and þe howndys þat þay myzte take  
 and hett horsys ac<sup>f</sup> Cattys And aftyr fyll a gret pesstelyns  
 A mong bestys in dyuers contrays in Englonde duryng kyng  
 Edwardys lyff

Howe the Scottis robb[... ..]<sup>7</sup>humbirlonde Capitulo  
 centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> x

[A]nd<sup>3</sup> in þe Same tyme come þe Scottys into Englonð and  
 dystrowd Northumberland and brent þat lond and Robbyd  
 yt and kyllyd meny women and chyldrene þat lyeñ in þe  
 cradell And brent all holy chyrche 7 dystroyd all  
 Crystyndom (fol. 103<sup>a</sup>) and bar Away Englessmenys goodys  
 as thay had beñ sarsorn̄s or Paynymys and of the wekydnes  
 þat þay dedyne all the world spake þer of þur all  
 Crystyndom

---

<sup>6</sup>Letter blotted. <sup>7</sup>Smudged and illegible.

Erchbischof of kaunterburi and to the Bisschof of 3ork  
 that yf Robert the Brus of Scottlonde wolde nou3t be  
 iustefied and make amendis vn to the kyng of Engelande  
 Edwarde her lorde and make amendis of his losse3 7 his  
 harmes that bei hade done in Engelande And al so to  
 restore the goodes that they hade nomen of holy Cherch  
 that the centence scholde be proceded and pronounced  
 pour3 al Engeland And whenne the Scottes herde this thei  
 wolde nought lette here malice for the popes comaundement  
 Wherefore Robert Brus Iames Douglas and Thomas Randulf erle  
 of Morref and al þo that with hem comunede<sup>1</sup> or ham halpe  
 in worde or in dede wer accursed in euery chirch purgh  
 out al Scottlonde but yf the Scottes wolde make restitucioun  
 of the harmes that thei hade made vn to holi chirch  
 Wherefore many goode Preest and holy men therfore wer slayn  
 þourgh the reame of Scottlond for enchesoun that bei wolde  
 singe no masse a 3ens the Popes comaundement and a3ens his  
 wille and to done and fulfille the tirauntes wille

How sere hugh the Spensersone<sup>b</sup> was made the kynges  
 Chamberlayn and of the bataile of Mittoñe Capitulo  
 centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup>. duodecimo

And hit was nought longe afterwarde that the kyng ne  
 ordeignede aparlement at 3orke and ther was sere hugh the  
 spensers sone made Chamberlayn And in the mene tyme while  
 the werre lastede the kyng wente a3en in to Scottlonde that  
 hit was wondir for to wette and be segede þe touñ of Berewyk  
 Butt the Scottes wente ouer the water of Solewath that  
 was iiij myle from the the kynges host and priuylich thei  
 stale a wey be nyghte and comen in to Engeland and robbede  
 and distroiede al that bei my3t (fol. 68<sup>a</sup>b) and sparede  
 no maner thing til they comen vn to 3orke And whenne the

---

Fol. 68 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 6 minims for -mun-.



Howe syr huhe þe Spensers sone was made the kyngis  
chambrleyñ And of þe bateill of Mitoun

[A]nd<sup>1</sup> hit was not long aftyr þat þe kyng ord[.]nyd<sup>2</sup>  
aparlemente at yorke And þer was syr hugh þe spenser  
Comandyt chambyrlayne And in the men tyme whyll þe war  
last þe kyng went Aþene in to Scotlond þat hit was wondyr  
to wytt and besegid the towne of barweke but the Scottys  
wente ouyr þe watyr of selwat þat was iij myll by nethe  
þe kyngys hoste and preuely þay stall A way by ny3te and  
come in to Inglonde and Robbyd and dystroyd all maner  
thyng þat þay mythe come by tyll þay come to 3orke And  
when

---

Fol. 103 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>2</sup>Letter erased, prob. -i-.

Englissh men that were left at home herde of this thing  
 al þo that myght trauaylle as wel Monkes and prestes and  
 frere<sup>3</sup> and Chanounes <sup>7</sup> secelers and come <sup>7</sup> mette with the  
 Scottes att Mittone op swale the xij day of october Allas  
 what sorwe ffor the englissh hosbonde men that cowde no  
 thing in werr were quelled ande drenchede in an Arme of  
 the see And her Cheueteynes ser william of Meltoun  
 Erchbischope of 3orke and the Abbot of Selby with her  
 stedes fledde and comen to 3ork And that was her ougne  
 folie that thei hade that myschaunce for thei passede the  
water of Swale and the Scottes sette afire iij stakes<sup>c</sup>  
 and fley an thee smoke there of was so houghe that thee  
 english men myght not see the Scottes And whenne the  
 englishe men wer goone ouer the see the water tho come  
 the Scottes with here wynges in the maner of a schilde<sup>d</sup>  
 and come towarde the englishmen in arowe and the englishmen  
 flede ffor vnneþeth<sup>2e</sup> þei hade any men of Armes for the  
 kyng hade hem al most lost att the Sege of Berewik And the  
 Scottysh hoblers<sup>f</sup> went be twen the bryg and the englissh  
 men And whan̄ the grett hoste hem mette the englisshmen  
 flede be twen the hoblers and the grette host And the  
 Englissh men almost were ther quelde and he that myght  
 wende ouer the water was saued But many were dreynt allas  
 ffor there were slayn many men of religioun and sceculers  
 and eke prestes and clerkes And with moch sorwe the  
 bisshop schappede and therfore the Scottes callede the  
 bataille the Whitte bataille

How kyng Edward dede al maner thing as sere hugh the  
 spenser wolde Capitulo Centesimo Ottuagesimo xiiij<sup>o</sup>

And whenne kyng Edward herde this tydyng he remeuede his  
 sege fram berewyk and come a 3en in to Engelande But sere

---

<sup>2</sup>th by corr. above -þe.



Englismeñ þat wer left atome herd of thys thyngge þay  
 trawayll as well monke fryersse and schannos<sup>a</sup> 7 seculers  
 and come and meteñ wyt þe Scotys at Mytoun vp<sup>3</sup> swalle day  
 of Octobyr Allas for Sorow þat for þe Englysmeñ þat coud  
 nothyngge of wer And ther was kyllyd and drenchyd in and  
 hawyne of þe See and her chewetayne syr wylliam of Melteñ  
 Arsbyshop of 3orke And þe abbot of Selby fled and com to  
 3orke /And þat was her howe<sup>b</sup> folly þat þey had þat myschef  
 for þe passyd þe watyr of Swelle And the Scottys Sett yt  
 fyr iij Stakys of heye And the Smoke þer of was so hoge  
 þat þe Englysmeñ mythe nate See the Scottes And when þe  
 Englysmeñ (fol. 103<sup>b</sup>) wer goone ouyr the watyr tho come  
 the Scottys wyt her wengeng<sup>c</sup> maner of A Scheld and come  
 toward the Englysmeñ in A Raw and þe Englysmeñ fled for  
 honned<sup>d</sup> þay had ony meñ of harmes for þe kyng had hyme  
 all most loste att sege of berweke And þesse Schotyssh  
 hollers<sup>e</sup> when by twene þe bryg and þe englysmeñ And whene  
 þe gret host hem met the Englysmeñ fled by twen þe hollers  
 and the gret ost of the Englysmeñ wer almost kyllyd 7 þat  
 myth wend ouyr the watyr was sawyd but me<sup>f</sup> meny wer  
 drownd Allas for ther was slayne meny meñ of Religioun  
 seculers and Eke prestys 7 clarkys wyt much sorowe the  
 Erschysshop schapyd And ther for þe Scottys callyd the  
 wyth batell

Howe kyng Edward did all þing as þe Spensers wold

[A]nd<sup>1</sup> whene kyng Edward hard thys tydyng he Remewyd the  
 Sege frome berweke and come A3ene in to Englund but syr

---

<sup>3</sup>-p from long -s by scribe.

hugh the Spensersone that was (fol. 68<sup>b</sup>a) the kynges  
 Chamberley<sup>n</sup> kepte so the kynges chamber that no man muste  
 speke with þe kyng but he made with him affrett<sup>g</sup> for to  
 do his nede and that ouer mesur And this hugh bar him so  
 stout that alle men hade of him scorne & dispite And the  
 kyng him self wolde nought be gouernede no rewlede be no  
 maner man but onlich be his fadir and by him And if any  
 knyght of Engelande hade wodes Maners or land that þei  
 wolde coveyte<sup>3</sup> anon the kyng muste 3eu[.] it<sup>4</sup> heme or  
 ellis the man that ou3t hit scholde falsly be endited of  
 forest<sup>h</sup> or of felonye And þourgh swech doyng they  
 disheriede many goode bachelor and so many landes geten  
 that hit was moch wondir And whenne the lordes of Engelande  
 saw the grett couetyssse and the falsnesse of sere hugh the  
 Spenser his fadir and sere hugh the sone they comen to the  
 gentil Erle of lancastre and axede him of counceill of the  
 disese that was in the reame þurgh ser hugh the Spenser  
 and his sone And in haste be on assent they made a priuy  
 assemble att Schirbourne in Elmede and alle they made  
 there an oth for to breke and distourble the doyng be twen  
 the kyng and sere hugh the Spenser and his sone vpp on  
 here pouer and thei went in to the march of walis and  
 distroied the lande of the forsaide sere huhes

How sere hugh the Spenser and his fadir wer exiled out  
 of Engelande Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> quartodecimo

Whenne kyng Edward saw the grett harme and distruccioun  
 that the baronnes of Engeland deden to sere hugh the  
 Spensere landes and to his sones in euerich plassee that  
 they comen vp on And the kyng þoo þour3 counceill exilde  
 sere Iohn Moumbray sere Roger of Clifford and sere

<sup>3</sup>-v- from -u- by corr. <sup>4</sup>Letter erased at end of line and  
 it written by corr. in right margin.



huh þe Spendser þat was þe kyngys chambyrlayne kepte So  
 the kyngys chambyr that no mañ myth speke wyt hyme but he  
 mad wyt hyme A ferd<sup>4g</sup> to do hys ned And þat ouyr mesur in  
 this huh bar hym stout þat all meñ had of hyme Scorne and  
 the kyng hyme self wold not by Rulyd by nomaner of man  
 but by his fadyr and by heme. And 3eff ony knyzt of  
 Englund had wodes Maners þat þay wold yt couyth and the  
 kyngemust 3if hit heme or ellse the mañ þat ouzte hit shuld  
 falsly be indytid of (fol. 104<sup>a</sup>) fforest or of felony and  
 þur suche þay dyshertyd meny good bachelers and so meny  
 londys þay tokyne þat yt was grett wondyr And when all þe  
 lordys of Englund sawe þe grett cowetous of Syr huh þe  
 Spensr the fadyr And syr huh þe spenser þe sone þay comyn  
 to the gentyll Erle of lankastyr and hax hem cownsell of  
 the dyshes þat was in þe lond of syr Iohn the spenser þe  
 fadyr of Syr Iohn the sone And in hast þe Assente þay mad  
 apreuy Assemlyng at Schybrñ in Elmed and of all þay mad  
 ther an othe for to breke and dystroy bytwene the kyng and  
 syr hugh þe spenser and hys sone and þey went in to þe  
 march of walys and dystryd þe londys and þe forestis of  
 syr huges

Howe the Spensers were exiled out of Englonde Capitulo C  
 iiij<sup>xx</sup>

[W]hen<sup>1</sup> kyng Edward saw þe gret dyssroccioun þat þe barons  
 of Englund ded to þe Spenser londus and euyry plasse þat  
 þay comyñ vppoñ And þe kyng þour hys consell exilyd syr  
 Iohn Mawbray Syr Roger of Clefford 7 syr

<sup>4</sup>Badly formed -e- like o. Fol. 104 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged.

Gosselyn Dauill and many othir lordes that wer to hame assentede wherfor the Barouñs dede the more harme thane thei deden be fore And whenne the kyng saw that the barouñs wolde nought cesse of her cruelte the kyng was sore adrade lest they wolde distroye him Ande his reaume ffor his meyntenance (fol. 68<sup>b</sup>) but yf he wolde assente to ham And so he sente for heme be letteres that thei scholde come to london to his parlement att a certeyn day as in his letters was conteyned And thei come with iij battailles<sup>i</sup> wel armed att alle poyntes And euerich bataille hade Cote armes of greene clooth And therof the riche<sup>j</sup> quarteres was 3elewe with white bendes Wherfore that parlement was called parlement of the white bende And in that companye was sere humfrey the Bohon erle of herforde and sere roger the Clifforde ser Iohn of Mounbray ser Gosselyn dauill sere Roger Mortemer sere wygemore sere henry of Trays ser Iohn Giffarde 7 ser Bartilmew of Badelesmore that was the kyngs Stwarde that the kyng hade sent to Schirbourne in Elmede to the Erle of lancastre and to alle that with him wer for to trette of acorde that him alliede to the Barouñs 7 come with that companye And sere Roger damory and sere hugh Daudele that hade spoused the kynges<sup>5</sup> neces suster And ser Gilbert of Clare erl of Gloucestre that was queled in Scottlonde as be fore ys saide And þo ij lordes hade ij parties of the Erledome of Gloucestre And sere hugh the Spenser the sone hade the bridde parte in his wyffes half The bridde suster and the ij lordes wente to the Barouñs with alle here pouer a3ens sere hugh her broþer in lawe And so ther come with him sere Roger of Clifforde sere Iohn Moumbray sere Gosselyn dauill ser Roger Mortemer of werk sere Bartylmew of Baldesmer with alle her companye and many othir that to ham wer concente alle the grette lordes comen to

---

<sup>5</sup>g by corr. above.



Golselyn Dauyll And meny other lordys þat wer to þem  
 consente wher for the barons ded mor harme þan þay dyd to  
 for And whene the kyng sawe þat þe barons wold not sesse  
 of her cruelte the kyng was sor Adrad lest þay wold dystroy  
 hem and hys Reme for hes mayntenance And so he sente for  
 hem þat þay shuld come to london to hys parlemente att A  
 Serteñ day as in his letters wer coñtyned And þay come wyt  
 iij batayllys well Armyd and euyry batayll had cotharmor  
 of grene clothe 7 ther of the Ryth quarter was 3elow wyt  
 wyth bendys And (fol. 104<sup>b</sup>) in that othyr party whas syr  
 hunfray Bothen Erle of herford and syr Roger Clefford And  
 syr Iohn Mowbray syr Goslyne Dauyll syr Roger Mortymer  
 vnkyll of syr Roger Mortymer of wygmore syr harry of Thras  
 syr Iohn Gyddford 7 syr bartylmewe of baldesmer þat was  
 þe kyngys Stuard þat þe kyng had sent to serborn to þe  
 Erle of lancaster 7 to all þat wyt hem wer for to atred<sup>a</sup>  
 of acord and he come wyt þat company 7 syr Roger Damoray 7  
 syr hugh dendell þat had spowsys<sup>b</sup> þe kyngys neys sustyr  
 And syr Gylbard of clar Erle of Glaucestyr þat was kyllyd  
 in Scotlond And tho too lordys hat þe ij partysse of the  
 Erldom of Glowsestyr 7 syr huh þe spenser and sone had the  
 iij parte in hys wyvys halfe the iij sustyr and tho ij  
 lordys went to þe barons wyt all her pour a3ens syr hugh  
 hiyr<sup>c</sup> brother in lawe 7 so þer come wyt hym syr Roger of  
 Clefford Syr Iohn Maubray syr Gosenyll dauyll and meny  
 othyr þat to hym wer consente All þes gret lordys come to  
 westmestyr

westmynstre to be kynges parlement and so they spoken and dede that bothe Sire hugh Spenser the fadir & sere hugh the sone wer outlawed out of Engeland for euermor And sere Hugh the fadir wente to Douere and made moch sorwe and fill douñ vp on the grounde by the See bank made<sup>k</sup> acros with his armes and sore wepeyng saide Now faire Engeland to Almy3ti (fol. 69<sup>a</sup>) god y the be take and pries kissede the grounde and wende neuer to haue come a3ene and wepyng ful sore cursede the tyme that euer he be gate Sire Hugh his soñe And saide for hym he hade lost Engelande And in presence of him that were ham abowte he 3af him his curse and wente ouer the see to his landis But sere Hugh the sone wolde nought goñ owt of Engelande but helde hym in the See And he and his companye robbede ij dromondes<sup>a</sup> be sides Sandwich and nome and bar a wey al the goode þat was on ham the value of xl þousand pounde

Howe the kyng Exilede Erle Thomas of lancastre and alle that helde with him And how the Mortemer come and 3elde him vn to the kyng And of the lordes sege Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> xv<sup>o</sup>

Hit was nought longe after that the kyng ne made sere Hugh the Spenser the fadir of sere Hugh & sere Hugh come a3ene in to Engelande a 3ens the lordes wille of the reme And sone after the kyng with astrong pouere come and be segede the Castel of leedes And in that Castel was the lady of Badelesmer<sup>b</sup> for enchesouñ that sche wolde nought graunte þe Castele to the Quen Issabele kyng Edwardes wyf But the principal cause was for enchesoun that ser Bartilmew Baldesmer was a 3eiens the kyng and helde with the lordes of Engelande And ne theles the kyng be helpe and be socour of men of london And al so þourgh help of Sowthrene men the kyng gat thee Castel maugre ham alle that wer ther Inn and nome with him al that he myght fynde And whenne the



to þe kyngys parlemente and so þay spoke to gedyr And syr  
 huh de spenser the fadyr and þe soñ wer exilid out of  
 Englonde for eu<sup>u</sup>yr more And syr huh þe spenser þe fadyr went  
 to Dou<sup>u</sup>yr and mad much sorrow and fyll done vppon the grond  
 by the See banke and Crosse wyt hyt<sup>d</sup> harmysse And sor  
 wepyng sayd far well Englonde 7 good Englonde to all my3ty  
 god I be take 7 þyrd kest þe grounde And whene neu<sup>u</sup>yr to  
 haue comyne a3ene and wepyng fall sor cursyd þe tyme þat  
 he be gatte syr hugh his sone and sayd for heme he had  
 (fol. 105<sup>a</sup>) lost Englonde and in p<sup>r</sup>esent of all þat wer ther  
 ther he gaff hym hys Cors and wente ou<sup>u</sup>yr the See to his  
 londys And syr huh his sone wold not goo oute of Englonde  
 but held hym in the See and he and hys company robbyd to  
 dromondys be seid sanwyche 7 nome and bay A way all the  
 good that was in theme þe valowe of xl M<sup>l</sup> pound

Howe þe kyng exilid Thomas of lancastre 7 all þat held  
 with hym

[B]<sup>l</sup> it was long aftyr þat þe kyng mad syr huh the Spenser  
 þe fadyr and syr huh þe Sone a3en in in<sup>a</sup> to Englonde a3enst  
 þe lordys wyll of þe Rem And come aftyr the kyng wyt a  
 strong power and come and besegid þe castell And in that  
 Castell was þe lady of baldylmers for in chosyn þat he<sup>b</sup>  
 wold not grante the Castell to the quene Isabell kyng  
 Edwardys wyffe and the p<sup>r</sup>eyncypall cause was that syr  
 Bartelmewe badelsmer was a 3enst þis kyng be help and Socur  
 of meñ of london And also þour help of Sothray meñ the kyng  
 gatt the castell Magre of theme all þat wer þerine And when

---

Fol. 105 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged; guide-letter h faintly visible.

Barouns of Engelande herde of this tydyng sere Roger Mortemer And serr Roger Mortemer and othir many lordes nome and tok the touñ of Brigeworth with strength Wherfore the kyng was wondir wroth And lett outlawe Thomas Erle of lancastre and Humfray of Behoun erle of herforde and alle þo that wer assentaunt to the same querell and the kyng assemblede an houe hoste and come a zeins the lordes of Engelande Werfor the Mortymeres pute ham to the kynges mercy (fol. 69<sup>a</sup>b) and his grace and anon they wer sent to the Toure of london and there kepte in prissoun And whene the Barouns herde of this þing þei comen to Pounfret pere that Erle Thomas soournede and tolde him hou the Mortemers both hade solde ham to the kyng 7 putte ham in his grace

Of the Seege of Tikele Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> xvj<sup>o</sup> 7c

Whenne Thomas Erle of lancastre herde this they wer wondir wrooth and alle that wer of his companye and grettly they wer discounfitede and ordeignede her pouer to gider and beseged the Castel of Tykell But þo that wer with ynne so manlich defended ham that the Barouns myght nought geete the Castel And whenne the kyng herde that his Castel was be seged he swore be god and be his names that the sege scholde be remeuede And assembled an houe pouer of peple and went þedir warde for to rescue the Castell And his pouer encressed hem<sup>c</sup> fram day to day Whenne thee Erle of lancastre and the Erle of herforde 7 the Barouns 7 her companye herde of þis þing they assembled all her pouere And went ham to Burtoun vp on Trent and keppte þe brige that the kyng scholde nouht passe ouer But hit fil so on the tenth day on Marche in the 3ere of grace M<sup>l</sup> iiij<sup>c</sup> and xxj the kyng and the Spensers sere Aymer Valaunce Erle of Pembrok and Iohn Erle of Arendel And her pouer went ouer the water and discounfited Erle Thomas and his companye And they flede to the Castel of Tutbury And fro thens



þe barons of Englonð herd of thys thyng syr Roger  
 mortymer and othyr lordys nome and toke the towne of  
 Briggworth wyt strenth werfor þe kyng was wondyr wrothe  
 and lett owtlawe Thomas Erle of lancaster and of homfray  
 de bohun Erle of hartfort And all þat wer At Sentaunce to  
 þe Same quarell 7 the kyng Assemlyd ane huge hoste and  
 come<sup>2</sup> A3enst þe lordys of Englonð wher for the mortymers  
 but<sup>c</sup> hem to þe kyngys mercy and his grace And anone þay  
 wer Sent to þe tour of london And when þe barons herd  
 (fol. 105<sup>b</sup>) of thys thyng þay come to pomfret þer þat  
 þe Erle Thomas was Soiornyð and told hyme how the  
 Mortymers both had 3eld hym to þe kyng 7 put hem in hys  
 grasse

Of the sege of thikkill Capitulo C iiij<sup>xx</sup> xvj

When Thomas Erle of lankastyr herd þis day was wondyr  
 wrouth And all þat wer in his company And gretly wer  
 dyscomfyd and hordynid her pour to gyddyr and besegyð the  
 castell of Tykkil but þo þat wer wyt ine so manlych hem  
 defendyd and þe barons my3t not gett þe castell And when  
 kyng herd þat his castell was besegid he Swor be god þe  
 Sege sule be remewyd And assemlyd Ane huge pour of pepyll  
 And went dedyr forto Resque þe castell / And his pour  
 encresyd frome day to day when þe Erle of lankastyr and  
 þe Erle of herdford herd of thys thyng and þe barons A  
 Semlyd all her pour 7 wento<sup>3</sup> to Burtoun vppoñ trente and  
 kepte the bryge þat þe kyng shuld nott passe ouyr But hit  
 be fyll so on þe x day of marche in the 3er of grace A M<sup>l</sup>  
 iiij C 7 xxj the<sup>d</sup> and þe Spensers 7 syr Aymer Erle of  
 Penbroke and Iohn Erle of A Rondell 7 her powr went ouyr  
 the watyr And dyscomfid þe Erle Thomas and hys company And  
 þat fled to þe castell of totbery /

---

<sup>2</sup>Third minim of -m- inserted above. <sup>3</sup>-o stroked out.

they went to Pounfret And in that viage deide sere Roger Dammory in the Abbay of Tuttbury And in the same tyme Erle Thomas hade att<sup>d</sup> atraitour with him that me called Robert of holond a knyzt that the Erle hade brought vp of nought and hade norissed him in his botelarie<sup>e</sup> and hade y 3ouen him ij M<sup>l</sup> marc of land be 3ere And so moch the Erle loued him that he myght do in the Erles Court alle þing þat him likede both among heigh and lowe And so queyntlich the thef bare him azens his lorde (fol. 69<sup>b</sup>a) that he truste mor vp on him than vp on any man on lyve And the Erle hade ordeignede be his lettre for to wende in to the Erledome of lancastre for to make aryse to helpe him in that viage that es to seyn vife hundred meñ of armes But the fals treytour come nouht ther no mor men for to warne no to make arise to helpe his lorde And whenne the traittour herde telle that his lorde was discounfited at Burtoune as afalce theff traitur he stale away and robbede in Rauenesdale his lordes men þat come fro the discounfitur and nome of hame hors and harneys And al that they hade and quelled of hame al that he myght take And þo come and 3eelde him vnto the kyng Whanne the goode Erle Thomas wiste that he was so be traied he was sore abasched and saide to him selfe O al myzty god quop he hou myzte Robert Hollande fynde in his herte me to be traye sethenes that I haue loued him so moch Oo god nou may wel man see be him that no mañ may disceyue anothir rather than he that moste tristes vp oñ he hath ful euel 3elde<sup>f</sup> my goodenesse and the Worschip that y to him haue doñ And þourgh my kendenesse haue hy hym auaunsed and made him heigh fram low and he makes me go from heigh to low But 3iet schal he die on euel deth

Of the Scounfiture of Burbrige Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup>  
xviij<sup>o</sup>



And in the same tyme þe Erle Tomas had atraytur wyt hyme  
 þat meñ callyd Robert of holond a knyȝ had brouth vp of  
 nouȝte and had noryche hem in his botry<sup>4</sup> and had ȝewyn  
 hym ij<sup>C</sup> Marke of lyvlod And so mich þe Erle louyd hym  
 (fol. 106<sup>a</sup>) þat he myȝt do in de herlys corte all thyng  
 þat hem lykyd both among hih and lawe and þe erle had  
 hordynyed by his lettyr for to wend in to Irlond<sup>a</sup> of  
 lancastyr for to make A rysyng to hop hym in that viage  
 þat is to say v. C men of harmys But the false traytur  
 come nott ther ne nomañ for to warne ne to make A Rysyng  
 to help his lord And whene the traytur her tell of thys  
 lord meñ þat come from þe Scomfetur and anon<sup>b</sup> of hem  
 hors and harnes and all þat þay had and kyllyd of hem all  
 þay myȝt take 7 tho come and ȝeld hym to þe kyng When the  
 good Erle Thomas wȝst þat he was so be trayd he was sor  
 abasschyed and said to hyme selfe O. almyȝthy god he<sup>C</sup> how  
 myȝt Robert holond fynd in hys harte me to be tray  
 sydyns I haue lowyd hym So muche O good god now may Aman  
 See be hym þat nomañ may dyssayve Anothyr rathar þan he  
 þat A mañ trustyd vppon he hathe full elle ȝell my me  
 goodnes And þe worchip that I to hym hath done And  
 purch my kyndnes haue hym Awauncyd 7 mad hem from lawe  
 7 he makyt me goo from hihe onto lowe but he shall dey  
 in ewyll deth

Of the scomfetur of Berewik Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup>  
 xvij

<sup>4</sup>  
 -o- by scribe, prob. over -r-.

The goode Erle Thomas of lancastre humfray of Bohoun Herle  
 of herforde and þe Barouñs that wer with him had nomen  
 counsel be twen hem att the frer precheours<sup>g</sup> atte Pounfret  
 Tho thought Thomas vp on the traytour of Robert Hollande  
 and saide in reþroue Allas holland me hath be traied Ay is  
 in the reed of sum euel shrede<sup>h</sup> And by comune assent theye  
 scholde alle wende to the Castel of Dunstanburgh the which  
 pteignede to the Erledom of lancastre And that they  
 scholde abide ther til þat the kyng hade for 3eue heme  
 his maletalent But whenne the goode Erle Thomas this herde  
 hee answerde in this manere and saide lordes Quop he yf we  
 goñ towarde the North men wille seye þat we goo toward the  
 Scottes And so we schullen be holde traytours ffor cause  
 of distaunce<sup>i</sup> þat (fol. 69<sup>b</sup>) es be twen kyng Edward and  
 Robert the Brus that made him kyng of Scottlond And  
 therefore y seye as towchinge my selfe that y wille go no  
 ferther in to the North than to myn owgne castel of  
 Pounfret And whenne ser Roger the Clifforde herde this  
 he ars<sup>j</sup> vp anon in wrath and drowh his swerde and swor be  
 almy3ty god and be his holy names but yf that hee wolde  
 goñ with ham he scholde be dede and þat he wolde scle him  
 ther The noble and gentil Erle Thomas was sore adreed and  
 saide fair serres y wille goo with 3ou whedir so euer 3ee  
 me leede Tho went they to gederes into the North And with  
 ham they hade vij hundred men of Armes and come to  
 Burbrigge And whenne sere Andrew of Herkela that was in  
 þe North cuntre þourgh ordinaunce of the kyng for to kepe  
 the cuntre of Scotlonde herde telle how that Thomas of  
 lancastre was discounfited and hys companye at Burtoun vp  
 on Trent he ordeygned him strong pouer And sere Simond  
 al so ward that was þo Scheryff of yorke and come and  
 mette the Barouns at Burbrigge 7 anon they toke the Brygge  
 that was made of tre And when sere Thomas of lancastre  
 herde þat sere andrev of herkela hade brought with him  
 swech apouer he was sore adrede And sent fore sere andrev



[T]he<sup>1</sup> said Erle of lancastyr humfray Debolayne Erle of herford 7 the barons þat wyt hyme ware nomañ Counsell by twene heme Att frers Prechers At Puntfret Tho þou3te Thomas (fol. 106<sup>b</sup>) vppoñ the traytur Robert holond And said in Repreff of holonde me hath be trayd And be comeñ assente þay shuld all wend to þe castell of Dounstanburch the wich pertynyð to þe Erldome of loncastyr And þat þay shuld A byð ther tell þe kyng had for 3iff hem her malesse But when the good Erle thomas he hard And sayd in thys maner lordys quod he 3ife we toward northe men well say þat we goo toward the Scottys And so we shall be hold traytourys for cause of dysturbaunce þat ys by twene Robert þe brus þat maid hym kyng of Scotlond And therfor I Say as tochyng my selfe þat I wol go no forder in to þe north þan to myn hond<sup>d</sup> castell to Pomfret And syr Roger Clyfford herd this he A Rosse op anone in wrath and drouke hys swerd and swor be all my3ty god and be his namys but 3if þat he wold go wyt hyme he shuld be ded And that he woll Sle hym þer The nobyll 7 þe gentyll Erle Thomas of lancastyr was sor Adred And sayd fayr Syrrys I woll go wyt 3ou wer euyr So 3e wyll me led tho þay went to gidyr in to the northe And wyt hem þey haddyne vij C meñ of harmes [...] <sup>2</sup> come to burbruch And when Syr handrew her[...] <sup>2</sup> of þat was in the north contre þour hordynans of the kynge for to kep the contre of Scotlond herd tell how Thomas h<sup>3</sup> of lancastyr was dyscomfyt and hys company at burtoun oppoñ trente he hordynyð hym A strong Power and syr Symoun [...] <sup>4</sup> þat was the Scheryve of yorke com and met the barons [...] <sup>4</sup> at burbrig And anone þay brokyne the bregg þat was mad of tre And when Syr Thomas<sup>5</sup> (fol. 107<sup>a</sup>) herd that Syr Thomas hercula had brouth wyt hyme suche a powur þat he was Adrad and send for handrew

---

Fol. 106 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>2</sup>Illegible through mark or water stain. <sup>3</sup>Stroked out. <sup>4</sup>Erased. <sup>5</sup>Catchword by scribe below: herd þat Syr



of herkela and with him spake and saide to him in this maner Sir andrev quop he 3e may wel vndirstande hou that our lorde the kyng ys lade and mysgouerned be moch fals counceille pourgh sere hugh the Spenser the fadir and sere hugh his sone And sere Iohn Erle of Arendel And pourgh maister Robert Baldok a fals piled clerk<sup>k</sup> that es yn the kynges Court dwellynge wherfor I pray 3ou that 3ee welle come with vs with al the pouer that 3e haue ordeigned and helpe to distroie the venyme of Engelonge And the traitours that bep per ynne And we wille 3ief vn to 3ou the best Part of pre Erledomes that we haueh and holdeþ And we wille make vn to 3ou an oth þat we wille make<sup>1</sup> neuer doo thing with outen 3our counseil and so schulle 3e be Efte<sup>1</sup> as wel with ws as euer was Robert of holland Tho Answerde sere Robert of Erkela And saide Sir Thomas (fol. 70<sup>a</sup>) that wolde y nought done no consente þereto for no maner thing that me myght be 3euen with outen the wille and comaundement of oure lorde the kyng for thañ scholde y be holde attraytour for euermore And whenne the noble Erle Thomas of lancastre sav that he wolde nought consente to distroye the venym of þe reame as we ben consent at o worde Sire Andrev y telle the that or this 3er be goñe þat 3e schullen be take and y holde for attraytour and more thanne 3e holde vs now and in wersse deth 3e schulle deye thañ euere deide any kny3te of Engelonge And vndirstandeth wel that 3e dede neuer thing that sorer schal 3ou repente And now goth and doth what 3ou good likeþ and y wille putte me vn to the mercy and to the grace of god And so wente thee falce trayitour Sire andrev of herkela in his wey as afals trayitour atyraunt and a falce ffor sworn man ffor pour3 the noble Erle Thomas of lancastre he vndirfonged the Armes of Cheualrie and pourgh him he was made kny3t Tho myght men se Archeres drauen hem<sup>a</sup> in that

---

Fol. 69 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out.



hartela and sayd to hym in thys maner Syr Andrew quod he  
 3e mow well vndyrstond how þat our lord þe kyng ys  
 gouernyd and lad be much vngowerne<sup>a</sup> pepyll 7 false  
 counsell þour Syr hugh the soñ of Syr Iohn Erle of  
 Arrondell 7 þur mastyr Robert baldoke a falss pyllyd  
 clerke þat ys in the g<sup>1</sup> kyngys corte dwellynge wher for  
 we pray 3ou þat 3e wyll wyt vs wyt all þe pour þat 3e  
 haue hordynyd and help And dystroy the wenym of Englonde  
 And the traytur þat bene þer in And we wyl 3eff 3ou þe  
 best parte of v Erldoms þat we haue 7 hold and we wyll  
 make vnto 3oue A noth þat well nevyr do thyng wyt out  
 3our counsell And 3e shall be heft as-well<sup>1</sup> as well wyt  
 vs a euyr Robert of holond Tho Answerd syr Andrewe of  
 hartula 7 sayd syr Thomas þat null I nott done ne  
 consent for no maner thyng

o side and in that oper and knyghtes also and foughten to  
 geder wondir sore and al so among othir Sire humfray the  
 Bouhon Erle of herforde a worthy knyzt of Renoun purgh out  
 al cristendome stode and faught with his enemyes vp on the  
 Brigge And as the noble lorde stode and faught vp on the  
 Brigge a thef arebaude scolkede vndir the Brigge and  
 fersly with aspere smotte þe noble knyzt in to the  
 fundement so þat his bowelles comen outte ther allas the  
 sorwe for there was slayn the floure of solace 7 of  
 coumfort and al so of curtesye And sirr Rogger of Clifford  
 anoble knyzt stode euere and fauchte wel and nobly him  
 defendede as a worthy Barouñ but at the laste he was sore  
 y wounded in his heuede And Sire william of Sullay and  
 sere Roger the Brenefelde wer slayn at þat Bataile Whenne  
 sere Robert of herkela sau that Sire Thomas men of  
 lancastre laske<sup>b</sup> and slake<sup>c</sup> anon he and his companye (fol.  
 70<sup>a</sup>b) comen to the gentyl knyzt Thomas of lancastre and  
 saide 3elde the trautour<sup>d</sup> 3elde the The gentil Erle  
 answerede þo and saide nay lordes treitoures be we noñe  
 and to 3ou wille we neuere vs 3elde whiles that oure lifes  
 lasten but leuere we hau to be slayn in oure treuth þan  
 3eld vs to 3ou And sere andrev a3en grad oppon sere Thomas  
 companye 3ollyng as a wood wolff<sup>e</sup> And saide 3elde 3ou  
 trettours taken 3elde 3ou And with an hy voice he saide  
 beth ware serres þat non of 3ou ben so hardy vp on lif  
 and leme to mysdoñ Thomas bodi of lancastre And with þat  
 worde þe goode Erle Thomas wente in to achapell and saide  
 knellyng douñ vp on his knees and turnede his visage to  
 ward the crois And saide almyghty god to the y me 3elde  
 and holy putte me in to thi mercy And with that the  
 veleynes rebaudes kepten<sup>f</sup> abouten hem on euery side þat  
 gentil Erle as tyrautes and wode tormentoures and  
 dispoiled him of his armure and cloped hym in a robe of  
 Ray<sup>g</sup> that was of his squeres lyuere and forth ladde him  
 vn to 3orke by water þo myghte men se moch sorwe and car



And allso syr Roger of Clefford a nobyll kny3te stod 7 defendyd heme worthely as A kny3te but at þe last he was sor Awengid and woundyd in hys hed And syr wylliam of Sullay 7 Syr Roger of brenfeld wer slayn̄ in that batayll when̄ syr Andrewe of hercula saw þat syr Thomas of lancastyr men ded slake anone he and his company came to þe gentyll Erle of loncast And sayd 3eild þe traytur The gentyll Erle Answerd and sayd traytur be we none And to 3ou wyll ve vs neuyr yeldene whylis our lyff lastyn̄ but levyr we had to be slayne þan to yeld vs to 3ou And syr Andrew yt A3ene grad oppoñ syr Thomas company as A wood wolfe 3eld 3ou traytours 3eld 3u And be war syrs þat nomañ be So (fol. 107<sup>b</sup>) hardy oppoñ lyffe 7 lym to hurt Sr<sup>2</sup> Thomas body and to hym mysdo And wyt þat word þe Erle Thomas vnto A chapell And sayd knelyng vppoñ hys kne and tur hys wysag toward the Crosse And sayd allmythy god to þe I me 3eld 7 holyth me put on to thy mercy And wyt þat þe waylens Rebaudus lep about heme oñ euyry And dyspoulyd hym of his Armour and clopid hym in a Robb a Ray þat was of his Squies leuerey and forthe lad hym to 3orke by watyr þo my3t meñ See much Sorow and car

---

<sup>2</sup>Badly formed -r like 3.

for thee gentil kny3tes fledden in euery side And the  
 rebaudes and veleynes eggrelly hem discriede and cride an  
 heigh 3elde 3ou treitours 3elde 3ou And whenne þei were  
 3elded þei were robbed and y bounde as þefes Allas the  
 schame and despite þat the gentil ordore of kny3thod þer  
 hade at þat bataile And the lande was þo with outen lave<sup>h</sup>  
 for holy chirch þo hade nomore reuerence þane hit hade  
 ben abordel hous And in þat bataile was the fadir a 3ens  
 the sone and the vncle azens the Neveu for so moch  
 vnkendenesse was neuere seyen be fore in Engeland as was  
 that tyme among folc of onacioun̄ ffor o kynrede hade no  
 more pitte of that oper thane an hungry wolff hath of A  
 Schep And hit was no wondyr ffor the grett lordes of  
 Engelande were nought alle of o nacioun but were medled  
 with othir naciouns that es for to seye some Britton̄s  
 some Saxsouns some Dannes some Phites some ffrensshmen  
 some Normandes some Spaynardes Some Roma (fol. 70<sup>b</sup>a) aunes  
 some henaudes some fflemynge and of oper diuerse naciouns  
 the which naciouns accorded nouht to the kynde blode<sup>i</sup> of  
 Engelande And if the grett lordes hade ben onlich wedded  
 to Engelish peple than scholde pees haue been and reste  
 amonges hem with oughten any envye And at þat bataile  
 was sere Roger Clifford take and sere Iohn Moumbray sere  
 william Tuchet sere william fitz william and many other  
 worthi knyghtes and sere Hugh Dandell þe nexte day after  
 was taken and put in to prisoun̄ and scholde haue be doñ  
 to the deth if he had not spoused the kynges nece that  
 was the Erle Gilbertys suster of Gloucestre And anon aftere  
 was sere Bartilmev of Baldesmere taken att Stowe parke at  
 amaner of the Bisshopes off london̄ that was his neveue  
 and many other Barouns and Baronettes wherfore was made  
 moche sorwe



for the gentyll kny3tys fleddyne on euyry syd 7 þe velons  
 Rebawdys hem dystroyd And sayd on hihe 3eld 3ou traytour  
 And wen thay wer 3elden þay wer Robbyd and bondon as  
 thefysse wer Allas þe sam gentyll ordyr of kny3t hod  
 ther had And þe lond þo wyt out lawe for holy chyrche  
 had þo no<sup>3</sup> mor Reuerens þan hyt had ben a bordell howsse  
 And in that batayll was þe fadyr A yens þe Sone and þe  
 vnche<sup>b</sup> A3ens þe neve for Somuch vnkyndnes was neuyr Sene  
 to fore In Englong wer not of o nacions but wer medelyd  
 wyt opyr nacionis þat ys to say Saxons sone<sup>c</sup> Danes som  
 paytiff som frensshā Som normandus sum Spaynardys some  
 Romainys<sup>4</sup> sum henaudus sum flemyngys 7 othyr dyuers  
 nacions Accordyng vnto þe kyngys blud of Englong And A  
 none aftyr was syr bartylmewe of baldesmer takeñ at  
 Stawn Parke A maner of the bysshopps of lyncoln þat was  
 hys neweve and many othyr barons barons<sup>1</sup> baronettys wher  
 was mad much Sorowe

---

<sup>3</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text. <sup>4</sup>Badly formed  
 -a- like -tt-.

[H]<sup>1</sup> Hov Thomas of lancastrē was bi heded at Poumfret and  
vif Barouñs honged and drawen Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup>  
decimo viij<sup>o</sup>

And nowe y schal telle 3ou of the noble Erl Thomas of  
lancastrē whenne he was taken and brought to 3orke men  
of the Citte werre ful glade and vp on him cride with  
heige vois A sere treittour 3e are welcome blessed be  
god for now schal 3e haue the rewarde that longe tyme  
3e haue deserued And caste vp on him manye snowe balles  
and many other re<sup>r</sup>proues deden him but the gentil Erle  
that soffrede and saide no nothir on nor othir<sup>j</sup> And in  
the same tyme the kyng herde of that discounfiture and  
was ful glade and in haste come to Poumfret and sere  
hugh the spenser 7 ser hugh his soñe and sere Iohn of  
Arendel And sere Edmond the Wodestoke the kynges brother  
Erle of kentte and sere Aymer of Valance Erle of Penbroke  
and maister Robert of Baldok a fals pelled Clerke that  
was priue and dwelled in the kynges Court And alle come  
thedir with þe kyng And sere Raff of Beestone 3af vp the  
Castel to the kyng And the kyng entred in to the Castel  
And sere Andrev of herkela afalsse tiraunt þourgh the  
kynges comaundement nome with him the gentil Erle Thomas  
to Pounfret and there he was prisouned in his owgne  
Castell that he hade new made (fol. 70<sup>b</sup>) that stode  
a3ens the abbay of kyng Edward And sere hugh the Spenser  
the fadir and sere hugh his sone caste and þought howe  
and in what maner the goode Erle Thomas of lancastrē  
scholde bee ded with outen any Iugement of his peris  
wherfore hit was ordeigned þourgh the kynges Iustices  
that the kyng scholde putte vp on hym poyntes of tretrye  
And so hit fil that he was lade to the barre be fore the  
kynges Iustices bare hedded as a þef in afaire halle with

---

Fol. 70 <sup>1</sup>Written in black, then blotted out.



Howe Thomas erle of lancastre was be hedit at pounfrete  
7 v. barons hang 7 drawen

(fol. 108<sup>a</sup>) [A]nd<sup>1</sup> now I savell tell 3ou of the nobyll  
Erle Thomas of lancastyr when he was takyne and brou3t to  
yorke meny of þe Sete And was full glad and cryd wyt an  
high woys A Syr traytur 3e ar welcome blessyd be god for  
now shall 3e haue 3our reward<sup>2</sup> þat long tym 3e haue deserwyd  
And cast vppon hyme meny Snawballys and meny othyr Reprevys  
but þe gentyll Erle þat Sofferd And sayd neuyr A word neþyr  
on ne opyr And in þe same tyme þe kyng hard of the Scomfetur  
7 was full glad And in hast come to Pounfrete And syr huhe  
þe spenser and syr huh þe sone 7 syr Iohn Erle of A Rondell  
syr Edmond of woodstoke þe kyngys brother Erle of kente  
and syr Aymer of walans Erle of penbroke And mastyr Robert  
baldoke A false pyllyd clerke þat dwellyd in þe kyngys  
corte And all com tethyr wyt þe kynge And syr Rauf of  
bestoun 3aff vp the castell to the kynge And þe kyng  
enteryd in to the Castell And syr Andrew of hercula A  
false traytur þur þe kyngys comandement nome wyt hym þe  
gentyll Erle Thomas to Pounfret and þer he was presonyd  
in his owne castell þat he had newe made þat stod a3enst  
þe abbay of kyng Edward And syr hug þe Spenser 7 syr huge  
þe Sone cast in wat wysse þe good Erle shuld be ded wyt<sup>a</sup>  
ony Iogement of hys peris<sup>3</sup> wherfor hit was hordynyd þour  
þe kyngys Iustys þat þay shuld hopyn heme pontys of  
tresoun And so he was lad to þe bar be forne þe kyngys  
Iustys barhed as a theff and afeyr hathe<sup>b</sup>

---

Fol. 108 <sup>1</sup>Blue initial smudged. <sup>2</sup>r- like 3. <sup>3</sup>Superscript -i-.

Inne his ougne castel that he hade made þer ynne many  
afeire feste to riche and eke to poere And there were  
his Iustice<sup>3</sup> sere hugh the Spenser the fadir Sire Aymer  
the Valance erle of penbrok sere Edmonde the wodestok  
Erle of kent sere Iohn of Britagne Erle of Richemond and  
sere Robert of Malberthorþ Iustice And sere Robert him  
accompede<sup>k</sup> in this maner Thomas at the ferste our lord  
the kyng and his Courtt excludeþ 3ou of alle maner  
answere Thomas oure lorde the kyng put vp on 3ou that 3e  
haue in his lande riden with banner displaied a 3ens his  
pes as attraytour And with that worde the gentil Erle  
Thomas with an heygh vois saide nay lordes for sothe and  
be seynt Thomas y was neuer treitour The Iustice seyde a  
3en þoo Thomas oure lorde the kyng putte vp on the that  
3e haue robbed his folc and mordred his peple as a þef  
Thomas þee kyng al so putteþ vp on 3ou that he discounfited  
3ou and 3our peple with his folc in his ougne reame  
wherfor 3e wente and fley to þe wode as an owtlawe And  
Thomas as attraytour 3e scholde be hongede be resoun But  
the kyng hath for 3eue 3ou that gewes<sup>l</sup> for the loue of  
Quene Issabelle And Thomas ressoun wolde al so that 3ee  
scholde be honged but the kyng hath for 3eue that Iues  
for cause 7 loue of 3our lynnage But Thomas for as moch  
as 3e wer take fleeynge and as an owtlawe The kyng wille  
that 3our hede be smeten of as 3e haue wel deserued Anon  
do him out of prece<sup>m</sup> and a noñe brynge hym to his Iugement  
The gentil kyn3t<sup>n</sup> whenne hade herde alle these wordes with  
an heye voys he cride sore wepyng and saide Allas seynt  
Thomas fair fader allas (fol. 71<sup>a</sup>) schal y be dede þus  
graunte me nov blisseful gode answer but al hit availed  
him no thing ffor þe cursede Gascoignes put him hedir and  
þeder 7 on of hem cryde with an heyh Voys O kyng Arthur<sup>a</sup>  
most dredefulle wel knouen es nou þi open treittrie in  
euel deth schalt þu die as þou hast wel deserued þo sette  
þei vp on his heed in Scorn an olde Chapelet<sup>b</sup> al to rent



in hys owne castell þat he had mad ther in many A worthy  
 fest bothe to Rych and to pour And thes wer his Iustys  
 syr huh þe Spenser the fadyr syr Aymer of valans Erle of  
 Penbroke Syr (fol. 108<sup>b</sup>) Edmond of woodstoke Erle of kente  
 syr Iohn of bretayne Erle of Rychmond And syr Robert of  
 Methorp Iustyce Sir Robērt hem Apposyd in thys maner  
 Thomas At fyrst our lord þe kyng in þis corte excusyd 3ou  
 of all maner Ansewer Thomas our lord þe kyng put oppoñ  
 3oue þat 3e haue Ryden in hys lond wyt banars vpred<sup>c</sup>  
 a3enst þe pesse as A traytour Thomas I was neuyr traytur  
 the Iustysse sayd a3ene our lord þe kyng put vppoñ 3ou  
 þat 3e haue Robbyd hys folke and mordyrd hys pepyll as a  
 thef Also þe kyng put vppoñ 3ou wyt his folke in his owne  
 Reme werfor 3e went to fle to the wood as A nowt lawe And  
 Thomas as A traytur 3e shull be hangyd be resoun but þe  
 kyng hathe for 3eff 3ou þat Iues for the love of þe quene  
 Isabell but Thomas for as much as 3e wer takyne slengas<sup>4d</sup>  
 an h-outlawe<sup>5</sup> þe kyng wold þat 3ur hed<sup>6</sup> be smetyñ of as  
 3e haue well deserwyd Anoone do hyme out of presse and  
 bryng hem to hys Iugemente The gentyll kny3th when he  
 hard thys wordys wyt an hihe voyse cryd sor wepyng and  
 sayd allas syr Thomas fadur allas shall I be ded as  
 graunte me now 3our blessyng god answer But all yt A wayll  
 hem nothyng for þe cursyd Gascoyns pullyd hym hedyr and  
 thether And on of them cryd wyt an hihe woys O kyng hartur  
 most Dredfull well knowyne now þyne hopyn traytur in  
 evyll deth shall dow dye as þou hast well deservyd And  
 þo þay sett vppoñ hys hed a Scorne anold chapelet all to  
 Rent

<sup>4</sup>No crossbar on initial long s shape. <sup>5</sup>Small stroke joins  
 h to outlawe. <sup>6</sup>-e- from -a- by corr.

and to toren that was nought worth an halfpeny And after  
 þei sette him vp on alene whitt Palfray ful vn semlich  
 and ek al bare with an olde bridel And with an horribel  
 noyse they drouh hym out of the Castell to ward his deth  
 and caste on him many balles of Snowe And as the  
 tormentoures lade him out of the Castell þo saide he  
 these pittous wordes and his handes helde vp towardes  
 heuene. Nowe the kyng of heuene 3eue vs mercy for the  
 erthly kyng hath vs forsake And afrere prechour wente  
 with him out of the Castell til that he come to the place  
 that he endede his lyfe in to whome he schorfe him al  
 his life<sup>c</sup> And the gentil Erle helde the frer wondir faste  
 be the clothis And saide feire fadir abide with vs til  
 that y ben deed for my flessch quakeþ for drede of deth  
 and soth for to say the gentil Erle sette him vp on his  
 knees and tourned him towarde the Eeast But aribaude that  
 me called hygoun of Mostone sette hand vp on the gentyl  
 erle and seide in dispite of him and saide sere traytour  
 torne the towarde the Scottes þin foule deth to vndirfonge  
 and tournede the erle towarde the North The noble erle  
 Thomas answerde þo with amyldde vois and saide nov fair  
 lordes y schal doñ al 3oure wille And with þat worde the  
 frere wente fro him ful sore weppynge and anon aribaude  
 went to him 7 smot of his heuede þe xj.kalend of Auerill  
 in the 3er of grace a þousand iij hundered and xxj Allas  
 þat euer swich agentil blode scholde be don to þe deth  
 with outen cause and resouñ And traytourslich was the  
 kyng counsailed whenne hee þourgh falce counsel of the  
 false Spensers suffrede sere Thomas his vncles soñe be  
 put to suche deth an so ben heueded a3ens al maner resouñ  
 and gret pitte hit was Al so þate (fol. 71<sup>a</sup>b) swech a  
 noble kyng scholde be disceyued and mys gouernede þourgh  
 counceill of the fals Spensers the which he mayntenede  
 þourgh loselrie<sup>d</sup> a 3ens his honour and eke profite for  
 afterwarde þere fil gret veniaunce in Engeland for



and torne þat was nott worthe and halpeny And Aftyr þay  
 Sett hym Appoñ A lene wyte palfray vnseme (fol. 109<sup>a</sup>)  
 lych all bar wyt Anold brydell and wyt Anorabyll woysse  
 þay drowfe hyme out of the castell toward his dethe and  
 kast hyme meny ballys of Snowe And as tormentours led  
 hyme owt of the castell and sayd this spetus wordys þis  
 hondys help to heuyne Now þe kyng of hewyne 3iff vs mercy  
 for the Erthly kyng hath vs forsake And a fayr<sup>a</sup> prechor  
 went wyt hym out of Castell tell he come to þe plasse  
 þer he shuld End his lyvfe and the gentyll Erle held  
 þe fryre b<sup>b</sup> passyng fast by the clothys and sayd fadyr  
 abyd wyt vs tell I be ded for my flesche quakys for  
 dredth<sup>l</sup> of thethe<sup>c</sup> And þe gentyl Erle set hem vppoñ  
 hys kneys and turnyd toward þe Est But A Rebaud þat meñ  
 callyd hygoun of Mostoun Set hond vppoñ the Gentyll Erle  
 and in dyspyte of hym said syr traytur turne the toward  
 þe Scottys thy foul dethe to vndyrfonge 7 turnyth the  
 Erle toward þe northe The nobyll Erle Thomas answard þo  
 wyt a myild voysse now gentyll syr shall do all 3our wyll  
 And wyt that word þe fryre went fro hym sor wepyng And a  
 nown þe Rebawd went to hyme and smott of his hed xj  
 kalenders of Aprell in þe 3er of grasse a M<sup>l</sup> CCC xj Allas  
 þat euyr such A gentyblod shuld be ded wyt out cause or  
 Resoun And traytorly was de kyngys concell when he þour of  
 the false Spenser suffryd syr Thomas his hongelys<sup>d</sup> sone  
 suld be but<sup>e</sup> to suche adethe and so be hedyd a3enst all  
 maner resoun And gret pety it was for such a nobyll kyng  
 shuld be dessaywyd and 7 mysguernyd purch consell of þe  
 false spenser the wych he mayntyne 3oir<sup>f</sup> lechery a 3enst  
 his honour and Profyt for Aftyrward þer fell grett vengans  
 in Englon (fol. 109<sup>b</sup>) for

---

Fol. 109 <sup>l</sup>-th stroked out; -d inserted above by (?) scribe.



enchesoun of the forseide Thomas dep Whenne thee gentil  
 Erle of his life was passed the priour & the monkes of  
 Poumfret gheten sire Thomas bodi of the kyng and they  
 beriede hit be fore þe heigh auter in the right side  
 That same day the gentil lorde was ded ther were honged  
 & drawe for the same querell at Poumfret Sir william  
 Tuchett Sire william fitz william sere wareyn of ysillee  
 sere henri the Bradbourne and sere william Cheyne barouns  
 alle and Iohn Page squyre And sone after at 3orke wer  
 drawe and honged Sire Roger of Clifforde sere Iohn  
 Mouñbray barouns and sere Gocelyn dauncell knyzt And at  
 Bristowe were drawen and hongede sere henre of wyningtoun  
 and sere henre of Mountfort Barouns And att Gloucestre  
 wer drawen and honged sir Iohn Giffarde and sere william  
 of Elymbrig barouns And at london wer honged and drawen  
 sere henre Tyeys braroun<sup>e</sup> And at wynchilse sere Thomas  
 Colepeper knyght & at wyndesore sere ffraunceis of  
 Baldesham Baroun and at Caunterburi was drawen and y  
 honged Sire Bartilmewe of Baldesmer and sere Bartilmev  
 of Asshebourneham barouns And at kerdif in walis ser  
 william fflemyng baroun

Howe kyng Edwarde wente in to Scottlonde with an hundred  
 þousande men of Armes and myzte nought Speede. Capitulo  
 Centesimo octuagesimo xix<sup>o</sup>

And whenne kyng Edwarde of Engelande hade brought the  
 floure of Chiualrye vnto the deth purgh councel of sere  
 hugh thee Spenser the fadir and sere hugh hys soñe hee  
 be come as wode as alioun<sup>f</sup> And what so euer the Spensers  
 wolde haue don hit was don and so welle the kyng louede  
 ham that þey myght done with him al thing that they wolde  
 wer fore the kyng 3af vnto sere hugh the Spenser the  
 fader the Erledom of wynchestre And to sere andrev of  
 herkala the Erledom of Cardoil in preiudice and in



enchesyn of the forsayd Thomas deeth when the Gentyll Erle of hys lyf was passyd the preour and the mongys of Pomfret gettyñ Thomas body of the kyng and buryd by for the hy hawtyr oñ the ryth Syd And þat same day þat þe gentyll lord was ded ther wer hongēñ and draw for the same quarell at pomfret Syr wylliam tochyd syr wylliam fitz syr waren of Isell syr harry of bradborn and syr wylliam chayne barons all and Iohn Page Squer And soñ aftyr weryñ drawyñ at yorke hongyd syr Roger of Clyfford and syr Iohn Mawbrays and syr Iohn Couselyne Dauyll kny3th At brestowe wer draw and hangid syr Iohn Gylford and syr wylliam of Elmysbryg barons And at london wer hongyd and drawe Syr harry Teys baroun And at kerdef in walys Syr wylliam flemynge baroun

Howe kyng Edward [w]ent<sup>2</sup> in to Scotlond wyt an C M<sup>1</sup> men of Armis A[nd]<sup>3</sup> myzte nat spede Capitulo Centesimo iiij<sup>xx</sup> xix

[A]nd<sup>4</sup> when kyng Edward of Englund had brouthe th flour of Chewalry onto deth þour consell of Syr huge þe Spenser þe fadyr and syr hugh þe sone he be come as wood as a lyone añ what so euyr the spend<sup>g</sup> wold have done hyt was done and so well þe kyng louyd hyme þat he myzt do wyt þe kyng wat hym lyst wherfor the kyng sawe<sup>h</sup> syr hug þe Spenser the fadyr þe Erlyldome of wenchestyr And to Syr handru of harcula þe Erldom of cardull in preucie<sup>i</sup> and

<sup>2</sup>Letter smudged, prob. w-. <sup>3</sup>Two letters smudged, prob. -nd. <sup>4</sup>Blue initial smudged.

harmyng of his croune And kyng Edward þo thourgh counsel  
 of the Spensers disheried alle hame that hade ben aʒens  
 hym (fol. 71<sup>b</sup>a) in eny querelle with Sir Thomas of  
 lancastre and meny other wer disheriede Al so for  
 enchesouñ þat the Sepensers<sup>g</sup> coueytted for to haue her  
 landes and so they hade al that þat they wolde desir with  
 wrong aʒens al resouñ Tho made the kyng Robert of Baldok  
 afals pylled Clerk Chaunceler of Engelande þourgh counceill  
 of the fforseid Spenseres and he was afals ribaude and a  
 couetous And so thei counceilde the kyng so moch that  
 thee kyng lette take to his ougne warde alle the goodes  
 of the lordes that wrongfully wer putt vn to deth in to  
 his ougne hande And as wel theye nomen the goodes that  
 wer with [.....]<sup>l</sup> in holy Cherch as the godes that wer  
 with owten and lette hem ben putte in to his tresorie at  
 londonē and lett ham calle his forfeitures And be herr  
 counsel the kyng wrought And for euermorre disheryede  
 alle hem that þoo goodes owden And þourgh here counsel  
 lett arrer attaliage of all the goodes of Engelande  
 Wherfor he was the richeste kyng that euer was in  
 Engelande After William Bastard of Normandye that  
 conquerrede Engelande And ʒiet þourgh counsel of ham him  
 semede that he hade nought y nough but made ʒiet euery  
 touñ in Engelande fynde aman of Armes vp on her ougne  
 costages for to goñ and werr vp on the Scottes that wer  
 his enymys wherfor the kyng wente in to Scottelonde with  
 an hundred þousand men of Armes att whittsonetyde In the  
 ʒere of our lord god M<sup>l</sup> iij hundred and xxij But the  
 Scottes wentte and hide ham in Mountaignes and in woddes  
 and tariede the englissh men fro day to day<sup>h</sup> þat the  
 kyng myghte ffor nomaner thing ham fynde in playn felde  
 Wherfor many englysshe men that fewe vittailles hadden  
 for hunger þer deiden wondir faste And sodeynly for

---

Fol. 71 <sup>l</sup>Word erased, poss. outen.



harmyng of hys Croune And kyng Edward tho purch<sup>j</sup> consell  
 of the spenser (fol. 110<sup>a</sup>) dyshertyd all tho þat had ben  
 Aʒenst hyme in anny quarell wyt Thomas of lancastyr and  
 meny othyr wer dyshertyd Also for enchosyne þat the  
 Spensers covetid to haue har londus And so þay had all  
 þat þay wold desyr wyt wrong or ells a ʒenst Resoun Tho  
 mad þe kyng Robērt of baldoke a false pyllyd clerke  
 chaunceler of Englund þour consell of Spensers and he  
 was a false Rybaud and a couytus And so þay counselyd the  
 kyng so much þat þe kyng his owne ward all the goodys of  
 the lordys þat wrongfully wer put to deth into his own  
 hand And as well nomen the goodys þat wer in the holy  
 chyrche as well as þe goodys þat wer wyt oute and let put  
 vp in his tresur at london And lett hem be callyd hys  
 forfeitis and by her consell þe kyng wrou3ton And for euyr  
 mor dyshertyd hem þat þe goodys ou3te And þur her consell  
 lett A Rere talage of all þe goodys of Englund wereffor  
 he was þe Rechyst kyng that euyr was in Englund aftyr  
 wylliam bastard of normandy þat conquerd Englund And 3it  
 purch consell of hem hym semy3t þat he had no3te I now3e  
 but mad euyry towne of Englund to fynd a mane of harmys vp  
 hon her hown cost for to goone to wer vppoñ the Scottys  
 þat wer hys enmysse wherfor þe kyng went in to Scotlond  
 wyt a C M<sup>l</sup> meñ of Armes at wytsoun tyde in the 3er of  
 our lord god A M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxij but the Scottys went And ded  
 hem in mowntayns and in wodys and tared the Englysmen  
 frome day to day þat þe kyng my3t in no maner thyngge hym  
 fyne<sup>a</sup> in playne feld wherfor meny Englysmen þat l<sup>b</sup> lakkyd  
 wetayll deid fast Sodenly for

hunger in goyng and in comyng And namelich þo that hade  
 ben aʒens Thomas of lancastre and hade robbede his men  
 vp on his landes<sup>i</sup> Whenne kyng Edward saw that vitailles  
 failled him he was þo wondir sore discounfitede ffor  
 enchesour Al so þat his men so deide and al so for he  
 myʒte nough spede of his enemyes Soo at the laste he  
 come aʒen (fol. 71<sup>b</sup>) in to Engeland And anon after come  
 Iames [...] <sup>2</sup> douglas and al so Thomas Randolff with an  
 houghe hoste in to Engelande in to Northumberlande and  
 with heme the Englissh men that werren dreuen owt of  
 Engelande and comen and robbed the cuntre and quelled  
 the peple and al so brent the Touñ that was called  
 Northallertoun ande many other tounes vn to ʒorke And  
 when the kyng herde this tyding he lett sompne all the  
 contrey and alle maner men that myʒt trauaille and so  
 the englissh men mett the Scottes att þe Abbay of  
 Beiglande the xv day after Michelmesse day in the same  
 ʒerre aboue saide And the engelishsh men wer ther  
 discounfited And at þat Scounfiture was take sere Iohn  
 of Brittaige Erle of Richemounde that helde the countre  
 And the Erledome of lancastre And after he paide an  
 houghe raunsome and was lett goñe And after that he wente  
 in to ffraunce and come neuer after aʒen.

Howe sere Andreu of A<sup>j</sup> harcla was taken and putt [in]<sup>3</sup>  
 to the deth that was Erle of Cardoill Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup>

And at þat tyme sere Andrev of hekela that newe was made  
 Erle of Cardoille for cause that he hade taken the goode  
 erle Thomas of lancastre he hade ordeigned þourgh þe  
 kynges comaundement of Engelande for to brynge him all  
 the pouer that he myʒte for too helpe him aʒens the  
 Scottes atte Abbay of Beigland And whanne the false

---

<sup>2</sup>Erasure. <sup>3</sup>Blotted, prob. as mark of deletion.



hungyr in going (fol. 110<sup>b</sup>) and comynge and namly to do  
 þat had bene aʒens thomas of lancastyr and Robed hys meñ  
 vppon his londys when kyng Edward sawe þat hym lackyd  
 wetayll he was sor dyscomfyt 7 for enche<sup>c</sup> also þat hes  
 meñ deid Also for he myʒt not sped of his Enmys So at þe  
 last he come Aʒene in to Englon And a none cam Ihamys  
 duclas 7 Thomas Randolfe wyt An huge host in to Englon  
 into North hmbrelond and wyt hym þe Englysmen þat wer  
 drewyn out of Englon and com and Robbyd the Contre And  
 kyllyd þe pepyll And brent þe toune þat was callyd  
 Nortallertoun and meny opyr townys of to<sup>1</sup> 3ork And when  
 þe kyng hard thys tydingys he lett somen<sup>2</sup> all meñ þat  
 myʒt trawayll And So þe Englysmen mett wyt þe Scottys at  
 abbay of bolene þe xv day aftyr mykylmeʒ in the same ʒer  
 a bowf sayd And the Englysmen wer ther discomffyt And at  
 þat Scomfitur was takyn Syr Iohn of bretayne Erle of  
 Rychmond þat held þe contre of the Erldome of lancastyr  
 and aftyr he payd an hug Raunsoun<sup>3</sup> and was lett goon And  
 aftyr þat he went in to fraunce and come neuyr aftyr A  
 ʒene

Howe syr Andrewe of Ercula was taken And put to [.....]<sup>4</sup>  
 was Erle of Cardoill Capitulo

[A]nd<sup>5</sup> at þe same tyme syr handrw of hercula þat new was  
 mad Erle of Cardoyll for cause he had takyne the good  
 Erle Thomas of lancastyr he had hordyny thorw the kyng  
 comandemente of (fol. 111<sup>a</sup>) Englon for to bryng hym all  
 the pour þat he myʒt for to help hem Aʒenst þe scottys  
 att þe abbay of Beiglond

---

Fol. 110 <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe. <sup>2</sup>MS. has som  
<sup>3</sup>MS. has 3 minims for -un-. <sup>4</sup>Smudged. <sup>5</sup>Blue initial  
 smudged.

traitour hade gadered al the peple that he my3t And scholde  
 haue come to the kyng vn to the Abbay of Beglande þe false  
 traytour lade ham be anothir cuntre þour3 copeland and  
 þourgh the Erledome of lancastre and went þourgh out the  
 cuntre and robbede and quelled folc all that he myght  
 And forþere mor the false traytour hade taken a grett  
 somme of golde and syluer of Sir Iames Douglas for to  
 be a 3ens the kyng of Engeland and to be [...] <sup>4</sup> holdyng  
 and helpyng with the Scottes þour3 whos tresoun the kyng  
 of Engeland was discounfited at Beighlande ere that he  
 come thether Wherefore the kyng was to him ward wondir  
 wrooth And lett priuely enquire be þe cuntre aboute howe  
 that hit was And soo men enquerrede and aspyede so att  
 the laste þat the trewth was ffounde And sought and (fol.  
 72<sup>a</sup>) he attaynt and taken as a fals treytour as the  
 noble Erle Thomas of lancastre him tolde ere that he wer  
 done to the dep at his takyng at Burbrige and to hym  
 saide that or that 3ere wer don he scholde be take and  
 holde attraytour and so hit was as the holy man saide  
 Wherefore the kyng sente priuylich to Sire Antonye of  
 lucye a kny3t of thee cuntre of Cardoille that he scholde  
 take sere Andrev of herkala and putt him vn to deyth<sup>1</sup> And  
 to brynge this thing vn to the ende the kyng sent his  
 comyssiouñ so that the same Andrev was take at kardoill  
 and lade vn to the barr in maner of An Erle worthily  
 arraiede with a swerde gerte aboute him and hosed and  
 spored Tho spak Sire Antony in this maner Sire Andrev  
 quop he the kyng putep vp on the that fore as moch as 3e  
 hauen ben orpede<sup>a</sup> in 3oure dedis he [dedes be]<sup>2</sup> dede vn  
 to 3ou mochil honour And made 3ou Erle of Cardoill And  
 þou as atreitour vn to þi lorde the kyng and laddest his

<sup>4</sup>Erasure, poss. be. Fol. 72 <sup>1</sup>-yth by corr. over erasure.  
<sup>2</sup>Erased.



þe false traytur led hym by Anothyr contre þurch copelond  
 and þur þe Erldome of lancastyr and went thorow þe court<sup>a</sup>  
 and Robbyd and kyllyd all þat þay mythe and ferdermour þe  
 false traytur had take a gret some of gold 7 sylvyr of syr  
 Iames douglas for to be aʒenst þe kyng of Englonð and all  
 forto be helpyng and holdyng wyt þe Scottys þurch whos  
 tresoun the kyng of Englonð was scomfid at bethand or that  
 he cam þipir wher for the kyng was toward hyme wondyr  
 wrothe and let preuely enquer in the contre Abowte how  
 hyt was and some men enqueryd and espied And so at last  
 þe trewth was knowyne And he attente takyn as a false  
 traytur As þe nobyll Thomas of-lancastyr<sup>1</sup> Erle of  
 lancastyr hym told or that he was done to dethe at hys  
 takyng at burbrig and to hem sayd or that þer<sup>b</sup> wer done  
 he shuld be take and hold as a traytor And so hit was as  
 þe holy man sayd wherfor þe kyng Sent preuely to Syr  
 Andrw of lucy a knyʒt of the contre of Cardoyll þat he  
 shuld tak syr Andrewe of horucla and put hem to þe deth  
 and to bryng this this tynge to þe end the kyng sent his  
 commyssions So þat þe same Andrew was takyne att Cardoill  
 and led vn to þe bar in maner of A nerle worthely arayd  
 and a Swerd gret<sup>c</sup> About hyme and hosyd and sporryd and  
 þo spake syr Anntony in this maner Syr Andrew quod he the  
 kyng put Apoñ ʒou þat for asmuch as ʒe be horpyd in your  
 dedys he ded to ʒou much honor 7<sup>2</sup> (fol. 111<sup>b</sup>) 7<sup>d</sup> mad ʒou  
 Erle of Cardoill And þow as a traytur to thy lord þe kyng  
 leddest hys

---

Fol. 111 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>Poss. stroked out.

peple out of this countre that scholde<sup>3</sup> haue holpen him  
 at the bataille of Begeilande and pou ladest hem a way  
 be the countre of Copelande ⁊ pourgh the Erledome of  
 lancastrē wherforore<sup>b</sup> oure lorde the kyng was scounfitede  
 per by<sup>4</sup> the Scottes purgh thi tresoun ⁊ falsenesse And if  
 pou hadest comen be tymes ha<sup>c</sup> hade had thee maistrie And  
 al that tresoun pou dedest for þe grette somme of gold ⁊  
 siluer that þu vndirfonged of Iames douglas a scott the  
 kynges enymye And oure lorde the kynges will es that by<sup>4</sup>  
 the ordore of kny3thode be the which pou vndyr fonged al  
 thin honour and worschipe vp on þi body been al brought  
 vn to nouht And thin astat vndon that other kny3tes of  
 lower degre mowe after the be warre the which lorde hap  
 the auaunced hougely in diuerse countres of Engelande And  
 that alle mowe take ensauple be the /<sup>d</sup> here lorde  
 afterwarde treuly for to serue Tho comaunded he aknaue  
 anon to hewe of his sporis ooff<sup>5</sup> his heles And after he  
 lette breke the swerde ouer his heuedde þe which the kyng  
 him 3aff to kepe and defende (fol. 72<sup>a</sup>b) his land ther  
 with whenne he hade y made him Erle of Cardole And after  
 he lett him vncloth of his furrede Tabbard and of his  
 hod and of his ffurred Coottes and of his gherdels and  
 whenne this was done Sire Antonye saide vn to him Andreu  
 quop he now<sup>6</sup> art pou no kny3t but a knaue And for thi  
 tresoun thee kyng wille that pou ben hongen and drawen  
 and thi heuede smetten of And thi bowelles taken out of  
 thi body And thi bowelles brent be fore the and thi bodi  
 quartered and þi heuede smeten of and sent vn to london  
 and there hit schal stonde vp on londoun Brygge And thi  
 foure quarteres schullen be sent to foure touñes of  
 Engelande that alle oper mowe be war and chastesed be þe

<sup>3</sup>MS. shol de, separated by small hole in vellum with subsequent writing round it. <sup>4</sup>By corr., prob. over erasure.  
<sup>5</sup>By corr. over erasure. <sup>6</sup>-w from -u by corr.



pepyll of hys Cuntre þat shuld haue holpe hyme att batayll  
 of bremland and þow haddys hyme Away by the contre of  
 Copland 7 þurch þe Erldome of lancastyr wher for our lord  
 þe kyng wer dyscomfyd þer of the Scottys þur þe tresoun  
 and falsnes And 3if þou haddest come be tymys he had ad  
 þe Maystry And all þe tresoun 7 falsnes for the Som<sup>3</sup> of  
 gold and sylvyr And aftyr he let hym vnclodyth of his  
 furrid Tabent and of hys hod and of hys furryd cotys and  
 of gyrdellys And when this was done syr Antony said vnto  
 hym Andrew quod he nowe arthowe no kny3te but a knave And  
 for tresoun þe kyng wolle þat þow be hangid and drawe  
 and thyne hed by Smyttyñ off and thy bowellys takyne oute  
 of thy body beforñ the and thy bod quartard 7 þin hed  
 Smettyne of 7 sent on to london 7 ther to stond on londyn  
 brygg And the iiij quarters sall be sent to iiij townys  
 of Englond and opyr mow be war of chastete by the

---

<sup>3</sup>au/a abbreviation-mark used.

And as Antony saide so hit was doñ al maner thing in the laste day of October In the 3er of grace a þousand iij hundred and xxij 3er And the sonne þo tournede in to blode as the peple hit sav And that durred fro the morne til hit was xj of the cloke of the day.

Of the myracles that god wrought for Seynt Thomas loue of lancastre wherfor the kyng lette close the Cherch dorres of Poumfret of the Priorie for no man scholde come þerinne to the body for to offeren. Capitulo C<sup>o</sup>C<sup>o</sup> Primo et c'

And sone afterward that the goode Erle Thomas of lancastre was martered a Preest that longe tyme hade been blynde dremede in his slepyng that he scholde goon vn to the hylle<sup>7</sup> ther that the good Erle Thomas of lancastre was doñ to the deth and he scholde haue his sight a3en And so he dremede iij ny3tes sewyng And the prest þo lett lede him to the same hylle<sup>7</sup> And whenne he come to that place that he was martered on deuoutlich he made his preiers and praide god and to Seynt Thomas that hee myght<sup>5</sup> haue his sight a3en And as he was in his praieres he laide his right hand vp on the same plase there that the good man was martered and adrope of drie blood 7 smal sande cleuede on his hande And þerewith (fol. 72<sup>b</sup>a) he strykede his eyen and anon þourgh the my3t of god and of seynt Thomas of lancastre he hade his sight a3en and thanked þo al my3ti god and seynt Thomas And whenne this myracle was kude<sup>e</sup> amonge men the peple come þeþer in eueri side and knellede and made her prayers at his tounge that es in the priorie of poumfret and praide that holi marter of socour and of helpe and god herde here praiers Al so ther was a 3onge schilde drenched in a welle in þe

---

<sup>7</sup>y by corr. over erasure or over original letter in blacker ink.



And as hantony sayd so hit was done all maner thyng in the last day of Octobur in the 3er of grace

Of þe miraculis þat god wrouzte for seynt Thomas of lancastre where for þe chirch dorris of [.....]<sup>4</sup> were closid by þe kyngis commande

[A]nd<sup>5</sup> sone aftyr þat the good Thomas of lancastyr was martryd a preste þat long tyme had be blynd dremyd in his slepyng þat he shuld go to þe hyll þer as the good Erle Thomas of lancastyr was (fol. 112<sup>a</sup>) done to deth And he shuld haue hys syth a3ene and so he dremyth iij ny3tys sewynge and þe prest led hyme to þe Same hell and he come to the plase þer as he was Martred and dewouly mad hys preers and prayd to god and to Sent Thomas þat he most haue hys sy3te a3ene And as he was in his prayers he layd his Ry3t hond oppoñ the Same plasse þat þe goodmañ was martyrd And A drop of dry blod 7 small Sand clayed<sup>a</sup> in his honde 7 therwyt he strokyd hys I3eñ And a none purch þe my3th of god 7 seynte Thomas of lancastyr he had his si3t a3ene And þo thankyd he all my3ty god 7 syr Thomas And when þis mariakyll was knowyne among meny pepyll com thedyr vn euyry Syd and knelys 7 make prayers to his tombe and prayd þe holy Martre of Socour 7 helpe And god herd her prayour And þer was þe 3ong chyld drenchyd in A well in the

---

<sup>4</sup>Smudged. <sup>5</sup>Blue initial smudged.

toune of Pounfret and was dede iij dayes 7 iij ny3tes and  
 men comen and laide the ded childe vp on seynt Thomas  
 toumbe the holi marter and the childe aros there from  
 deth to liff as many aman hit sav And al so moch peple  
 were out of her mynde and hath sent hem her mynde a 3en  
 pour3 vertu of that holi marter And al so god hath 3euen  
perto creples here goynge and to crokede here handes and  
 here feett and to Blynde al so her sight And to many sike  
 folke here heele that had diuerse3 maladi3 for the loue  
 of his goode marter Al so there was a riche man in  
 Conudom<sup>f</sup> in Gascoigne and swech amalady he hade þat all  
 his rizte side rottede and fille a way fram hym and men  
 myghte se his lyuere And also his herte and so he stank  
 that vnneþ meñ my3te come neyh him Where fore his frendes  
 were for him wondir sori But at thee laste as god wolde  
 thei praide to seynt Thomas of lancastre that he wolde  
praye to almy3ti god for that prisoun<sup>g</sup> And behight to go  
 to Pounfret for to do here pilgrimage And the goode man  
 sone after slepede ful soffte and dreemed that the  
 marter seynt Thomas come to him and annoynted ouer al  
 his sike body And þer with the goode man awoke And was  
 al hoole And his flessch was restored a 3een þat be fore  
 was rotted and falle a way ffor thee which myracle the  
 goode man and his frendes thonked god and seynt Thomas  
 euermor after And this good man come in to Engeland and  
 nome with him foure felowes and come to poumfret vn to  
 that holy marter And (fol. 72<sup>b</sup>) deden here pilgrimage  
 but the good man that was sike come theþer al naked saff  
 his brech<sup>h</sup> And wenne they hade done þei tournede home  
 a3en in to here countre and tolde of the myracle wher so  
 þei come And al so ij men haue been helede ther of the  
 morimale<sup>i</sup> pourgh help of that holy marter pou3 that euel  
 be holde incurable Whenne the Spensers herde that god  
 dede swech myracles ffor his holy marter and thei wolde  
 nought beleue hit in no maner wisse but saide openlich



towne of Pomfret and was ded And þe chyld was layd vppon  
 Sent Thomas thombe and hyt A Roose frome deth to lyve as  
 meñ hit Sawe And also much pepyll was out of her myned  
 And good hath sent hem her myne a3ene þour vertu of þe  
 holy martyr And ther god haue 3ewyn ther to reprevis<sup>b</sup>  
 her 3ong going and to Crokyd her hondus and to blynde her  
 sizte And to meny Seke folkys her hell Also þer was a  
 ryche mañ in So<sup>l</sup> Conodoun in Gascoyne and such a malady  
 þat all his Rythe syd rotyth and fell Away from heme and  
 meñ my3t Se hys lyuyr and his harte And so he stanke þat  
 vnnethe meñ my3t come to hyme wher for hys frendys wer  
 for heme wondyr Sorry But at þe last as god wold þay  
 praydt to god 7 to Sent Thomas of (fol. 112<sup>b</sup>) lancastyr  
 to pray to all my3ty god for that persone and he be hyzte  
 to gone to Pomfret to do her pylgremag And þe goone<sup>c</sup> mañ  
 Sone aftyr Slepte full fast and dremy3t of the Martyr  
 Sent Thomas come vnto hym and anont ouyr all hys body And  
 þer wyt þe good mañ Awoke and was hall holle on hys flesch  
 restoryd a3ene þat be for was rottyth and fall Away for  
 wyche marakyll the good mañ come in to Englonde and nome  
 wyt heme f<sup>d</sup> iiij good meñ and com to Pomfret vnto þat  
 holy Martyr 7 dyd her Pylgremage but þe good mañ was seke  
 com thethir all nakyd save hys breche / And when thay had  
 done thay turnyd her<sup>l</sup> home A3ene to her contre and told  
 of the Marrakyll wer so euyr thay come When the spenser  
 herd þat god ded Such myrakylls for hys holy marter And  
 þay wold not be lewyd in nomaner kynde but sayd oponly

that hit was grett herisye suech vertue of hym to be leue  
 And whenne sere hugh the Spenser the sone sav all this  
 doynge anon he sente his messenger fram Poumfret wher<sup>8</sup>  
 that he duelled þo to kyng Edwardē þat tho was att Graue  
 att Skiptoune for cause that the kyng scholde vndo that  
 Pilgrimage 7 as the rebaude that was messenger wente to  
 ward the kyng for to do his message he come be the hylle<sup>9</sup>  
 that the goode man was doñ vn to the deth and in the same  
 place he made hijs ordure And whenne he hade doñe he went  
 to warde the kyng 7 astronge flixe<sup>j</sup> him come vp on ere he  
 come to yorke And schet alle his bowelis at his fundement  
 And whenne sere hugh the Spenser herde this tyding som  
 del he was adred And þought to vn do thee pilgrimage if  
 he my3te be any maner weey And to the kyng he wente and  
 seide That þei scholde bee in grett Sclaunder<sup>k</sup> þour3 out  
 alle cristendome for the deth of Thomas of lancastre þat  
 if he suffrede the peple doñ her pilgrimage at Poumfret  
 And so he councelled the kyng þat he comaunded to close  
 the Chirch dores of Poumfret in the which Chirch the holy  
 marter seynt Thomas was entered And thus thei deden a3ens  
 all ffraunchic3 of holi cherch So that foure 3er after  
 myght no pilgrime come to the holy body and for enchesoun  
 that the monkis soffred men come and honoure the holy bodi  
 of seynt Thomas thee martir þourgh counsel of Sire hugh  
 the Spenser the soñe And þour3 councele Al so of maystere  
 Robert of Baldoke the falce Piled Clerk þat was the kynges  
 Chaunceler the kyng consentede that þei scholde be sett  
 to her wages<sup>l</sup> And leet make wardeynges ouer here ougne  
 goode longe tyme (fol. 73<sup>a</sup>) And þourgh comaundement of  
 the forseyd sere hugh the Spenser xiiij Gascoignes wel  
 armed kepte the hylle<sup>l</sup> ther that the goode man Seynt  
 Thomas was doñ vn to his deth so that no pilgrim myght

<sup>8</sup>By corr. above. <sup>9</sup>y by corr. over erasure. Fol. 73  
<sup>l</sup>y by corr. over erasure.



hit was grett eresy such vertu of hym to be lewfe And  
 when syr Spenser þe sone the-s-<sup>1</sup> saw all thys Doyng  
 Anone he sent his message from Pomfret þer he dwellyth  
 to kyng Edward þat tho was grauen at Siptoun for cawse  
 the kyng shuld do the Pylgremage And as þe Rebawd that  
 was messeger me<sup>1</sup> wen toward the kyng to do hys message  
 he com by the hyll þat þe good man toke hys dethe and in  
 the sam Plasse he mad hyr<sup>e</sup> hordur And whe he had don A  
 stronke flyx come hym Appoñ hym ore he come to 3orke and  
 schet all hys bouellys at hys fondemente And whe syr huh  
 hard<sup>1</sup> Spense hard of thys tydyngys som dell he was Agast  
 7 þou3to to vndo the pylgremag 3if he my3t be ony maner  
 way And to the kyng whent þat þay shuld be in gret  
 sclandur (fol. 113<sup>a</sup>) þourhoue all Crystyndome for the  
 deth of Sent Thomas of lancastyr 3if he Suffer the pepyll  
 to do her Pelgremage at pounfrett And so he conselyd  
 the kyng that he Comandyt<sup>1</sup> to closce the chyrche dorrys  
 of Pomfret in the wych chirch þe holy marter Sent Thomas  
 was enterid 7 þus they dedyne a3enst all þe fraunches of  
 holy chyrche so that iiij 3er aftyr my3t no pylgreme to  
 þat holy body And for enchosyne þat þe monkys suffrid men  
 to honoure þat holy body þurch Counsell of Syr huh þe  
 Spenser the sone 7 þurch counsell also of Mastyr Robart  
 baldoke a false Pyllyd clerke þe kyngis Chamburlayne the  
 kyng consent þat þay shull be sett to her wagys and lett  
 make wardons of her owne good long tyme And þurch  
 comandement of the forsayd syr hug þe spenser xiiij  
 Gascoynes well Armyd kep the hyll þat þe goodmañ Sent  
 Thomas was done to his dethe And so no pylgrem my3th

come be that way fful wel wende to haue be nomen cristus  
 my3t and his pouer And þe grette los of myracles that he  
 schewde for his marter Thomas þour3 out al cristendome  
 And þat same tyme the kyng made Robert of Baldok apilled  
 clerke and afals þour3 praier of Sire hugh the Spenser  
 the sone chaunceler of Engelande 7 in the same tyme was  
 the Castell of Wallyng forde holden a3en the kyng þour3  
 the pr̄isoun̄ers that were withinne the Castell ffor seynt  
 Thomas quarelles of lancastre Werfore the peple of the  
 countr̄e come and toke the Castel vp on þe forseide  
 pr̄isoneres Wherfore sere Iohn of Golentoun knyght and  
 sere Emund of the Beche parsoun and a squier that men  
 called Roger of waltone were taken and sent to the kyng  
 to Punfret And there thei were doñ in pr̄isoun And the  
 fader Roger was sent vn to yorke and there was drawe 7  
 y hongede And anon after Sire Roger Mortemer of wygesmore  
 brake out of the tour of london And in this maner Sire  
 Roger the forsaide herde that he scholde be drawen and  
 honged att london in the morwe after seint laurence day  
 On the day be ffore he helde afeir feste in the tour of  
 london And þo was sere Steven segraue constable of london  
 and many grette men with him And whenne thei scholde  
 sopene the forseide Stephen sent for al the officers of  
 the tour and thei come and soped with him And whenne thei  
 scholde take here leue of him asquier that men callede  
 Stephene that was ful priue with the forseid Roger þourgh  
 here councel 3aff hem alle suech adrinke that ham left  
 alle to Sleepe ij daies and ij nyghtes and in the mene  
 tyme he aschapede away be water that es to sayen be the  
 temese And went ouer the see and helde him in<sup>2</sup> ffraunce  
 wherfor the kyng was sore annoyed And þoo putte þe same  
 Stephene out of his constabelerie 7c'

---

<sup>2</sup>By corr. above.



come by that way ffull well went he to haue be nome  
 Crystys my3te 7 his pouer 7 the gret les of Myracles þat  
 he Schewyd for hys marty<sup>r</sup> Sent Thomas And thatt same<sup>2</sup>  
 tyme mad þe kyng Same Pyld clerke Chanceler of Englonð  
 þour prayur of þe sayd Spenser And in the same tyme was  
 þe castell of walford hold for the kyng þurch Presoner  
 þat wer þer in<sup>3</sup> syr Iohn of Golyntoun kny3t 7 syr Edmond  
 of Bech Parsoun and a Squier that meñ callyd Roger of  
 waltoun wer takyne And sent to the kyng to Pomfret 7 þer  
 sett in presoun And þe forsayd Roger was sent to yorke 7  
 draw and hongid And Anone aftyr syr Roger Mortemer of  
 wigmor brake out of his tour of london̄ for he herd he  
 shuld be drawe and hongid at london̄ oñ the morow aftyr  
 Sente laurens day And on the day (fol. 113<sup>b</sup>) be for he  
 held a fest in þe tour of london̄ And þo was syr Stevy  
 Segreñ constabyll of london̄ and meny grett mene wyt hym  
 And when þay shul supe the forsayd stewyne send for all  
 þe offecers of london̄ and þay come and soppyd wyt hyme  
 And when they shull take her leff of hyme A Squyer þat  
 men call callyd þat was full preuy wyt þe forsayd Roger  
 þur hys Consell gaff hyme such a drynke þat þe lest of  
 hem hall Slepte ij dayes and ij ny3tys And in the meñ  
 whyle he schapyd a way by watyr by þe Stremes<sup>a</sup> and went  
 ouyr the See and held hym in fraunce wher for the kyng  
 was sor amewyd and put owt þe Sam stewyne out of his  
 Counstabelry

<sup>2</sup>MS. has 2 minims for -m-. <sup>3</sup>MS. has 4 minims; last  
 minim stroked out.

Hou the quen Isabelle wente in to ffraunce for (fol. 73<sup>a</sup>b)  
 treeten<sup>a</sup> of pees be tuene here lorde the kyng of Engeland  
 and the kyng of ffraunce here brothir Capitulo Centesimo  
 Centesimo Secundo 7c'

The kyng wente vn to london And pere p<sup>o</sup>urgh councel of  
 Sire hugh Spenser the fader and the so<sup>n</sup>e and of maister  
 Robert of Baldok a fals piled Clerk his Chaunceler leete  
 sese p<sup>o</sup> alle the quenes landes in to his ougne hande And  
 al so alle the landes that was sere Edwardes his so<sup>n</sup>es  
 and wer tho putt to her wages<sup>b</sup> azens al maner resou<sup>n</sup> and  
 that was p<sup>o</sup>urgh falssenesse of the Spensers And whenne  
 the kyng of ffraunce that was quene Issabelles brothir  
 herde of this falsenesse he was sore annoyede azens the  
 kyng of Engelande and his falsse counseilours wherfore  
 he sente a letter vn to kyng Edward vndir his seal that  
 he scholde come in to ffraunce att accerteyn day for to  
 do<sup>n</sup> his homage And pere to he sompnede him and elles he  
 scholde lese al Gascoigne And so hit was ordeigned in  
 Engelande p<sup>o</sup>ur3 the kyng and his counceile that quene  
 Isabelle scholde wende in to ffraunce for to trette the  
 pees be twen here lorde and here brodir And that Olyuer  
 of yngham scholde wende in to Gascoigne and haue with  
 him vij p<sup>o</sup>usand men and mo of Armes to ben Seneschal and  
 wardein of Gascoigne And so hit was ordeigned that quen  
 Issabelle p<sup>o</sup> wente ouer the See and come in to ffraunce  
 And with here wente sere aymer of Valence erle of Penbrok  
 that was ther morderede sodenly in ap<sup>ri</sup>ue sege but that  
 was p<sup>o</sup>urgh goddes veniaunce for he was on of the Iustice3  
 that consentede to Seint Thomas dep of lancastre and  
 wolde neuer afterward repente him of that wikkede dede  
 And at pat tyme sere Oliuer of Ingeham wente ouer pe see  
 in to Gascoigne and dede moch harme to the kyng of  
 ffraunce And p<sup>o</sup> he gate azen pat kyng Edwarde hade lost  
 and moch more pere to



Howe Quene Isabell went in to ffraunce for to trete of pees be twene here lorde þe kyng 7 þe kyng of ffraunce here brothir Capitulo CC.ij.

The kyng whento london and þer purch consell of syr huge þe Spenser þe fadyr 7 syr huh þe son and mastyr Robert baldoke a falss pyllyd cherke let lesse<sup>b</sup> all þe quenys londys into hys owne honde 7 also all þe londys þat wer Syr Edwardys his sone And wher put her wagys aʒens all maner of Resone And wan þe<sup>4</sup> kyng of fraunce þat was quene Esabellys brothyr herd of this falsnes he was sor Amewyd aʒenst þe kyng of Englund and hys false conselourys wher for he Sent A lettyr vnto kyng Edward þat he shuld come into fraunce a serteyn day for to doo hys homage And ther to he somed<sup>c</sup> hyme And ells he shulld lesse all gascoyne And so hit was hordynid (fol. 114<sup>a</sup>) in Englund and quene Isabell shuld goo in to fraunce for to tret of pesse wyt her broþyr And þat olyuer of Ingham suld wend in to Gascoyne and haue wyt heme viij men of harmes to be senscall and wardon of Gascoyne 7 when Quene Isabell went in to fraunce wyt her went syr Aymer of valance Erle of Penbroke þat was þer mordryd preuyly in a preuy sege but þat was goodys for he was oon of the Iustycs þat Consentyd to Sent Thomas dethe of lancastyr 7 wold neuyr aftyr ward Repente hym of þat wykyd ded And at þat tyme syr Olyver of yngham went onto Gascoyn and did much harme to þe kyng of fraunce And gat aʒen þat kyng Edward had lorst<sup>a</sup> and much mor to

---

<sup>4</sup> Inserted above by scribe.

Hov kyng Edwarde sente sere Edward his sone the heldeste that he hade in to ffraunce Capitulo Centesimo Centesimo Tercio 7c'

(fol. 73<sup>b</sup>a) The quene Isabelle nade but a quarter of a 3er in ffraunce dwelled that Sir Edward his eldest sone ne axed leue for to wende in to ffraunce to speke with his modir Issabelle the quene And the kyng his fader graunted him with goode Wylle And saide to him goo my fair soñ in goddes blessynge and in myne and speke with hyr<sup>3</sup> and thenke to come a3en as hastely as þou myght and he come ouer the See and come ouer the See and come in to ffraunce And the kyng of ffraunce his vncle vndirfongede him with mochil honour And saide vn to him fayr soñ 3ee ben welcome And for cause that 3our fader come nouht for to do his homage for the duchie of Ghiene as his auncetere<sup>3</sup> were woned for to done y 3eue 3ou that lordchipe to holde hit of me in heritage As alle 3oure auncestre<sup>3</sup> deden be fore 3ov Wherfore he was called duk of Gyhene

Hov the kyng Exilede Quene Isabelle And Edward his eldest sone Capitulo C C<sup>o</sup> quarto

Whenne kyng Edwarde of Engelande herde telle hou the kyng of fraunce hade geue the duchie of Ghiene vnto sere Edwarde his sone with outen consent and the wille of hime and that his sone hade vndir fongede the duchie he be come wondir wroþ and sente to his sone be his letter And to his wiff al so that thei scholde come a3en in to Engelande with all the haste that thei my3te The quene Isabelle and sere Edwarde her soñe were wondir sore adrade of the kynges manace and of his wrath and

---

<sup>3</sup>By corr. over erasure.



Howe kyng Edward sente his eldest sone in to ffraunce  
 Capitulo CC

The Quene Isabell ne had not be a quarter of A 3er in  
 fraunce þat syr Edward his heldest soñ ne axid leve for  
 to wend in to fraunce for to spek wyt hys mothyr Isabell  
 Quene And þe kyng his fadyr grantyd heme wyt good wyll  
 And sayd goo my fayr sone in godys blessyng and myne And  
 þur<sup>1</sup> thynke to com A3ene assoñ as 3e may And he went ouyr  
 the see and come in to fraunce And the kyng of fraunce  
 his hukkyll vncle<sup>b</sup> vndyrfong hem wyt mich honor And sayd  
 fayr sone 3e bene welcome And for Cause þat 3our fadyr  
 come note for to do hys homag for the duches of Gyone  
 and his Auncetris wer wont for to doo I Gyff 3ou þe  
 lordschipe to hold hit of<sup>2</sup> me in Erytage of all 3our  
 Auncetris diden by for 3owe (fol. 114<sup>b</sup>) Wer for he was  
 callyd duke of Gyone

Howe þe kyng exilid Isabell his Quene And Edward his  
 eldest sone Capitulo CC iiij

When the kyng of Englund hert tell [tell]<sup>3</sup> howe the kyng  
 of france had 3ewyne de duche of Gyone vn to syr Edward  
 hys sone wyt out consent A wyll of hyme and þat his sone  
 hath vndyrfong de dukherry he be come wondyr wroth and  
 send to hys sone by hys lettyr And to hys wyff Also and  
 thay shuld come a3ene in to Englonde in all þe haste  
 þay my3te The quene Isabell and syr Edward her Sone wer  
 sor Adred of þe Spensers and of the kyngys malice

---

Fol. 114 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>By scribe above; caret in text.  
<sup>3</sup>Erased.

principaly of the falsnesse of the Spensers both of the fadir And<sup>3</sup> of the soñe and at his comaundement thei wolde nought come Werfore the kyng Edward was ful sore annoyede and let make a crie att london that if quene Isabelle and Edward here sone come nought in to Engelande that bei scholde be holde as enemyes both to the Reame and to the croune And for that thei wolde not come in to Engelande but both wer exiled the modir and the sone Whenne quen Isabelle herde this tyding scho was sore agast to ben schent<sup>c</sup> pough the false conyectyng of the Spenseres And wente with the knyghtes pat (fol. 73<sup>b</sup>) were exilede out of Engelande for seynt Thomas cause of lancastre that es to seyn Sire Roger Mortemer of wyngesmore<sup>d</sup> sere William Trussel ser Iohn of [Cry]mewelle<sup>4e</sup> and many othir goode knyghtes wherfor bei nome her counceile and ordeignede amonges heme for to make amariage be twen the Duke of Ghyene the kynges sone of Engelande and the Erles doughter of henoude that was anobile knyght of name and a doughty in his tyme And if that thing myghte be brought aboute and stande they trowede with the helpe of god to recouerr his heritage in Engelande wher of they wer put away pouzh false conyectyng of the Spenseres

How kyng Edward pough counceile of the Spenseres sente to the duzeperes of ffraunce that bei scholde helpe that the quen Isabelle and her sone ser Edward wer exilede out of fraunce Capitulo C<sup>o</sup>C<sup>o</sup> v<sup>to</sup>

Whene kyng Edward and the Spensers herde how quen Isabelle and sere Edward her soñe hade alliede heme to the Erle of hanaude and to ham that wer exilede ought of Engelande for enchesoun of Seynt Thomas of lancastre they wer sorry pat they nyste what to don wherfor Sire hugh the Spenser

---

<sup>4</sup> Cry is barely visible under what may be a blob of wax.



And at hys Comandemet þay wold nott come Wer for kyng  
 Edwar wer full Sor Amewyd And lett make A Cry at london  
 þat 3if kyng Edwardys sone or the quen come ny3e into  
 Englonde þat thay shuld be hold as enmysse to the Reme  
 and to the Crown And for þat þay wold not come in to  
 Englonde But bothe exilid þe Modyr and the Sone And when  
 Quene Esabell herd of tydyngys And of þe Spense falsnes  
 he<sup>c</sup> sent to þe kny3tys þat wer Exilid oute of Englonde  
 for Sent Thomas Cause of lancastyr þat ys to say Ryr<sup>d</sup>  
 Roger of wigmor syr wylliam Trussell Syr Iohn of Cornuall  
 and many othyr good kny3tys werfor þay nombe her consell  
 And hordynid amongys heme forto make a maryage be twene  
 de duke of Gyone and the kyngys soñ of Englonde And þe  
 Erls dou3tyr of henawd þat was A nobyll knythe of name  
 and a dou3ti in hys tyme And 3ef that þyng my3th be  
 brouth a bout þay trowyd wyt þe help of god and wyt  
 hys help to Recouer his heritage in Englonde Wher for thay  
 wer put out purch þe false couetouse Spenser

(fol. 115<sup>a</sup>) Howe kyng Edward purh of þe Spensers sent to  
 þe dossepers þat þey shuld help þat the Quene Isabell 7  
 syr Edward here sone wer exilid

When kyng Edward 7 the spensers herd how Quene [.sa]<sup>1</sup>  
 Isabell 7 syr Edward her sone had layd hym to þe Erle of  
 hanawde and to them þat wer exilid out of Englonde for  
 enchosyn of Thomas of lancastyr þay wer so Sory þay wist  
 not for to doo Wher for syr huh þe Spenser

---

Fol. 115 <sup>1</sup>Erased; first letter poss. badly formed E-.

the sone saide vn to the ffadir in þis maner wise And saide fadir accursed be the tyme and the counceile that euer 3e consentede that quen Isabellē scholde goñ in to fraunce for to treeten accorde be twen the kyng of Engelande and here brothir the kyng of ffraunce for that was 3oure counceil ffor at that tyme for sothe 3oure wit faylled 3ou ffor y drede me sor lest þourgh her and her sone we schulleth be schent but yf we take the better counsel Now fair seres vnderstandeth howe mervailly<sup>f</sup> felonye and fals hede the Spensers ymaged and caste ffor priuēlich they lette ffelle vyffe banelles with siluer the somme amountede v M<sup>l</sup> ponde and they sonte þo banelles ouer the See priuēliche be annaliene that men called Arnolde of Spaygne that was abrocour<sup>g</sup> of london that he scholde goñ to the du3epers of [...] <sup>5</sup> ffraunce that thei scholde procren<sup>h</sup> and speke to the kyng of ffraunce that quen Isabelle and (fol. 74<sup>a</sup>) her sone Edwarde were dreue and exiled out of ffraunce and amonge alle othir thinges that þei were brought to the deth as priuēlich as þei my3te but al myghti god wolde nought soo ffor whanne this arnolde was in the heye see hee was take with Seelanderes<sup>a</sup> that mette heme in the See and token him and lade him to here lorde Erle of Henaude And moch ioye was made for that takyng And at the laste this Arnolde priuēly stale away fro thennes And come to london And of this takynge and of othir thinges the Erle of Henaude saide to the quen Isabelle Dame maketh 3ou merie and beep of good chere ffor 3e beep more richere thanne 3e wende haue ben and take 3e thes v banelles of siluer that were sent to the du3epers of ffraunce ffor to quelle 3ou and 3our sone Edwarde and thenkeþ hastely for to wende in to Engelande and take 3ee with 3ou sere Iohn of Henaude my brothir and v C men of Armes ffor meny of heme of

---

<sup>5</sup>Two letters erased.



þe soñ sayd to syr huh the Spenser the fadyr in thys  
 maner wysse ffadyr Acurcyd be the tyme þat euyr 3e  
 consentid and acordyt be twen the kyng of Englund 7 her  
 brother the kyng of fraunce for that was 3our consell  
 for at þat tyme forsoth your wyt faylit for I dred my  
 Sor þat þurh her and her Sone I shall be Sente but 3if  
 we take þe bettyr concell Now fayr Syrrys vndorstond  
 how mervelosse felony 7 falshod þe Spensers ymagenyd  
 cast for preuely he lett v. barellys ferers wyt Syluyr  
 þe Sum of v M<sup>1</sup> li and sent þe barellys ouyr the See  
 preuelych by an halyoun þat meñ callyd Allayne of Spayne  
 þat was A brokor of london þat he shuld goo to de dussepers  
 of fraunce þat þay shuld goo and profer to þe kyng of  
 fraunce þat Queñ Isabell 7 kyng Edwardus sone wer drywyn  
 and exilid out of fraunce And among all oþyr thynis þat  
 þay wer brouth to tethe<sup>a</sup> as preuylich as thay my3the But  
 all my3ty god wold nott So for when this arnold war in  
 the wyll see he was take wyt Solendirs þat led hem to  
 her lord Erle of henawd And much Ioy was mad for that  
 takyng And at þe last þis Arnoll Preuelych stall A way  
 from thens 7 com to london And of this (fol. 115<sup>b</sup>)  
 takyng 7 oþyr thyingis The Erle of henawde sayd to the  
 quene Isabell Dame makyd 3ou merry 7 good cher for 3e be  
 Rychar þane 3e wen to haue bene And take 3e thys v.  
 barellys of Syluyr þat wer Sent to dedyssypers of  
 fraunce for to kyll 3ou<sup>2</sup> and 3our Sone Edward And thyng  
 hastely for to wend into Englonde And takyth wyt 3ou syr  
 Iohn of henawd my brother 7 v C meñ of Armes for meny of  
 hem of

---

<sup>2</sup>Superscript -q-.

ffraunce in wham 3e haue gret trust hade grett deynte<sup>b</sup>  
 3ou for to Scorne And al my3ty god graunte 3ou grace  
 3oure ennemyes to ouercome The quene Isabelle sente poo  
 pourgh Henaude and fflaundres ffor her souyoures and  
 ordeigned here eueri day for to wende in to Engelande a  
 3ene And sche hade in here companie sere Edmunde of  
 wodestoke that was Erle of kent pat was Sir Edwardes  
 brothir of Engelande

Hov kyng Edwarde lete kepe the Costes by the See and  
 lette trie<sup>c</sup> alle the pris men of Armes And fote men al  
 so pourgh out Engeland Capitulo ¶ C<sup>o</sup>C<sup>o</sup> Sexto

Whene kyng Edwarde herde telle that quene Isabelle and  
 Edwarde here sone wolde come in to Engeland with menye  
 alienes and with heme that werre y owtlawede out of  
 Engelande ffor her rebelnesse he was sore adrede to be  
 put a doune 7 lese his kyngdome Wherfor he ordeignede  
 for to kepe his castelles in walis as wel as in Engelande  
 with vitailles and here appareile And lette kepe his  
 riueres And al so the costees (fol. 74<sup>a</sup>b) where of the  
 v portes token to kepe ham And al so the See And at the  
 feste of Decollacioun of Seynt Iohn the Baptiste the  
 Citezeines of london sente to the kyng at Porchestre an  
 C men of Armes And Al so he comaunded ferþer more be his  
letters ordeignede that euerych hundred and wepenthach  
 of Engelande too Tryovrs<sup>d</sup> as wel of men of Armes as of  
 men on fotte And that thei scholde ben putte in tuenty  
 some and in hundred some And comaunded þat ale þo men  
 were redi whenne any owtas<sup>e</sup> or crie were made for to  
purseue and tak the Aliens that comen in to Engelande  
 for to be nyme heme the lande and for to pute him out of  
 his kyngedome And moreouer he let crie pour3 his patent  
 in euerich feir and in euery marcate of Engelande that  
 the quen Isabelle and sere Edwarde his eldest soñe And



fraunce in home 3e haue had gret truste hathe gret Daynte  
 3ou for to Scorn̄ And almysty god graunt 3ou grace your  
 enmys to ouyr come The quene Isabell sent thoo burh  
 henaude and flanders for her Sowgors and hordynynd her  
 euyry day for to wend into Englonde And sche had in her  
 company syr Edmond of woodstoke pat was Erle of kente  
 pat was syr Edwardus brother of Englonde

Howe kyng Edwarde lete kepe the costis of the see And  
 lete cry all þe prise men

When þe kyng Edward hard tell þat Quen Isabell 7 Edward  
 her Sone wold com in to Englonde wyt meny Alyons 7 wyt hem  
 þat wer out lawyd of Englonde for her rebelus he was sor  
 Adrad to be put A done and lesse hys kyngdom wherfor he  
 hordynid to kep hys castellys in walys as well as in  
 Englonde wyt wetayles 7 her apparell and lett kep hys  
 Reuyrs And also the See And at fest of decollacioun of  
 Sent Iohn þe baptyste The 6ese<sup>3</sup> Ceteseyne of london Sent  
 vn to þe kyng to porchestyr an C meñ of Armes and also he  
 Comandyd ferdermor be thys lettres ordaynyd þat euyry  
 d<sup>b</sup> hundrit of Englonde shuld hordynid of meñ as well of  
 meñ of armes as of fott meñ 7 þat þay shuld be (fol.  
 116<sup>a</sup>) Put in xx 7 som in hundryt and Comandet þat all the  
 meñ wer redy when cry wer mad for to pursu and take þe  
 Alyons þat comyn<sup>1</sup> in englonde for to be nym hem the lond  
 and to put hym out of þe kyng dome And morouyr lett cry  
 purch his patente in euyry feyr 7 markys<sup>a</sup> of Englonde þat  
 þe Quen Isabell 7 syr Edward his eldyst sone 7

---

<sup>3</sup>Stroked out. Fol. 116 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 4 minims for -m-.

the Erle of kent if thei were taken þat þei scholde be sauelich kepte with outen anye maner harme vn to heme doynge And alle other maner peple that come with hame an noñ smyte of here hede with outen any raunsome And what man that myghte brynge sere Rogeres hede Mortemer of wyngesmore scholde haue a hundred ponde of mone for his trauaile And ferthermore he ordeignede be his patent and commaunded to make afire vp on euerich heigh hill besides the riueres And in lowe countres for to make heigh bekens of tymber that the countre myght be warnede for to come to mete here enemyes And in the same tyme deide sere Roger mortemer his vncle in the tour of london

Howe quen Isabelle And Sir Edwarde Duke of Gyhene his sone come to londe att herewich And hou they deden Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> vij<sup>o</sup>

The quene Isabelle and sere Edwarde here sone duke of Gyehne Sir Edmond of wodestoke Erle of kent and sere Iohn the Erles brothir of Hennaude and here companye dredde nought the manace of the kyng ne of hys tretoures (fol. 74<sup>b</sup>a) ffor they troste al in godes grace and come into here hawyn<sup>l</sup> wych<sup>f</sup> in Southfolke the xxiiij day in the monthe of September and in the 3ere of grace a pousand iiij hundred and xxvj<sup>g</sup> And the quene<sup>h</sup> and sere Edwarde here sone senten letters to the Mayr and to Cominalte of london requiryng heme that they scholde be helpeynge in the quarelle and cause that thei hade be gonne that es to seye to distroie the treyttoures of the Reame But non answer was sent a3eyn werfore the quene and sere Edwarde her sone senten anothir patent lettre vndir her seales hanyng the tenour of the which letter her

---

Fol. 74 <sup>1</sup>By corr. in right margin at end of line after here.



the Erle of kente þat þay wer takyne 7 falsly kep wyt out  
 Any maner of harm to hem doyng 7 all maner othyr pe~~it~~<sup>2</sup>  
 pepyll þat come wyt hyme and A none Smyth of her hedys  
 wyt Anny Raunsoun And wat mañ that my3th bryng Syr Roger  
 hed Mortener of wigmor shuld haue and C ponde of money  
 for hys Trawell And forthermor And aftyrward he comandyth  
 to make feier vppon̄ euery hy hyll by syd the Rewers and  
 in the law cortres<sup>b</sup> to make hy bekyns of Tymbyr þat 3if  
 hit So Wer þat þe Alyons come in to thys lond be ny3t  
 þat meñ shuld kendyll þe bekenes þat þe contre may be  
 warnyd and come And mett wyt her Enmysse And in the same  
 tyme deid syr Rog Mortemer his vnclē in the tour of  
 london̄

Howe þe Quene Isabell 7 syr Edward Duke of Guyeñ kyng  
 Edwardis sone come to londe at herwich 7 howe þey diden̄  
Capitulo

The Quene Isabell 7 syr Edward her sone duke of Guyeñ  
 syr Edmond of woodstoke Erle of kente 7 Syr Iohn̄ the  
 Erls brother of henaude 7 her company drad no3te þe mance<sup>c</sup>  
 of þe kyng ne of his traytours and they trustyd all to  
 goddys grace And come vn to Arwyche in Southfulke þe  
 xx x<sup>3</sup> iiij day of Septembyr in the 3er of grace A M<sup>1</sup> CCC  
 xxvj And (fol. 116<sup>b</sup>) the quene and syr Edward her soñ  
 send lettres to þe comente of london̄ requeryth hem þat  
 þay shull be helpyng into þe quarell and cause þat þay  
 had begyne that is to say to dystroy þe trayturs of þe  
 Reme But noone Answerd was sent Agayne wer for þe Quene  
 and syr hedward<sup>4</sup> her sone Sent anothyr patente lettre  
 vnder her Selys hangyng the tenour þe wyche lettre her

---

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out. <sup>3</sup>x stroked out; iii by scribe above.  
<sup>4</sup>-d- inserted by scribe above.

folweb in this manere forme. Isabelle be the grace of god  
 queñ of Engelonde lady of Erlande and Countesse of Pountyf  
 And we Edward the eldest sone of the kyng of Engelonde  
 Duke of Gyehene Erle of Chester of Pountyf and of  
 Moustroill to the Mair to al the Cominalte of the Citte  
 of london senden grettynges ffor as moche as we hauen before  
 this tyme sent to 3ou be our letters howe we be comen in  
 to this lande with goode aray And in goode maner for the  
honour & profitt of holi chirche and of oure right dere  
 lorde the kyng and alle the reaume with alle our myght  
 and poure to kepe and mayntene as we and alle þe goode  
 folke of the saide reaume ar holden to done And vp on  
 that we pray 3ou that 3e wolde ben helpeynge to ws in as  
 moche as that 3e scholde mowe in this quarell that es  
 for the comen profitte of alle the reame And we haue hade  
 in to this tyme non answer of the saide letters ne<sup>2</sup> knowe  
 not 3oure will in that partie wherfore we sende to 3ou  
 ageñe ande praye and Charge 3ou that 3e bere 3ou so a3en  
 ws þat we haue no cause to greve 3ou But that 3ee be to  
 vs helpeynge be alle the weyes that 3e may or schullen  
 kunne mowe<sup>1</sup> ffor weteth wel in certeyn that we and all  
 tho that beth comen with vs in to this Reame ne þinke not  
 to done no we schulle nought don 3f hit like god any  
 thing but that schal beñ for comune profit of ale the  
 Reame But only to destroye hugh Spenser oure enemye and  
 enemye to alle the Reame as 3e wele knowe Wherfor we pray  
 3ou nou and Charge 3ou in the (fol. 74<sup>b</sup>) feith that 3e  
 owe to our lorde the kyng and to ws an to al that that  
 3e schulle mowe forfete agayn ws that if the saide hugh  
 Spenser our enemye come with ynne 3oure pouer that 3e do  
 him hastely be taken and safly kepte vn tyl that we haue  
 ordeignede of him our wille and that 3e leue hit nought  
 in no maner as 3e desir honour and profit of ws alle and

---

<sup>2</sup>e from o by corr.



followyt in thys maner Isabell by the grace of good  
 Quene of Englonde lady of Irlond 7 countes of Pauntyfe 7  
 of menstrell<sup>d</sup> to þe Mayr and to all þe cowente of þe  
 Cytte of london send Greeting And we Edward þe eldest  
 sone of the kyng of Englonde Duke of Gueñ Erle of Chestyr  
 and of Pomfret and of Mounstreyll to þe Mayr And to all  
 þe comente of the Cite of london sendyng Greeting for  
 as much as we haue be for thys tyme send to 3ou be  
 [3]our<sup>5</sup> letters þe<sup>2</sup> how We be com in to thys lond wyt  
 good A ray and in in<sup>e</sup> good maner for the profyt and  
 honour of holy chyrche and of our Ryth lord þe kyng and  
 all þe Reme wyt all our myth and all our pour to kep and  
 maynteñ As we and all þe good folke of the sayd Reme are  
 holdon to don And oppon that we pray 3ou þat 3e woll be  
 helpyng to vs as much as 3e in thys quarell for thys ys  
 for the comen profett of all þe Reme And we haue hawe<sup>f</sup>  
 had of this none Answer 7 knaw nat 3our wyll wher for we  
 sent to 3ou praying 3ou and chargyne you But þat 3e ben  
 to vs helpyng in all the wayis 3e may for wotyth well in  
 certen þat we And all þat har come wyt vs in thys Reme  
 ne pinknot to doone 3if yt like god ony thyng but that  
 hyt shall be for þe comen Profett of all the Reme (fol.  
 117<sup>a</sup>) but oonly for to dystroy huh þe Spenser our enmye  
 and henmy to all þe Reme as 3e well knowe wherfor we pray  
 3ou 7 charg 3ou be the fayth þat 3e owe to our þe kyng 7  
 to vs 7 vp that ye schull moche forfett a3enst vs That  
 3if þe say huh Spenser our enmys<sup>1</sup> com wytin your powr þat  
 3e do hyme hastely by takyne And fast kep hym tell we  
 haue d<sup>a</sup> hordynid for hem our wyll and þat 3e leve hyt  
 nowthe as 3e desyr honour and profit of vs all and

<sup>5</sup> 3- erased. Fol. 117 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 4 minims for -nm-.

of alle the Reame Vndirstondyng wel that if 3ee doñ our  
praier and maundement we schullen the more be holden to  
 3ou And al so 3e schulle gette 3ou worschip and profit  
 if þat 3e sende vs hastely answer of alle 3oure wille  
 3euen at Baldoke the vj day of October the which lettre  
 erly in the dauneynge of the day of Seynt denys was sett  
 vp on the newe cros in Chepe<sup>j</sup> and in manye other open  
 places and many copees of þe same letter was sette vp on  
 wyndowes and dores and other open place<sup>3</sup> in the Citte  
 that alle men passyng be the way my<sup>3</sup>te seen and reddē  
 7c' And at the same tyme kyng Edwardē was alone in the  
 toure at his mette And a messengere come in to the halle  
 and saide that the quene Isabelle was come to lande at  
 Herewych Ande hade brought in her companye Sir Iohn of  
 henaude and with him men of Armes with outen noumber And  
 with that worde sere hugh the Spenser the fadir spake  
 and þus to the kyng saide My moste worschipfulest lorde  
 the kyng of Engelande nowe mowe 3e make goode chiere  
 ffor certeynly they been alle oures The kyng saw this  
 word comfortable 3ett he was ful sorweful and pensife  
 in herte And the kyng hade nouht 3et fullich etten that  
 ther ne come in to the halle an nothir messenger and  
 seide That the quene Isabelle was arivede at Herrewich  
 be Sides Skepwith in Southfolke Sir hugh the Spenser þe  
 fadir spake to the messenger And seide telle the soth in  
 goode fay quop he to the messenger my feire frende ys  
 scheo come with grette strengthe Certes sire soth for  
 to say Scheo ne hath in her companye but vij C men of  
 Armes And with that worde Sir hugh the Spensere the fader  
 cride with an heigh voys and saide Allas allas we beth  
 be traied alle ffor certes with so litel pouer scheo nade  
 neuer y come to lande but yf folke of this lande wer to  
 here (fol. 75<sup>a</sup>) consente And therfore after mette they  
 nome her councele and wente to warde walis ffor to arere  
 the walsche men a 3ens the quene Isabelle ande Edwardē



of þe Reme vnderstond well þat and do our prayer 7  
 mandement we shold þe mor by holdyng to 3ou And also 3e  
 shull gett 3ou worschip 3if 3e send vs hastely answer of  
 all our wyll 3ewyne at baldoke the vij day of Octobur  
 wych lettre erly in dawnyng was takkyd vp Erly on þe  
 newe croosse in chepe and meny copyis of the Same lettyr  
 wer takkyd vp on wendowes and durrys and oppoñ othyr places  
 in the Cyte þat all meñ passyng by the way my3th se to  
 redeñ And kyng Edward was at london in the tour at hys  
 mett And Amessenger come vn to the hall And sayd þat þe  
 quene Isabell was come vn to lond at harwyche 7 brou3te  
 in her company syr Iohn of henaud And wyt heme meñ of  
 harmes wytout nombyr And wyt þat word syr huh the Spenser  
 the fadur thus spake and sayd vn to þe kyng My most  
 worschip lord kyng of Englonde now may 3ou mak good chere  
 for now be thay all ours The kyng herd thys word comferte  
 3it he was sorowfull and Pensy in hys hart And the kyng  
 had nott fullech etyne þat þer come anothyr messangar And  
 Sayd þat þe Quen Isabell was A Ryvid at harwyche besydis  
 Skipwith in Southfolke (fol. 117<sup>b</sup>) Syr huh þe spenser the  
 fadyr spake to the Messenger tell soth in fayth messenger  
 my der frend hys sche comyn wyt A grett Strenthe Certys  
quod soth for to say Sche ne hath in her compayny vij C  
 meñ of harmes And wyt þat word syr huh þe Spenser the  
 fadyr cryd wyt an hy woys Allas we be trayd for sertys  
 wyt so lytill powr had sche neuyr h<sup>b</sup> come to londe but  
 fulke of this lond wer consent to her And ther for aftyr  
 mett þey nombe her counsell And went toward walys forto  
 Rer the walsmeñ a3enst þe Quen Esabell and Edward

here soñe al for to fighte and so they wer in porpos  
euerich on

Hov maister walter of Stapeltone Bysshop̄ of Excestre that  
was the kynges tresorer was be hedede at london̄ Capitulo  
CC<sup>o</sup> viij<sup>o</sup>

And in the same tyme kyng Edwardē was sore adrede lest  
men of london̄ wolde 3elde heme to Quene Isabelle and to  
sere Edwardē his soñe Wherfore he sente maister walter  
Stapeltone his tresorer for to ben wardein and keper of  
þe Citte of london̄ with the Mair And so he come to the  
Geldehalle of london̄ and axede the keyes of the gates of  
the Citte thourgh vertu and strengthe of his commissioun̄  
and wolde haue hade þe kepeynge of the Citte And the  
comuneres answerede and saide that thei wolde kepe the  
citte to the honoure of the kyng Edwardē and Isabele the  
quene and of the Duke the kynges sone with owten any mo  
The Bisshop̄ was þo sore annoiede and swore his oth that  
thei alle scholde a bye<sup>a</sup> anon as the kyng were comen owt  
of walis And the comyneres alle anon of the Citte nomen  
the Bisshop̄ and ladde him amyde Chepe and there they  
smeten of his hede And sette his hede in his righte  
hande And after they be heueded ij of his squieres that  
helden with the Bisschop̄ And on of heme they callede  
william of walle that was the Bisshop̄es Nevev and þat  
other me callede Iohn of Padyngtoun And al so they nome  
a Burgeys of london̄ that me callede Iohn Marchale that  
was sire hugh the Spensers Aspye the fader and smote of  
his hede And in the same tyme þe same Bysshop̄e hade in  
london̄ affair toure in makeynge in his clos vp on the  
Ryver of þe Temese that was with outen temple barr 7  
him failled stoun for to make there ofe an ende Where  
for he comaundede his men for to goo to the Chirch of  
the ffrere carmes<sup>b</sup> And therr they nomen stounes to make



her Sone

Howe Mastyr watyr of Stapultoun<sup>2</sup> bisshopp of Excestre þat was þe kyngis tresorer was behedit at london Capitulo

And in the same tyme kyng Edward was sor Adred lest men of london wold 3eld hem to þe quen Isabell 7 to her Sone Edward wher he sent Mastyr watyr stapyltoun his tresursor to be keper and warden of london wyt the Mair And he come to 3eld all<sup>c</sup> of london and axid þe kayes of the gatys of the Cytte of london þur wertu 7 strenth of his comyssion And wold haue had þe kepng<sup>3</sup> of london And þe comens Answerd and said þat thay wold kepe þe Cyte to honor and worschip of kyng Edward 7 of Quen Isabell 7 of þe duke the kyngys Sone wyt out Any mo The bysshop was sor a mevyd S<sup>4</sup> 7 Swor hys oth þat þay shall A by A none As the kyng come out of walys and all þe comens þe bysshop in his Ryrth hond<sup>d</sup> And aftyr þey be hedyd ij of his Squiers þat held wyt þe bysshop And one of hem þay callyd wylliam of wall þat was (fol. 118<sup>a</sup>) þe bysshopus neve And þe tother men callyd Iohn of padingtoun And also þay nombe A burgesse of london þat men callyd Iohn Marchall þat was syr huh þe Spenser Spye þe fadur And Smetten of hys hed also And in þe Same tyme þe bysshop had in makyng vppon A Reuyr of Thamas a fayr tour þat was wyt oute þe tempyll bar 7 he faylid stoun ther of to make a nende whefor he comad<sup>a</sup> hys men to goo to þe chyrch of þe fryorys Carmes /And ther þey nomon stone to make

<sup>2</sup>First -t- superscript. <sup>3</sup>Dot after -n- before -g, poss. the start of a minim. <sup>4</sup>Stroked out.

ther with the tour and moche sande and mortar and olde Robous<sup>c</sup> ther was lefte and for the dispte<sup>d</sup> that thee Bisshop̄ hade don̄ vn to holy Chirch he and (fol. 75<sup>a</sup>b) hys two squieres wer buriede in that samen<sup>e</sup> sande as pough they hade beñ houndes Ande there they liegen xj wokes til that the quene Isabelle sente here lettres to the comuneres 7 and praide heme that thei wolde sofferen 7 graunt that the bisschoḡ muste be take out of that place and be buriede at Excestre at his owne Chirche and so he was And his ij squeres was beriede att Seynt Clementis Chirch with owtene temple barre And hit was no wondir pouh the Bisshop̄ deide an evel deth ffor he was a coueitous man and with him no mercy and euel counceilede the kyng And sone per after was Arnolde of Spaigne taken he that was assentande<sup>f</sup> to haue lade the v þousande pounde of siluer in v ferers<sup>g</sup> vn to the du3aperes of ffraunce for to helpe and haste the quen Isabele to here deth and Edwarde here soñ al so And this Arnolde was don̄ vn to the deth with owten the citte of london 7c'

Howe kyng Edwarde and sere hugh the Spenser wer taken ande the Erle of Arendell Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> Nono 7c

Whenne kyng Edwarde hade sent Maister Walter Stapeltoune his tresorer to londone for to kepe the Citte to him a 3ene Quen Isabelle his wyf and a3ene Edwarde his sone anon him selfe nome with him Sire hugh the Spenser the fader and sere hugh his sone and sere Iohn Erle of Arendeale and maister Robert Baldoc his Chaunceler a fals Pyllede Clerke and nomen her wey to warde Bristowe and ther the kyng abode alytil terme and made sere hugh spenser the fadir as conestable and keper of the Castell And the kyng and the othir aboue saide wente in to the Ship and saillede to warde walys ande nome no leue of the Stywarde no of noñ of the kynges housholde and wente ouer in to walys for to



wyt þe tour and all þe sond and morter was left And for  
to dyspyt þat þe bysshopp had do to holy chyrch he and  
hys ij Squirys wer buryd in the Sond as thow þay had bene  
houndys And ther þay laye xj wokys tyll þe Quene Isabell  
sent her lettris to þe comeners 7 prayd hym þat þay wold  
suffyr the bysshope to be take out of the plasse and be  
buryd at Excestyr as<sup>b</sup> his owne chyrche And so he was And  
hys ij Squyers wer buryd at Sent Clementes Chyrch wyt oute  
tempyll bar And hit was none wondyr that þe bysshop deid  
in euyll dethe for he was Cowetus mañ and had wyt hem no  
mercy And Ewyll Counsell the kyng And sone aftyr was  
Arnold of Spayne takeñ he þat was assentyt to led v. M<sup>1</sup>  
pond of Syluyr in v. barellys ferers to the Dusseperis of  
fraunce for to help And hast the Quen Isabell to her deth  
and Edwardus her sone And thys Arnold was done to dethe  
wyt out þe Cyte of london<sup>1</sup>

Capitulo CC xx<sup>2</sup>

(fol. 118<sup>b</sup>) When kyng Edward had Sent Mastyr watyr  
stapultoun on<sup>c</sup> london for to kepe þe Cete vn to hem  
a3enste þe Quene Isabell his wif And Edward hys Sone Anon  
wyt hym nom syr huh þe Spenser þe fady 7 syr huh þe  
Spenser þe Sone And syr Iohn Erle of Arundell 7 Mastyr  
Roberte baldoke his Chauncele A false pyllyd clerke 7  
nomen her way tward brestow and ther<sup>3</sup> þe kyng Abothe a  
lityll term and mad syr hugh the Spenser þe fadyr keper  
of the castell And the kyng and the tothyr a bove sayd  
went vnto þe bysshop<sup>d</sup> and saylid toward walys and nome  
none lewe of the Steward none of the kyngys howshold And  
went vn to walys for ij

---

Fol. 118 <sup>1</sup>-d stroked out. <sup>2</sup>In right margin by rubricator:  
Capitulo CC x <sup>3</sup>Circular mark above, prob. abbreviation-  
mark for -r.

arrer the walsshmen a3ens Dame Isabell the Quene and Duk  
 Edwarde of Gyen hir sone and her companye But the Quene  
 7 the Duke her sone and the Erle of kent and sere Iohn  
 henaude and thei wente and pursewed after hame and her  
 pouer come and encressede eueri day so att the laste the  
 kyng (fol. 75<sup>b</sup>a) was taken vp on an hille in walys and  
 sere hugh the Spenser the sone in that othir side of that  
 same hille and the fals pilled clerk Maister Robert Baldok  
 there faste be side ham 7 were brought in to Engelonde as  
 almyghty god wolde and the kyng him selfe was in saf  
 kepyng in the Castele of kenylworth and him kepte sere  
 henry that was seynt Thomas brothir of lancastre And sere  
 Hugh the Spenser the fadir come and putte him in the  
 Quenys grace and in sere Edwardes her sone duke of Gyene  
 But sere hugh the Spenser after the tyme pat he was take  
 nolde eete no maner mete no drinke no maner drynke for  
 he wiste to haue no mercy but only he wiste he scholde be  
 deed 7 the Quene and here counceile po hade ordeignede  
 that he scholde haue been doñ to the dep at london but he  
 was so feble for his mochil fastyng that he was ded al  
 most for fastyng and therefore hit was ordeigned that he  
 scholde haue his iugement att hereforde And at a place of  
 the touffe his holde<sup>n</sup> was take fro his heuede and al so  
 frome Robert of Baldoces pat was a pilled clerk and a fals  
 that was the kynges chaunceler and men sette vp on here  
 hedes chapelettes of scharpe netteles and ij squieres blev  
 in her eres with ij grette bugelle hornes vp on þoo ij  
 prisoners that men my3te here here blowyng with hornnes  
 per mo thane a þousande And on Symund of Redyng the  
 kynges marchale be fore heme bare here armes vp on aspere  
 reuersede in tokne that þei scholde beene vndone for euere  
 more And vp on the morwe was sere hugh the spenser the  
 soñe dampned to the deth and was drawe and hongede  
 beheueded and his boweles taken owt of his body and his  
 boweles brent And after he was quartered and his quarteres



3er<sup>e</sup> the walsshmen̄ a3enst Quene Isabell And syr Edward  
 her Sone 7 þe Erle of kente 7 syr Iohn̄ henaud went 7  
 pursued aftyr hem 7 her Powr encrecyd dayle So att last  
 þe kyng was takyne oppoñ an hyll in wales And syr huh the  
 Spenser the sone on the todyr syd of the hyll And þe false  
 Clerke mastyr Roberd Baldok þer fast be sydes hem And wer  
 brouth in to Englund as almy3ty god wold and the kyng  
 hyme self kepyng in the Castell of kenelwroth and hym  
 kept syr harry þat was sent Thomas brother of lancastyr  
 And syr huh despenser the fadyr put hym to the kyngys  
 grace And to syr Edward her son Duke of Gyoun But syr huh  
 þe Spenser aftyr þat he was tak nold ette no[n]<sup>4</sup> maner  
 mett ne drynke for he wyst to haue no mercy but [. ]only[ch]<sup>5</sup>  
 to be ded And þe Quene 7 her consell þo had ordeynid þat  
 he shuld<sup>6</sup> (fol. 119<sup>a</sup>) haue be done to deth at london̄ but  
 he was so febyll for hys much fastyng þat he was ded  
 almost Ther for it was ordynyd þat he shuld haue hys  
 Iugemente At Hartforde And at a plasse of the tour hys  
 hod was take from hys hed 7 also from Robert of baldoke  
 þat was a pyllyd clerke and a false and the kyngys  
 chambyrlayne And sat vppoñ her hedys cherp nedelys And  
 Squers blew in her er wyt a gret bugoll horne þat men  
 mythe her blowyng oute wyt horns mo þan A M<sup>l</sup> han<sup>a</sup> one  
 symond of Redynge þe kyngys marchald be for heme bar her  
 harmes vppoñ A Sper reuersy on tokyne þat þay shuld be  
 vndone for euyr mor And vppoñ the morrowe was syr huh þe  
 Spenser þe Sone damnyth to dethe and was drawyne and  
 hongnyd and be hedyd And hys bowellys drawne out of hys  
 body and brent be for heme and aftyr he was quarterd  
 iiij quartys

<sup>4</sup>-n erased. <sup>5</sup>Initial letter, poss. h-, and -ch erased.  
<sup>6</sup>Catchword by scribe below: have be don to

sent to iiij tounes of Engelande and his hede sent to  
 londonē brugge and this Symound for en chesoun that he  
 dispisede the Queñ Isabelle he was drawe and honged in  
 astage made amydes the forsaide Sire hughes Galwes And  
 in (fol. 75<sup>b</sup>) the same day alityl ffro then was sere  
Iohn of Arenrendel<sup>i</sup> be heueded for he was on of sere  
 hugh þe spenseres councelers And anon after was sere hugh  
 the spenser drawe and hongede and be hedded at Bristowe  
 and after honged azene be þe armes with ij strong roopes  
 and the iiij day after he was hewe al to pecis and houndes  
 eten heme and for that enchesoun that the kynge hade 3ouen  
 the Erle of wynchestre his heede hit was lade theder and  
 putt vp on aspere and the fals Baldoc was sente to london  
 and there he deide in prisoune among thefes ffor men dede  
 him no more reuerence thene me wolde don vn to an hounde  
 and so deide the traytours of Engelande blessedde be al  
 myghty god And hit was no wondir for þourgh here counceill  
 the goode Erle Thomas of lancastre was don to the deep  
 and alle that helden with Thomas of lancastre þour3 þoo  
traytours were vndone and alle here heires disherited.

Howe kyng Edward was put adoun of<sup>j</sup> and his dignite bynome  
 hym Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> x<sup>mo</sup>

Anon after this was don thee Quene Isabelle and Edward  
 here son and alle the grette lordes of Engelande att one  
 assent sente to kyng Edward to the Castel of kenylworth  
 ther that the kyng was in kepeyng vndir the warde of sere  
 Iohn hothum that was the Bysshop of hely and of sere Iohn  
 of Parcy a baroun ffor enchesoun that he scholde ordeigne  
 his parlement att acerteyn place in Engelande ffor to  
 redresse and amende the state of thee reaume and kyng  
 Edward heme answerede And saide lordes quop he 3ee seep  
 ful wel hou hit es loo haueþ here my seall y 3eue 3ou my  
 pouer to ordeigne apparlement where þat 3e wille and they



Sent to iiij townys of Englonð and hys Sent to london  
 bryge And dy<sup>b</sup> Symond for enchosyne þat he dyspysyd þe  
 Quene he<sup>1</sup> was drowne and hangid on A Stake mad amyð þe  
 forsayd syr huh Gallows And þe same day a lytyll from  
 thens was syr Iohn of Arundell be hedyd for he was oone  
 of Sr huhe þe Spensers conselours And anone aftyr was  
 syr huh þe Spenser drawyne 7 hongyd att brestow and  
 aftyr hongyd a 3ene by the harmes wyt ij Strong ropus  
 And the iiij day he was heuyne all to pecys and hondys  
 etyne hyme 7 for þat enchosyne þat þe kyng had 3euyne  
 the Erle of wenchestyr hys hed hyt was led dedyr and put  
 A pone A Sper And þe false Baldok (fol. 119<sup>b</sup>) was sent  
 to london ther he dyid in presone among thevys for men  
 ded hym no reuerens þan þay wold do to han<sup>2</sup> hounde and  
 So thay dydyne the clerkys traytour of Englonð blessyd  
 be all my3ty god And hit was no wondor<sup>3</sup> ffor þoru þe  
 good Erle Thomas was done to dethe And all that held wyt  
 Thomas of lancastyr þoru<sup>4</sup> þe traytors wer vndone and all  
 her heyrys dessertyd

Howe kyng Edward was put down and his croun be nom hym

Anoon Aftyr thys was done þe Quen Isabell and Edward her  
 Sone and all the grett lordys of Englonð at oon Assent  
 sent to kyng Edward at Castell of kenylworth þer þat þe  
 kyng was in kepyng vndyr þe ward of syr Iohn hathun þat  
 was þe bysshop of Ely And of syr Iohn A Persy a baroun  
 for enchosyne þat he shuld hordeyne hys Perlemente at A  
 serten plasse of Englonð for to Redres þe State of þe  
 reme And the kyng Answerd and sayd lordys 3e Se full full  
 well how hyt tys lo haue her my Sell I 3eff 3ou my por to  
 horden A perlemente wher 3e wyll And thay

---

Fol. 119 <sup>1</sup>Inserted by scribe above. <sup>2</sup>-n very faint.  
<sup>3</sup>First -o- like e. <sup>4</sup>Superscript -r-.



nome here leue of ham 7 come a3ene to the barounes of  
 Engelsonde and whenne thei hade the kynges patent of this  
 pyng and thei schewede hit to the lordes 7 þoo was  
 ordeygned that the parlement scholde ben att Wynchestre  
 att Vtas of Seynt Hillary<sup>k</sup> and alle the grett lordes of  
 Engelsond lett ordeigne for hame þere a3ens þat tyme þat  
 the parlement scholde beñ And at the Which (fol. 76<sup>a</sup>)  
 day the parlement was the kyng wolde nouht come there  
 for no maner thing as he hade sett hym selfe and assignede  
 And noþeles the barounes sente to him o tyme and othir And  
 hee swore be goddes sowle that he wolde nouht come there  
 afotte Wherefore hit was ordeignede be alle the grette  
 lordes of the Reame of Engelsonde that he scholde no  
 lenger be kyng but ben deposede And saide that þei wolde  
 croune kyng Edwarde his sone the Elder that was duke of  
 Gyene and sente so tydynge to the kyng to the kyng ther  
 he was in warde vndir sire Iohn erle of Garrene 7 sere  
 Iohn of Bothum<sup>la</sup> that was bisshoþ of Ely And sere henre  
 Percy Baroun 7 sere william Trusselle knyzt that was  
 with the Erle sere Thomas of lancastre for to 3elde vp  
 her hoomages vn to him for alle hem of Engelsonde And  
 sere william Trussel saide these wordes sere Edwarde for  
 enchesoun that 3e haue tariede<sup>b</sup> 3oure peple of Engelsonde  
 and haue vndon manye grett lordes of Engelsonde with owten  
 any cause but now 3e be with stande thanked be god And al  
 so for enchesoun that 3e wolde nouht come to the parlement  
 as 3e ordeignede att Westmenstre as in 3oure owgene letter  
 patent es conteynede ffor to trete with 3oure lige meñ as  
 akyng scholde And there ffore þour3 all the comune assent  
 of alle the lordes of Engelsonde y telle vn to 3ou thees  
 wordes 3e schulleþ vndirstonde Sire that the barouns of  
 Engelsonde att on assent wille that 3ee bee no more kyng

---

Fol. 76 <sup>1</sup>Badly formed B; poss. the scribe originally wrote  
 Q and added a flourish above it to make the letter approxi-  
 mate to B.



nome her leve of hyme and com A 3ene vn to þe barons of  
 Englonde let horden them þer azenst þe Perlement shuld  
 be And wych day þe perlement shuld be þe kyng wold not  
 com ther for no maner thyng lyke as he had sett hymeselfe  
 to assaynyd And neuyrle þe barons sent to hyme otyme and  
 anothyr And Swor be godys Sole he wold nott com ther a  
 fott wher for hyt was hordynyd be all þe gret lordys of  
 Englond þat he shuld no lenger be kynge but be depsyd<sup>c</sup>  
 And sayd that þay wolde crone kyng Edward sone the Erle  
 duke of Guane And send So word to þe kyng (fol. 120<sup>a</sup>)  
 ther þat he was in warde vndyr syr Iohn Erle of Garryn  
 and syr Iohn of Bothun þas<sup>a</sup> was bysshop of Ely and syr  
 harry Persy A barone 7 syr wylliam Trussell a kynst<sup>b</sup> þat  
 was wyt the erle sent Thomas of lancaster for to 3eld vp  
 all her homage vn to hym for all o hem of Englond And syr  
 wylliam Truscell sayd thes wordys Syr Edward for chosyne  
 þat 3e haue trayd 3our pepyll of Englond 7 haue on done  
 meny grett lordys of Englond wyt out any causse But now  
 3e be wyt stond þankyd be god Also for in chosyne þat 3e  
 wold not come into þe perlemente as 3e hordynyd att  
 wystmestyr as in 3our lettyr b<sup>c</sup> patente ys contaynyd for  
 to trett wyt 3our lege men as A kyng shuld And þerfor  
 purch a comen Asente of all þe lordys of Englond I tell  
 3ou thes wordys 3e shall vndyr stond all the barons of  
 Englond att oon assente woll þat 3e be no lenger kyng

of Engelande but onlich<sup>c</sup> hath putte 3ou owt of 3oure rialte ffor euermore And the Bisshoḡ of Ely saide þoo to the kyng Sire Edwarde here y 3elde vp feaute and homage ffor all the Ersshbisshoḡes and Bisshoḡes of Engelande and ffor alle the Clergye þoo saide Sire Iohn Erle of Garrenne Sir (fol. 76<sup>a</sup>b) Edwarde I 3elde vp here vn to 3ou feaute and homage ffor me and for alle the Erles of Engelande And Sire henre the Percye 3af vp al so there his homage ffor him and for all the Bisshoḡes<sup>d</sup> of Engelande And þoo saide sere William Trussel y 3elde vp now sire vn to 3ou myn homage ffor me and alle the kny3tes of Engelande and for heme alle that holde be seriaunte<sup>e</sup> or be any other maner thing off 3ou so that fro this day afterwarde 3e schulleþ nought be claymede kyng nothir for kyng be holde from this tyme afterwarde 3e schulleþ be holde asingeler<sup>f</sup> man of alle the peple and so they wente thens vn to london þere that the lordes of Engelande hem abode and sere Edwarde abode in prisone vndir goode kepynge And that was the day of Conuersacioun of Seynt Poule in the xx 3ere of his regne.

Of the prophecie of Merlyn declared of kyng Edwarde the soñe of kyng Edwarde Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xj<sup>o</sup>

Of this kyng Edwarde prophciede Merlyn and saide that ther scholde come a goot out of Car that scholde haue hornes of Siluer and aberde as white as aswañ and a droḡe scholde come out of his nose þrilles that scholde be tokene moch harme hunger and deth of the peple and grette losse of his lande and that in the begynnynge of his regne scholde be hauntede moche lechorye and saide sothe allas the tyme ffor kyng Edwarde that was kyng Edwardes sone þat was boren in Carnariuan in walys forsoþe he hade hornes as siluer and aberde as swan whane he was made prince of walys and to moche he 3af him vn to riatte and



of Englonð but entrelych haue put 3ou oute of 3our ryalte  
 for euyr mor And the bysshop of Ely sayd to þe kyng syr  
 Edward her I 3eld vp all the fealt 7 homag for all þe  
 herssbyssshopus and bysshoppus of Englonð and for all the  
 clarge Tho sayd syr Iohn Erle of Garreñ her I 3eld her  
 vp to 3ou for me and all Erls of Englonð 7 all them þat  
 holdyne of 3oue be serwent or be anny other manere thyng  
 of 3ow So þat fro þis day forward ye shall nott be  
 claymyd kyng But fro thys tyme forward 3e shall be hodyn  
 A Senler<sup>d</sup> mañ of all the pepyll And thy went þens to  
 london þer þat lordys of Englonð them A bood And syr  
 Edward abod in presone vndyr good kepyng and thys was þe  
 day of the (fol. 120<sup>b</sup>) conuersacioun of Sent paule in  
 the xx 3er of hys reigne

to folye and soth saide Merlyn in his prophecie that there scholde come out of his nesse a drop ffor in his tyme was gret hunger among the poure men and strong deth amonge the riche that deide in stronge londe with mochyle sorwe and werr in Scottlonde And afterwarde he loste Scotlonde (fol. 76<sup>b</sup>a) and Gascoigne And whylles that him selfe was kyng there was moch lecherie haunted And al so Merelyn tolde and saide that this goote scholde seche the flour of lyf and deth 7 he saide soth ffor he spoused Isabelle the kynges doughter of ffraunce And in his tyme Merelyn seide that there scholde be made brygges of folc oop on dychis of the see And pat was fulle wel sene at bannokesbourne in Scotlonde whenne he was discounfitede there of the Scottes And Merelyn tolde al so that stones scholde falle ffram castelles and menye tounes scholde be made pleyn And he seide soth ffor whenne kyng Edward was scounfitede in Scottlonde and come þoo souhwarde þe Scottes be segede the Castelles and dede heme moche harme and brente tounes vn to the harde erthe And afterwarde Merelyn tolde that an Egle scholde come owt of Cornuaylle that scholde haue fetheres of golde that of pride scholde haue no piere and scholde despise lorde schipes of blode And after he scholde deye þour3 a bere at Gauersich And the prophecie was full wel knowe and founde sooth ffor be þe Egle y vndirstonde<sup>g</sup> sire Pieres of Gauastoun that was Erle of Cornwaille that was a wondir proude man that despisede the barounage of Englonde but afterwarde he was be heueded at Gauersich þour3 the Erle of lancastre and the Erle of warewyke And Merelyn tolde that in his tyme hit scholde seme that the Bere scholde brenne And pat abataile scholde be doñe vp on a arme of the in afelde<sup>h</sup> araied like aschilde where schulde die many white hedes Ande he saide soth ffor be the brennyng of the Bere ys be tokenede grette drede þour3 cottyng of swerde at pat batayle ordeignede in afelde as aschelde vp on a narme in the see



ys betokened the bataille of mytone ffor there come the Scottes in maner of a schelde in a wyng and quelled vp on sake swale<sup>i</sup> men of Religioun Prestees and sceculers wherfore the Scottes callede þat batayle in dispite of Engelissmen the (fol. 76<sup>b</sup>) whitte bataylle And after Merelyn sayde that þe fforseyde Bere scholde ben vp on the sowthwest And al so vp on his blode And saide al so that thee gotte scholde lesse mochedel of his lande tyl thee tyme thame<sup>j</sup> scholde him ouercome and þanne hee scholde clothe him in aliones sckyn and scholde wyne azene that he hade loste And moche more þour<sup>3</sup> apeple that scholde come out of the North west that scholde make him ben drade and him avenge of his enemyes þour<sup>3</sup> counceyle of ij Owles that ferst scholde vende ouer the See ande scholde bee in pereile to be vndone And there þey scholde dwelle til acerteyn tyme And after thei scholde come in to Engelande a 3een And þo ij Owles schule done moch harme vn to menye one And that thei scholde counceile the Gott And the Oweles scholde come to an arme in the see atte Burtoun vp Trent And scholde wende ouer and that for drede of the Bere scholde flee with a swan in his companye vn to Bir towarde the North þour<sup>3</sup> an vnkynde outputter<sup>k</sup> And þat þe swan thanne scholde be slayn with sorwe Ande the Bere scholde be slayn ful neygh his ougne neest that scholde stonde vp on Poumfret vp on wham the sonne schal schede his beemes and meny folc him schal seche for the mochil vertue ande he seide ful sooth ffor the goode Erle Thomas of lancastrē was boren in the Northwest and cosyn to the kyng sone of his vncle and be lawe he made the kyng lesse moche lande the whiche he hade purchaside willfullich Til at þe laste the kyng there offe toke schame And him selff fledde with cruelte And after he gate a 3ene that he hade loste And moche more þour<sup>3</sup> folke that lett assemble owt of the Northwest ande made him to ben adrade and Vengede him of his Barouñs þour<sup>3</sup> councell of Sire hugh

the Spenser the fadir <sup>7</sup> of sire hugh the sone that be fore  
 were owtlawede out of Engelande ffor her wikednesse But  
 afterwarde bei come a 3een in to Engelande owt of ffraunce  
 and so moche conceilede the kyng that he scholde werr vp  
 on Thomas Erle of lancastre so pat the kyng And þe  
 Speñsers And the Erle of Arendell And herr (fol. 77<sup>a</sup>)  
 power mette with Thomas Erle of lancastre att Burtoun vp  
 on Trent and him there discounfitede and sere Humfray  
 Erle of Hertforde was in companye And after fledden the  
 forseide Thomas an humfray with here companye att Burbrigge  
 with sere Andrev of hercla that es callede the vnkynde owt  
 pouttere And al so sere Simonde warde Erle of york they  
 come and mette wyþ Thomas of lancastre with an hounge  
 companye and hame ther discounfitede And in that  
 Scounfiture the Erle of herforde was slayne vp on the  
 Brygge cowardly with aspere in the fundement And the Erle  
 Thomas was taken and lade in to Pounfret And ther he was  
 be heddede be sides his ougne castel But afterward many men  
 him soughte for myracles that god dede for him And in that  
 tyme Merelyn prophciede for sorwe and harme apeple of his  
 lande<sup>a</sup> Wher fror<sup>b</sup> meny landes scholde been vp on him the  
 bolder ande he seide soth ffor be enchesoun<sup>b</sup><sup>1</sup> of his  
 Barouns that wer don to the deth ffor seynt Thomas quarell  
 of lancastre peple of meny landes by comen the bolder for  
 to meue werr opp on the kynge ffor her blode was tournede  
 to many naciouns And afterwarde Merlyn tolde and saide  
 that the forseide Oweles scholde don moch harme vn to the  
 flour of lyfe and of deth And thei scholde bringer<sup>c</sup> vn to  
 mochil dissesse So pat scho scholde wende ouer see in to  
 ffraunce for to make pees to the fflour i delice<sup>d</sup> And ther  
 scho scholde abide til on atyme pat her seed scholde come  
 and seche heme<sup>e</sup> and ther thei scholde abide bothe til  
 attyme that bei scholde closen<sup>f</sup> heme with grace and þo ij



Oweles scho scholde seeke and putte hame vnto spitouse  
 dep and þat prophecie was wel knowe and was ful sop ffor  
 sere hugh spenser the fadir and sire hugh the sone dede  
 moch sorwe and persecucioun vnto þe Quene Isabelle þour3  
 her procurement to here lorde the kyng And so thei  
 ordeignede a monges hem that sche was putte vnto her  
 wages that es to say xx s in the day where fore the kyng  
 of ffraunce her brothir was wondir sore annoyede And  
 sente in to Engelsonde by his letters vnto kyng Edward  
 that he scholde come to his parlement to Paris in fraunce  
 to kyng Edward But kyng Edward Was (fol. 77<sup>a</sup>b) was<sup>g</sup> so  
 sore adrede for to come þer ffor he wended to ben arested  
 til that he hade made goode for the trespas that the  
 Spensers hade doñ and al so grett harme that thei hade  
 doñ to quene Isabelle his sister wherfore þourgh here  
 ordinaunce and here concete of the spenseres the quene  
 Isabelle wente ouer the see in to ffraunce for to make  
 acorde be twen kyng Edward ande the kyng of ffraunce her  
 broþir And there duelledede scheo in ffraunce tyl Edward  
 here eldest sone come here to seche And so þei duelledede  
 þere bothe til that aliaunce was made be twene ham and  
 the gentil Erle of henaude that if thei with here helpe  
 myght distroye 7 ouercome the venym and the ffalsnesse  
 of the spenseres that sere Edward scholde spouse dame  
 Philipp the worschipful lady And the Erles doughter of  
 henaude Wherfore the quen Isabell and sere Edward her  
 sone and sere Edmund of wodestoke the kyngs brothir of  
 Engelsonde And sere ihon of henaude 7 sere Roger Mortemer  
 of wygemore And sere Thomas Rocelyn and sere Iohn of  
 Cromewelle and sere william Trussell And many othir of  
 the Aliaunce of the gentil Erle Thomas of lancastre that  
 were exilede out of Engelsonde ffor his quarrelles and wer  
 disherietede of here landes ordeignede ham a gret pouere  
 and ariuede at herewich in Sūthfolc And sone afterwarde  
 thei purseueden the Spenseres til þat þei were taken and

putt vnto spittous dep as be fore is saide and her  
 companye And al so for the grett falsnesse that bei  
 deedeñ vn to kyng Edwarde and his peple And Merlyn saide  
 al so more that the goot scholde be putte in to grette  
 disese and in gret anguisshe and in grette sorwe he  
 scholde leede his liffe and he saide soth ffor aafter  
 the tyme þat kyng Edwarde was take he was putt in too  
 warde til that the Spenseres were putt vnto the dep And  
 al so for enchesoun that he wolde nought come vnto his  
 ougne parlement att london as he hade ordeignede ⁊  
 assignede him selfe to his baronage and al so wolde  
 nought gouerne and reule his peple ne his reame as a  
 kyng scholde doñ Somme of the Barouñes of Engelande  
 comen and zeldede vp her ho (fol. 77<sup>b</sup>a) mages vn to him  
 for hame and for alle othir off the reame in the day of  
 conuersacioun of Seynt Poule and in the 3er of his regne  
 xx and thei putte hame out of his rialte for euermor and  
 euere he liuede his life afterwarde in moch sorwe ande  
 angwyssch

Of kyng Edwarde the de bride<sup>h</sup> after the conqueste  
Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> Duodecimo et c'.

And after this kyng Edwarde of Carnariuan regnede sere  
 Edwarde of wyndesore his sone the which was crounede kyng  
 and annoynted at westmynstre þoru3 counsel consent and  
 wille of alle the grett lordes of Engelande the sonneday  
 in candilmesse euen of our lady in the 3ere of grace a  
 þousande þre hundrede and xxvj that was that tyme of age  
 but xv 3ere olde and for enchesoun that his fadir was in  
 warde in the Castel of kenelworth and eke was put doune  
 of his realte þe reame of Engelande was as with outen  
 kepere that es a kyng ffro the feste of seynt kateryne  
 in the 3ere aboue saide vn to the feste of Candylmesse  
 And þo were alle maner pleez of the kynges bench astent<sup>i</sup>



Of kyng Edward the third aftir the conquest Capitulo CCC  
xij

And aftyr thys Edward of Carnarivane reignyd syr Edward  
hys sone þe wych was crownyd 7 anoyntyd at westmestyr þur  
consent and well of all the lordys of Englonð þe Sonday  
on candesmesse ewyne in the 3er of grace A M<sup>1</sup> CCC xxvj  
þat was that tyme of age but xv 3er and for enchosyne  
þat hys fadyr was in ward of the Castell of kenewoth And  
eke was put done of hys ryalte The reme of Englonð was  
as wyt out kyng fro the fest of Sent katerene in the 3er  
aboue sayd vn to þe fest of Candelmes And tho wer of all  
maner plees of þe kyngys bench a stente

And þo was comaunded to alle the schereues of Engelande þour<sup>3</sup> write to warne the parties defendaunte<sup>3</sup> þour<sup>3</sup> sompnynge aȝen And al so furthermore that alle the prisoner<sup>es</sup> that wer in the kynges gayholle that were attached<sup>j</sup> þourgh scherifes scholde be lete goñ quite The kyng Edward after his coronacioun att the praiser and the be sechynges of hijs lieges of the reame graunted ham Charter of stedefaste pees to alle hame that wolde hit axe And sere john of henaude and his companye nome his leue of the kyng and his lordes of the reaume and tournede home to here ougne cowntre aȝen and euerich of heme hade ffule riche ȝeftes eueri man as he was of valu and of astate and þo was Engelande in Pees and reste and grette loue be twen the kyng and his lordes and comelich engelish men that þe deuel es ded<sup>k</sup> And the tresour of the kyng his fadir and the tresour of the Spenser<sup>es</sup> bothe of the fadir and the sone An the tresour of the Erles of Arendel and of maister Robert (fol. 77<sup>b</sup>) Baldok that was the kynges chaunceler was departed after quen Isabelles ordinance And sere Roger<sup>es</sup> Mortemer of wyngemore so that the kyng hade no thing there offe but att her wille and at her deliueraunce noþer of her landes as afterwarde ȝee schaleþ her more openly

Howe kyng Edward wente to Stanphope for to mette the Scottes Capitulo ¶ C<sup>o</sup>C<sup>o</sup> terciodecimo

And ȝiett in the same tyme was kyng Edward in the Castel of kemelworth vnder the keppynge of Sire henre þat was Erle of lancastre Thomas Brother of lancastre that þo was Erle of leicestre and the kyng graunted him the Erledom of lancastre that the kyng hade seisede in his hande and put out Thomas of lancastre his brothir and þo was he Erle of lancastre 7 of leicestre and eke Stywarde of Engelande as his brothir was in his tyme But sere



And þo was comandyt of all þe Scherwys of Englonð þurch warthe<sup>e</sup> to warone þe partysse defendans þur Sumyng<sup>f</sup> Aþene Also ferdermor all the presoners þat wer in the kyngys gaylle þat wer a tachyd þurch Chyrwys shuld be lett gone quite The kyng Edward aftyr hys cornacocioun at prayer and be sechyng of legis of þe reme grauntyd hem A chartur of Stedfast pees and all hym þat wold hit axe And syr Iohn<sup>g</sup> hen<sup>g</sup> henaud and hys company nom her leff of þe kyng and of the lordys of the Reme and turnyd heme to her owne Contre And ech of theme had full Ryche 3eftys euyry mañ as he was of walowe and of state And þo was Englonð in pesse and gret love by twene þe kyng and hys lordys And comenly Englysmen Sayd amongys hem de deuyll was ded But the tresur of þe kyngys fadyr and the tresur of the Spenser both of þe fadyr and of þe sone and the tresurer of þe Erle of Arundall and of Mastyr Roberd baldok þat was þe kyngys Chambyrleyne was þe (fol. 121<sup>a</sup>) partyd<sup>a</sup> aftyr þe Quenys Isabell hordynans and syr Roger mortymer of wygmore so þat þe kyng had nothyng ther of but her wyll and her delyuerans as aftyrward 3e shuld her

Howe kyng Edward went to Stanhope

And 3it in the same tyme was kyng Edward in þe castel of kenlworthe vndyr the kepyng of syr harry þat was Erle Thomas brothyr of lankastyr þat þe kyng had sesyd in hys londe<sup>b</sup> and put out of lancastyr hys brother and so he was he Erle of lancastyr and of leycestre 7 stward of Englonð as hys brothyr was in hys tyme But syr

Edwarde that was kyng Edwardes fadir made sorue y nowgh  
 for cause that he myght not speke with his wyfe no with  
 his sone wher ffore hit was moche myscheffe ffor pough  
 hit wer so that he was lade and reuelede be falce conceile  
 ziet he was kyng Edwardes son̄ and come of the worthieste  
 blode of the worlde And þeke<sup>1</sup> too whame he was wonede to  
 zeue grette zeftes & large were most preue with the kyng  
 hijs owgne son̄e and thei were his enemyes boþe be nyghte  
 and be day and proferede for to make debate and contakte  
 be twen him and his sone and Isabelle his wyfe but the  
 freer prechoures to him were goode frendes euermor ande  
 caste and ordeignede boþe nyght and day hou þei myghte  
 bringe him out of prisoun Ande a monge here companye that  
 þe freres priuylich hade brought there was afrer that men  
 callede dounhede and he hade ordeignede and gadered a  
 grette companye of folc for to helpe at þat nede but the  
 ffrere was take & pute in to the castell of Pounfret and  
 ther he deide in prisoun And sere henry Erle of lancastre  
 that hade þe kynges fadir in kepeynge þourȝ comaundement  
 of the kyng deliuerede Edwarde thee kynges fadir be  
 endenture vnto sere Thomas of Berkelee and to sere Iohn  
 Mautravers (fol. 78<sup>a</sup>) and they lade him fro the Castel  
 of kemelworþe vn to the Castel of Berkelee and kepte him  
 þere safely And att the Estren next after his coronacioun  
 the kyng ordeignede an houghe hoste for to fighte azens  
 the Scottes And sere Iohn þe Erles brothir of henaude fro  
 be ȝonde the See come for to helpe kyng Edwarde and  
 brought with him v hundrede men of armes and a ryuede att  
 Douere and thei hade leue for to goo forth til that þei  
 comen vn to ȝorke þere that the kyng abode heme And the  
 Scottes comen theder to the kyng for to make pees & acorde  
 but the accordement be twen hame laste but alitil tyme  
 And at that tyme the Englisshmen were clothed alle in  
 Cootes & hoodes peynted with letters and with floures  
 ful semely with longe berdes And therfor scheo Scottes



Edward þat was kyng Edwardys ffadyr mad sorow wyt out hend  
 be cause þat he my3th nott speke wyt hys wyff ne wyt hys  
 sone wer for hyt was much ches<sup>1</sup> myscheff for þouth yt was  
 so that he wold led 7 rewyll by false consell 3it he was  
 kyng Edwardus sone and come of þe worthyist blod of þe  
 world And tho to whom he was wont to gif gret 3eftys and  
 large wer most preuy wyt þe kyng hys sone and thay wer her  
 Enmys both be nyth and be day and porsuyd for to make  
 debatt and contrake<sup>c</sup> by twene hyme and hys sone and  
 Isabell hys wyff But þe frer prechors of theme wer gret  
 frendys euyr mor and kyst and hordene euyry day 7 nyzte  
 out<sup>d</sup> þay myth bryng hym out of prosone<sup>e</sup> And mong the  
 frerys þer was a freyr þat meñ callyd Dunhed and he had  
 hordynyd a gret company of folke for to helpe at þat ned  
 But the frere was take and put in þe castell of Pomfrett  
 and ther he dyd in presone And syr harry the Erle of  
 lancastyr þat had þe kyngys fadyr in kepyng þurch  
 comandement<sup>2</sup> of the kyng delyuerd syr Edward þe kyngys  
 (fol. 121<sup>b</sup>) ffadyr be endentur v<sup>3f</sup> to syr Thomas of  
 Berkle and to syr Iohn Mawtrabas and thay led hym form<sup>g</sup>  
 the<sup>4</sup> castell to kenelworth vn to þe castell of berkle and  
 kepte hym þer saue And at estyr nex aftyr hys cornacione  
 the kyng hordynyd a hug hoste for to feyth a3enst þe  
 Scottys And syr Iohn þe Erles brothyr of henaud com fro  
 be 3en þe See to help kyng Edward and brouth wyt hym v  
 hundyrd meñ of Armes and aryvid att Douyr and thay had  
 leuf for to goo forth tyll þay come to 3orke þer þat þe  
 kyng a byd heme and þe Scottys com dyther vn to þe kyng  
 for to make pesse and acord but at þe acordaunce by twhen  
 hem lastyd but a lytill wylle þe Englysmen wer clopid all  
 in cokys<sup>h</sup> and hodys payntyd wyt lettres 7 wyt flowrys  
 wythe long byrdys And therfor þe Scottys

---

Fol. 121 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out; MS. has long -s. <sup>2</sup>Superscript -t  
 to indicate abbreviation. <sup>3</sup>Poss. b. <sup>4</sup>t- over s- by scribe.



made abille that was fastend vp on the Chirche dore<sup>3</sup> of  
 Seynt Petris to warde Stangate and þus saide the scriptur  
 in the dispite of Engelissshmen longe berde herteles  
 peyntede hoode witteles Gay Coote Graceles makeþ Engelonde  
 þrifteles<sup>1a</sup> And þe Trynite day nexte comynge be gañ the  
 contake in the Citte of yorke be twen the Engelissshmen  
 and the henouderes And in that þe bate<sup>b</sup> were y quellede  
 of the Erledome of Nichole and morderede iiij<sup>xx</sup> and after  
 þei were beriede vndir astone in seynt Clementis<sup>2</sup> chirche  
 hawe<sup>c</sup> in fossgate And for en chesoune that the Henouderes  
 comen for to helpe the kyng her pees was cride vpon  
 payne of life and leme and in that othir halfe hit was  
 founde by enqueste of the citte that the Engelissshmen be  
 gonne the debate

Howe the engelissshmen stoppede the Scottes in the Parke  
 of Stanhop̄ and hou thei tournede a 3ene in to Scottlonde  
 Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xiiij<sup>o</sup>

And at that tyme the Scottes hade assemelede alle here  
 pouer and comen in to Engelonde and quellede ande robbede  
 al that they myghte take with outen (fol. 78<sup>a</sup>b) noumber  
 and brente and distroyede all the North countre þourgh  
 out til that they comen to the Parke of Stanhope in  
 wirdale and ther the Scottes helde hame in abusschement  
 But whenne the kyng hade herde þour<sup>3</sup> certein asspies  
 where the Scottes wer anon rizt with his hooste he  
 besegede the forsaide Parke so that thee scottes wiste  
 neuer where for to goñe out but onlich vn to her armes  
 And thei abeden in the Parke xv daies and vittaille heme  
 faillede in euery side so that thei wer gretlich enpeirede  
 of here bodyes And sith thatt Brutte come ferste in to

---

Fol. 78 <sup>1</sup>longe ... þrifteles in red. <sup>2</sup>MS. Cle mentis,  
 separated by small hole in vellum.



mad a byll þat was fastenyd on the chyrch dor of Sent  
 petris toward Stanage And thus sayd þe scriptur in dyspytte  
 of Englysmene long berd hartles partyd cott // And the  
 trynite day next comyng began debatt be twene þe  
 Eenglysmen 7 þe he nauders And in<sup>5</sup> þat þe batt was kyllyd  
 and Mordryd of the Erldome of Nycholl iiij<sup>xx</sup> And aftyr  
 þay wer buryd vndyr a stone of Sent Clemte chyrch haw in  
 fosgate And for enchosyn þat þe henauders come for to  
 hepe<sup>i</sup> þe kyng her peesse was cryd vppon payne of lyff 7  
 lyme And in that opir half yt was be enquest<sup>6</sup> of þe Cyte  
 þat þe Englysmen be gone debatt

Howe þe englisshmen stoppid the Scottis in the park of  
 Stanhope and howe þey turned a 3een in to Scotlonde  
Capitulo CC xiiij

(fol. 122<sup>a</sup>) And in that tyme þe [S]cottys<sup>1</sup> had asemlyd a  
 grett pour and com into Englund And kyllyd and Robbyd all  
 þat þay mythe take wytout nombyr and brent and dystroyd  
 all the north contre þurh oute tell þay come to þe perke  
 of Stanhopp in Weredall and the Scottys held heme in a  
 bosschment When þe kyng herd þurch Sertene spyis wher þe  
 Scottys wer Anone ryth wyt hys host he besegid þe forsayd  
 parke so þe Scotys west nott for to gone out And thay  
 Abydyne in the Perke xv dayes and weteyll faylyd heme in  
 euyry syd So þat þay wer gretly in paryd of her bodyis And  
 sith þat brut came ferst<sup>2</sup> in to

---

<sup>5</sup>MS. has 2 minims by scribe above. <sup>6</sup>-t has curl like yr  
 abbreviation-mark. Fol. 122 1s- erased. <sup>2</sup>Poss. -o-,  
 not -e-.

Britaigne vnto this tyme was neuere seen sethens so fair  
 an hoste what of Englisshmen and of Alienes and of men  
 of foote the which ordeigned hem for to fight with the  
 Scottes pourgh eggynge<sup>d</sup> of Sir henre Erle of lancastre  
 And of sire Iohn henaude that wolde haue goñ ouer the  
 water of wiche for to haue foughten with the Scottes  
 But sere Roger the Mortemer consentede nouht ther to  
 ffor he hade priuilich taken mede of the Scottes ham for  
 to helpe that bei myghte wende a 3ene in to her ougne  
 countre And the same Mortemer counseilede so moche Thomas  
 of brothertoun that thee Erle Marchalle that was kyng  
 Edwardes vuncle that the fforsaide Thomas scholde not  
 assemble att pat tyme vnto the Scottes and he assentede  
 but he wiste nouht the doynge be twen the Scottes and  
 the forseide Mortemer And ffor enchesoun that he was  
 Marchal of Engelande and to him perteynede euer more  
 the vauntwarde he sente hastely to be Erle of lancastre  
 and to sere Iohn of henaude that bei scholde nouhte  
 fight vp on the Scottes in preiudice and in harmyng of  
 him and of his fee<sup>e</sup> and if thei dede that bei scholde  
 stande to here owne pereyle And the forsaide Erle Marchal  
 was all arraiede with his batayle at the redressyng<sup>f</sup> of  
 the Erle of lancastre ffor to haue fouhten with his folke  
 (fol. 78<sup>b</sup>a) yf he hade menede ffor to fighte with the  
 Scottes and in this maner he was desceiuede ande wyste  
 no thing of his treesoun and þus was þe kyng principally  
 desceyuede And whenne hit was nyght the Mortemer that  
 hade the wache for to kepe of the hoste that nyght  
 distourbeled the wache that no thing myght be doñ and  
 in the mene while the scottes stell bee nighte towarde  
 her ougne countre as faste as they myghte And so was the  
 kyng falsly betraied that wende that alle the treistoures  
 of his lande hade ben brought vn to anende and hit was  
 saide be fore Nou here 3e lordes hov treterously kyng  
 Edward was desceyued and hov meruayllously and boldely



Englonde in to þis tyme was neuȝr sayne So fayr Anost what  
 of Englyssmeñ and wat of Alyons and of men a ffotte þe  
 wych hordynyde hem for to fythe wyt þe Scottys þour eggyne  
 of syr harry of lancastyr and of Syr Iohn of henaud þat  
 wold goone ouȝr the watyr of wyth for to haue fouzte wyt  
 the Scottys But syr Roger of Mortymer consenyt nott her  
 to for he had priuilych take med of the Scottys hem for  
 to help þat þay myȝth come into her owne contre And þe  
 same mortymer counsellyd so much<sup>3</sup> Thomas of brothertoun  
 þat þe Erle marchall þat was kyng Edwardys vncler þat þe  
 forsayd thomas shul not Assenlyd at þat tyme vn to þe  
 Scottys And he Assentyd but he wist nott þe doying by l<sup>a</sup>  
 twene þe Scottys and þe forsayd mortymer þat had þe wech  
 to kep of the host þat myȝte<sup>b</sup> he dystroblyd the host wach  
 þat no thyng mysdoñ<sup>c</sup> And in the meñ wyll the chottys Stall  
 A way by nyth toward her owne contre as fast as thay myȝth  
 And so was þe kyng falsly dyssayuyd þat went all the  
 traytour of hys lond had be brouth vnto A ned<sup>d</sup> as befor  
 ys sayd Now her 3e lordys how trayturly kyng Edward was  
 dissauyd (fol. 122<sup>b</sup>) And how mewosly

---

<sup>3</sup>MS. has 6 minims for mu-.

the scottes deeden of werre ffor the same nyght Iames  
douglass w CC<sup>o</sup> men of armes riden þour<sup>3</sup> the hoste of kyng  
Edwarde the same nyght that the Scottes were schaped  
toward her ougne Countre as is aboue saide til that they  
comen to the kynges Pauelioun and quelled ther meny men  
in her beedes and criden somme nowarde Nawarde & anothir  
tyme adouglass adouglass Werefore the kyng that was in his  
Pauelioun and moch oþer folke was wondir sore affraiede  
but blessed be almy<sup>3</sup>ty god the kyng was nought taken and  
in grette perel was þoo the reame of Engelande And that  
nyght the mone schoñ ful cler and bright and for alle the  
kynges men the Scottes aschapede harmeles and in the morwe  
whene the kyng wyste that the Scottes wer aschaped in to  
her countre he was aschaped in to her countre he was wondir  
wrooth and sory and hertely wepte with his 3onge eigen and  
3iet wiste he nought whoo<sup>3</sup> hade done him that tresoun But  
that falsse tresoun was wel knowen agood Whille after as  
þe story telleth The kyng Edwarde come þoo a3en vn to 3orke  
ful sorweful and his hoste deþtede<sup>g</sup> and euery man wente in  
to his ougne countre with ful heuy and mornyng semblaunt  
And þe henaudes nome her leue and wente into her ougne  
countre And the kyng ffor her trauaille hougely heme  
rewardede And for enchesoun of that vyage the kyng hade  
despended moch of his tresour and wastede and in that tyme  
wer seen (fol. 78<sup>b</sup>) ij mones in the firmament<sup>h</sup> that on was  
cler and that other was derke as men my3te þo see þour<sup>3</sup>  
oute alle the worlde and grete debate was that same tyme a  
3een Pope Iohn þe xxij after seynt Peter was Pope And the  
Emperour of Almaigne þat made him Emperour a3ens the  
Popes wille þat þo helde his see at aueneoun Wherfor the  
Emperour made his crie at Rome and ordeignede anothir  
Pope that highte Nicholas that was afrer menour<sup>i</sup> and that  
was a3ens the Right of holi cherch wherfor he was cursed  
and the poure of that oþer pope sone was laide<sup>j</sup> ffor

---

3w- added by corr. in left margin of column.



the Scottys did wer for þe same ny3the þat the Scottys wer Iames doglas wyt CC me of Armys rydyng thour the host of the kyng Edward The same þat þe Scottys wer eschapyd toward her owne contre as ys Aboue sayd tell þat þay com to þe kyngis Paelun And kyillyd ther meny meñ in her beddys And crydyn som naward naward Anothyr A dugla a doglas wher for the kyng þat was in Paelun mad much sorow and much opyr folke wer ssor ferde but blessyd be all my3thy god the<sup>e</sup> was natt takyne And the gret perell was þo the reme of Englond and þat nyth þe mone schone full brythe for all þe kyngys mene þe Scotys eschapyd harmules And one amorow wene þe kyng wist þat þay wer esschapyd to her howne contre he was wondyr Sorry and full hertely wepe wyt hys 3ong eyeñ And 3it wist he no ho had done þo tresone But þat same tresoun was well knowyne a good whyll aftyrward as the Story tellyth The kyng Edward com a3ene to yorke full sorowfully and hys host departyd and euyry mañ went home in to hys owne contre wyt A Sorry cher and þe henadus toke her leff and whent hom to her owne Contre And the kyng for her trawayll hugely hem rewardy And for enchosyne of that viage þe kyng had spend much of hys tressur and wastyd And in that tyme wer sene ij monys in the fyrmament<sup>4</sup> the tone was cler þe todyr was darke as meñ myth þo See þourch out all þe world And a gret debatt was the same tyme by the pope xxij aftyr sent Petyr was Pope and the emperour of almayne þat mad hyme (fol. 123<sup>a</sup>) Emperour a3enst þe popys wyll þat held hys See at Avyouñ wher for þe Emperour mad hys cry at rome 7 hordayne anothyr pop þat hy3th Nycolas þat was a frer menour And þat was a S<sup>a</sup> yenst þe Ryrth of holy chyrch wher for he was crussyd<sup>b</sup> And the pour of þat opyr pope laydoñ And for

<sup>4</sup>Superscript -t to indicate abbreviation.

enchesoun that suech maner mervailles wer seen men saide  
that þe worlde was neigh att anende

Hov Of<sup>k</sup> the deth of kyng Edward Carnariuan sm<sup>l</sup> tyme kyng  
of engelonde Capitulo C<sup>o</sup> Centesimo Quinto 7c

And nov go we a 3ene to sere Edward of Carnaravan that  
was kyng sumtyme of Engelonde and was putte adoun of his  
dignite allas for his trebulacioun and sorwe him be fille  
þoru3 false counceile that he leuede and truste oppon  
hame to muche that afterwarde wer distroied þoru3 her  
falsenes as god wolde And this Edward of Carnarivan was  
in the Castell of Berkelee vndir the kepeynge of Sir  
moryce of Berkele and of Sir Iohn of Mautrauers and to  
heme he made his conplaynt of his sorwe and of his decesse<sup>m</sup>  
and ofte tymes he axede of his wardeines what he hade  
treespaced a3enes dame Isabelle his wyffe and sere Edward  
his sone that was newe y made kyng that they wolde nought  
visite him Tho answerde on of his wardeynes Mi worthi  
lorde displese 3owe nouhte that y schal 3ou telle þe  
Chesoun<sup>n</sup> ys for hit es doñ hame to vndirstonde that if  
my lady 3our wyff come eny thyng ne3y 3ou that 3e wolde  
her strangle and quelle and al so that 3e wolde doon to  
my lorde 3our soñ Tho answerde he with simple cher and  
saide allas allas am y nouht in prisoun And alle at þour<sup>o</sup>  
ougne wille nov god hit wot y þouht hit neuer And nov y  
wolde that y wer deed so wolde god that y wer for thañ  
wer al my sorwe paste Hit was nouht longe after that þe  
kyng<sup>4</sup> þourgh counsele of the Mortemer graunted the Warde  
And the kepper<sup>p</sup> of Sir Edward (fol. 79<sup>a</sup>) his fadir to  
sere Thomas Toiourneye 7 to the forsaide sire ihon  
Mautrauers þourgh the kynges lettere and putte outt  
hoolich the forsaide sere Morice of the warde of the kyng

---

<sup>4</sup>Underlined in black.



enchosyne þat shuld<sup>c</sup> merwelus weryne sent meñ had went  
þat þe world had ben at Anend

Of the deth of kyng Edward of Carnarivan som tyme kyng  
of Englonde Capitulo CC xv

And now go we A3ene to kyng Edward of Carnarryvañ þat was  
kyng sum tyme in Inglond and was put done of hys dyngnite  
Allas þe trybulacioun 7 sorow hem be fyll for hys deth  
þurch false counsell þat he louyd<sup>d</sup> and trustyd vppoñ hem  
to much<sup>1</sup> þat aftyrward wer distroyd þurch her falsnesse  
as god wold And thys Edward of Carnarywane was in the  
castell of brekle<sup>e</sup> vndyr the kepyng of Syr Mors of barkle  
7 to syr Iohn I Matrauers And to hym he mad hys complaynte  
of hys dysshes And oft tymys he axid of hys wardens wat  
he had trespassyd a 3enst dam Isabell hys wyff and Edward  
my Sone þat was new mad kyng þat þay wold nott vysett  
hyme Tho Answerd oon of wardons and sayd my worthy lorde  
dysplesse 3ou nou3te The caust<sup>2</sup> ys þat yt is to done hem  
to vndyrstond þat and my lady your wyff come ny3e 3ow þat  
3e wold her strangell 7 quill<sup>f</sup> And to my lord 3our Sone  
also Tho answerd he wyt (fol. 123<sup>b</sup>) Sympyll<sup>3</sup> cher and  
sayd allas allas am I nott in presone at 3our wyll now  
god hit wott I thou3t hyt neuyr and now wold þe god þat  
I wer ded ffor þan all my sorow his passyd It was nott  
long aftyr þat þe kyng þourch consell of Mortymer grantyd  
tho the wer<sup>g</sup> and þe kepyng of Syr Edward the fadur to  
syr Thomas Thomordoun to þe forsayd syr Iohn Mawtrawers  
þour þe kyngys lettyr And put out holych the forsayd Syr  
morys of hys ward of the hold kyng

---

Fol. 123 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 6 minims for mu-. <sup>2</sup>Poss. -c, not -t.  
<sup>3</sup>-p- over long -s- by scribe.

and thei nome and ladde the kyng vn to the Castell of Corffe the whiche castel the kyng hattede as any deth and they kepte him ther safelyh tyl hit come vnto seynt Mathewes day in september in the 3ere of grace M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxvij that the forseide sere Thomas Mortemer sent the maner of the deth hov and in what maner he scholde be doñ to be dep and anoñ as the forsaide Thomas and Iohn hade seyn the letter and the comaundement thei made kyng Edward of Carnariuan goode cher 7 goode solace as thei myghte at that soupere and no thing the kyng wiste of her trechorie And whenne tyme was for to bedde the kyng be kyng wente to his beede and lay and sleppte faste and as the kyng lay and slepte the tretetouresly<sup>a</sup> fals for sworne a 3ens her homage 7 here feaute come priuiliche in to the kynges chambre and here companye with ham and leiden an houghe table on his wombe And with men pressede and helde faste adoune the iiij corneres of the table vp on his body wher with the goode man a woke and was wondir sor a drade for to been ded there and slayn and tournede his bodi vpsodouñ tho nome the falce traitoures an horn and putt hit in his fundement as dep as thei myghte And nome as spite<sup>b</sup> of Coper brennynge and putte hit pour3 the horn in to his body and ofte tyme rollede ther with his bowelles and so they quelled, here lorde that nothing was perceyued And after he was enterede atte Gloucestre

Howe kyng Edward spousede Philip the Erles doughter of Henaude atte yorke Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup> decimo Sexto

And after cristus masse nexte sewynge sire Iohn of Henaude brought with him Philipe his doughter that was Erle of henaude his nece in to Engelande And kyng Edward spousede here att yorke with michel honour (fol. 79<sup>a</sup>b) and sere Iohn of Hothum bisshop of Ely and sere wylliam of Milttoun Erchebisshop of yorke songe the masse in soneday in the



And tha nomb hyme and led hyme to þe castell of Coyf þe  
 wych call<sup>4</sup>yd castell the kyng hatyth as ony dethe And  
 they kep hym ther saue tyll we combe to Sent Mathewys  
 day in Septembyr In þe yer of grace M<sup>l</sup> CCC xvij That þe  
 forsayd syr Thomas Mortymer sent þe maner how and in wat  
 maner he shuld be put to deth And anone as þe forsayd  
 Iohn and thomas had send<sup>h</sup> thys lettyr and the comandement  
 thay mad the kyng Edward of Carnariwañ good scher and good  
 solasse as the knyzt myzt<sup>i</sup> And nothyng the kyng mad of hys  
 traytors And when tyme was þe kyng went vnto hys bed and  
 slep fast And as he lay aslep the traytors false for  
 Sworne A 3enst her homage and her fealte com preuyliche  
 vnto þe chambyr and her company wyt heme and leyd han  
 huge table oppoñ hys wombe and held hyt fast done wyt meñ  
 þe iiij Corners of the tabyll vppoñ hys body wher wyt þe  
 kyng awoke and was wondyr sor adrad to be dede and turnyd  
 hys body vppso downe The false traytors rosse wood  
 teyrantys put and horne into hys fondement as depp as  
 thay myzte And nome a Spett of copor brennyng and Put hit  
 þorw þe horne in to hys body and oft ty (fol. 124<sup>a</sup>) mys  
 Rollyt þer wyt hys bowellys and so þay kyllyd her lord þat  
 nothyng was persaywyd and aftyr he was in teryd at  
 Glowcestyr

Howe kyng Edward spowside Philip̄ the Erlis douztir of  
 henaude at yorke Capitulo CC xvj

And at Cristmes nex sueyng syr Iohn of henaud brouth wyt  
 hym Phylip hys broþers douztyr þat was þe Erle of henaud  
 in to Englonde and kyng Edward spowsyd her at yorke wyt  
 much honour 7 syr Iohn of hothyun byschop of Ely 7 syr  
 wlliam of Meltoun Arssbyschop of 3orke song þe messe in  
 the

<sup>4</sup>callyd stroked out; castell inserted above by scribe.

euen of conuersion of seynt Poule in the 3ere of grace  
 M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxvij Butte for enchesoun that the kyng was but  
 3ongge and tendere of age whenne he was crounede and many  
 wronges was doñ while his fader lyuede for enchesoun that  
 he trowede the counceleres that wer fals aboute him þat  
 councelede him to doñ other wise þan resoun wolde wherfor  
 grett harme was þoo vn to the reame and to the kyng And  
 alle men directede the kynges dede and hit was nought soo  
 almyghty god wote Werfore hit was ordeignede att the  
 kynges crounyng that þe kyng for tendir of his age  
 scholde be gouernede be xij grette lordes of Engelande  
 with þoute the Which no thing scholde be doñ that es to  
 seye the Ersshebisshoþ of kaunterbury the bisshoþ of  
 yorke the bisshoþ of wynchestre and the bisshoþ of  
 hertforde and the Erle of lancastre and the Erle Marchal  
 and the Erle of kent that werr the kynges Vncles And the  
 Erle of Garrenne sere Thomas wake sere Henry of Percy  
 sere Oliuer of yngham and Iohn of Roos barouñes alle they  
 7 thes wore y sworn treueliche for to counceile the kyng  
 as thei scholde answeere euerich 3ere in the parlement of  
 that scholde be doñ in the tyme of that gouernaile<sup>c</sup> but  
 that ordinaunce was soñ vndoñ and þat was moche lose and  
 harme to Engelande ffor the kyng and alle the lordes  
 that scholde gouerne him werr gouernede and reulede after  
 the kynges modir dame Isabelle and by sere Roger the  
 Mortemer And as thei wolde al thing was doñ both a monge  
 hye and lowe And they nomen vn to hame castelles tounes  
 landes and rentys in grett harme and losse vnto the croune  
 and of the kynges astatte al so oute of mesur

Howe the pees was made be twen (fol. 79<sup>b</sup>a) the Engelish  
 men and the Scottes and also of the iustefyinge of traile  
 bastioun Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xvij<sup>to</sup>



Ewyne of the Conversacioun of Sent Poull in þe 3er of  
 grasse a M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxviij But for enchosyne þat þe kyng was  
 but yong and tendyr of age when he was crownyd meny  
 wrongys wer done whylis hys fadyr lyved for enchosyn̄ þat  
 he trowes þe conselours þat wer false A bout hyme þat  
 consell hyme to done othyr wysse þan resone wold wher  
 for gret harme was to þe reme and to þe kynge and to  
 All men̄ directyd yt þe kynges ded And yt was not so  
 Almysty god woot wherfor hyt was hordynyd at þe kyngys  
 crowyng þat the kyng for tendyrnes of hys hag shuld be  
 gouernyd by xij gret lordys of Englund wyth oute the  
 wyche no thyng shuld be do þat ys to say þe erssbysshop  
 of cantyrbury þe ersbysshop of yorke þe byschop of  
 wenchestyr the byshop of hertford and þe Erle of  
 lancastyr And all thes wer Sworn̄ truly for to consell  
 þe kyng And þay shuld answer euyre yer in the parlemente  
 of that shuld be done in þe tyme of that governall But  
 þat ordenance was sone ondone and þat was much losse to  
 all Englund (fol. 124<sup>b</sup>) for the kyng and all þe lordys  
 shuld gouernyd hym wer gouernyd and led aftyr þe kyngys  
 modyr dame Isabell 7 syr Roger mortymer and as thay dyd  
 all thyng was done among hih and lawe And þay nomen̄ to  
 hem Castellys and townys londys and rentys in gret harm  
 and losse vnto þe crone and of the kyngys state out of  
 mesur

Howe the pese was made be twene the englisshmen 7 the  
 Scottis And also of the iustifijng of Troilbostoun  
 Capitulo CC xvj

The kyng Edwarde att wittsountyde þe secounde 3ere of his regne þourgh counceill of his modir and sere Roger the Mortemere ordeignede a parlement atte Norhamptone atte the which parlement the kyng þoru3 hire counceill and no nothir of the lande with ynne age<sup>d</sup> graunted to been accorded with the Scottes in this maner that alle the feautes and the homages that the Scottes scholde don vn to the croune of Engeland for 3af hame vn to the Scottes for euermor by his charter enselede And ferþermore an endenture was made of the Scottes vnto kyng Edwarde that was kyng Edwardes sone the which endenture thei callede hit Ragaman<sup>e</sup> in the which were conteynede alle the homages and feautes ferste of the kyng of Scottlond and of alle the prelatys Erles and baroun̄s of the Reame of Scottlond with here sealles sette þere onne and oþer charteres and remembraunce3 that kyng Edwarde and his barounes hade of here righte in the reame of Scottlond hit was for 3eue heme a3ene hollych and al so with the blake croice of Scottlond<sup>f</sup> the which goode kyng Edwarde conquerede in Scottlond and brought hit outte of the abbay of Stone that es aful preciouise reliqe And al so further more hee releessed and for 3afe alle the landes that þee Baroun̄s of Engelande hade in Scottlond be olde conqueste And this pees for to halde and laste the Scottes the Scottes<sup>g</sup> were bounde to the kyng in xxx. þousand ponde of siluer to been paide with in[e]<sup>1</sup> þre 3ere that es to saie eueri 3ere x þousand ponde by euen porciounes And ferþermore al this they speke be tuene the parties aboue saide þat Daid Dritonantier that was Robert þe Brus his soñe the false tiraunt and (fol. 79<sup>b</sup>) traitour and fals for sworn a 3ens his oth þat a ros a3ens his lige me<sup>2</sup> lord þe noble kyng Edwarde and falslich made him kyng of Scotlond as ys saide before and his sone

---

Fol. 79 <sup>1</sup>-e erased. <sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



The kyng at wytsonday þe ij 3er of hys reigne þurch  
 consell of hys modyr and syr Roger mortymer ordynyt a  
 parlemente at Northamtoun att wych parlemente þe kyng  
 þurch her consayll and none othyr wytin þe lond grauntyd  
 to be Accordyd wyt þe Scottys in þis maner þat all þe  
 fealtes 7 homage þat þe Scottys shuld done vn to þe  
 crowne of Englund gaff hym to þe Scotys for euyrmor by  
 hys charter enselyd And forthermor an endentur was mad of  
 þe Scottys vn to þe kyng Edward to þe kyng herry oon þe  
 wyche þe wych endentur thay callyd Ragman in the wyche  
 wer all the homagys 7 fyrst þe kyng of Scotlond and of  
 þe prelatys Erls and barons of þe reme of Englund wyt all  
 þeyr Selys set þer hone and othyr charctyrs<sup>1</sup> 7 remembrauns  
 þat þe kyng Edward and hys barons had of her ry3te of þe  
 rythe of þe reme of Scotlond hyt was 3euyñ hyme A3ene  
 holllych And also þe blake Crosse of Scotlond þe wyche þe  
 good kyng Edward conquerd in Scotlond and bruth hyt out  
 of þe Abbay of stone þat ys a full precyus relleke And  
 also he relesyd and for 3aff all þe loñdys þat þe barons  
 of Englund had in Scotlond of hold conqueste // And thys  
 Pers<sup>b</sup> for to be hold 7 last þe Scotys (fol. 125<sup>a</sup>) wer  
 bond to þe kyng in xxx M<sup>1</sup> ponde by euen porcons<sup>1</sup> // And  
 ferþyrmor ouyr all thys day spake by twene the partyis  
 aboue sayd That Dauyd Drytameur þas<sup>a</sup> was þe Brus son þe  
 false tyrant and traytur and false for Sworne a3enst<sup>2</sup>  
 hys oth þat a Rosse a3enst hys lyge lord þe nobyll kyng  
 Edward and falslych mad hyme kyng of Scotlond as ys sayd  
 be for and hys sone

---

Fol. 124 <sup>1</sup>Otiose hook on -t- like yr abbreviation-mark.  
 Fol. 125 <sup>1</sup>au/a abbreviation-mark over -n-. <sup>2</sup>Superscript  
 -n-.

scholde be kyng of Scottlonde that was of age of v 3ere  
 And so pourgh here corsede councel þis dauid spoused  
 att Berewike dame Ione att Tour þat was kyng Edwardes  
 sister as the geste telleþ oppon Marie Maudaleyñ day the  
 3er of grace M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxviij to grete harme and enpeiryng  
 to alle the kynges blorde<sup>h</sup> Wherofe that gentil lady come  
 allas the tyme ffor wondir moch was that fair damesele  
 dispargede sith that sche was married a 3ens alle the  
 comune assent of the lordes of Engelsonde And fro þe tyme  
 that Brutte hade conquerede Albioun and namyde<sup>3</sup> the lande  
 after his ougne name Britaigne that nov es called  
 Engelsonde after the name of Engist and so was the ream  
 of Scottlonde holden of the reame of Engelsonde and of  
 the croune be feaute and by homage ffor Brut conquerede  
 that londe and 3afe hit to Albanac his seconde sone And  
 he callede þe lande Albanye after his name so that the  
 heires that comen after him helden of Brutte and of his  
 heires the kynges of Britaigne be feaute and homage And  
 fro that tyme vn to this Edward kyng the reame of  
 Scottlonde was holden of the reame of Engelsonde be feaute<sup>3</sup>  
 and seruice<sup>3</sup> aboue saide as the Cronecles of Engelsond and  
 of Scottlonde berrep wittenesse more pleynerly and  
 accursed be the tyme þat this parlement was ordeignede  
 at Norhamptoun for ther þoru<sup>3</sup> false<sup>i</sup> the kyng was þere  
 falsly disheritede and 3et he was with inne age And that  
 whenne kyng Edward was putte a doune of his rialte of  
 Engelsonde 3et men putte him nouht owte of the feautes  
 and seruice<sup>3</sup> of the reame of Scotlonde and of the  
 fraunchises disheriede for (fol. 80<sup>a</sup>) euermore And  
 natheles the grete lordes of Engelsonde were a 3ens to  
 conferme the Pees and þe Trewes aboue saide saf only the  
 quene Isabelle that was the kynges modir Edward And the  
 Bisshop of Ely and the lorde Mortemer But reson and lawe

---

<sup>3</sup>By corr. over erasure.



shuld be kyng of Scotlond þat was of xv 3er and so þourch  
her conseyll þis Dauyd spousyd at barwyke dame Ioñ was þe  
kyng Edward sustyr oppoñ mary Mawdeleyne day in the yer  
of grace a M<sup>1</sup> CCC vxxviiij<sup>3</sup> to gret harm And enpeyryng to  
All þe kyngys blod Allas the tyme for wondyr much was  
þat fayr damsell dysparygd syth þat Sche was maryid  
a3enst all comens Assente and all þe lordys of Englund  
And fro the tym þat brute had conquerd Albyoun And named  
þe lond aftyr hys owne name Bretayne þat now ys callyd  
Englund aftyr þe name of Engyst And so was þe reme of  
Scotlond holden of þe Reme of Englund 7 of þe Crowne be  
fealte and homage ffor conquestyd þe lond and gaff yt to  
Albenake hys second sone And he callyd þe lond albany  
Aftyr hys sone<sup>4</sup> name So þat þe heys þat com of hym held  
yt of brut and of hys hers þe kyngys of bretayne be  
fealte 7 homage and fro þat tym vnto kyng Edward þe  
Reme of Scotlond was holdyne of þe reme of Englund And  
þerfor Acursyd be the tyme þat þis parlement was holdene  
at Northamtoun for þere purch false counsell þe kyng was  
falsly dyschented and he wyt in age And 3it (fol. 125<sup>b</sup>)  
when kyng Edward was downe of hys ryalte of Englund 3it  
men put hym at nouzte out of þe fialte and serwysse of  
the reme of Scotlond and of the ffraunchesys dysshertyd  
hym for euyr mor And netherles the gret lordys of Englund  
wer a3enst to conferme þe pees and the trewys above sayd  
saue hone quen Esabell that was þe kyngys mothyr and þe  
byschop of Ely and lord mortumer But resoun And law

---

<sup>3</sup>y stroked out. <sup>4</sup>Stroked out.

wolde nought that afyneal pes scholde be made be twen ham  
with oute þe comune assent of Engelande

Of the debate that was betwen Quen Isabelle & sere henry  
Erle of lancastre and of leycestre and of the Ridinge of  
Bedforde Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> decimo octauo

Whenne the forseide Daud had spoused dame Iohne of the  
Tour in the touñ of Berewik as before es saide the Scottes  
in de dispite<sup>a</sup> of the Englisshmen callede dame Iohne the  
countesse mak pees for the cowardisse pees for to ordeigne  
but the kynges persone bare the wytt and the blame with  
wronge of the makynge of the accorde and alle was done  
pour3 the Quene and Roger the Morte<sup>b</sup> And hit was nought  
longe after that the Quen Isabell ne toke in to her ougne  
hande al the lorde schip of Poumfret and al most alle the  
landes þat were of value that perteynede vn to the croune  
of Engelande so that the kyng had nought forto dispende  
but of his Vsues<sup>c</sup> and of his escheker ffor the Quene  
Isabelle and the Mortemer had a grette meyne of hir  
retenaunce that folwede euermore the kynges Courte and  
wente and toke the kynges pris for here penneworthes att  
good chepe<sup>d</sup> werfore the countre that thei comen in were  
ful sore adrade and almost distroied Tho be goun the  
countre of Engelande for to hate Isabelle the quene that  
so moche louede her whene scho come a 3en for to pursewe  
þe false treitoures the Spenseres fro fraunce þat same  
tyme that falce treitour Robert of hollonde þat betraiede  
his lorde sere Thomas of lancastre was þo deliuerede out  
of prisoun and was wondir priuee with the Quen Isabelle  
and al so wiþ the Mortemer but that availed him but litil  
for he was take att Michelmesse that nexte come after as  
he roode towarde the Quene Isabelle to london and sere  
Thomas whither smote of his heede be sithes the Touñ of  
Seynt Albones and this sere Thomas duelled þo with sere



wold no3te þat a fynall pesse shuld me<sup>b</sup> mad by twne heme  
wytout coment A Sent of Englund

Of þe debate þat was be twene [...] <sup>5</sup> and sir harry Erle  
of lancastre 7 of the riding of Bedford Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xviiij

When the forsayd dauyd had spousyd dame Iohn of the tur  
in the towne of berwek as be for hys sayd þe Scottys  
dyspyte of Englysmeñ callyd dam Iohn þe countes make pesse  
for þe cowardys pesse for to horden But þe kyngys persone  
bare þe whit and the blame wyt wronge of the makyng of þe  
acord for all was done purch þe Quene of the makyng of  
the Acord And þis syr Thomas dwellyt wyt Syr

---

<sup>5</sup>Space left for name.

(fol. 80<sup>a</sup>b) henry Erle of lancastrę and he putte him in hidyng ffor drede of the quene ffor scho louede him wondir moche and praide vn to the kyng for him that the same Thomas muste be exiled oute of Engelande and þe noble Erle sir henry of lancastrę hade ofte tymes herde the comune clamour of the englissh men of þe mychel disseses that wer doñ in Engelande And al so for diuerse wronges that were doñ among the comune peple of which the kyng bar þe blame with wronge for he nas but fulle 3onge and tendir of age and thoughte as good man for to do a way and slake<sup>e</sup> the sclaunder of the kynges persone if that he myghte in any maner wisse so as the kyng was ther offe no thing guilty whereof he was in perele of life and leme And so he assemblede alle his retynaunte<sup>f</sup> and wente and spake to heme of the kynges honour And al so for to amende his astate and sire Thomas of Brouthertoun Erle Marchalle and sere Edmund of wodestoke that werr the kynges vncles and al so men of london maden her oth him for to mayntene in that same quarell And her cause was this that the kyng scholde holde his house holde and his mayne as perteynede vn to a kyng for to done and haue also his rialte and that the quene Isabelle scholde delyuere out of her hande vn to the kynges honde all maner lordeschipes rentes tounes and castelles that perteynede vn to the croune of Engelande and that scho scholde lyue with the pride part of the rentis of Engelande as othir Quenes hade done before her and with no nothir þing And al so Sire Roger Mortemer scholde duelle vp on his ougne londis for the which landes he hade holpen disherite moche peple so that the comune peple were nought distroied þoru3 here wrongful takynge And al so to enquer hov and be whame the kyng was betrayede 7 falslich desceyuede atte Stanhoþe and þourgh whos counceill that the Scottes wente away be nyghte fro the kyng And al so hov and þoruh whos counceile the



Erl of lancastyr and he put hym in hydyng for dred of þe quene Isabell for che louyd hym wondyr muche And sche prayd þe kyng þat he myzt exilyd out of Englonð And þe nobyll Erle syr<sup>6</sup> harry of lancastyr had oft tymes herd þe clamour of þe Englysmen of þe much dysesyþ þat wer done in Englonð And also for dyuers wrongys þat wer done a mong the comen pepyll þe wyche þe kyng bar þe blame wyt (fol. 126<sup>a</sup>) wronge for he nas but tendyr of age and þout as a good man for to Away<sup>a</sup> þe claundor of þe kyngis persone 3if he myzt in ony maner wysse wher for he was perrell of lyff and lymbe And so he assemblyd of hys retenue and went 7 spake to hyme of the kyngys honour and to Amend hys astatt And syr Thomas brothyrtoun Erle marchall and syr Edmond of woodstoke þat wer þe kyngys hucolys<sup>b</sup> And also me of lond<sup>c</sup> madyne her hothe heme for s<sup>ld</sup> to mayntyn in the same quarerell And her cause was þis þat þe kyng shuld hold hys howshold and hys mayne as pertaynid to A kyng for to downe and to haue also hys ryalte And þat the Quene Isabell shuld delyuer out of her honde into þe kyngys hond all maner of lordschippis rentys townys and castellys þat pertynid to þe crowne of Englonð þat Sche shull lyve wyt þe j<sup>e</sup> thyrd parte of Englonde as othyr Quenys had done to for her and wyt none othyr thyng And also syr Roger Mortymer shuld dwell oppoñ hys owne londys for wyche lond he had desserryt much pepyll So þat þe comen pepyll wer nott distrud purch her wrongfull takyng And also enquer and how þe Emperour was be trayd and falsly dyssayuyd at Stanhope 7 þourch hosse consell þe Scottys went Away þe nyzte fro the kyng And also 7 þorch whos consell þe

---

<sup>6</sup>Inserted above by scribe. Fol. 126 <sup>1</sup>MS. has long s shape.



ordinaunce that was made atte coronacioun of kyng Edward  
 were put adoune that es to seyn that the kyng for  
 amendement and helpyng of the reame (fol. 80<sup>b</sup>a) and in  
 honour of him scholde be gouernede and rewled be xij the  
 gretteste and wysest lordes of thee Reame and with owten  
 hame scholde no thing be graunte<sup>d</sup> no done as be fore es  
 saide the whiche couenaunte<sup>3</sup> meruailuslyh was put adoun  
 fro the kynge Wherfor many harmes schames and repro<sup>u</sup>es  
 han falle to the kyng and to the reame that es to  
 vndirstande ffor as moche as Edward sum tyme kyng of  
 Engelande was ordeignede be assent of the comente<sup>g</sup> in  
 pleyn parlement for to be vndir the warde and gouernaunce  
 of henry Erle of lancastre his cosyn for saluacioun of  
 his body he was taken owt of þe castel of kenelworth ther  
 that he was in warde and þour<sup>3</sup> colour<sup>h</sup> of the quene  
 Isabelle and of the Mortemer with outen consent of any  
 parlement they nome and ladde him ther that neuer after  
 none of his kynrede myght wip him speke no see and after  
 treitrously nome and him mordrede ffor whos deth a foule  
 sclaunder aros þoru<sup>3</sup> out al cristene dome whenne hit was  
 done And al so alle the tresoure þat sere Edward of  
 Carnariuan hade lefte in many place<sup>3</sup> in Engelande and in  
 walys wer wasted and borne away with owten the wille of  
 kyng Edward his sone in distruccioun of him and of his  
 folke Al so þour<sup>3</sup> whos counsel þat the kyng 3afe vp the  
 kyngdome of Scottlonde for the which reame the kynges  
 auncestres hade ful sore trauailled and so dede many a  
 nobile man for her righte and was deliuerede alle the  
 righte vn to dauid that was Robert þe Brus his sone that  
 no right hade vn to thee reame as al the worlde hit wiste  
 And al soo be whame the charteres and remembraunce<sup>3</sup> þat  
 thei hade of the right of Scottlonde wer take oute of  
 the tresorie and taken to the Scottes þe kynges enemyes  
 to disherite sum<sup>i</sup> of him and of his successoures and to  
 grett harme of his liges and grette reprofe vn to alle



hordynauns þat was mad att<sup>2</sup> cornacioun of kyng Edward  
 wer put Adone þat ys to say þat þe kyng of Amendement  
 helpyng of the Reme and in honour of hyme shuld be rewlyd  
 and gouernyd by xij of the gretteste And þe wysyst lordys  
 of the reme And wyt out heme shuld (fol. 126<sup>b</sup>) nothyng  
 grauntyd and done as be for ys sayd þe wyche couernors  
 malyciosly wher put done from þe kyng wer for meny harms  
 Schamys and repreuys haue fall vn to þe kyng and to þe  
 Reme And þat ys for to vndyrstond for as much as Edward  
 kyng of Englund sum tyme be assent of þe comente in  
 playne parlement for to be vndurstond and þe ward and  
 gouernars harry Erle of lancastyr hys sone for Saluacioun  
 of hys body he h<sup>f</sup> was takyne out of the castell of  
 kenylworth and þourch consell of the quene Isabell and þe  
 mortymer wyt out concete of hone parlemente þey led hym  
 ther þat none of hys kenred w<sup>g</sup> Mythe wyt hyme speke And  
 aftyr traytusly morderd hyme ffor hosse dedth a full  
 clandyr Arosse þourch out all Crystendome when hyt was  
 done And also all the tresour þat syr Edward of  
 carnarryvañ had lyft in mo plasse in Englund and in  
 walys wer wastyd and borne A way wyt out þe wyll of kyng  
 Edward hys sone and distroccioun of hyme and of hys  
 folke And also þourch hosse consell þe kyng gaff vp de  
 kyndom of Scotlond for þe wyche þe kyngys hancetreis had  
 full sor truelyd and so dyd meny A nobyll mañ for hys  
 ry3te and þe rythe was delyuerd wyt Dauyd that was roberd  
 brucys sone that nothyng rythe had vn to the reme as all  
 þe world hyt wyst

---

<sup>2</sup>-t stroked out.

englissh men for euere more Al so wherfore dame Iohne of  
 the Tour the kynges sister Edwardes was dispargede and  
 mariede vn to Daid that was Robert the Brus his sone  
 that was attraitoure (fol. 80<sup>b</sup>) and enemy vn to  
 Engelande And pour3 whos counceill scheo was take in to  
 our enemyes handes owt of Engelande And in the mene tyme  
 whiles the goode Erle Henry of lancastre and his companye  
 nomen counceille howe thes poyntes aboue saide myghte be  
 amendede vn to the worschip of the kyng and to his  
 profite and to the profite al so to the liges The Quen  
 Isabelle pour3 coniettynge and sotelte 7 al so of the  
 mortemer lette ordeigne aparlement atte Salesbury  
 [.....]<sup>1</sup> And atte þe same parlement Mortemer was made  
 Erle of þe Marche azens alle the barounes wille of  
 Engelande in preiudice of the kyng and of his croune  
 And sere Iohn of Eltham the kynges brothir was gerte with  
 a swerde of Cornuaille and þo was callede Erle of  
 Cornewaille And euermor the Quen Isabelle so moch  
 procuredede a3en her sone the kyng that scheo hade the  
 warde of the forsaide sere Edwardes and of his landes And  
 at that parlement the Erle of lancastre wolde nouht come  
 but ordeignede alle here<sup>j</sup> pouere a 3ens the Quene Isabelle  
 and the Mortemer and men of london ordeignede heme for to  
 helpe with vj C men of armes Whene the quene Isabelle  
 wiste of þe doynge scheo swore be god and be his names  
 fulle angrely that in euel tyme he þough vp on þoo poyntes  
 Theo sente the Quene Isabelle and the Mortemere aftire  
 here retenev and after the kynges retenue so that þei  
 hade ordeignede amonges heme an houghe hoste And þei  
 counceillede the kyng so that vp on a nyghte þei reden  
 xxiiij mylle towarde bedforde þere that the Erle of  
 lancastre was with his companye and þoughte to haue him  
 distroied And þat nyghte scho rode be sydes the kyng her

---

Fol. 80 <sup>1</sup>Long erasure approx. half a line in length.



The Quene Isabell pourh coniectyng of the mortymer lett  
 hordene a parlemente at Salusbury And att þe same parlement  
 þe mortymer was mad Erle of the Marche aʒenst all þe barons  
 well of Englund in preuydice of the kyng and of hys crowne  
 And syr Iohn̄ of Elthame þe kyngis brothyr was gyrt wyt A  
 Swerd of Cornuell (fol. 127<sup>a</sup>) And þo he was callyd Erle  
 of cornuall and euyr mor þe quene Isabell so mich procuryd  
 aʒenst her Sone þe kyng þat Sche had þe ward of the forsayd  
 Edward and of hys londys And at þat parlement þe Erle of  
 lancastyr wold nott come but hordynyd all hys Pour a  
 ʒenste þe Quene Isabell 7 the mortymer And men of london  
 hordynyd for to help hym wyt vj C men of harmes when  
 Quene Isabell wyst Sche Swor by god and by hy<sup>a</sup> namys<sup>1</sup>  
 ffull Angyrly in þat ewyll tyme he þouʒte vppoñ de ponttys  
 þo Send the Quene Isabell 7<sup>2</sup> þe mortymer aftyr her retenewe  
 and aftyr þe kyngys Retenewe so þat þay hordynyd a monges  
 heme an huge host and s<sup>3b</sup> Concellyd amongys heme þe kyng  
 so þat vppoñ a nyʒte þay ryddyne xxiiij meyll toward  
 bedford þer þat the Erle of lancastyr was in hys compane  
 And þouch<sup>c</sup> haue heme dystroyd And that nyʒte she rod be  
 side þe kyng her

---

Fol. 127 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 2 minims for -m-; macron over -y- poss. indicates omitted minim. <sup>2</sup>Inserted above by scribe.  
<sup>3</sup>MS. has long s shape.

sone as a knyght armede for drede of deth And hit was done to kyng Edwarde to vndirstande þat the Erle henry of lancastre and his companye wolde haue distroiede the kyng and his councele for euermore wherfor the kyng was sumdel towardes henry heuy<sup>k</sup> and anoyede whenne the Erle Marchale and the Erle of kent the kynges brothir herde of this tydinges they (fol. 81<sup>a</sup>) ryden so in message be twen ham and the kyng þat the kyng grauntede heme his pees to the Erle henre of lancastre for acerteyn raumsoun of xj M<sup>l</sup> pounde but that was neuere paide afterwarde And þese were the lordes that helde with sere henrye of lancastre Sire henry Bemunde sere ffouk fitz wareyn Sire Thomas Roselyen sere william Trussel sere Thomas whiter and aboute an hundrede of knyghtes mo þat were to ham consentynge and alle þo wer exileded þourgh counsel of Quene Isabelle and of the Mortemer ffor the Mortemer coueytede for to haue here landes if he myghte þour3 any maner coneitynge for he was so coueitous and hade so moche his wille and þat was grete pytte

Howe kyng Edwarde wente ouer the see for to Done his homage vn to the kyng of fraunce for the Duchie of Giene  
Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> x<sup>o</sup> viij<sup>o</sup>

Hit was nouht longe after that þe kyng of ffraunce þour3 counsel of his dosseperis sente to kyng Edwarde of Engelande that he scholde come to Paris and don his homage as resoun hit wolde for the duchie of Gyene And so þour3 consent of the lordes of Engelande kyng Edwarde wente ouer the see att Ascencioun day he come to Paris the iij 3ere of his regne for to done his homage to the kyng of ffraunce and the kyng vnderfongede his homage ande made mochil yoie and worschipe But ere kyng Edwarde hade made his homage hastely hee was sente a 3ene in to Engelande þourgh þe quene Isabelle his modir and anon



Sone as a kny3th harmed for dred of dethe And hyt was done þe kyng Edward to vndyrstond þat þe Erle of lancastyr wold haue dystroid þe kyng and hys counsell for euyrmor wher for þe kyng was som dell heuy toward hym And mevyd // Whene þe Erle Marchall and þe Erle of kent herd of thys tydyng þay rydene so in messag be twhen heme þat þe kyng grandtyd hys pesse to þe Erle of lancastyr for certen raunson of A xj M<sup>1</sup> pound but þat was neuyr payd aftyrward and þes wer þe lordys þat held wyt syr harry Bemond And syr fouke ffitzwaren and syr Thomas Roselyn and syr wylliam trussell syr Thomas wythyr and about An C kny3tys moo þat wer to hyme consentyng and all wer Exilyd (fol. 127<sup>b</sup>) þourch consell of the quene and of the mortymer for þe mortymer couyd to haue her londys 3ef he my3t be ony conyctyng for he was to couetus and had to much hys wyll and was gret pete

Howe Edmond-of-woodstok<sup>4</sup> kyng Edward went ovir the see for to do his homage to the kyng of ffraunce for the duche of Guyen Capitulo CC xix

It was not long aftyr þat þe kyng of fraunce þourch consell of hys dusse persse sent to kyng Edward of Englund þat he shuld come to don hys homage as resone hyt wold ffor the duke of Guyen And so þurch consente of þe lordys of Englonde kyng Edward went ouyr the See And at þe Assencioun he come to parysse þe iij 3er of hys Reigne forto don hys homag vn to þe kynge of fraunce And þe kyng vndyrfong hys homage wyt much Ioy and worschyp but or kyng Edward had mad hys homage hastely he was sent Agayne into Englund þurche þe quen Isabell hys modyr and so

---

<sup>4</sup> Stroked out in red.

hastely he come a 3een in to Engelonde oppon wittsonday  
with outen any takynge leue of the kyng of ffr~~an~~ce  
wherfor he was wondir wroothe

Howe sere Roger the Mortemer bare him soo proudelich and  
so heigh Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> x<sup>o</sup> nono 7c

And nov schulle 3e her of Sir Roger the Mortemere of  
wyngesmore that desirede and coueitede to ben att anhegy  
state so that thee kyng grauntede him to be called Erle  
of the March pourgh out all his lordeschipe And he be come  
so proude and so hauten<sup>a</sup> that he wolde lese and for sake  
pe name that his auncestre3 had euer (fol. 81<sup>a</sup>b) be fore  
And for that enchesoun he lete him calle Erle of the  
March and none of the comunes of Engelonde durste calle  
him no nothir name for he was callede pourgh oute the  
kynges crie<sup>b</sup> pat men scholde calle him Erle of the March  
and the Mortemer po bar him so hauten and so proude that  
wondir hit was to wytte And al so disgyssede him with  
wondir riche clothis oute of al maner resoun both of  
schapyng 7 of weryng whereof the englissh men hadde  
grett wondir hov and in what maner he my3te contreue or  
fynde suech maner pride and bei seide amonges hem alle  
comunely that his pride scholde nought longe endure And  
the same tyme sere Geffray the Mortemer the 3onger<sup>1</sup> that  
was the Mortemeres soñe lete him calle kyng of folye<sup>c</sup>  
and so hit fille afterwarde in dede for he was so fulle  
of pride and of wrechedenesse that he helde arounde  
table<sup>d</sup> in walis to alle men that pider wolde come and  
countrefetede the maner and doynge of kyng Arthures table  
but openly he faillede ffor the noble kny3t Arthur was  
moste worthi lorde of renoun that was in alle the worlde  
in his tyme and 3iet come neuer no swich after him for

---

Fol. 81 <sup>1</sup>-r by corr. in right margin.



he come in to Englonde wyt out any takyng leve of þe kyng  
of fraunce wherfor he was wrothe

Howe sire Roger Mortemere bare hym so prowde and so hihe  
Capitulo CC xx

And now shull 3oue her of syr Roger of Mortymer of wygmore  
þat desyryd to be at hih astatte so þat þe kyng grauntyd  
heme to be callyd Erle of þe Marche purch out all hys  
lordschype 7 he be come so proud and so hawteñ þat he  
wold for sake þe name of þe mortymer and of hys Auncestirs  
And for þat inchoosyne he let call hym Erle of (fol. 128<sup>a</sup>)  
of the Marche and [a]none<sup>1</sup> of the comens of Englonde durst  
call hym no nothyr name And also dysgysyd hym wyt wondyr  
reche clopis out of all maner resone bothe of Schapyng  
and of Swerynge<sup>a</sup> wher for þe Englysmen had much wondyr  
how he myȝt contrve or fynd such<sup>2</sup> a maner pryd shuld not  
long endur And þe same tyme syr Roger mortymer þat was  
Mortymers sone lett hym kyng of folly and so hyt befyll  
afterward in ded for he was so full of pryd<sup>3</sup> and  
wrecchyndnes þat he held a rond tabyll in walys to all  
men þat wold come and counterfetyd þe maner and þe doynge  
of kyng Arthur table but openly he faylid for þe nobyll  
kyng hartur was þe nobyll kyng of the reme of all þe  
worled in hys tyme And ȝit came neuyr suche another after  
hym

---

Fol. 128 <sup>1</sup>a- erased. <sup>2</sup>Badly formed -u- like ci; poss.  
scich. <sup>3</sup>Superscript -r-.

alle the nobille kny3tes pourgh cristen dome of dede of  
 armes allosede<sup>e</sup> duelleded with kyng Arthure and helde him  
 for her lorde and that was wele sene for he conquerrede  
 in bataille aromayn that me called ffrolle 7 gate of him  
 the Reame of ffraunce and quelede him with his handes  
 And al so he fauht with a geaunt that me callede Dynabus  
 and quellede him that hade rauachede the fair Elyne that  
 was kyng Horlles<sup>f</sup> nece kyng of lital Brytayne And  
 afterwarde he quellede in bataile the Emperour of Rome  
 that me called lucye that hade assemblede a 3ens kynge  
 Arthure for to fighte with him so moche peple of Romanes  
 and of Pheites and Saracenes that no man cowp heme  
 noumber and he discounfitede ham alle as the storye of  
 hame more pleynloker<sup>g</sup> telleþ And in the same (fol. 81<sup>b</sup>a)  
 tyme comune los<sup>h</sup> spronge in Engelsonde pourgh coniectyng  
 and ordinaunce of the frer prechoures that sire Edward  
 of Carnariuan that was kyng Edwardis fadir of whame the  
 geste telleth saiden that he was on lyue in the castele  
 of Corffe wherfore alle the comines almost of Engelsonde  
 were in sorwe and drede wheþer that he were so or were  
 nought thei wiste neuer howe the Mortemer treitourusly  
 had him done mordered //<sup>2</sup>

Howe Edmunde of wodestoke þat was Erle of kente and the  
 kynges brothir Edward of Cariuan<sup>i</sup> was beheded ate  
 wynchestre [<sup>3</sup> Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xx<sup>o</sup>

And vp on atyme hit fill so that sere Edmunde of wodestoke  
 erle of kente spake vn to Pope Iohn the xxij att Avioun  
 and saide that almyghti god hade many tymes doñe for  
 Thomas loue of lancastrē manye grette myracles to many

---

<sup>2</sup>// in red. <sup>3</sup>Chapter number is on separate line, marked  
 off from text by sign like modern square bracket with  
 flourishes.



And in the same tyme was hyt sayd þat kyng Edward of  
 carnarryvañ was a lyve in the castell of crofe þourch þe  
 doying of the forsayd prechours wer for all þe comens of  
 Englund wer in dred but wher yt wer so or not the<sup>4</sup> wyst  
 not how þe Mortymer hym traytorsly Mordyrð

Howe Edmonde of woodstok þat was erle of kente And þe  
 kyngis brothir Edward of Carneryvañ was be hedit at  
 wynchestir Capitulo CC xxj

And oppon atyme hyt be fyll so þat syr Edmond of woodstoke  
 Erle of kent spake vn to Pope Iohn þe xxij at Avioun and  
 sayd þat allmy<sup>3</sup>ty<sup>5</sup> god had meny tymys done for synte  
 Thomas of langastyr meny gret mervelous to meny

---

<sup>4</sup>Poss. -o.    <sup>5</sup>Scratch through word.

men and women that were pourgh diuerse maladies vndon as vn to the worlde And poruh his praier bei were broughte to here hele And so sere Edmund praide the Pope hertely that he wolde graunte him grace that the forseide Thomas myght ben translatede But the Pope saide nay he scholde nought be translatede the same Thomas Erle of lancastre vn to the tyme that he wer bettere sertefiede of the Clergie of Engelande and seyn be here obedience what thing god hath done for the loue of seynt Thomas of lancastre After the suggestioun that the forseide Edmund of wodestoke erle of kente hade to him made And whanne this Edmund sawe that hee myghte nought spede of his pourpos as touchinge the translacioun he praide him bo of his counselle as touching sere Edward of Carnariuan his brothir and saide noughte longe agoon that he was kyng of Engeland what thing myghte best be don as touching his deliuerance Sithe that a comune fame ys pour3 out al Engelande that he was in life and hoole and safe Whenne the pope herde him telle that sere Edward was on (fol. 81<sup>b</sup>) lyue he comaundede the Erle vp on his benesoun that he scholde helpe with alle the pouer pat he myghte that he were deliuerede out of prisoun and saue his body in all manere that he myghte And for to brynge this thing vn to annende he assoilede him and his companye a pena 7 a Culpa<sup>j</sup> and alle tho that holpen to his deliuerance Tho nome Edmund of wodestoke Erle of kent his leue of the Pope and come a3ene in to Engelande And whenne Edmund was come some of the frere precheoures comen and saide that sere Edward his brothir 3iet was on life in the castel of Corfe and acquiented and spake so faire with sere Iohn Dauereil that was constabel of the forsaid Castell and 3af him riche 3ieftes for to haue riche 3eftes<sup>k</sup> acqueyntaunce of him and to knowe of his counseile And thus hit fill that the forseide sire Edmund praide specialy for to telle him priuyly of his



meñ and womeñ And many þ<sup>6</sup> odyr Maladyis þurch his prayer  
 (fol. 128<sup>b</sup>) they wer brouth to hell And the forsayd  
 Edmond by south to þe Pope þat he myȝt be transladyd vn  
 to þe tyme<sup>b</sup> þat he was bettyr sartyfid of the clerge of  
 Englonð And when þis Edmond sawe þat he myȝt nott Sped of  
 hys porposse as tochyng þe trancelacioun he prayd hym of  
 hys consell as tochyng syr Edward of Carnarivañ hys  
 brothyr And said þat long agone þat he was kyng of  
 Englonð wat þing myȝt best be done as tochyng hys  
 delyuerance sith þat Acomen fame was þour Englonð þat he  
 was alyve and fast in hold when þe Pop herd tell þat syr  
 Edward was alyve he Comandyd þe Erle of hys [p]lesynge<sup>7c</sup>  
 þat he shuld help wyt all þe þour þat he myȝt þat he wer  
 delyuerd out of Presoun and for to bryng þat þyng vnto  
 Anend he Assoulyd hym and all hys company Apena 7 a copa  
 and all to help yt at delyuerans Tho nome Edmond of  
 wodstoke hys leue of hys pop 7 come Aȝene in to Englonð  
 And when he was comeñ some of the ffrer Prechours sayd<sup>8</sup>  
 þat syr Edward hys brotyr was one lyve in the Castell  
 of Crose<sup>d</sup> vndyr de kepyng of syr Thomas Gurney Tho sped  
 he þe forsayd Edmond onto þe castell of Crosse and spake  
 so fayr wyt Iohn Daueryll þat was constabyl þer of þe  
 forsayd castell and ȝaff hym rych ȝiftys to knowe of hys  
 consell And prayd hym Specyally to tell hym

---

<sup>6</sup>Stroked out. <sup>7</sup>p- erased. <sup>8</sup>Long initial s- has yr  
 abbreviation-mark through it.

lorde his broþir sere Edwarde if that he leuede or were  
 deed And if that he wer of lyue y praide of him for to  
 haue onnys asighte And this sere Iohn Dauernelles was anhey  
 hertede man<sup>l</sup> and fulle of corage and answerde schortly vn  
 to sere Edmundede and saide that sere Edwarde his brothir  
 was in helee and vndir his keppynge and durste schew him  
 to no man sith that hit was defended him in the kynges  
 halfe Edwarde þat was Edwardes sone of Carnariuan And al  
 so þoru<sup>3</sup> comaundement of the Quene Isabelle þe kynges  
 modir and of Sire Roger the Mortemer that he scholde  
 schewe his body vn to no body of the worlde saue onlich  
 vnto ham vp on losse of lyf and leme and to disheretesoun  
 of his heires for euermore But the false treitour falsly  
 liuede<sup>m</sup> for he was nough in his warde but he was take  
 thens and ladde vnto þe Castele of Berkele þour<sup>3</sup> Sire  
 Thomas Gurnay þurgh comaundement of the Mortemere til that  
 he was ded as be fore es saide more pleynerly But sere  
 Edmundede of wodestoke wiste no thinge that Edwarde his  
 broþir (fol. 82<sup>a</sup>) was dede wher vp on he toke a lette  
 vn to the forsaide sire Iohn and praide him hertely tat  
 he wolde take hit vn to kyng Edwarde his brothir as to  
 his worthy lorde and he vndirfongede the lette of him  
 7 be highte to sere Edmundede for to do his message with  
 ougte any maner faille And with that sere Edmundede nome  
 of him his leue that es to seyne of thee forsaide Iohn  
 and wente þo in to his ougne countre and lordeschipe in  
 kente that heo<sup>a</sup> had þere And anon as this same Iohn wiste  
 that sere Edmundede of wodestoke was gone in to kent his  
 ougne lordeschipe anon he wente in al the haste that he  
 myghte fro the Castell of Corf and come vn to sere Roger  
 the Mortemer and toke him þe letter that sere Edmundede of  
 wodestoke Erle of kente hade take him closede and enselede  
 with his ougne seale And whenne sere Roger hade  
 vnderfongede the letter he vnclosede the letter and sav  
 what was contenede ther ynne and gan hit for to rede



wer syr Edward hys brothyr wer alyve And 3if he wer A  
 lyve he prayd hyme þat he myȝt honys haue sythe of hyme  
 And þis syr Iohn̄ Daueryll was and hyh herty mañ And told  
 hyme þat syr Edward hys brothyr was in hell vndyr hys  
 kepyng And durst nott shewe hym (fol. 129<sup>a</sup>) to maner mañ  
 for hyt was defendyd hyme in þe kyngys halfe And by þe  
 Quene Isabell 7 þe mortymer But þe false traytur falsly  
 lyde for he was not in hys ward for he was led in to þe  
 Castell of barkley purch syr Thomas Cornay þour comandement  
 of the mortymer tyll he was ded as be for hys sayd mor  
 playnly But syr Edmond of woodstoke wyst nothyng þat hys  
 brothyr was ded Werfor he toke a lettyr in to þe forsayd  
syr Iohn̄ and Prayd hym þat he wold take yt vn to kyng  
 Edward hys broþyr and hys wordy lord and he vndyrfong þe  
 lettyr of hym and beryd<sup>a</sup> syr Edmond for to do hys message  
 And syr Edmond toke hys leff And went home into hys owne  
 corntre<sup>1b</sup> and lordschyp in kente And anone as thys syr  
 Iohn̄ wyst þat he was gone vn to kente Anone he went in  
 all þe hast he myȝte and come to roger mortymer and toke  
 hyme þe lettyr þat syr Edmond of woodstok had hym take  
 closyd and in celyd wyt hys owne sell And when syr Roger  
 had openyd þe lettre he saw þe senttens þer in

Whereofe the begynnyng was þis Worsshipes and reuerence<sup>3</sup>  
 with brotheres ligeeauce and subieccioun sire knyȝt  
 worschipful and dere brothir if hit ȝou plesse y pray  
 hertely that ȝe been of goode conforte for y schal do  
 ordeigne for ȝou that sone ȝe schulle come out of  
 prisoun and ben deliuerede of that desseſse þat ȝe been  
 inne And vnderstandith of ȝoure gret lordeschipe that y  
 haue vn to me assentant almoste alle the greete of  
 Engelande with alle here appareille that es to seyn with  
 armure with treessour with outen noumber for to mayntene  
 and helpe ȝoure querelle so ferforþ that ȝe schulle be  
 kynges aȝene as ȝe werre be foren and that thei alle hath  
 sworn to me vpon aboke and as welle prelatiſ as Erles &  
 barounes Whenne sere Roger of Mortemer saw and vnderstode  
 the myȝte and the strengthe of the lettere anon for  
 wrath his herte gan bolne<sup>b</sup> and euel herte bare towarde  
 sere Edmunde (fol. 82<sup>a</sup>b) of wodestoke that was Erle of  
 kente And so with all the haste that he myȝte he wente  
 vn to Dame Isabelle the quene that was the kynges modir  
 and schewede her sire Edmundis letter Erle of kente and  
 his wille and his pourpos and how he hade coniectede and  
 ordeignede to putte adoune kyng Edward of wyndesore hire  
 soñe of his rialte and of his kyngedome Now certes sere  
 Roger quoth the quene hath Edmunde done so be my fadir  
 soule quoth scheo y wille ben avengede if that god  
 graunte me life and in schort tyme And anon with that the  
 Quene Isabelle wente to the kyng Edward here sone ther  
 that he was atte parlement att Wynchestre for to haue  
 amended the wronges and the treespace<sup>3</sup> that wer done  
 amonge the peple in his reaume and þo nome sho and  
 schewede him the letter that sere Edmunde of wodestoke  
 erle of kente hade made and enselede hit with his seale  
 and bade him vpon here benesoun that he scholde auengede  
 ben vpon him as vp on his dedely enmy Tho was the Quen  
 so wroth to warde sere Edmunde erle of kente and cessed



wher of þe Sentens was þis // Worshipp<sup>3</sup> reueren<sup>3</sup> wyt  
 brothyis legauntes and subioccoun syr kny<sup>3</sup>te worschypfull  
 and der brothyr 3if yt 3oue plesse I pray 3ou hertely be  
 of good comforte for I shall so hordayne for 3ou þat 3e  
 shall sone come out of Presoun and be delyuerd And  
 vndyrstondith þat þe grett lordschip þat I have to me  
 assentyng almost all þe grett of Englund wyth all her  
 appell þat ys to say Armur Wyt tresure Wyt out nombyr for  
 to (fol. 129<sup>b</sup>) mayntayne and helpe your quarell so  
 ferforth þat 3e shall be kyng A 3ene as 3e wer to forne  
 And þat þay all hawe sworn to me vppon A boke as well  
 prelatys as Erlys and barons When syr Roger mortymer sawe  
 and vndyrstod þe my<sup>3</sup>t and centensse of the lettyr And  
 anone in [wrathe]<sup>2</sup> hys hart gane wratth And bar ell wyll  
 to syr Edmond of wodstoke And in all þe hast he my<sup>3</sup>te he  
 wento Quene Isabell and schewd hyr þe lettyr and syr  
 Edmondys wyll and hys porposse and how he had coñictyd  
 and hordynid to put downe kyng Edward of wensor of hys  
 ryall 7 of hys kyngdome. Now sertes quod<sup>c</sup> syr Roger quod  
 the Quen hath syr Edmond done Soo by my fadyr soule quod  
 Sche I well be A wengyd yf god graunto me my lyve and þat  
 in Schort tyme And A none Quene Isabell went vn to kyng  
 Edward hyr sone þer þat he was att parlemente at  
 wenchestyr for to haue Amendit þe wrongys and the  
 trespasses þat wer done Among the pepyll in hys Reme And  
 tho shewyd sche the lettyrys<sup>d</sup> to hym þat syr Thomas of  
 wodstoke had mad and vppon her benosyn bad hym to be  
 Awengid oppon hyme as w<sup>3</sup> oppon hys dedly Enmy And þe  
 Quene prayd

<sup>2</sup>Scratch through word.    <sup>3</sup>Stroked out.

neuere to praye vn to here sone that he scholde sende in  
 haste after him And vpon that the kyng sente be his  
 letteres after sire Edmunde of wodestoke that he scholde  
 come and speke with him att wynchestre alle maner thinges  
 lefte<sup>c</sup> And whenne sere Edmunde sav that the kyng sente  
 after him with his letter enselede he hastede him al that  
 he myghte til that he come vnto winchestre But þo the  
 Quene wiste that sere Edmunde was comen vn to wynchestre  
 But þo anon sho praide and so faste wente to Edwarde hir  
 sone that the goode Erle was arestede a none and lade to  
 the barr be fore Robert of hamounde þat was croner of the  
 kynges housolde<sup>d</sup> and he asociede<sup>e</sup> vnto him sere Roger  
 (fol. 82<sup>b</sup>a) the mortemer and þo spake sere the forseide  
 Iohn vn to him and saide Sire Edmunde Erle of kent 3e  
 schal vndirstonde that hit es done vs to witte and  
 principally vn to oure lige lorde sere Edwarde kyng of  
 Engelande that almy3ti god saue and kepe that 3e beep his  
 dedely enymy and his traytour and al so acomune enymy  
 vnto þe reame and that 3e haue ben aboute many aday for  
 to make priuulich deliueraunce of Sire Edwarde sum tyme  
 kyng of Engelande 3oure broþir the which was putte adoune  
 of his rialte be comune assent of alle the lordes of  
 Engelande in pesyng of oure lorde the kynges astate and  
 al so of his reame Tho answerde the goode mañ and saide  
 for soth sire vndir standeth wel that y was neuer  
 assentyng for to enpeire the state of our lorde the kyng  
 ne of the croune and that y pute me to be demede oopeon  
 my peieres And with that worde sere Roger Mortemer chewede  
 hame þe erles letter and his seal and saide þo Sire  
 Edmunde knowe 3e nouzt the preynt<sup>f</sup> of this letter that  
 he hade take vn to sere Iohn Dauerelles and he sav the  
 prente of his letter that was his seale but he sav nought  
 what was conteynede in the letter and the Erle him selfe  
 wende that hit hade ben on of his leteres that hade ben  
 of no charge Tho saide the Erle to sere Roger the Mortemer



þe kyng þat he shuld send in hast aftyr hym [And Anone]<sup>4</sup>  
 And anon þis kyng sent aftyr þis syr Edmond of wodstoke  
 be hys lettris þat he shuld come and speke wyt hym at  
 wenchestyr all maner thyngys left And whene syr Edmond  
 saw þat þe kyng Sent aftyr hyme with (fol. 130<sup>a</sup>) hys  
 letters þat he shuld come and speke wyt hym at wenchestyr  
 And when he<sup>1</sup> come to wynchestyr sche went to her son And  
 prayd hym þat he my3th be A Restyd anone And so he was  
 and led to þe barr befor Robert hamond þat was crowner  
 of þe kyngys howshold and assesyd vnto hyme syr roger  
 mortymer And A<sup>2</sup> tho spake þe forsayd Robert vn to hym and  
 sayd Syr Edmond Erle of kente yee shall vndyrstond þat it  
 is done vs to wytt and pryncypally to our leg lord þe  
 kyng of Englonð þat 3e be hys dedly enmy[sse]<sup>3</sup> and  
 [t]hys<sup>4</sup> traytur And all so A comen Enmy to þe Reme And  
 þat 3e hawe bene a boutte preuelyche many A day to make  
 deleuerans of syr Edward somtyme kyng of Englonð þeir<sup>a</sup>  
 brothyr þe wyche was put done of hys ryalte by the  
 comens Assente of all þe lordys of Englonð in payryng of  
 our lond<sup>b</sup> þe kyngys stat And also of hys reme Tho Answerd  
 þe goodman and sayd for soth I was neuyr assentyng for  
 to in payr þe stat of our lord þe kyng And þat I wyll by  
 demyd be my perys And wyt word the Mortymer schewyd hyme  
 þe Erles lettyr and hys sell And sayd syr Edmond know 3e  
 þe prynte of thys lettyr þat he had take to syr Iohn  
 Dauere<sup>ll</sup> And he saw þe pryn<sup>5c</sup> prynt of the Sell but he  
 sawe nat wat was contaynyd in the lettyr And þe Erle  
 hyme selfe went yt had be one of hys lettyrys<sup>d</sup> þat had  
 be no fors of charge Tho seyð þe Erle to syr Roger  
 Mortymemer

<sup>4</sup>Erased. Fol. 130 out. <sup>3</sup>-sse erased. <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe. <sup>2</sup>Stroked  
<sup>4</sup>t- erased. <sup>5</sup>Stroke through -n.



that he wolde nought forsake the letter and that was the preynthe of his seal and a non with that worde the wyly and falce Mortemer be gan to vn don̄ the letter and gan hit for to rede in audience of alle the courte And þo saide Robert of hamull Sire Edmundē quop̄ he sith that 3e haue made knowynge hopenlich in þis courte that this es 3oure lettere enselede with 3oure seale And the tenour of the letter sithe that 3e wolde haue ben aboute for to haue deliuered the bodi of that worschipfulle knyght Sire Edwardē sūme tyme kyng of Engelande (fol. 82<sup>b</sup>) 3our brothir and for to haue holpen him that he scholde haue ben kyng azen and gouerne his peple as he wonede before tymes enpeiryngē of oure lige lorde the kynges state that is<sup>1</sup> now wham god kepe fram all dissesse And this courte<sup>2</sup> wille þat 3e been vndone of lyfe and of lyme and that 3oure heires ben disheritede ffor euermor saf the grace of oure lorde the kyng tho was the Erle sire Edmundē of Wodestoke putte a 3en in to prisoune vndir fulle faf<sup>8</sup> warde til oppon the morin And þo<sup>3</sup> come the Mortemer to the kyng there that he sate att his mete and tolde him hov<sup>4</sup> the erle was dampnyde be wey of lawe And also of life and of lyme and his heires disherrede<sup>5</sup> for euer more þour<sup>3</sup> open knowelecheyng<sup>6</sup> in pleyn courte wherefor him thouhte hit was goode þat the forseide erle were hastely quelledē with outhen Wittynge of the kyng ffor ellys the kyngē wolde for 3eue him his deth and that scholde tourne heme in to moche sorwe so as he was enpechede<sup>7</sup> And the Quen Isabelle þourgh counsel of the Mortemer And wipoute any othir councel sente in haste to the Bailiffes of Wynchestre that they scholde smyte of sere Edmundis hed

---

Fol. 82 <sup>1</sup>that is by corr. over erasure. <sup>2</sup>Gone over by corr. <sup>3</sup>By scribe above. <sup>4</sup>-v by corr. over original letter. <sup>5</sup>-hr- in text partially erased and a crossed h inserted above. <sup>6</sup>-eche- gone over by corr. <sup>7</sup>-enpe- gone over by corr.



þat he wold (fol. 130<sup>b</sup>) nat for sake the lettyr and that  
 was þe prynte of hys sell And anone wyt þat wor þe false  
 mortymer by gane to vndo þe lettyr And gane it for to  
 rede in Audiance of all þe courte And so þe sayd syr  
 Robert of hamond syr Edmond quod he sith 3e haue mad me  
 knowyng opinlych in thys contre<sup>e</sup> þat þis lettyr enselyd  
 wyt your Sell And þe lettyr sayth þat 3e wold haue  
 delyuerd [þat]<sup>6</sup> syr Edward som tyme kyng of Englonð yeur  
 hym<sup>f</sup> for to haue holpe for to haue be kyng A 3ene And  
 gouernyd hys pepyll as he was to<sup>2</sup> wont to do be for tymys  
 in empayryng of our leg lord þe kyng þat ys now whom god  
 kepe And thys cort woll þat 3e be vndon of lyff and lymbe  
 And þat your heyrys be dyskertid<sup>7</sup> for euyr mor Tho was  
 syr Edmond put A3ene into presone vndyr sawe ward till  
 on the morow And þo come þe mortymer to the Quene þer as  
 sche sat [h]at<sup>8</sup> mett And told her howe þe erle was dampned  
 by way of law and of lyff and lyme and hys heyrys Deskertyd  
 for euyr mor þurch vppon knowlechyng in playne contre<sup>e</sup>  
 wher for hire thouzte þat þe forsayd Erle wer hastely  
 kyllyd wyt out wetyng of the kyng or ells þe kyng wold  
 for 3eff hym hys deth And þat shuld torne hem to much  
 Sorrow so þe was enched<sup>g</sup> Anone the Que<sup>h</sup> Isabell þurch  
 consell of þe Mortymer And wyt out ony othyr counsell  
 sent in hast to the bayliffis of<sup>9</sup> (fol. 131<sup>a</sup>) Wynchystyr  
 þat þay shuld smyte of hys hed

---

<sup>6</sup>Partly erased. <sup>7</sup>Macron over -e- as abbreviation-mark  
 for -r-. <sup>8</sup>h- erased. <sup>9</sup>Catchword by scribe below:  
 Wenchestre þat þei

of wodestoke erle of kent with outen any maner abidyng  
 or respite vp on payn of lyf and of lyme Tho nomen the  
 bailles sere Edmunde oute of prisoune and lade him be  
 sides the castell att winchestre and ther they made  
 agongefermer<sup>h</sup> smyte of his heed ffor no nothir man durste  
 hit done and so deide he ther alas the tyme that es to  
 seye the x day of October the pride 3er of kyng Edwardes  
 regne And whenne the kyng wiste therofe he was wondir  
 sory and lette entere him att the ffrere menoures at  
 wynchestre

Of the deth of Sire Roger Mortemer Erle of pe Marche  
 Capitulo Centesimo C<sup>o</sup> xx<sup>o</sup> secundo

And so hit fille at that tyme that sere Roger Mortemer  
 Erle of the March was so proute and so hauten that he  
 helde no lorde of thee reaume his pier And þo be come he  
 so coueitouse that he folwede dame Isabelle the Quenes  
 Courte that was the kynges modir Edward and be sette  
 his peneworthes<sup>i</sup> with the officeres (fol. 83<sup>a</sup>) of the  
 Quenes householde in the same maner as the kynges oficer  
 dede and so he made his takynges as touchynge Vitailles  
 and also of cariages and al he dede for enchesoun of  
 spence<sup>3</sup> and for to gadere tresoure and so he dede with  
 outen noumber in al that he myghte þo made he him wondir  
 priue with the quene Isabelle and so moch lordeschipe  
 and retenu hade so that alle the grete lordes of  
 Engelande of him were adrade Wherfor the kyng and his  
 counseil towardes him wer aggreuede and ordeignede amonges  
 heme for to vn done him þourgh pure<sup>a</sup> resouñ and lawe for  
 enchesouñ that kyng Edward that was the kynges fadir  
 treettouresly þourgh him was mordred in þe Castele of  
 Berkele as by fore es saide more pleyntlyer in þe CC<sup>o</sup> and  
 xvij chapiters<sup>b</sup> of this boke and summe that wer of the  
 kynges counsel loueden the Mortemer and tolde him in



of woodstoke Erle of kent wyt out any beddyng of respyte  
 oppan<sup>a</sup> of lyff and lymbe Tho newmane þe baylliss<sup>1</sup> syr  
 Edmond out of presoun by sydis þe castell of wencestyr  
 And ther thay mad a conuersacione<sup>b</sup> to Smyte of hys hed  
 for non othyr man durst yt doon And so he died allas the  
 tyme that ys to say the x day of Octobyr þe thyrd 3er of  
 kyng Edwardus Reyne And when þe kyng wyst ther of he was  
 wondyr Sory And lett enter hym at frer menours at  
 wenchestyr

/Of the deth of syr Roger Mortymer Elre<sup>c</sup> of the marche<sup>2</sup>

And hit be fyll at A tyme þat syr Roger mortimer Erle of  
 the marche was so prowde and so h<sup>3</sup> hawntē þat he held no  
 lord of þe reme hys Pere And so he by fyll contenanse<sup>d</sup>  
 þat he followd dame Isabell þe quenys corte And be sett  
 hys pen wordys wyt þe Quenys offycers in the same maner  
 as þe Quenys officers did and so he mad hys takyng as  
 tochyng in vytall and also of cariagis and he ded for  
 enchesyne of spensys and for to gadyr tresur And so he  
 ded wyt outyn nombyr And much retenew had þat all þe  
 gret lordys of Englund of hym wer drad wher for þe kyng  
 and his consell toward hyme wer agreuyd And þout a mongys  
 heme for to vndo hyme þour þer tresone<sup>e</sup> and lawe for  
 enchosyne þat kyng Edward þat was kyng Edwardys fadyr  
 traytourly þourch hym was mordred in the castell of  
 barkle as be for is sayd mor playnly in þe (fol. 131<sup>b</sup>)  
 CC xxvij chaptyr of thys boke And sum þat wer of the  
 kyngys consell louyd the mortymer and told hyme in

---

Fol. 131 <sup>1</sup>First -s- is long, with no crossbar. <sup>2</sup>Of ...  
 Mortymer by scribe in black, underlined in red; Elre ...  
 marche by rubricator in red. Guide chapter-heading by  
 scribe in right margin, unerased but lopped; Erle of the /  
 Cap<sup>o</sup> <sup>3</sup>Stroked out.



priuitee hov tha þe kyng ande his counceile were aboute  
 fram day to day him for to shende<sup>c</sup> and vndone wherfore  
 the Mortemere was sore annoyede and angry as deuyle a  
 3ans ham that werre of þe kynges councele and saide that  
 he wolde on hem ben a Vengede hov so euere he toke on<sup>d</sup>  
 Hit was nouht longe afterwarde that kyng Edwarde and  
 dame Philipp his wyf and dame Isabelle the kynges modir  
 and sere Roger Mortemere wente to Notingham þere for  
 to sojourne And so hit fille that þe Quen Isabell þour3  
 counceill of the Mortemer toke to here the keyes of the  
 3ates of the castell of Notyngham so that no man my3te  
 nothir in nor oute h<sup>e</sup> by ny3te but þour3 comaundement of  
 the Mortemer ne the kyng nor non of his counseile And  
 that tyme hit fille so that the Mortemere as the deuyle  
 for wrath bolled and al so for wrath that he hade a 3ens  
 towarde the kynges men Edwarde and principally a3ens ham  
 that hade him accusede to the kyng of the deth of sere  
 Edwardes fadir And priuyli accounseile was taken be twen  
 the Quen Isabel And the Mortemer And the bisshop of  
 lyncoln And Sire (fol. 83<sup>a</sup>b) Symunde of Bedeforde and  
 sere hugh of Trompetoun and othir priue of herr counceile  
 for to vndoñ hame alle that hade accusede the Mortemer  
 vnto the kyng of his faderes deth of treesoun and of  
 felonye Wherfor alle tho that wer of the kynges counseile  
 whenne they wiste of the Mortemeres castynge priuyli  
 comen vn to the kyng Edwarde And saide that the Mortemer  
 wolde hame distroie for cause that they hade accusede  
 hyme of kyng Edwardes deth his fadir and praide him that  
 he wolde mayntene him in here trewe quarelle and the kyng  
 grauntede ham her bone and saide he wolde maynten ham in  
 her rit3t and these were the lordes to pursewe the  
 quarell sere William Mountagu ser humfray de Boungh ser  
 william his brothir Sire Raff of Stanfforde sere Robert  
 of Hufforde sere William of Clyntoun sere Iohn Neville  
 of hornby and many othir of here consent And alle these



preuyte how þe kyng and hys consell wer A bout from day to day hym to send and to vndone Wherfor þe mortymer was sor A Meuyd and hangry as þe dewyll wold aʒenst hym þat wer the kyng counsell and sayd how þat he woll be Awengyd ho so euyr he tokyne one It was nat long aftyr þat kyng Edward and Quen phy[.]is<sup>f</sup> wyff and þe Quen Isabell þe kyngys mothyr and syr Roger mortymer went vn to notyngam þer forto Soiorñ And so hyt be fyll Quene Isabell þourch counsell of the mortymer to take þe cayis of þe yatys of the castellys of notyngham So þat no mañ myr3t<sup>g</sup> come in ner oute but þourch comandemente of Mortymer ne þe kyng ne noñ of hys consell And þat tyme hyt be fyll So þat Mortymer as a dewyll for wrath bollyd aʒenst þe kyngys men and prensþaly a ʒenst heme þat had hyme Acusyd to þe þet<sup>h</sup> for syr Edward þe kyngys fadyr And preuely A consell[yd]<sup>4</sup> was taken by twene Isabell þe mortymer and þe bysschop of lincoln and syr Symond of Berford and syr huh of Trompyngtoun and othyr priue of her consell for to vndo hyme all þat a accusyd the mortymer Wher for all þo þat wer þe kyng Counsell wen þay wyst of þe Mortymers castyng preuely com to kyng Edward and sayd þat þe mortymer wold hym distroy for cause he had accusyd hym of kyng Edwardys dethe hys fadyr and prayd heme þat he wold mayntyn hem in her trew[the]<sup>5</sup> quarell And the kyng grantyd hem her bone and sayd þat he wold mayntyn heme in her rythe And thes wer þe lordys (fol. 132<sup>a</sup>) þat pursuyd th quarell syr wylliam Montagu syr wygfray de brus of wylliam hys brothyr syr Raff of stadford syr Robert of hufford syr wylliam Clyntoun syr Iohn newyll and horbey 7 meny opyr of her consent and all þes

---

<sup>4</sup>-yd erased.    <sup>5</sup>-the erased.



sworen vp on the Boke for to maynten the quarell in as  
moch as they my3te And hit fil so after that sere William  
Mountagu no non of the kynges frendes muste nough ben  
herberwede in the Castel but wente and toke here herburge  
in diuerse place3 in the touñ of Notyngham And þo wer  
þei sore adrade laste the Mortemer scholde ham distroye  
And in haste ther come vn to kyng Edward sere William  
Mountagu ther that he was in his Castel and priuyli tolde  
him that he no non of his companye scholde nought take  
the Mortemer With ougten counseil and helpe of william  
of Elande constable of the same Castel Now certes quop  
the kyng y leue<sup>f</sup> 3ou fulle welle and therfore y counceile  
3ou that 3e goñ to the forseide conestable and comaundeth  
him in myn name that he be 3our frende and 3oure helpe  
for to take the Mortemer al thinge lefte vpon pereile of  
life 7 of leme Sire quop mountagu þo Sire my lorde graunt  
mercy Tho wente forth the forsaide Mountagu and come to  
the Conestable of the Castel and tolde him the kynges  
wylle And he answerde and seide the kynges wille schal  
be don in as moche as we may and y wille nouth spare for  
nomaner deth and so he swore and made his othe Tho saide  
sere william of Mountagu to the conestable in herynge of  
alle hem þat were (fol. 83<sup>b</sup>a) helpynge vn to the quarelle  
Now certes der frende ws be houeth for to werche and done  
after 3our queyntse to take the Mortemer sith that 3e ben  
kepere of the Castell and haueth the keyes to<sup>l</sup> 3our warde  
Sir quop the Conestable wile 3e Vndirstande that the  
3atis of the Castel bep lokede with þe lokes that dame  
Isabel sente hider be ny3te sho hath the keyes ther of  
and leith heme vndir the cheuisel<sup>g</sup> of here bed vn to the  
morwe And so y may nought come in to the Castel be þe  
3atis in nomaner wise but y knowe an Aleie þat strecchep  
out of the warde vndir erthe<sup>h</sup> in the Castelle that gooth

---

Fol. 83 <sup>l</sup>to from in by corr.



Sworne vppon̄ A boke to mayntyne þe quarell in as much as  
they myȝt And hyt be fyll so aftyr þat syr wylliam  
Montague ne non of frendys myȝt be harburyd in the castell  
for the Mortymer but went and toke her herburch in dyuers  
plasys in the towne of Notynggham þan þay wer sor Adrad lest  
þe mortymer shuld hem [h]all<sup>1</sup> dystroyd And in hast ther  
come [h]on<sup>1</sup> to kyng Edward 7 syr wylliam Montagu ther as  
he was in hys castell And told hyme preuely þat he ne none  
of hys consell shuld take þe Mortimer wyt out consell and  
help of wylliam Glande constabyll of the same castell Now  
certes quod þe kyng I louf ȝou full well and þerfor I  
consell ȝou þat ȝe goo to þe forsayd constabyll and  
comand hym in my name þat he be ȝour frend and ȝour helpe  
to take þe Mortymer all thyng left oppon perell of lyve  
and lymbe Syr quod Montagu my lord gromercy Tho went  
forth the forsayd Montague vn to þe constabyll heryng of  
all þeme þat helpyng to þe quarell Certys der frend vs  
behovyd to worch to do be ȝour consell to take þe Mortymer  
sith þat ȝe be keper of the castell and haue þe kayes in  
your ward Syr quod þe constabyll well ȝe vnderstond þat  
þe gatys of the castell<sup>2</sup> ben lokeñ wyt a loke þat the  
quen Isabell sent hedur by nyȝt sche hath þe cayis þer  
of and leith hem vndyr her beddys hed vn to þe morow And  
so I may not come vn to þe castell be þe ȝat in no maner  
wysse (fol. 132<sup>b</sup>) But I know and all<sup>a</sup> þat strecchyde oute  
of the ward vndyr the erthe into þe castell þat goith

---

Fol. 132 <sup>1</sup>h- erased. <sup>2</sup>Hole to foot of page; writing  
round it.

into the west which Alee dame Isabelle the Quene no non  
 of her men no the Mortemer no his companye knoueþ hit  
 nouht and so y schal ledde 3ou þour3 that Alee and so 3e  
 schulle come in to the Castel withouten aspyes<sup>i</sup> of any  
 man that beþ 3oure enymyes and the same nyght ser  
 william Mountagu and alle the lordes of his quarell and  
 the same Connestable al so wende ham to hors and maden  
 semblaunt as hit were for to wende out of þe Mortemers  
 sight But anon the Mortemere as he herde of this tydyng  
 he wende that þei wolde haue goñ ouer the see for dreede  
 of him and anon he and his companye nome counseil amonges  
 heme for to lette her passage And sende letteres anon  
 vnto the portis So that none of the greete lordes scholde  
 wende home vn to here ougne countre but if hit wer arest  
 and taken And among othir thinges william Elande  
 Conestable of the forsaide castel priuylich lade sere  
 william Mountagu and his companye be the forsaide wey  
 vndir erthe so til that thei comen in to the Castel And  
 wente vp in to the Tour ther that the Mortemer was ine  
 but sere hugh of Trompetoun hame ascriede hidously And  
 saide A traitoures hit es al for nouhte that 3e beth  
 comen in to this Castelle 3e schulleþ deye 3ete in euel  
 deth euery (fol. 83<sup>b</sup>) on And anon one of hame that was  
 in Mountagues companye stirte vp with amas and smot the  
 same hugh vp on the heede that the brayn braste out and  
 fil vp on the grounde and so was he deed in evil deth  
 Tho nome they the Mortemer as he armede him at the towres  
 dore whenne he herde þe noyse of hame for drede And whenne  
 that Quene Isabelle sav that the Mortemer was take heo  
 made moche sorwe in herte and these wordes vnto hame  
 saide Nowe faire sires y 3ou pray that 3e done none harme  
 vn to his body a worthi kny3t oure welbelouede frende and  
 our dere cosyn þo wente thei þens and come and brought  
 the Mortemere and presented him vn to the kyng Edward  
 and he comaundede to bringe him vn to saf warde But anon



into þe west wych Alle Quene Isabell and none of her meñ  
 ne the Mortemer ne none of hys company knowyth hyt nouȝt  
 And so I shall led ȝowe þurch þat alle And so ȝee shall  
 come in to þe castell wyt out espyes of ony mañ þat bene  
 ȝour enmys And that same nyȝte syr wylliam Montagu And  
 all þe lordys of hys quarell 7 þe same constable when hem  
 to horse and mad semblante as for to wend oute of the  
 mortymers siȝte But Anone as the Mortymer herd thys tydyng  
 he went þat þay wold haue goon ouyr the See for dred of  
 hyme And anone þe mortymer toke hys consell for to let her  
 passage and sent letters vnto þe Portys So þat none of  
 the gret lordys shuld wend home in to hys owne contre but  
 ȝeff he wer takyn and rest And anone oon of them þat was  
 of Montagues company vp wyt a masse and smoth þe Sam huhe  
 oppon the hed þat þe brayne fyll oute at þe grond And  
 sche<sup>b</sup> deid in euyll dethe Tho nome the Mortymer as he  
 harmyd hym att towrys dorr And when he hard þe noyss of  
 heme he was sor A dred And Quene Isabell saw þat þe  
 mortymer was takyne sche mad much Sorowe in harte And  
 thes wordys vn to hym sayd Now fayr syrys I ȝou pray þat  
 ȝe done no harme on to hys body a worthy knyȝthe our  
 welbelouyd (fol. 133<sup>a</sup>) ffrend and our dere Cosyne Tho  
 went þay þens and brouȝte þe mortymer on to kyng Edward  
 and he comandyd to bryng hyme in save ward But Anone

as thei that were consented vn to be Mortemeres doynge herde telle that he was taken they wente and hyde ham and priuilych be ny3te wente out of the toune euerych in his side with heuy herte and mornynge and leuede vp on here londys as wel as they my3te And so that same 3eer that the Mortemer was take he hade at his retenu ix score knyhtes withouten squires and seriauntes of Armes And foote men And þo was the Mortemer lade to london And sere Simound of Bereforde was lade with him and was take to the Conestable to keepe But afterwardes was be Mortemeres life examende atte westmynstre by fore the kyng and be fore alle the grete lordes of Engelande ffor pereile that myght falle to the reaume and to enquyr Also which wer assentyng to sere Edwardes deth the kynges fadir And al s<sup>j</sup> þourgh whame the Scottes Aschapede fro Stanhoþ in to Scottlonde with oughten the wylle of kyng Edwarde And al so hov the Charter of Rageman was delyuerede vn to the Scottes wher ine the homages and the feautes of Scottlonde were conteynede that the Scottes scholde done euere mor vnto the kynges of Engelande for the reame of Scottlonde wher for in his Absence he was dampned to be hon (fol. 84<sup>a</sup>) ged and drawe for his tresoun And this meschief com Vn to him in seynt Andreves euen And in the 3ere of in Carnacioun of our lorde ihesus crist M<sup>l</sup> CCC<sup>o</sup> and xx<sup>ti</sup>.

Hov kyng Edwarde gheten vn to him graciousliche and the feautes 7 the homages of Scottlonde Whereof he was putte out þour3 false councele of Isabelle his modir 7 of Sir Roger the Mortemer that was made Erle of the March Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> vicesimo tercio 7c'

Her 3e haue herde lordes hou sere Iohn of Baillol in tyme of pes was chosen to be kyng of Scottlonde for enchesoun that he come of the eldeste douhter of the Erle Daudid of Heretingoun that was kyng Alisaundres brothir of



as þay þat wer consentyng to þe mortymers doying herd tell  
 þat he was takyne þay hi3ed heme preuelych be ny3te and  
 euyry mañ lyvid on hys owne londys And the same yeer þat  
 þe mortymer was takyne he had in hys retenewe ix Schor  
 kny3tys wytout Squyers and sergantys of harmes and fott  
 meñ And tho was Mortymer led to london and syr Symond of  
 berford was led wyt hyme and was takyne to þe constabyll  
 to kepe But aftyrward was þe Mortemers lyf examynid at  
 westmester by for the kyng and be for all þe gret lordys  
 of Englund for perell þat mythe fall to þe reme And to  
 conquer<sup>a</sup> also wych wer consentyng to kyng Edwardus dethe  
 þe kyngys ffadyr And Also purch whom þe Scottys escapyd  
 from Stanhopp in Scotlond wyt oute the [Text breaks off,  
 recommencing on fol. 134<sup>a</sup>]

Scottlonde that deide with outhen heir of hys body be  
 geete and hov this Iohn made feaute and homage to kyng  
 Edwarde that was kyng Edwardes sone the pridge for his  
 londes of Scottlonde And howe he afterwarde with saide  
 his homage pour<sup>3</sup> counseil of the Scottes In the 3ere of  
 Incarnacioun M<sup>1</sup> CCC<sup>0</sup> lx xij and sende vn to the Pope  
 pour<sup>3</sup> fals suggestioun that he made his othe vnto the  
 forseide kyng Edwarde ouer his estat and his wille<sup>a</sup> of  
 which oth the Pope him assoillede pour<sup>3</sup> his bulles to  
 him sente And anon as kyng Edwarde wist pereof he  
 ordeygnede anon his barouns ande come vn to Berwik And  
 conquerede þe touñ Att the which conquest werr slayn  
 xxv þousande and vij hundrede And the Bailoil þat was  
 kyng of Scottlonde come and 3elde him vn to kyng Edwarde  
 and the kyng afterwarde delyuerede him out of the Tour  
 of london and alle the grette lordes of Scottlond with  
 him that werr take att Berewike and 3af ham safe conduct  
 to goñ in to Scottlonde And the Scottes sithenes pour<sup>3</sup>  
 hire ffalsenes werrede vp on kyng Edwarde And whenne Sir  
 Iohn Baillol (fol. 84<sup>a</sup>b) kyng of Scottlonde sav al this  
 he wente and putte him ouer the see vn to Dumpier and  
 leuede pere vp on his owene landis as wel as he myghte  
 til that the Scottes wolde amende hame of here mysdedis  
 and trespas And lade with him sere Edwarde his sone  
 Wherefore þe Scottes in disspite of him callede him sere  
 Iohn Turnelabard<sup>b</sup> for cause that he wolde nought offende  
 ne trespas a 3ens kyng Edwarde of Engelande and so he  
 forsoke his reaume of Scottlonde and seette pereof but  
 lityl pris And þis sere Iohn longe duelled in ffraunce  
 til that he deide pere And sere Edwarde his sone vnder  
 fongede his heritage and dede homage to þe kyng of  
 ffraunce for his landis of Dumpier And so hit fille  
 afterwarde þat was<sup>1</sup> Edwarde that was Iohn Bailloles sone

---

Fol. 84 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out.



hade with him asquier of Engelande that was boren in yorke  
 shire that men callede Iohn of Barnaby and this Edward  
 Baillol louede him moche and was neyh him and ful priue  
 And so this Iohn of Barnaby was in debate with afrensshe  
 man in the touñ of Dumpier and so he quelled him and  
 wente in his way in al the haste that he myzte in to þe  
 Castell for to haue socoure and helpe of his lorde And  
 anon come the oficerres of þe toune for to take Iohn of  
 Barnaby as a felouñ And sere Edward his lorde halpe him  
 and rescued him and be nyghte made him wende out of the  
 Castell and so he wente his way and come in to Engelande  
 wip oute any harme And whenne the kyng of ffraunce sav  
 that sere Edward hade rescued his felouñ he be come  
 wondir wroth azens sere Edward And Anon lett him ben  
 arested And toke in to His Hande Alle His Londes (fol.  
 84<sup>b</sup>a) Tho duelled sere Edward in prisouñ vn to þe tyme  
 that sere Henry of Beamunde come in to ffraunce the  
 which Henry sum tyme was Erle of Angos in Scottlonde  
 þour3 his wyf and was put out of the forsaide Erle dome  
 whene the accorde was betwen Engelande and Scottlonde  
 þour3 the Quene Isabelle and sere Roger the Mortemer and  
 her companye for the mariage that sho made betuene Dauid  
 that was Robert the Brus his sone 7 dame Iohne att the  
 Tour kyng Edwardes sustir of Engelande and wel vndirstonde  
 this þat at the ende he scholde come to his righte but yf  
 hit wer þour3 sire Edward Baillol that was right heire  
 of the reame of Scottlonde And the kyng of ffraunce lowys  
 louede moch this Sir Henry and was with him ful priuee  
 and þoughte for to make adelyueraunce of sere Edward  
 baillolles body yf he myzte in eny manere T<sup>c</sup> praide he  
 the kyng that he wolde graunte him of his grace sere  
 Edwardes baillos<sup>d</sup> body vnto þe nexte parlement that he  
 myzte lyue with leue with his ougne rentez in the mene  
 tyme and that he muste stande to be Iugged be his perryss  
 at the parlement The kyng graunted him his praier and

made the for seide sere Edwarde be delyuerede out of prisoun in the maner aboue saide sere henry toke hym forth with him and lade him in to Engelande and made him duelle priuylich att amanere of Sandhalle vp Ouse in yorke shire with the lady Vescy and so he ordeigned him pere an houghe retenev of peple of Englisshe men and Al so of Alyenes for to conquer (fol. 84<sup>b</sup>) azene hys heritage And so he 3afe moch syluere vn to Soudiours and to Alyens for to helpe him and they be heighte him for to helpe in al that bei myghte but they faillede him at his moste nede And at that tyme Donalde Erle of Moriff herde telle that sere Edwarde was priuyly come into Engelande and come to him and made with him grete yoye of his comynge azen and saide to him 7 by highte him that alle the grette of Engelande scholde be to him entendaunt and scholde heme holde for her kyng as right heir of Scottlonde And so moche they wolde doñ that he scholde be Crounede kyng of that lande and dede to him feaute 7 homage þo come sere henre of Beamounde to kyng Edwarde of Engelande and praide him in wey of Charite that he wolde graunte of his grace vn to sere Edwarde Baillol that he muste saflich goon by lande fro Sandhalle in to Scottlonde for to conquere his right heritage in Scottlonde The kyng Edwarde answerde and saide vn to him yf that y soffre the Baillol wende þourgh my land towarde Scottlonde þan the peple wolde seye that y scholde be assentyng vn to þe companye Now sere y pray 3ou that 3e wolde graunte him leue to take vn to him soudiours of Englissh men that they myghte safely ledde him þough 3our lande in to Scottlonde And sere<sup>e</sup> vpon this couenaunt þat if him so falle that god hit for bede that bei ben discounfited in Bataille þour3 the Scottes that y And alle the lordes that holden with baillol ben for euermor put out of our rentes that we haueþ in Engelande And the kyng vp on this couenaunt graunted hir bone as touchyng him And þo that werr of the



same querell the which claymede to haue londes or rentys  
 in the reaume of Engelande And these were þe names of the  
 same lordes that purswede this mater þat es to seye sere  
 Edward (fol. 85<sup>a</sup>) the Bailoll that schalangede the Reame  
 of Sotlande<sup>a</sup> sere Henry Beamonde Erle of Angos sere Dauid  
 of Stroboly Erle of Atheles sere Geffrey of Moumbray  
 Walter Comyn And many othir þat were pult<sup>b</sup> out of her  
 heritage in Scottlond whenne the pees was made be twen  
 Engeland 7 Scottlond as be fore es saide And 3e schulleth  
 vndirstonde that these lordes nomen with ham vyf hundred  
 men of Armes and ij þousand Archeres And of fottemen and  
 þo wente vn to Schip with heme att Rauenesnere and sailede  
 be the See til that þei comen into Scottlond and come to  
 lande at kinkecorne<sup>c</sup> xij myle fram Seynt Iohnes touñ<sup>d</sup> and  
 sente out here schippes a 3en for they scholde nouhte ben  
 hurt ne enpeirede nothir that noman scholde gon in to  
 Chip a 3en þouh that þei hade nede but abide at alle  
 perrelles and nouht flee but stande and rather suffre  
 dep þane flee to mayntene her trewe querell Whanne the  
 Erle of ffyf aferes man and asterne herde telle þat the  
 Baillol was come for to take the londe of Scottlond he  
 come in haste vn to kinkecorne with x þousande Scottes  
 for to distourble him that he scholde nouht come to londe  
 But sere Edward Baillol and his companye hade take þe  
 lande maugre him and his companye and him discounfitede  
 Att the which scounfitur sere Alisaundre of Setoune the  
 sone was pere quelde And meny othir The erle of ffyf was  
 þo wondir sory and full ille shamede so þat litil companye  
 hade him distroiede and schamelich putte him and al his  
 companye þat was alive for to flee þo come sere Edward  
 the baillol and toke the countre al abowte him til he  
 come vn to þe Abbay of Dunfermelyn And pere he fond vi  
 (fol. 85<sup>a</sup>b) tailles<sup>e</sup> for him and for his folke And amonge  
 alle othire thinges he fonde in achaumber a bowte vife  
 hundrede of grette stafes of fyn oke with longe pykys of

yren and of steele he nome hame and delyuerede hame to  
the moste strengest of his companye And anon after he  
wente fro pens and loggede him in Afelde ij myle fro  
Seynt Iohnes touñ And whenne the Burgeys of the touñ  
herde how the Erle was discounfitede pourgh sere Baillol  
peye were sore adrade and broken the Briggys that they  
hade made ouer the water of Erne so that the Baillol  
myzte nouht gouerne wherfor he loggede him ther al that  
nyzt but lital hede he toke of reste And saide vn to his  
peple Now derre lordes 3e knowe ful well that we been  
now logged be twen sure enymyes and if they mowe vs  
hampere pere es nought but to the dep Wherfore if we a  
bide here al this nyght styll y leue that hit schal  
torne vs to mochil harme for the pouer of Scotlonde may  
eueri day waxe and encresse and we may nought So And we  
ben but lital peple as A 3eiens ham Where fore y pray  
3ou for the loue of almyzty god make we ws bolde and hardy  
and that we mowe myghtely take the Scottes this nyght and  
boldely werr vp on ham And lette ws pursewe ham this nyght  
And if they ben trauailled<sup>f</sup> pour3 vs And they see our  
hardynesse so that othir Scottes that comen and mete hem  
And see ham so trauailed and wery the sorer wille ben  
adrad with vs for to fyghten And fresslych thane we  
schullen fighte And vp on hame pursewe so that pour3 the  
grace of Al myghti god Al the Worlde schal speke of  
Doughtynesse of our Schevalrye And seres Vndirstandep  
Wel that Alle the (fol. 85<sup>b</sup>a) companye that comen with  
sere Edward Baillol grauntede welle vn to that councel  
and wer pere offe glade and anon pursuwede vp on the  
Scottes that they be comen wondir wery And the baillol  
and his companye sore folwede hame 7 dede ham moch harme  
7 sorwe pour3 her assaut so that pey myghte nought for  
feble ham helpe and for lityl peple But þo saide amonges  
ham what ys nov vs befall pat so lityl peple as the  
Baillol hath in wynges<sup>g</sup> done vs so moch trauaile and sorwe



Now certes hit semyth vs that he werchith be grace ffor  
 he es wondir graciouse in his quarell And alle we certes  
 schulleþ ben deede or that we may come to him vs for to  
 3eelde sith that his fadir sette of vs no pris And among  
 alle othire þinges the Bailloī and his peple passed the  
 water of Erne so that sere Roger of Swynertone the sone  
 was fers and hungry and wente forth And they saw much  
 peple of men of Armes ful wel arrayede and forth þey wente  
 vn to hem and with ham fousten ⁊ quelledde as many men as  
 wolde abidene or take and najtheles att that assaute þei  
 wende that hit hade been the grette host of Scottlond  
 And whenne hit come to the morwe they gadrede hem to  
 giderr and restedde ham a Whille But the whilles that the  
 englissh men restedde hame the noble Baroun Thomas of  
 Vessy And the noble Baroun of Stafforde preken<sup>n</sup> here  
 hors op and douñ by þe hulles for to kepe þe esteres<sup>i</sup>  
 of the Countre And as they preken vp and douñ thei saw  
 a grett hoste of goode array ordeynede in þre wynges with  
 helmes and scheldes shynyng comynge vp on heme And þo come  
 þo ij lordes a 3en vnto þe bailloles folc and saide  
 Now for the loue of almy3ti god beep of goode counfort  
 for 3e schulleþ haue bataille a non right And þo spake  
 (fol. 85<sup>b</sup>) sere flouke the sone of Garreyn abaroun of  
 gret renoun and of dede of Armes Sires lordynges vnder  
 stondeth that y wille seyen y haue sawe meny diuerse  
 wynges as wel among sara3en3 and gewes as amonge the  
 Scottes And 3iet sav y neuer the fferth parte of the  
 wynges fighten And þere fore yf we wille abide our enemyes  
 we beep y nowe for to fighte a3en hem but yf that we ben  
 nought of goode herte and of goode wille for to fighte  
 a3ens ham for certes we ben ful fewe a3ens this companye  
 And þerfore for the loue of god take we vn to vs goode  
 herte and lette vs ben bolde And þinke we nothir on our  
 wifes nothir vp on our childeren but onlich to conquere  
 ham in bataille And þour3 the help of our lorde god our

enemyes we schulle ouer come And with that come þe oste  
 of Scottes towarde ham ful serely<sup>j</sup> and aʒens sere Edwarde  
 the Baillol in þre batailles we<sup>k</sup> arayed in armure and  
 wondir fresshlich þei comen towardys the Bailloles men  
 But whenne sere Donalde Erle of Marcile sav al this he  
 saide to Robert the Brus the sone of Robert þe Brus þese  
 wordes Sir Robert quop he ful sor me ffor þenkep atte myn  
 herte þat this folke þat þe Baillol hath brought with him  
 schullen dey with dynt of Scottisshmen suerde sith þat  
 þei ben cristen men as wel as we ben And therfore me  
 thinkep that hit wer gret Charite to sende to ham for to  
 ʒelde ham to oure mercy and grace and raunsom hem þourʒ  
 gracious raunsom for as moch as þei haue taken our lande  
 and don ille Nov certes quop sere Robert Danolde y haue  
 wel perceyuede þat þou art an Enymye and traitour vn to  
 Scotlonde sip þat þou will consente to saue our dedely  
 enemyes þat hauen don vs moch sorw and schame And now  
 hit semep wel that ʒe beth of her assent Certes Robert  
 quop Sire (fol. 86<sup>a</sup>) Danalde falslich ʒe lye y am nought  
 of herr companye ne of here consente And that hastely ʒe  
 schulleþ see for y wille fighte with hame rather than  
 any of this companye And certes sere Robert saide y schal  
 maugre in thy hede assaile hem or þou And with þat þei  
 prekeden here steedes ferslich vpon Caskmor and her  
 wynges ham folwede on Areng<sup>b</sup> ʒ þo come they and mette  
 the Baillol and his companye att Anhonginge boughte of  
 þe moor in astreit passage<sup>c</sup> And so faste þei hastede hem  
 vn to the engelisshe men so that þousandes fil to the  
 grounde eche vp on othir in to anheþ both hors and man  
 The Baillol þo and his men myghtyli stoden aʒens hem and  
 faste quellede the Scottes vnto the grounde And menye  
 score wounded so longe til that þei stoden vp ham And  
 foynede<sup>d</sup> ham with her swerdes ʒ speres þourʒ out her  
 bodies ʒ sore trauaillede vpon ham til that þei be comyn  
 ful wery ʒ wiste nought what to doñ And the Scottes that



werr left on lyue fledden to saue hem selfe in the beste  
 maner þat þey myzte And þo pursewede hem sere Edwarde  
 Baillol and his men and quelledde of heme til hit was  
 nyght And fro thens they wente in to Seynt Iohnes Toune  
 And toke hit and helde ham þerr and victelde hem selfe  
 at herr ougne wille ffor þei founden y nov wher wip to  
 make hem merye þo made þe Baillol his men that were  
 wounded gon to schip for to wende into Engelande for to  
 helpe her woundes And in that same tyme þere was  
 afflemmyng in the See astrong þeff a robour that men  
 Callede Crab And þis fflemmyng was dreuen out of  
 fflaundes for his wikkedenesse And therefore he come  
 into Scottlonde (fol. 86<sup>a</sup>b) and helde with the Scottes  
 and dede as moch harm to Englisshmen as he myzte And  
 this Crabbe mette in the See the Bailloles men that wer  
 wounded in bataille and werr sent azen in to Engelande  
 for to hele her Woundes And this Crabbe zaffe vn to heme  
 a gret sawt and wolde haue quelledde ham euerich on But  
 the Engellissh men defendede hem wel and manlich And  
 discounfitede Crab and his companye And þo gan he for  
 to fle in to Scottlonde And as he come towarde seynt  
 Iohnes Toune he ffand a grette companye of Scottes that  
 werr come azen to gyderr affter the descounfitur of  
 Gaskmore the whiche be segede Baillol and his men in þe  
 same toune of Seynt Iohn And anon tolde the Scottes hov  
 he was discounfitede of þe of the<sup>e</sup> Engellissh men that  
 werr sore woundede att Gaskmor that went towarde Engelande  
 for to hele herr woundes ⁊ saide to the Scottes that they  
 scholde haue no grace no myzt a zens Edwarde Bayllol for  
 enchesoun that he hade discounfited ⁊ enpeirede al the  
 Cheualrie of Scottlond with anhand ful of men as to  
 accounte azeiens the Scottes that werr slayn wherffor he  
 counseilde hem for to remeue the Sege fram seynt Iohnes  
 And kepe ham in the beste maner that þei kouth and myght  
 Thee Scottes vndirstode þo that Crabe saide hem sooth And

for soke the Sege And wente þens be ny3te and halpe hem  
 selfe in þe beste manere that þey myghte Whenne this  
 tyding was knowe þour3 Scottlonde how the lordes and  
 the kny3tes werr discounfitede att Gaskemore of  
 Scottlonde þour3 Sire Edwarde the Baillol 3e schullen  
 vndirstonde that þe lordes And ladies 7 the Gentyles of  
 Scottlonde comen wondir (fol. 86<sup>b</sup>a) ffaste Vn to seynt  
 Iohnes touñ and 3eldede ham vn to the Baillol and to him  
 deeden homage 7 feaute for herre landis and 3elde ham vn  
 to his pees and helden him for her lorde And he vndir  
 fongede of him her homages and grauntede hem his pees  
 And fro thens he wente to the Abbay of Stone and ther he  
 was crouned kyng of Scottlonde And after he lett crie  
 his pees þour3 out the lande And at þat same tyme hit  
 fille þat kyng Edwarde of Engelande helde his parlement  
 A monge his liges at nev Castell vpon Tyne for to amende  
 the trespas and the wronges þat hade ben doñ in his lande  
 And sere Edwarde þe Bayllol kyng of Scottlonde come to  
 him þedir and dede to him feaute and homage for the reame  
 of Scottlonde And in this maner kyng Edwarde of Engelande  
 gadrede a 3en the homages and the ffeautes of Scottlonde  
 wherofe he was putte out þour3 counceile 7 assent of  
 Dame Isabelle his modir and of sere Roger þe Mortemer  
 erle of the March Tho toke sere Edwarde Baillol kyng of  
 Scottlonde his leue of kyng Edwarde of Engelande and wente  
 thens to his ounne londe of Scottlonde And sette but litil  
 be ham that hade counselde him and holpen hem in his  
 quarelle wherfor þei vente fro him and wente and leuedde  
 by herre landes and rentis in Scottlonde And so hit fylle  
 aftirwarde nought longe þat the kyng of Scottlonde ne  
 remeuede and come to the touñ of Anande and þere nome  
 his duellynge And theþir cam to him acompanye of kny3tes  
 strouonge<sup>f</sup> men and worthi And 3olde ham to the kyng And  
 bar ham so fair in dede and in continuaunce so that he  
 troste moche in ham And anon as the Traytours sav that



he truste moche vp ham þey ordeignede amonges ham vifty  
 in o companye 7 wolde haue quellede herr kyng but þour3  
 the grace of almy3ty god he brake þourgh A (fol. 86<sup>b</sup>)  
 a<sup>g</sup> walle anhole in his Chamber and as god wolde aschapede  
 with moch drede to the touñ of Cardoil and therr he helde  
 him sore annoyede And this fille in oure ladies euen  
 concepcioun Tho sente kyng Edward Baillo to kyng Edward  
 of Engelande how falslich and treitously he was in  
 litiel tyme putte to schame and sorwe þourgh his lyge men  
 oppon wham he truste wondir moch and praide him for the  
 loue of almyghti god þat he wolde mayntene him And helpe  
 him a3eyens his enemyes The kyng of Engelande hade of him  
 grette pytte and be highte him helpe and socoure and sente  
 him worde that he scholde him<sup>h</sup> in pees styll in the Citte  
 of Cardoill tyl that he hade gadred his pouere Tho  
 ordeyngend kyng Edward of Engelande acounsaille att london  
 And lete gadre his men in diuerse shires of Engelande And  
 whenne he was redy he wente towarde þe touñ of Berewike  
 op Twyde And þider come to him kyng Edward of Scottlonde  
 with his pouere and besegede the touñ And made with owten  
 þe touñ afaire touñ of Paulyiouns and dikkede ham welle  
 round al aboute so that þei hade no drede of the Scottes  
 And made many assaut with Gounnes and with othir engynnes<sup>i</sup>  
 to the touñ wher with they distroiede many af[r]ayr<sup>l</sup> hous  
 And Cherches Al so werr betten a doun vn to the Erthe  
 with grette stounes that spitously comen owte of Gunes  
 and of othir gynnys And notheles þe Scottes kepte wel the  
 touñ þat þo ij kynges my3te nought come þerinne longe  
 tyme And no theles the kynges abiden þere so longe tyl  
 þo that wer in the touñ ffaillede victaylles And Al so  
 þey werr so wery of wakkyng that þey wyste not what to  
 doñe And 3e schulleþ vndirstonde þat þo þat werr in the  
 touñ of Berewyk þourgh hire comune counsel And her assent

lete crie oppon þe wallys that þei myght haue pees of the Engeliss̄ meñ And þereofe praide the kyng And of his grace And praide him of triuwes for eyghte dayes vp on this couenaunt if þat þei wer nought rescuede in that side of þe touñ towards Scott (fol. 87<sup>a</sup>) lande of the Scottes with ynne viij dayes that þei wolde 3elde ham vn to the kyng and the touñ al so And to halde this couenaunt þey proferede to þe kyng xij hostages out of the touñ of Berewyke whenne the hostages wer deliuerede vn to þe kynges Anon þo of the touñ senten vn to the Scottes and tolde hem of her sorwe and myschief And the Scottes comen þo priuylich ouer the water of Twede to the boughte of the Abbay<sup>a</sup> And sere William Dykett that was þo Stywarde of Scottland and many othir that comen with him putten ham ther in grett perylle of hem selfe at þat tyme of here lyfe ffor they comen ouer abrygge þat was to broken and þe stones away And many of here companye were þer drenched but the fforsaide william wente ouere and oþer of his companye and come be the Schipes of Engelande and quellede in abarge of Hulle 7c'<sup>b</sup> xvj men And after they wente in to the touñ of Berewyke by the water side wherfore thee Scottes helde þo the touñ rescuede and axede her hostages a3en of the kyng of Engelande And the kyng sente ham worde a3en that þei axede the hostages with wronge sith þat þei comen in to the touñ by Engelandes side ffor couenaunt was be twen ham that þe touñ scholde be rescuede be the halfe of Scottlonde And anon kyng Edward þo comaunded to 3elde the touñ or he wolde haue the hostages And the Scottes saide that þe touñ was rescuede wel y nough And þerto þei wolden holde ham whenne that kyng Edward sav þe Scottes breke the couenaunt3 that they made he was wondir wroth And anon lette take sere Thomas fit3 And sere Alysaunder of Stone wardeyn of Berewyk the which Thomas of<sup>c</sup> (fol. 87<sup>b</sup>) persouñ of Dounbarr and lete ham be take ferst be fore



the othir ostages<sup>3</sup> ffor enchesoun pat sere Alisaundres fadir was keper of the touñ And the kyng comaundede eueri day for to take ij hostages of the touñ til that þei wer all doñe to the deth but if þei zeldede þe touñ And so he scholde teche ham for to breke her couenant<sup>3</sup> And whenne þo of the touñ herde þese tydinges þei be comen wondir sory and senten to þe kyng of Engelande if þat he wolde graunt hem othir viij dayes of respite so þat bitvene CC men of Armes and xx<sup>ti</sup> men of Armes myghte be strength go betuen ham into the touñ of Berewike ham for to victaille so þat þe touñ muste be holde for rescuede And yf hit so werr that on xxi or xxij or mo wer slayn of þo CC be fore saide that þe touñ scholde nouht be holde for rescuede And this couenaunt for to be holden þei sente to hym othir xij of the touñ in hostage And þe kyng of Engeland graunted hem her praier And tok the hostages in seynt Mergaretys euen In þe 3ere of grace M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxxij the Scottys comen ffresshlich in four wynges wel arrayed in Armes for to mete kyng Edward of Engelande And Edward the kyng of Scottlond 7 with here pouere and come faste and scharply a3ens euesonge tyme And the same tyme was flod at Berewyke in the water of Twede þat no man myght wende ouer on horse nothir on foote And the water was be twen þo ij kynges and the Reaume of Scottlond and þat tyme abiden the Scottes in þat othir side for enchesoun that the Engelissch men scholde haue be draynt or slayn 7c'

This was þe aray of the Scottes hov that þei comen in batailles<sup>d</sup> a 3eiens þe tuo kynges of Engeland 7 of Scottlond In the vaunte Warde<sup>e</sup> of the Countre of Scottlond were these lordes That es to seye<sup>l</sup>

(fol. 87<sup>b</sup>a) The<sup>2</sup> Erle off Morif Iames ffrisell Symond  
ffrisell Walter Stywarde Reynolde Cheyne Patrik of Graham  
Iohn le Graunt Iames of Cardoile Patrik Parkers Robert  
Caldecottes Philip of Meldrum Thomas Gilbert Wisemañ Adam  
Gurdoun Iames Graunt Robert Boyde Hugh Park with fourty  
knyghtes<sup>3</sup> newe dobled<sup>f</sup> and vj hundered men of Armes and  
pre housand of Comente

In the ferste partye of þe halfe bataille<sup>g</sup> of Scottlond  
wer pese lordes<sup>3</sup>

The<sup>2</sup> stwarde of Scottlond the Erle of Moneteth Iames his  
vnclle William Douglas Daud of lyndeseye Maucolm  
fflemmyng<sup>4</sup> William of keth Dunkan kamboc with pritty  
bachelers newe doublede

In the seconde parte of the halfe lieu warde<sup>h</sup> of the  
bataill of Scottelonde were thesse worpi lordes<sup>3</sup>

Iames<sup>2</sup> Stywarde of Colden Alien Stywarde wi of Colden<sup>i</sup>  
william Abbrehyn william Morice Iohn fitz william Adam  
le Morse walter fitz Gilbard Iohn of Cherletoun Robert  
william with vij<sup>c</sup> men of Armes and with vi<sup>5</sup> xvij M<sup>l</sup> of  
Comunes

In the bridde warde of the Bataylle of Scottlonde were  
these grette and worthi lordes of þat reaume<sup>6</sup>

The<sup>2</sup> Erle of Marr the Erle of Roff þe Erle of Straherne  
the Erle of Sotherlande william of kyrkeley Iohn Cambroun  
Gilberde of haye william of Ramesseye william Proudegest

<sup>2</sup>Two-line ornamental initial in blue with red pen-flourishes. <sup>3</sup>In ... lordes in red. <sup>4</sup>MS. has 5 minims for -mm-. <sup>5</sup>Stroked out. <sup>6</sup>In ... reaume in red.



kirstyn harde william Gurdoun Arnolde Garde Thomas Dolfyne  
with xl kny3tes newe dobbled ix<sup>C</sup> men of Armes 7 xv M<sup>l</sup> of  
Comunes

In the ferthe warde of the Bataille of Scottlond were þes  
lordes<sup>3</sup>

Rrchibalde<sup>2j</sup> Douglas the Erle of lyuenay Alisaunder le  
Brus Erle of ffyff Iohn Cambel erle of Achel Robert  
lawether william of Vypount william of lonstoun Iohn de  
labeles Gros of Schernelowe Iohn (fol. 87<sup>b</sup>) of lyndeseye  
Alesaunder of Gray Ingam de Vmtfreuiles Patrike of  
Polesworth Daud of wymes Michil Scotte william landy  
Thomas de Boys Roger de Mortemer with xxx bacheleres  
ix<sup>C</sup> men of Armes xviiij þousande and iiij hundred of  
Comuneres

The<sup>2</sup> Orle<sup>k</sup> of dunbarr keper of the Castelle of Berewike  
halpe the Scottes wyth fyffty men of Armes And sere  
Alisaunder of Seetoun kepere of the touñ of Berewike with  
an hundred men of Armes And the Comines of the touñ with  
four hundred men of Armes And x M<sup>l</sup> And viij hundred of  
fotemen the somme of Erles and lordes amounteþ lxxv the  
summe of Bacheleres newe doubled amounteþ an hundred and  
fourty the somme of peple aboue saide amounteþ lxxviiij  
and xlv And þese lv grette lordes ladden alle þo grette  
lordes aboue saide in four batailles as ys tolde by fore  
alle in fotte And the kyng Edward of Engelande and  
Edward kyng of Scottlonde hade welle aparielede her  
folke in four bataylles for to fighte in fotte azens her  
enemyes and the englissh menstrelles blewene her trompes  
and here pipes and hidously ascriede the Scottes And þo  
hadde eueri engelish bataylle ij wynges of pris<sup>l</sup>  
Archeres the which at þat bataille schotten Arwes so  
faste and so sore that the scottes myght nough help heme

selfe And so bei smyten the Scottes pousandis to the  
 grounde and þey gonne for to flee fram the Engelissch men  
 for to save here lyfe And whenne the englissh knafes<sup>m</sup> sav  
 the scounfitur and the Scottes falle faste to the grounde  
 they preken here maistres hors with þe spores for to  
 kepe ham fro pereyle and seete here maistres att no force  
 And whenne the Engelissch men sav that þei lopte on her  
 horse and faste purseweden the Scottis And alle that  
 abiden they quellededouñ right þere myght seen the  
 doughtynesse of the noble kyng Edward (fol. 88<sup>a</sup>) and  
 of his men howe manliche þei purseweden the Scottes that  
 fleeden for drede And there men my3te see many ascottysch  
 man cast adouñ vn to the erth ded and here banneres  
 displaied<sup>a</sup> hackede vn to pecis 7 many agoode habergoun<sup>b</sup>  
 of steele in her blode baped and many attyme the Scottes  
 were gadred into companyes but euermore thei were  
 discounfited And þus hit fille as god wolde that þe  
 Scottes hadde that day nomore foyssoun<sup>c</sup> no myght azens þe  
 engelissh men than xx<sup>ti</sup> schep scholde haue azens v[ife]<sup>l</sup>  
 wolves<sup>d</sup> And so werr the Scottes discounfited and 3iet the  
 sottes<sup>e</sup> hade v[ife]<sup>l</sup> men azens on engelissh man And that  
 bataille was doñ att Halydoun hulle be sides the touñ of  
 Berewike Att þe which bataille were slayn of the Scottes  
 xxxv M<sup>l</sup> and vij<sup>c</sup> and xij and of Engelissch men but vij  
 onlich and þo were fotte men And this victorie fille to  
 the englisshmen in seynt Mergarettes euen In the 3ere of  
 our lorde ihesus crist M<sup>l</sup> CCC xxxij And whilles this  
 doying last the engelissh knaues nomen the pilfre of the  
 Scottes that were quelleded euerich man what he wolde take  
 with outten any schalangynge of Any man Deo gracias.<sup>2f</sup>  
 And so after this graciouse victorie the kyng tornede him  
 a3en vn to the same sege of Berewyke 7 whanne they of the  
 sege sawen and herde hou þat kyng Edward hade spedde

---

Fol. 88 <sup>1</sup>-ife erased. <sup>2</sup>Deo gracias. in red.



thei 3olde to him þe touñ with the Castell on the morwe  
 after þat þe bataille was that es to for to seie on seynt  
 Mergaretis day And than̄ the kyng ordeignede sere Edwarde  
 the Baillol with othir noble and worpi men to be keperes  
 and gouernoures of Scottlond in his absence and him selfe  
 tournede a3en in to Engelande after this victorie with  
 moche yoie and Worschipe And in the nexte 3ere sewyng þat  
 es for to seye þe 3ere of our lorde M<sup>l</sup> CCC<sup>o</sup> and xxxij and  
 of kyng Edwarde the vj he went a 3ene into Scottlond in  
 the wynter tyme at þe (fol. 88<sup>a</sup>b) whiche viage the Castel  
 of kylbrygge in Scottlond for him 7 his men that with  
 him comen he recouered 7 hade a3ens þe Scottes al att  
 his Aune<sup>3</sup> luste And in that same 3ere Sir Edwarde Baillol  
 kyng of Scottlond helde his parlement in Scottlond with  
 manye noble lordes of Engeland<sup>4</sup> that were at þat same  
 parlement for enchesoun þat<sup>g</sup> her landes 7 lordschipes þat  
 þei hade in þe reaume of Scottlond 7 helden of the same  
 Baillol And in the vij 3er of his regne abowte the ffeste  
 of Seynt Iohn þe Baptiste sir Edwarde Baillol the very 7  
 trewe kyng of Scottlond as be heritage and right lyne  
 made his homage 7 ffeaute vn to kyng Edwarde of Engelande  
 for þe reaume of Scottlond att þe Newe Castel vp tyne  
 in presence of meny worthi lordes 7 al so of Comineres  
 of bothe reaumes 7 a non after in the same 3er kyng  
 Edwarde of Engelande resceyuede of the Duke of Britaigne  
 his homage for the Erldom 7 the lordeschipe of Richemound  
 And Al so folewyng in the ix 3ere of his regne after  
 after Mighelmasse kyng Edwarde rode in to Scottlond 7  
 ther was faste be Seynt Iohnes touñ almost alle the  
 wynter tyme 7 he helde his cristemasse att þe Castel of  
 Rokesborough And in þe same 3er pour3 out al Engelande

---

<sup>3</sup>By corr. over erasure; the final -e of the orig. word  
 is visible. <sup>4</sup>land by corr. in right margin of column.

aboute Seynt Clementys tyde in wynter þere aros swech  
 aspryngyng 7 wellynge vp of wateris and floodis boothe  
 of the see 7 al so of ffressh ryveres 7 sprynges that þe  
 see brynkes<sup>h</sup> walles and Coostes broken vp men<sup>i</sup> bestes 7  
 howses in many places 7 namelich in lowe countrees  
 violently 7 sodeynly wer y dreynt 7 dryven a wey And þe  
 froyt of þe (fol. 88<sup>b</sup>a) erthe þourz contynuaunce 7  
 habundaunce of þe see of wateres euermor after were  
 turnede in to more saltnesse 7 sournesse of sauour The  
 x<sup>3</sup>er of kyng Edward he enterede þe scottych see<sup>j</sup> after  
 Missomer 7 to many of the Scottes he 3afe bataille 7  
 ouercome hem and many he tretteð and bowede vn to his  
 pees þourgh his doughtynesse 7 after Michelmesse þan  
 next folwyng was the Erle of Moriffe y take at Edenbourgh  
 7 brought in to Engelande and putt in to prisoun And in  
 the monthis of Iuyn 7 Iull þan next folwyng in the xj  
 3eer of his regne was seyn 7 appered in the firmament  
 abemed sterr the which clerkes callede Stella Comata<sup>k</sup> 7  
 that sterr was seyn in diuerse parties of the firmament  
 Wher after anon there folwede in Engelande goode chepe 7  
 wondir plente of alle chaffar vittailles 7 marchauntyse  
 and þere azeens housse scareste myschiefe 7 nede of Mone  
 In so moche that a quarter of whette at london was solde  
 for ijs and a goode ffat oxe at a nobile and v goode dowe  
 briddis<sup>l</sup> for a peny In the which 3er an holy roode euen  
 deide sere Iohn of Eltham Erle of Cornuwaile kyng Edwardes  
 brothir and lieth att westmenstre

Howe kyng Edward made a duchie of the Erledom of  
 Cornewaille and also of vj othir Erles þat were newe made  
 And of the ferste chalayngyng of þe reaume of ffraunce  
 Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xxv<sup>to</sup>

In the 3ere of our lorde M<sup>l</sup> CCC and xxxvij 7 of kyng  
 Edward xij in þe monthe of Marche duryng the parlement



atte westmynstre in lente tyme kyng Edwarde made of þe  
 Erledom of Cornewaille kyng E<sup>m</sup> the Which Duchie he 3afe  
 to Edwarde his firste sone with þe erledom of Chestre  
 And al so kyng Edwarde ma (fol. 88<sup>b</sup>) de at þat tyme vj  
 othir Erles that es for to seye sere Henry the Erle of  
 lancastrē soñe Erl of leycestrē William of Bohon william  
 Erle of Norhamptoun William of Mountagu Erle of Salesbury  
 sere hugh of Awdelee Erle of Gloucestrē Robert of Vfforde  
 Erle of Suffolke And william of Clyntoun Erle of  
 huntyngdoun In that same 3ere hit was ordeignede in that  
 same parlement þat no man scholde werr no cloth that was  
 wroughte out of Engelande as cloþ of golde 7 of silke  
 damaske veluet Satyn Baudekyn<sup>n</sup> no non swech othir no non  
 wyldewar<sup>o</sup> in ffurur<sup>p</sup> of be 3ounde see but suych as myght  
 spende a C ponde of rente 3erlich but this ordinaunce  
 and statute was of litil effecte ffor hit was no thinge  
 holde In the xiiij 3ere of his regne kyng Edwarde wente  
 ouer the see in to Brabañ with quene Phillip his wyffe  
 ther berynge Childe And att Andewarpe þere hee dwellede  
 more thañ a 3er to trette with þee duke of Braban 7 othir  
 alyed vn to him of þe chalangynge of the reaume of ffraunce  
 to kyng Edwarde be righte and be heritage after the deth  
 of Caroll the grett kyng of ffraunce brothir germayn of  
 quen Isabelle kyng Edwardes modir the which was holden  
 and occupiede vnrightfully by Philip of waleys the Emesone<sup>q</sup>  
 of kyng karoll The which Duke 7 alle his men and goodes  
 kyng Edwarde fonde redy vn to him And maden 7 beheighte  
 him seuerte<sup>r</sup> be goode feith 7 treuth And after þat þe  
 kyng hastede him into Engelande a3ene and lefte þere the  
 quene stille be hinde him in Braban Thañ in the xiiij 3er  
 of his regne whene alle the lordes of his reaume and oper  
 that ougen to be at his parlement weren (fol. 89<sup>a</sup>) Clepte  
 and assembled to gider in the same parlement holden att  
 london after the feste of Seynt hillar the kynges nedes  
 wer putt forth and promotted as touchinge the kyngdome

of fraunce ffor the which neddes to be spede the kyng  
 axede the v parte of alle the meble goodes of Engelande  
 And the wolles 7 þe ix scheff of euery corne and the  
 lordes of eueryche touñ of swich thinges þat scholde be  
 taxede and gadred scholde answer to the kyng þere offe  
 And all he hadde 7 helde att his ougne lust 7 wille Wher  
 ffore if y schal knoweleche the verry treuth thee ynnere  
 loue of the peple was tournede in to hate and the Comine  
 praieres in to cursynge for cause þat comine peple were  
 stronglich greued Al so the fforsaide Philip of walleys  
 of ffraunce hade gadred to him a grette hoost and  
 distroied þere in his parties 7 kyngdom many of the kynges  
 frendes of Engelande with touñes and Castelles and many  
 othir of here lordeschipes and many harmes schames and  
 dispitis dede vn to the quen Wherfor þe kyng whane he  
 herde of this tydinges he was strongly ameuede and ther  
 with an angrede And sent diuerse letteres ouer the see  
 to the quen and to oper þat werr his frendis gladyng<sup>a</sup>  
 heme and certefyinge that he wolde be ther him selfe in  
 al the haste that he myghte And anon after Estrene whan  
 he hade spede al thinge that him neddede and come for  
 he wente ouer the see azen of whos comynge the quen and  
 alle his ffrendes werr wondir glade and maden moche ioye  
 7 alle that wer his enemyes and a 3ens him helde maden  
 as moche sorwe In the same tyme þour3 counceil of his  
 trewe liges and counceil of his lordes that there wer  
 present with him toke þe kyng of ffraunce3 name And toke  
 and medlede the kynges Armes of ffraunce quartered with  
 þe armes of Engelande And comaunded forth wip his coigne  
 of golde yndir discrepcioun of the name of Engelande and  
 of ffraunce to be made the beste that myghte bee that es  
 for to saye (fol. 89<sup>a</sup>b) the floreyne that was clepede the  
 noble of valu of vjs 7 viijd and the halfe noble of value  
 of iijjs iiijd and the ferthing of valu of xxd 7c'



Howe kyng Edwarde come to Sclūs & descounfeted alle the power of ffraunce in the same hauen Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xxvj<sup>to</sup>

And in the nexte 3err after that es for to saye the xv 3er of his regne he comaunded and lette Wrytte in his Charteres writtes and other letteres the date of his regne of ffraunce ferste And whil that he was pus doynge and trauaillynge in ffraunce pour<sup>3</sup> his counceill he wrotte to alle Prelatys Dukes Erles barouns and the noble lordes of his cowntre And al so to diuerse of the Comune peple diuerse letteres and maundementis berynge date Gandanum the viij day of ffeuerer And anon after with in litil tyme he come a3en in to Engelande with the quene and her schildren and in the same 3er on Myssomereven he be gan to saile towarde ffraunce a3en & manly and stifly<sup>b</sup> vp on philip of walys the wyche longe tyme lay & hadde gadrede to him a ful houghe and boystous<sup>c</sup> navee of diuerse nacions in the hauene of Scluys and per thei foughten to gider the kyng of ffraunce and he with her hostes fro myday vn to morwe In the which bataille werre slayn xxx M<sup>1</sup> men of the kynges company of ffraunce and many schippes & Cogges<sup>d</sup> wer take and so pourgh godes helpe he hade pere pe victorie and bare pens a glorious victorie And in the same 3ere aboute seynt Iamees tyde with outen the 3atis of Seynt Omers Robert of Artoys with<sup>1</sup> men of Engelande & of fflaundes boldly<sup>2</sup> fought a 3ens the dwke<sup>3</sup> of Britayne or Burgoyne<sup>e</sup> and the ffrenche men att the which Bataille ther werre slayn and take of ffrenchemen xv Barons iiij<sup>xx</sup> knyghtes and shippes and Barges werr taken vn to the noumber of CC & xxx pe same 3err the kyng makynge and abidyng vp on the sege of Tourney the Erle of

---

Fol. 89 <sup>1</sup>Gone over by corr., prob. as result of erasure in the line below. <sup>2</sup>By corr. over erasure. <sup>3</sup>d- by corr. over erasure.

(fol. 89<sup>b</sup>a) henaude with englysshe archeres made asawte to the toun̄ of Seyntamounde wher that hee slowe 1 knyghtes and many othire and distroyed al so the toun And in the xvj 3ere of his regne folwyng in the wynter tyme the kyng dwelled styllē vp on the forsaide sege sente out into Engelande to his tresorer and other purueyours for golde and mony that scholde be sent too him there in his nede but his procuratoures 7 messangeres cursedly and ful slouely seruede him at his nede and him deceyvede On whos faute and lachesse<sup>f</sup> the kyng toke trews bytwene him and the kyng of ffraunce And the kyng ful of sorwe wo 7 schame in his herte with drowe him fro the segee and come in to Brytayne And there was so grette stryfe for vittaylles that he loste many of his peple And when he hade do pere that he come fore he distresside<sup>g</sup> hym ouer the see in to Engeland ward And as he saylede to ward Engelande in the heye see the moste myshappes stormes 7 tempestes thundres and lightynges fil to him in the see the which was seyde that hit was don 7 areysede thurgh euelle sperites made be sorcerye 7 Nigromancye of heme of ffraunce wherfor the kynges herte was ful of sorwe and Angwysse weylinge and sighyng and seide vn to our lady on þis wysse O blissede lady ladi seynte Marie what es the cause that euermore goynge in to ffraunce al thinges 7 wederes fallen vnto me yoyefuly 7 lykyngly 7 gladsome 7 as y wolde haue heme but al wey turnyng in to Engelande warde alle thinges fallen vnprophitable and harmefulle Neuer þe latter he scapede alle the perelles of the see as god wolde come<sup>h</sup> be nyght to the tour of london and the same 3er the kyng helde his cristemas (fol. 89<sup>b</sup>b) ate Menoures and sende worde to the Scotte3 by his messengere3 that he was reedy and wolde fighte with hem but the sottes<sup>i</sup> wolde nought abide that but fledde ouer the Scottysse see and hide ham as wel as they myghte And in the xvij 3ere of his regne aboute the feste of Conuersacion of seynt poul kyng Edward whan he hade been in Scottlonde and thee Scottes were flede he come a3en in to Engelande and alitil a fore



lente was þe turnement at Dunstaple<sup>j</sup> to the which  
 tornement comen alle the 3onge bachelrie of Engelande  
 with meny Erles & other lordes att þe which turnement  
 the kyng him selfe was þere present And the nexte 3ere  
 folwyng in the xvij 3er of his regne att his parlement  
 holden atte westmenstre in the xv of Pasche kyng Edward  
 the bridde made Edward his firste be geten soñe Prynce  
 of Walis And in þe xix 3ere of his regne anon after in  
 Ianuary before lente the same kyng Edward lette make  
 fulle noble iustes & grette festes in þe place of his  
 berth att Wyndesore that þere werr neuer non suech seen  
 there afore att the which feste3 and ryalte werr ij  
 kynges ij quenes the Prynce of walys the Duke of  
 Cornewaylle x Erles ix Countesse3 barouns and many  
 burgeises the which myght nought lightly be noumbrede  
 and of diuerse3 londys be 3onde see wer many straungeres  
 And at þat same tyme whenne the Iustis were doñe kyng  
 Edward made a grett soper in the which he ordeignede  
 firste and bee gan his rounde table<sup>k</sup> & ordeigned &  
 stedefastede the day of the forsaide rounde table to be  
 holde ther att wyndesor in the whitsoñe wyke euermore  
 after 3erely And in þis (fol. 90<sup>a</sup>) tyme Onglisshe men  
 so moch hauntede & clevede to the wodenesse & folye of  
 the straungeres that fro tyme of the comyng of þe  
 Henauderes xvij 3er passet they ordeignede and chaungede  
 hem euerych 3er diuerse schappes & disgissyñes<sup>la</sup> of  
 clothinge of longe and large & wide clothis destant<sup>b</sup> &  
 deserte from alle other honeste & goode vsage And anothir  
 tyme schorte clothis & streitt wasted dagede<sup>c</sup> & kytte &  
 on euerych side toslatrede<sup>d</sup> and botend with sleues &  
 tapites of Surcottes<sup>e</sup> & hodes ouer longe & large &  
 ouermoch hangynge that if y seie schalle the soþe þei  
 werr more lich to turmentoures and deueles<sup>f</sup> in here

clothinge and shoyng 7 other aray than̄ to men And the  
 wymm̄en morre nycely 3ete passede the men in aray 7  
 coriousloker for they werr so streit clothide that bei  
 lette hangge fox taylles sewede be nepe with inne forth  
 herr clothis for to hele<sup>g</sup> 7 hide herr arses the which  
 disgyssyng and pride perauentur ab<sup>h</sup> afterwarde brought  
 forþ and encausede many myshapes 7 myscheves in the reame  
 of Engelande The xx 3er of kyng Edward he vente ouer in  
 to Britaigne 7 Gascoigne in whos companye wente þe Erle  
 of Warewyke the Erle of Suthfolke þe erle of huntynghoun  
 and the Erle of Arendell and many other lordes 7 comune  
 peple in a grett multitude with a grette navey of CC and  
 xl shippes anon after Missomer for to avenge him of many  
 wronges 7 harmes to him don̄ by Philip of Valeys kyng of  
 ffraunce a3ens the trews bifor hande graunttede the which  
 trews he falslich 7 vntreweliche be cavillaciouns<sup>i</sup> losede<sup>j</sup>  
 7 disquatte<sup>k</sup>

Howe kyng Edward saillede in to Normandie ande (fol.  
 90<sup>a</sup>b) aryvede atte hogges with a grette hoste and of the  
 bataylle of Scluys and of the begynnyng of the sege of  
 Caleis And al so of the Bataille of Duresme 7c' Capitulo  
 CC xx septimo

IN the xxj 3err of hys regne kyng Edward þourgh councelle  
 of alle the grett lordes of the reame cleppede and gaderede  
 to gider in his parlement att westminstre be fore Estren  
 ordeignede him for to passe ouer the see a 3ene for to  
 dissesse and distourble the rebelles of ffraunce And whanne  
 his naue was come to gidir and made redi he wente with an  
 houghe oost the xij day of Iuyll and saillede in to  
 Normandie and aryvede atte hogges And whan̄ he hade rested  
 him there vj dayes for be cause of trauaylllynge of the  
 see and for to haue out alle his men with alle here  
 necessaries out of here schippes hee wente towarde Cadomun<sup>l</sup>



brennyng wastyng & distroyinge alle the touñes as he went  
 be þe wey And the xxvj day of Iuyllly att the bryge of  
 Cadomy manly and proowdly & orpedly y strengthened &  
 defendi<sup>m</sup> with Normandes he hade þer a strongge bataille  
 and a longe durynge þourgh the which a grete multitude  
 of peple was slayn And there werre take Prisoneres the  
 erle of Ewe the lorde of Tankerdeuile & a C othir kny3tes  
 and men of Armes & vj C fotte men y noumberede & the touñ  
 & the subarbes vnto the barre walles of alle thing that  
 myghte be bore ande cariede out was robbede and dispoilled  
 Afterwarde the kyng passynge forth be the countre aboute  
 the brede of xx mylle he wastede alle manere thinge that  
 he fondde whañ Philipe of wales perceyvede al this al  
 þough he were faste by with astrong hooste he wolde nough  
 come no nerr but brake alle the bryges be 3onde þe water  
 of Seyne froo Roone vnto parys And him selfe fledde vn  
 to the same citte of paris with alle the haste that he  
 myghte ffor soþe the noble kyng Edward whañ he come to  
 paris brigge and fonde hit broken with ynne ij dayees  
 (fol. 90<sup>b</sup> a) he lette makit a3en And in the morwe after  
 assuñpsioun<sup>n</sup> of our lady kyng Edward passede ouer the  
 water of Seyne goynge to warde Crescy and destroyede by  
 þe weye touñes with the peple duellynge there ynne And  
 in the feste of seynt Bartylmew he passede þe water of  
 summe vn hurte with alle his hoste therr as neuerr  
 aforehande was any manere weye noo passage<sup>o</sup> Wherr too M<sup>l</sup>  
 men werre slayn of heme þat lettete her passage ouere  
 Ther for the xvj day of Auguste kyng Edward in a felde  
 faste by Crescy havynge iij batailles of Engelisshe men  
 countred and mette with Philipe of Valyse hauynge with  
 him iiij batailles of the which the lefte passede grettly  
 the noumber of the engelisshe peple Ande whañ tho two  
 hostes metten to giderr ther fille Vp on heme the kyng  
 of Beme the Duke of loreyn and Erles also of fflaundres  
 dalamsom Bloyes Harecourte aumaele and Nyveres and many

oper Erles Barouñs lordes knyghtes 7 men of Armes þe  
 Noumbre of a þousande v C<sup>o</sup> xliij with outen fottemen and  
 othir men yArmede that wer no þing rekenede And for al  
 this the same Vnglorious philippe with drowe him with the  
 residue of alle his peple wherefore hit was seide in  
 Comine amonges his ougne peple Nostre beall retreit<sup>2</sup> that  
 es for to saye Our feir with drawen hym<sup>p</sup> þhan<sup>q</sup> kyng Edwarde  
 7 our englissh men þankyng god of sucche a victorye after  
 herr grette labour takynge to heme alle thing neddefulle  
 to herr sustenaunce and savyng of her lyfe ffor drede of  
 herr enemyes restede heme þer And full errely in the morwe  
 after the frensshe men with an houghe passynge hoost come  
 a3en for to 3eue bataille and fighte with the ffrenche<sup>r</sup>  
 men with whome metten and counterden the Erle3 of  
 warewike Northampton 7 Northfolke with here companye  
 and slowen ij M<sup>l</sup> 7 token many prisouneres of the gentilles  
 of hem and the remenaunt of the same hoost fledde iij myle  
 þens And the þridde day after the bataille the kyng (fol.  
 90<sup>b</sup>) wente to Caleys and distroiede alle the countre as  
 he roode þedir wha<sup>n</sup> that he was comen þat es for to say  
 the iij day of September he gan to be sege the tou<sup>n</sup> with  
 the Castelle and continuede his sege fro the forseide  
 iij day of September vnto the þridde day of August the  
 nexte 3er after 7 in the same 3ere duryng the sege of  
 Caleis the kyng of Scottlonde with a fulle grette  
 multitude of Scottes come in to Engelonde to Neviles  
 Crosse aboute Seynt lukes day the Euaungiliste hopynge  
 and trustynge to haue founde alle the lond destitut 7  
 voide of peple ffor as moch as the kyng of Engelonde was  
 be 3onde the see saue only preste3 and men of holy  
 Cherch 7 wymen 7 childerene and plowhmen 7 swech other  
 laborerres And þere þei robbeden and dede moch privy  
 sorwe but 3iet fonde thei y nough that hem with stodde

---

<sup>2</sup>Nrē ... retreit in red.



be the grace of gode And so aday of Batayle was assignede  
 be twen heme and certeyn lordes and men of holy Cherch  
 that werr in that countre with othir Comune peple ffaste  
 by the Citte of Duresme att the which day pough the  
grace and the helpe of god the Scottes werr ouercomen ⁊  
 3iet were pere folde<sup>s</sup> so manye of hem as of engelissch  
 peple And ther was slayn alle þe chevalrie of knyghthode  
 of the reame of Scottlond And there was taken as thei  
 wolde haue fledde Dauid kyng of Scottlond the Erle of  
 Mentyf sere william Douglas and many othir grette men ⁊  
 after that our engelissch men whā they hadde restedde  
 hem a fewe dayes ⁊ hade ordeygnede keperes of the North  
 countre they comen to london and broughte with hem the  
 kyng of Scottlond ⁊ þese othir lordes that wer take  
 prisouneres vnto the Toure of london with all the haste  
 þat they myghte and þer they lefte hem in saffe keppynge  
 vn to the kynges comynge ⁊ wenten home a 3een in to herr  
 ougne countre And afterwarde was the kynges raunsome of  
 E<sup>3</sup> Scottlond taxede vnto a C M<sup>1</sup> Marke of Silver to be  
 paide in x 3ere that es for to seye eueri 3ere (fol. 91<sup>a</sup>)  
 a þousande Marke of siluere

Of the conqueste and wynnynge of Caleis ⁊ of grette  
 pestelence and reynes that fillen sone after and of the  
 tresoun ordeigned azens Caleys Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xx<sup>o</sup> octauo

IN the xxij 3er of kyng Edwardes regne he wente ouer the  
 see in winter tyme and lay all the wynter in the Seege  
 of Caleys þe which 3eer whilles the seege lastedde Philip  
 of walleys kyng of ffraunce caste ⁊ purposede treetouresly  
 and with fraude to putte away þe Sege and come xxij day  
 of Iulyll in the same 3er with a grette hoste ⁊ astronge  
 pouere ⁊ neighede vn to the sege of Caleys The which

---

<sup>3</sup>Stroked out.

philippe the laste day of Iuyll sent to kyng Edwarde worde  
 that he wolde 3eue him playn bataille the thride day nexte  
 after þat about euesonge tyme if that he durst come fro  
 the sege & abide hit And whã kyng Edwarde herde that  
 with oute any longe taryinge or grete avisement<sup>a</sup> he  
 accepted hit gladly the day & hour of bataille that  
 philip hade assigned And whã the kyng of ffraunce herde  
 that with outen any longe taringe or grette avisement  
 the nexte nyghte affter he sette his tentes afir and  
 vanysshed and wente a wey þens cowardly Thã þei þat were  
 in the toũ and in the Castel be seged seyng al this hou  
 that þei hade non oper helpe no socoure of the kyng of  
 ffraunce no of his mẽ and al so that þere vittailles  
 with yne hem were spended & wasted & for defawte of  
 vitalles & of refresshyng eten hors houndes Cattes and  
 Mis for to kepe here trowth as longe as they myghte And  
 whã they saw and was founde amonges hem att þe laste  
 that þei hadde no thĩg amonges hem forto ette no lyve  
 by no non socour non no rescuyng of the frensshmen on  
 that othir side that þey wiste well that þey muste  
 eithir die for defaute or elles 3elde vp the toũ And  
 anon wente & token doũ the banneres and the armes of  
 ffraunce on euerich side that werr hangede out and wen  
 (fol. 91<sup>a</sup>b) ten on the walles of the toũ & in othir  
 diuerse places as naked as þei wer bore saue her scherttes  
 and breches and helden herr swerdes nakede and þe poynt  
 donwarde in here handes & putten ropes & halteres aboute  
 herr nekkes & 3alde vp the keyes of the toũ and of the  
 castel to kyng Edwarde with grette feer & drede of herte  
 And whanne the kyng sav this as amercyable kyng & lorde  
 receyvede hem alle to his grace And afewe of the gretteste  
 personis of estat & of gouernaunce of the toũ he sente  
 into Engelande þere for to abide her raunsome and þe  
 kynges grace and all the Cominalte of the toũ the kyng  
 lette go whedir that þei wolde in pees & with outen any



harme and lete hem berr with hem alle here thinges that  
 bei myght beer 7 carie keppeynge the touñ 7 the Castell  
 to him selfe Thañ þourgh meditacioun<sup>b</sup> of Cardynalles that  
 werr sent fro the Pope trews was take þere be twen  
 ffraunce and Engelande for ix monthis þanne nexte  
 folweyng And aboute Mighelmas kyng Edwarde come a 3een  
 in to Engelande with a gloriouse victorie And in xxiiij  
 3eer of his regne in the Est parties of the worlde therr  
 aroos and be gañ a pestelense 7 dep<sup>c</sup> of Sarasinis 7  
 Paynyns that so grett A deth was neuyr heerde of a for  
 And þat wasted a wey soo the peple that vneþes þe x  
 parte was lefte on lyue And in the same 3er aboute the  
 south Countres and al so in the weste countrees ther fil  
 so moch reyne 7 so grette watrees that frome Cristemesse  
 vn to Missomer there was vnnethis day nor nyght but þat  
 hit regnedde some what thourgh the wich watres the  
 pestalence was so enfectede<sup>d</sup> 7 so habundaunt in alle  
 contree3 7 namelich aboute þe Court of Roomee 7 othir  
 places 7 sere<sup>e</sup> costees that vnnethis þer wer leffte on  
 lyue folke to burye heme þat wer deede honestly but maden  
 greette dyches and puttes that werr wondir brode and depe  
 7 ther inne buriede and made a renge of the dede bodies  
 and anothir rynge<sup>f</sup> of Erth aboue heme and þus werr they  
 buriede 7 non othir wyse (fol. 91<sup>b</sup>a) but yf hit wer the  
 fewer þat werre grett men of astate And after al this in  
 the xxiiij 3ere of his regne hit was doñ kyng Edwarde to  
 wytte 7 to vndirstonde of atresoun that was be gouñ att  
 Caley3 7 ordeynede for to selle that touñ ffor a grett  
 soumme of ffloreyms vn to kyng Philip of ffraunce þourgh  
 the ffalssenes 7 the ordinaunce of a knyght þat men callede  
 sere Geoffrey of Charney þat was wondir priue with the  
 kyng of ffraunce Ande whanne the kyng herde this he toke  
 with him þe nobleys 7 the genteles and othir worthi and  
 orpede men of Armes that wer there present with him for  
 the solempnite of that heige feste and well 7 wissely in

alle the haste that he my3te And as priuily as he myghte  
 he wente him ouer the see And that same tyme the kyng  
 held his cristemasse att Hauerynge And in the morwe after  
 Newe3eres day the kyng was in the Castel of Caleys with  
 his men of Armes bat non of þe aliauntes<sup>g</sup> wiste þereofe  
 And þilke false conspiratoure 7 traytour Gefferey of  
 Carneye seep tat he myghte not oppenly haue his pourpos  
 of the Castell priuilych and slylych he come In and held  
 the touñ with a grette oost And whanne that he with his  
 men was comen yn he paide thee fforseide somme of florens  
 as couenaunt was be twen heme to A Geneweys<sup>h</sup> in the touñ  
 þat was keepere of the Castell 7 consentyng to thee same  
 Gefferay in all his falsenesse 7 trecherie 7 bounden the  
 engelissch mynystres<sup>i</sup> 7 seruantes þat werr in the Castell  
 that þei my3t nough helpe sem selfe no lette hem of her  
 purpos 7 thanne wenyng that þei hadde be seker y nough  
 þei spaken herr wykkeddenesse 7 falsenes openly 7 anheigh  
 that alle men myghte herr And now schulle 3e her how thei  
 werr desceyved ffor they comen In by apriuy posterne on  
 alityl brigge of tre Ande whanne þei werr comen In  
 sotelly 7 priuily the Brigge was drawen vp and kept þat  
 (fol. 91<sup>b</sup>) non of heme that werre comen In myght nough  
 goo oute no no mo come yn to heme And anon oure englissh  
 men went out at priue holles 7 wyndowes 7 ouer the walles  
 of the touñ and of the Castelle and wenten 7 foughten  
 manlich with the ffrenssh men that were with owten and  
 hade the bettere of hem the which whanne þei were  
 ocupiede be heme selfe on here side þe kyng that was  
 withyne the touñ havyngh with him scarsly but xxx men of  
 Armes drewe out his swerde and with an hey voys cride an  
 hegyh A seynt Edward A seynt George<sup>l</sup> And whañ folke  
 herde that þei come rennyng to him and 3afen þere to  
 herr enemyes soo stronge assaute that þere wer mo þañ

---

Fol. 91 <sup>1</sup>A seynt Edward ... George in red.



CC men of armes & many othir slayn̄ and many fledden and so be the grace of god þe victorie fille to the engeliss̄ men Than̄ the kynge toke with him this Geffray that was fyndir<sup>j</sup> of this trecherie and al so many othir french prisoner̄es and with ynne awhile after come a zene to Engelonde And in this same 3er and in the 3ere afore and also in the 3ere after was so grette pestelence<sup>k</sup> of men fro þe Est in to the West and namely pourgh boches<sup>l</sup> that he þat sikenede this day deid on þe iij day after To the which men that so deiden in this pestelence þat hade but litil respite of lyvynḡe the Pope Clement of goodenesse & of his grace 3affe heme ful remyssioun̄ and for 3evynḡe of alle herr synnes þat þei were schreuen of And this pestelence lastede in london̄ fro Michelmesse in to August nexte folwynḡe<sup>m</sup> almost an hol 3er And in þese dayes was deth with owte sorwe<sup>n</sup> weddynges with oughten ffrendschipe wylful penaunce derth withouten scarsete & fleeynḡ withowte resute<sup>2o</sup> or socour ffor meny fledden fro plase to plase be cause of the pestalence but þei were enfectede and myght nōuhte aschape the deth After the prophete Isaye seith (fol. 92<sup>a</sup>) Whoo that fleep fro the face of dreede he schall falle in to the dich And he that wyndith him selfe out of the dich he schal be holde & teyde with agrenne<sup>a</sup> But whanne this pestalens was ceside & endeide<sup>b</sup> as god wolde vn nethis the x parte of the peple was lefte on lyue And in the same 3er be ganne a vondir thing that alle that euer werr boren after that pestalens hadde ij cheke tep<sup>c</sup> in herre heede lasse thane thei hadde afore

Howe kyng Edward̄e hadde a grette Bataylle of the Spaynardes in the See faste by wynchil Se & of many other thinges  
Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> xx<sup>o</sup> nonodecimo

---

<sup>2</sup>Long s̄ used; small oblique dash above -u-.

(fol. 134<sup>a</sup>) Howe kyng Edward had a grete bataill of the  
spaynardis in the se fast by Wynchelse 7 mony opyr þingis  
Capitulo CC xxix<sup>ti</sup>



And in the xxv 3ere of his regne aboute seynt Iohnis tyde  
 in Hervist in the see fast by wynchelle see kyng Edward  
 hade a grett bataille with men of Spayne wher that her  
 schippes 7 Nave lay Cheynede to gider that eyther pey  
 muste fighte or drench And so whenne alle our worthi  
 lordes and men of Armes on the see Costes faste be  
 wynchil see 7 Romeney werre gadered to gider 7 our nave  
 7 schippes al reedy to the werre the englissh men metten  
 manly 7 stiffly with herr enemyes comynge ffresshly 7  
 feresly a 3ens heme Ande whanne the Spaynesshe vesseles  
 7 nave wer clossede yn al aboute þere men myghte see  
 astronge bataylle on both sides And longe duryng in the  
 which bataylle there nerr but fewe þat foughten but that  
 þei werr spetously hurte and fowle And after the bataille  
 there werr xxiiij schippes of herres y take and so thee  
 englissh men hade the bettere And in the nexte 3ere  
 folwyng of his regne xxvj thee kyng þour3 his councele  
 lette ordeigne and make his newe mony that es for to say  
 the peny the grotte of valu of iijd And þe halfe grotte  
 of valu of ijd but hit was of lesse whighte than the  
 oolde sterlyng was be v̄s in the ponde And in the xxvij  
 3ere (fol. 92<sup>a</sup>b) of his regne was the grette derth of  
 vittaylles the which was clepede the der somer And in  
 the viij 3er of his regne in the parlement holden atte  
 Westmenstre after Ester Sire Henre Erle of lancastre was  
 made Duke of lancastre And in þis same 3eer was so grette  
 a drought that fro þe monthe of March vn to the month of  
 Iuly þerr fyllle no regne on the erthe Wherfor alle  
 freectes sedes 7 herbes for the moste parte were loste  
 in the fawte wherfor there come so grette dissesse of  
 men and bestes and derth of vittailles in Englonde so  
 that this lande that euere beforr was plentewous hade  
 nede þat tyme to seeche his vittailles and refresshyng  
 of othir outylles<sup>d</sup> and countrees And in the xxix 3ere  
 of kyng Edward hit was accorded grauntede and swore be



And in the xxv 3er of hys reigne abowte Sent Ionys tyde  
 in herwest in the See fast by syd wynchylse kyng Edward  
 had a batayll wyt men of Spayne wer at her Schippys And  
 a navy layd Chaynid to giddyr þat eyther thay most fythe  
 or drynche And so dedyne all our worthy meñ of Armes on  
 the See costys fast by wynchylse and hys enmys wer  
 gedderd to gidyr And our navy of Schippus wer all redy  
 to werr þe Englysmeñ mett manly 7 stefly wyt her enmyis  
 comeñ fresly a3enst þe hawyne And wen the spaynys wessellys  
 and þe nauy wer closyd in all A bowte þer meñ my3t see A  
 strong batayll on bothe sydys and long Duryng in the wych  
 batayll þer wer but fewe fowghtoñ but þay wer Spetusly  
 horte 7 fowll 7 aftyr þe batayll ther wer xxiiij Schippys  
 of hers I take And so the Englysmeñ had the bettyr And þe  
 next 3er ffolewyng of hys reigne xxvj 3er of the kyng and  
 þour hys consell but<sup>a</sup> hordynynd and mad hys new mone the  
 peny þe grot of valew of iiijð þe half grott of walewe ijd  
 but hyt was a losse wyt in the olde sterlyng by v.3 in the  
 pond And in the xxvij 3ere<sup>1</sup> of hys reigne was the grett  
 derth of wytayll þe wych was clepyd þe Der Somer And in  
 the v<sup>2</sup> xxviiij 3er of hys reyng in þe parlement holdyng at  
 westmestyr aftyr Estyr Syr harry of lancastyr was mad duke  
 of lancastyr And þe Same 3er was so grett A drowght þat  
 fro þe moneth of Marche on to þe moneþe þer ffyll no  
 reyne on herth wer for all frutus And sedys 7 herbys for  
 þe most party wer lost in defawte wer of þer com gret  
 dyses of meñ (fol. 134<sup>b</sup>) and bestys and derth of wetaylis  
 in Englond so that þis lond was euyr be for Plente had ned  
 þat tyme to seche his wetayllys of oþyr out Ilys 7 contres  
 And in the xxix 3er of kyng Edward þer was couinand  
 grantyd and Sworne by

---

Fol. 134 <sup>1</sup>MS. damaged; -ere barely legible. <sup>2</sup>Stroked  
 out.



twene the kyng ffraunce ⁊ the kyng of Engelande þat he  
 scholde haue a 3een alle his londis and lordeschipes that  
 longede to the Duchie of Gyeene of oolde tyme the which  
 hade ben with drawe wrongefully occupiede be diuerse  
 kynges of ffraunce be fore hande to haue ⁊ to holde to  
 kyng Edward and to his eyres for eueremore freely  
 priuily and in goode querte<sup>e</sup> vp on this couenaunt that  
 the kyng of Engelande scholde leue off and relese all  
 rygth ⁊ clayme that he hade ⁊ claymede of the kyngdome  
 of ffraunce And of the tytill þat he toke þere of Vp on  
 which speche And couenauntes hit was sent to the Court  
 of Rome on bothe sides of thee kynges that the forseide  
 couenaunt scholde be enbullede<sup>f</sup> But god ordeignede  
 bettere for the kynges worchip of Engelande ffor what  
 þorur fraude ⁊ deceyte of the ffrensshe men and what  
 þour<sup>3</sup> lettyng of the Pope and of the Courtt of Roome  
 the forsaide couenauntes w[.]rre<sup>1</sup> disquatt and left of  
 And in the same 3e[.]r<sup>1</sup> the kyng Remew[yt]<sup>2</sup> be his witt  
 and disreett counsell the stappellede<sup>g</sup> of wollys outt  
 (fol. 92<sup>b</sup>a) of fflaundres in to Engelande with alle  
 liberteis ffraunchises ⁊ fre costomes that longen þerto  
 ⁊ ordeignede hit in Engelande in diuerse place<sup>3</sup> that es  
 for to seye att Westminstre Caunterburi Chichestre  
 Bristowe Lincoln ⁊ Hulle with alle the forseide thinges  
 that longen þerto And this thing scholde be thus doñ the  
 kyng sworre him selfe there too and prince Edward his  
 sone with other many grette wittenesses þat wer þere  
 þan present And in the xxx 3ere of his regne anon after  
 whittson day in the parlement ordeigned att Westminstre  
 hit was tolde and certefiede to the kyng that Philippe  
 þat helde the kyngdome of ffraunce was ded and that Iohn  
 his soñe was crounede kyng And that this Iohn hadde 3oue

---

Fol. 92 <sup>1</sup>Letter blotted by (?) water-stain. <sup>2</sup>Superscript  
 t poss. blotted by (?) water-stain.

twen the kyng of fraunce and the kyng of Englonde þat he  
 shuld haue aȝen all hys londys 7 lordschippus that longid  
 to þe Duchery of Guyoun of old tym the wyche had byn wyt  
 drawyne and wrongfully occopyd wyt dyuers kyngys of  
 fraunce be for hond to haue and to hold to kyng Edward  
 and to hys heyris 7 to hys successouris ffor euyr mor  
 fryly pesse Abely 7 in good quiet vp on̄ thys couinaunt  
 þat þe kyng of Englonde shuld leve of 7 relese all ryght  
 7 clayme þat he had claymed of þe kyng dom̄ of fraunce and  
 of the tyll<sup>b</sup> þat he toke þer vp on þe wyche speche 7  
 couenant hyt was send to þe cort of rome on both sydis  
 þat þe forsayd couinant shuld ben in bullyd but god  
 hordynyde bettyr for the kyng worschep of Englonde ffor wat  
 þour frauth and dyssayte of the frenche men̄ and what þour  
 lettyng of the pop And of the contre of Rome þe forsayd  
 couinant wer to squat and left off And in the same 3er  
 þourch þe kyng hys wysse dyscrecioun counsell reuokyd  
 the sta[...]<sup>3</sup> of wollys out of flandres in to Englonde  
 wyt all the lyberteys of flandres 7 fre costomys þat  
 longys þer to 7 hordynyde it in Englonde in dyuers Plasys  
 þat is for to say at westmestyr Caunterbury Chychestyr  
 Brysttow lycolne 7 hull wyth all þe forsayd thyngis that  
 longit þer to 7 þat þyng shuld be done þe kyng Sower  
 (fol. 135<sup>a</sup>) hym Selfe þer to And pryncs Edward hys sone  
 wyt othyr men gret wytnesse þat wer ther þane present in  
 the xxx 3er of hys reigne Anone aftyr wetsonday in the  
 parlement ordyd<sup>a</sup> at westmestyr yt was asertyfid to þe  
 kyng þat phelip<sup>1</sup> þat Eld þe kyngdome of fraunce was ded  
 Iohn̄ hys son̄ was crownyd kyng

---

<sup>3</sup>Blotted; prob. -b- and -p- run together. Fol. 135  
 1-l- by scribe over -p-.



karoll his sone the duchie of Guyene Of þe which thing  
 kyng Edward whā he herde þeroffe he hade grette  
 indignacioun vn to him ⁊ was wondir wroth and strongely  
 mevede And therr aforr alle þe worþi lordes that þere  
 werr assembled at þat parlement he clepede Edward his  
 soñe to him to whome þe Duchie of Guyene be right  
 heritage scholde longe to and 3aff hit him ther byddyng  
 ⁊ strengthyng him þat he scholde ordeigne him to defende  
 ⁊ venge hym vp on his enemyes and saue ⁊ mayntene his  
 right and afterwarde kyng Edward him selfe ⁊ his eldest  
 soñe Edward wenten to diuerse place3 and seyntes in  
 Engelande a Pilgrymage for to haue the more grace and  
 help of god and of his seynttes Att the seconde kalend  
 of Iuyll whā alle thing was redy to that viage ⁊  
 bataille And all his retenev and pouer assemblede And  
 her nave Al so redy he toke with him the Erle of warewyk  
 þe Erl of Suffolke the Erle of Salesbury ⁊ þe Erle of  
 Oxenforde ⁊ a þousande men of Armes and as many archeres  
 in the Natyvite of our lady And at Plymmouth token herr  
 schippes and began to saille And whā he come ⁊ was  
 arryvede in Guyene he was therre worschipfully take ⁊  
 receyvede of the moste noble men ⁊ lordes of þat countre  
 And anon aftir kyng Edward toke with him his too soñes  
 þat es for to seye sere lionelles<sup>h</sup> Erle of vltoun and  
sere Iohn his brothir Erle of Richmounde And sere henry  
 Duke of lancastre with many Erles lordis ⁊ men of Armes  
 ⁊ ij M<sup>l</sup> Archieres and sayllede to warde ffraunce and  
 (fol. 92<sup>b</sup>) reste hym a whille att Caley3 And afterwarde  
 the kyng wente with his folke afore seide and with other  
 soudiours of be3onde see that þere abode the kynges  
 comynge the seconde day of Nouember And toke his iournenay  
 towarde kyng Iohn of ffraunce ther as he trowede to haue  
 founde him faste by the toune of Odomarum as his letters  
 ⁊ couenautes made mencion that he wolde abide him  
 therr with his oost And whā kyng Iohn of ffraunce herde



And þer for all þe worthy lordys þat wer At Assemblent at þat parlement he clepyd Edward hys sone to hym to whom the Duchery of Guya<sup>n</sup> shuld be ryth herytage shuld long to þe kyngdom of Englonð and 3aff hem beddyng and strenthyng hym þat he shuld ordeyn hym to þe defend 7 veng hym vp o<sup>n</sup> hys enmys 7 sawe and maynten hys rythe And aftyrward hym self and his heldyst so<sup>n</sup> Pryns Edward went to dyuers plasys to sayntys in Englonð a pylgremag forto haue the mor grace and help of god and of hys sayntys And þe ij kalend of Iull wan all þay wer redy to þat wyag 7 batayll and all her retenew and pour assembland and her nauy also redy to take wyt hyme þe Erle of werweke and the Erle of Southfuke þe Erle of Glassynbury and the Erl of oxinforte and I M<sup>l</sup> of me<sup>n</sup> of Armes And also meny of Archers in the nautteu<sup>i</sup><sup>b</sup> of our lady at plowmoth tokyne her schippys and by gane to saylle and he be come and was arayd in to Guyoun he was ther worssippfully take and s<sup>2c</sup> ressayvid of the most notabyll me<sup>n</sup> and lordys of that Cuntre And anone aftyr kyng Edward toke hym wyt hys ij Sonnys Syr lyonell Erle of vlster and syr Iohn hys brother Erle of regmond and syr harry Duke of lancaster wyth meny Erles 7 (fol. 135<sup>b</sup>) lordys and men of harmes And ij M<sup>l</sup> Archers and saylid toward fraunce and þay restyd heme a whyll at Cales And aftyrward þe kyng went wyt hys me<sup>n</sup> aforsayd and wyt oby<sup>r</sup> Sowgors of be the See þat þer a bod þe kyngys remuyng þe second day of nouembyr and toke hys Iornay toward kyng Iohn of fraunce eyn as trowyd for to haue hym fast by the towne of odomarum and hys letters and couinantys mad mencion þat he wold abyd hyme ther wyt hys host And when kyng Iohn<sup>3</sup> of fraunce hard

---

<sup>2</sup>Long s shape. <sup>3</sup>I poss. over h-.



of the kynges comyng of Engelande he wente away with his men & his cariage cowardly and schame ffully fleeynge wastynge alle vittaylles ouer all þat þe engelisshe men scholde not haue pereoffe And whanne kyng Edwarde herde that he fledde he pursewede hem with alle his mayn tyl heden & þan he be holdynge the wantynge & the Scantnesse of vittaylles and also of the cowardyse of the kyng of ffraunce he turnedde a 3een wastynge alle the Countre And whille alle this thinges werre a doynge the Scottes prively and be nyzte token the touñ of Berewyke sleynge heme þat withstoden hem & no man elles but blessedde be god the Castel neuer the lattere was sauede & kepte be englisshe men that wer perine Thanne the kyng perceyvynge alle this tourned a3en in to Engelande as wroth as he myghte wher fore in aparlement atte Westminstre was graunted to þe kyng of euery sake of wolle l̄s durynge thee terme of Sexe 3ere þat he myzte the myghtylokerr<sup>i</sup> fighte & defende the reame a3ens the Scottes & other mysdoeres And so whanne alle thinges werr redy the kyng hastede him to the Sege warde &c'

<sup>3</sup>How king Edwarde was Crowned king of Scotlonde. And how Prince Edwarde toke þe king of ffraunce. And of þe Batayle of Peyters Capitulo CC<sup>no</sup>.xxx.<sup>4</sup>

(fol. 93<sup>a</sup>) And<sup>1</sup> in þe xxxj 3ere of his regne þe xvj day of Ianuar þe king being in þe Castell of Berwyke with a fewe men / but hauyng pere ffast by a grete oste. þe towne was 3elde vnto him with oute any maner defence or deficultif beyng // þan þe king of Scotlond þat is for to

<sup>3</sup>Hand C commences. <sup>4</sup>A space of approx. 6 to 7 lines is left blank at the foot of the column. Fol. 93

<sup>1</sup>Five-line ornamental initial A in blue with red pen-flourishes.

of þe kyngys comyng of Englonð he went a way wyt hys meñ  
 7 hys cariage cowardly and schamfully fleyng wastyng all  
 wytayllys and þe Englysmen shuld haue none þer of And þe  
 kyng Edward hard þat he fled he pursuyd<sup>4</sup> hyme wyt all hys  
 meñ tull hedoun 7 þane he beholdyng þe wantyng and the  
 Scantenesse of vitayllys and also þe Cowardnes of the  
 kyng of fraunce he Turnyd a3ene wastyng all þe countre and  
 whyll all þis thyngys wer a doying the scottys preuely and  
 be nyth toke þe towne of Berweke Sleyng þat wyt stod hem  
 and no mañ blessyd be god þe castell neuyr þe lesse was  
 sauýd and kepte be Englysmen þat wer ther in þen þe kyng  
 parsayvid all thys turnyd a3en in to Englonð as sone as  
 he mythe wherfor the parlement at westmestyr was grantyd  
 to þe kyng of euyry sake of woll l3 duryng the terme of  
 vj 3er þat he my3the my3tlokyr fayth and defend the  
 remnant<sup>d</sup> A 3enst þe Scottys and opyr mysdoers And so when  
 all thing was redy the kyng hastyd hym to þe sege ward

How kyng Edward was cr[.]wned<sup>5</sup> kyng of Scotlonde And howe  
 prince Edward toke þe kyng of ffraunce

(fol. 136<sup>a</sup>) And in the xxxj 3er of hys reigne þe xiiij day  
 of Ianuare the kyng bryng<sup>a</sup> in the castell of Berwek wyt  
 A few meñ but hauyng fast by a gret host the towne was  
 3eld vp to hym wyt out anny maner defens ordefulte<sup>b</sup> þen  
 þe kyng of Scotlond þat ys for to

<sup>4</sup>Superscript -r-. <sup>5</sup>Letter blotted, prob. -o-.



say. Sere Iohn Baylloill concidring how þat god dede many merueyle þinges 7 gracious for kynge edward at his owne wille fro day to day. he toke and 3af vp þe Reame of Scotlond 7 þe crowne of Scotlonde at Rokesborough in to þe kinges handis of englonde vndir his patent lettres þere of y made // and a noon kynge edward in presence of alle prelatys and opere worthy men 7 lordis þat þere were. lete crowne him silfe kynge þere of þat londe and Reame of Scotlonde // And whan alle þinge was doon and ordeyned in þat contreyes at his luste. he turnyd a 3en in to englonde whyþe mekil worshepe / and while þat þis vyage was doinge in Scotlonde / Sere edward prince of walys / as a man enspired of god was in Gyane in þe cite of Bordeaux // tretyng and spekinge of þe calenginge of þe kinges ri3t of englond þat he had vnto þe Reame of ffraunce // And þat he wolde a venged be with strong hande // and alle þe prelatis lordis Baronis peeres and my3ti men of þat contre. consented welle to him þanne // Sere edward þe prince with a greet oste gadrid vn to him þe vj. day of Iuly. went fro Bordeaux goinge 7 traueylynge by many dyuerse contreys. 7 toke many presoneres moo þan .vj. M<sup>1</sup>. men of armes by þat contre as he Iorneyde // and toke þe towne of Remorantyn in Saloygne. and by Seged þe castelle .vj. dayes / and at vj. dayes ende þey 3elden vp þe castell vnto him 7 þere were taken þe lord Crom 7 Sere Bursygaunt 7 many opere kny3tees 7 men of armes mo þan .iiij<sup>xx</sup>. 7 fro þennes faste bi Tureyne 7 phetein faste by Chane<sup>2</sup> his nobil men þat were with him had a stronge Bataile<sup>3</sup> with ffrensche men / 7 an hundrid of hir men of armes weren þere slayne // 7 þe erle of damice 7 þe steward of ffraunce were þere take with an hundrid men of armes

<sup>2</sup>Heavy pen-stroke through top of Ch-; marks in right margin of column like insertion caret and gallows-sign.  
<sup>3</sup>By scribe in left margin of column with brown crayon cross; no caret in text but insert here.



say syr Iohn ballol condedryng<sup>c</sup> hou þat god doth meny v<sup>d</sup>  
 Mervely thyngis and gracyus for kyng Edward at hys owne  
 wyll fro day to day he toke and 3aff vp his reme of  
 Scotlond and the crowne of Scotlond At Robisboruch in to  
 þe kyngys hondys of Englonð vndyr hys patente lettyrs þer  
 of I mad And anone aftyr kyng Edward in presens of all  
 the prelatys and oþyr worthy meñ And lordus þat wer ther  
 let g<sup>e</sup> crowne hym kyng ther of the rem of Scotlond and  
 when all thyngys was done 7 ordyny in elke contrayis at  
 hys lost he turnyd a3ene in to Englonð wyt and howg  
 worchip And wyll þat þis viage was a doying in scotlond  
syr Edward Pryns of walys as a mane in speryd of good was  
 In Guyoun in the Cytte of bordeus trefyng and spekyng of  
 the chaulengeng of þe kyngys rythe of Inglonð þat he had  
 to þe reme<sup>1</sup> of fraunce 7 þat he wold A wengyd be wych<sup>f</sup>  
 strong hond And all prelatys perys and my3ty meñ of the  
 contre consentyng well to hym then syr Edward þe pryns  
 wyt a gret host I gaderyd to hym vj day of Iule went [f]<sup>2</sup>  
 fro bordeus goyng and trawelyng be meny dyuers contreys  
 and toke meny presoners mo þan vj M<sup>1</sup> meñ (fol. 136<sup>b</sup>) of  
 harmes be the contre as he Iornayd of Romorancyn in  
 Salyigne and be segid the Castell vj dayes and at þe vj  
 end þay 3eld þe Castell vn to hyme and þer takyne þe lord  
 of Crom and syr Bursgaunt and meny othyr kni3tys<sup>3</sup> and meñ  
 of harmes mo þan iiij<sup>xx</sup> And fro thens by Tureyn 7 peten  
 fast be Chamboye his nobyll meñ þat wer wyt hyme haddyng  
 a strong batayll wyt french meñ 7 an C meñ of harmes wer  
 slayne and þe Erle of Damice And þe steward of fraunce  
 wer take wyt a C meñ of harmes

---

Fol. 136 <sup>1</sup>Followed by hole in vellum; writing round it.  
<sup>2</sup>Partly erased. 3-n- over -y- and -3- over the ascender  
 of some letter by scribe.



/ in þe whiche 3ere þe xix day of Septembre faste by  
 peyters þe same prince with a M<sup>l</sup>. 7 ix C. men of armes  
 7 archers ordeyned a Batayle to kinge Iohn of ffraunce  
 comynge to þe (fol. 93<sup>a</sup>b) Prince warde with .viij. M<sup>l</sup>.  
 cosyn men of armes 7 opere mekil peple in to an houghe  
 passinge nombre // of þe whiche þere were slayne þe duke  
 of Burbon and þe duke of a thenes 7 many opere nobill  
 men. 7 of þe prinse men of armes a M<sup>l</sup>. 7 of oper by  
 trewe a compte and rekenyng .viij. C. 7 þe king of  
 ffraunce þere was take // and Sere philip his 3onger  
 sone. 7 many dukes 7 noble men 7 worpi kny3tes and noble  
 men of armes abowte .ij. M<sup>l</sup>. // And so þe victorie ffelle  
 þere to þe prince 7 to þe peple of englond by þe grace  
 of god 7 many þat were take presoneres weren sette to  
 here Raunson // And vppon here trewþe 7 kni3thode were  
 charged 7 hadden leue to go home. But þe prince toke  
 with him þe kinge of ffraunce and Philip his Sone 7 dede  
 hem alle þe reuerens þat he my3te 7 wente a3en to Bordeaux  
 with his glorious victorie // þe Summe of men þat weren  
 þere take presoneres 7 of þe men þat were þere slayne in  
 þe day of Batayle was .iiij. M<sup>l</sup>. CCCC 7 xl. // And þe  
 3ere of kinge edwarde .xxxij. þe v. day of may prince  
 edward with king Iohn of ffraunce 7 Philip his Sone 7  
 many opere worthi presoneres arryved graciously atte þe  
 hauyn of Plymmowþe // And þe xxiiij day of May a bowte  
 .iiij. aftir none þey comen to london brygge. 7 so wente  
 forþe vnto þe kinges paleys at westmynstre // And þere  
 fel so grete prese<sup>4</sup> 7 multitude of peple aboute hem to  
 beholde 7 see þat woñdir 7 ryall sy3te. þat vnnethes fro  
 mydday vnto ny3t þey mi3t<sup>5</sup> no3t come vnto westmynster //  
 and þe kinges Raunson of ffraunce was taxed 7 sette to

<sup>4</sup>By scribe in right margin of column with caret; caret  
 in text. <sup>5</sup>MS. þey m3t; outside right margin of column  
 but by scribe.

and in that 3er þe xix day of Septembyr fast by paytours  
 þe same preynce wyt a M<sup>l</sup> 7 ix C meñ of Armes Archers  
 hordynyð a batayll to kyng Iohn of fraunce comyng to þe  
 pryns ward vyt vij M<sup>l</sup> Chosyne meñ of Armes and othyr  
 much pepyll in an huge passyng þe nombyr of þe wyche þer  
 was slayne þe duke of Burbon and the duke of Achenez and  
 meny othyr nobyll meñ of þe preyns meñ of Armes a M<sup>l</sup> and  
 of othyr aftyr the trewe a Counte and rekenyng viij C and  
 þe kyng of fraunce was ther take and syr Philep hys 3onger  
 sone and meny dukys of nobyll meñ and worthy kny3tys and  
 meñ of harmes about ij M<sup>l</sup> and so þe victory fyll ther to  
 þe pryns and to þe pepyll of Englund by the grace of god  
 and mony that wer takk presoners wer sett a Raunsoun 7  
 vp oñ her trewth 7 kny3hod wer chargid and had leue to goo  
 but þe prens tok wyt (fol. 137<sup>a</sup>) hym þe kyng of fraunce  
 and Philip hys sone wyt all þe reuerens þat he mythe and  
 when a gayne to bordues wyt a gracios victory the some of  
 men þat wer take presoners and of meñ that wer slayñ thys  
 day of batayll was iiij M<sup>l</sup> CCCC xl And in the xxij 3er and  
 kyng Edward þe v day of May prens Edward wyt kyng Iohn of  
 fraunce and Phelip hys soñ and meny oþyr presoners A rayed  
graciously in the hauyn of Plomoth<sup>l</sup> And the xxiiij day of  
 þe Same moneth a bowt iiij aftyr none þay come to london  
 be london brig And went forthe to l<sup>a</sup> the kyngys pales at  
 westmestyr fyll so gret presse and multitud of pepyll a  
 bou3t hem to be hold and see þe wondyr 7 þat ryall sythe  
 þat onhethys fro myday mygh com to westmestyr 7 the kyngys  
 Raunsoun of fraunce was taxid 7 Sett at



iij. Milliouns of Scutes<sup>a</sup>. of whome .ij. Millyouns sholde  
 be payde a none in hand // And 3e shal vnderstonde þat a  
 Millioun is M<sup>l</sup>. þowsandes // And after somme mennes  
 Raunsoun was sette at iij. M<sup>l</sup>. ffloreynes. 7 alle is one  
 in effecte // And þis same 3ere was made a Solempne  
 Iustes in Smythfelde. being þere present þe kyng of  
 englond þe kinge of ffraunce. 7 þe kinge of Scotlonde.  
 7 many opere worþi lordis // þe xxxiij. 3ere of his Regne  
 þe same kinge edward at Wyndesore as wel ffor loue of  
 kny3thode as for his owne worshepe. 7 atte Reuerens of  
 þe. kinge of ffraunce 7 of þe kinge of Scotlonde 7 of  
 opere lordis þat weren þere at þat tyme. he helde a  
 wondir (fol. 93<sup>b</sup>a) ryal and a costelew ffeste of Seynt  
 George. passynge any oper þat euere was. I holde þere  
 euere a fore // wherfore þe kynge of ffraunce. in  
 scornynge sayde. þat he sawe neuere ne<sup>3</sup> herd of soche  
 solempne festes ne rialteis<sup>b</sup> holden ne done with Tayles<sup>c</sup>  
 with paynge of gold or siluer // 7 in þe xxxiiij 3ere  
 of his Regne. xxiiij. kalende of Iuli sere Iohn erle of  
 Richemonde kynge Edwardis Sone of englond weddid dame  
 Blaunche duke henries dou3ter of lancastre. cosyn to þe  
 same Iohn by dispensacyoun of þe pope 7 in þe mene tyme  
 were ordeyned. Iustes at london iij daies of þe  
 Rogaciouns // þat is to saye þe Maier of london with  
 his xxiiij Aldermen a3ens alle [alle]<sup>6</sup> þo þat wolde  
 come // In whos name 7 stede þe kynge preueyly with his  
 iij Sones. Edward. lyonell Iohn and Edmonde. 7 xix opere  
 grete lordes helden þe felde with grete worship // And  
 þe same 3ere as hit was tolde 7 saide. of hem þat sawe  
 hit. þere come oute blode of þe Tombe of Seynt Thomas  
 of lancastre<sup>d</sup> some tyme erle of englonde as ffresshe as  
 þat day þat he was done to dep // 7 in þe same 3ere kynge  
 edward chace his Sepultur 7 his ligginge at wesmynstre

<sup>6</sup>Expuncted by underline of 4 dots.

iij melyons of scutys of hem two shuld be payd Anon̄ And  
 3e shall vnderstond þat I melyoun ys I M<sup>1</sup> M<sup>1</sup> And aftyr  
 sum meñ ys Ransoun was sett iij mellyons of florans and  
 all ys on in afecte And þis same 3er wer mad Slemp Iustys  
 In Smethfeld beyng þer present þe kyng of Englonð and þe  
 kyng of fraunce and the kyng of Scotlonð and mony othyr  
 noble 7 worthy lordys And in the mene tyme wer ordynid  
 Iustys at london̄ thre dayes of the Rogacoons<sup>2</sup> þat<sup>3</sup> ys for  
 to say þe mayr of london̄ wyt hys xxiiij Aldermeñ A 3ens  
 all þat wold come in wh<sup>4</sup> name And feie the kyng preuely  
 wyt hys iiij Sonnys Edward leonell Ion and Edmond and  
 oþyr xix gret lordys heldeñ (fol. 137<sup>b</sup>) the feld  
 worschipfully and the same 3er as hyt was told and sayd  
 of hem that saw yt ther com out blod out of the t<sup>5</sup> tombe  
 of Thomas somtyme Erle of lancaster as fresch as þat þay  
 þat he was done to deth And in the same 3er kyng Edward  
 ches his sepulkyr 7 a hys lygyng at westmestyr

---

<sup>2</sup>au/a abbreviation-mark over -oo-. <sup>3</sup>Followed by hole in vellum; writing round it. <sup>4</sup>Before hole in vellum (see preceding note). <sup>5</sup>Followed by small hole in vellum.



faste by þe Shrine of Seint Edward // 7 a noon after þe  
 xxvij day of Octobre he wente ouere þe See to Caleis  
 makynge protestacioun þat he wolde neuere come aʒen in  
 to englond.<sup>u</sup> tyl þat he hadde fully ended þe werre by  
 twene ffraunce 7 hym // 7 so in þe xxxv. 3ere of his  
 Regne in þe wynter tyme kynge Edward was trauailed in  
 þe coostes of þe Reyne<sup>e</sup>.<sup>u</sup> abowte Seint hillary tyde and  
 he departyd his oste 7 wente too.<sup>u</sup> Burgoyne warde // with  
 whom þanne mette pesabely þe duke of Burgoyne.<sup>u</sup> by hotynge  
 vnto hym .lxx. M<sup>l</sup>. ffloreynes þat he.<sup>u</sup> shold spare his men  
 7 his pepull // 7 þe kinge hit grauntyd at his requeste.<sup>7</sup>  
 dwelled þere vn to .xvij day of Marche þe whiche day hit  
 come to kynge edward ere<sup>f</sup>.<sup>u</sup> þat stronge þeues on þe see  
 vndir þe erle of Seint poule þe xv day of Marche liggyng  
 awaite vppon þe Thownes þat ys to sey hastyng winchell 7  
 Ry 7 opere townes 7 vilagis<sup>7</sup> by þe See syde.<sup>u</sup> 7 vilages  
 by þe see costes<sup>g</sup>.<sup>u</sup> hadden entryde as enemyes // þat is  
 to wete þe towne of winchelsee.<sup>7</sup> slowne alle þat euere  
 (fol. 93<sup>b</sup>) with stode hem.<sup>u</sup> 7 with sayde here comynge //  
 wherfore þe kinge was gretely mevyd 7 wrathed // And he  
 turnyd a ʒein to Pariseward comaunding his oste to  
 distroye 7 slee with dynt 7 strenþe of swerde hem þat he  
 had by fore hande y sparyd // And þe xij<sup>e</sup> day of Aprill  
 þe kynge come by fore parise 7 þere he departyd his oste  
 in ix diuerse batayles with iiij C. knyʒtes new dubbed  
 on þat tone syde of him // And Sere herry duke of  
 lancastre.<sup>u</sup> vnder pees 7 trewis wente vnto þe ʒatis of þe  
 Cete proferinge hem 7 sayde þat he<sup>h</sup> wolde abyde Batayle  
 in þe felde vndir seche condicioun // þat ʒyf þe kynge  
 of englonde were ouere come þer as god forbede hyt þat  
 he shulde neuere þanne.<sup>u</sup> challenge þe kingdom of ffraunce //  
 And þanne þey gaf hym but a shorte worde 7 a scorneful

<sup>7p<sup>t</sup></sup> ys to sey ... vilagis by scribe in left margin of  
 col. without insertion-mark.

fast be þe schryne of Sent Edward and anone aftyr þe  
 xxvij day of Octobyr he went ouyr the See to Caleys makyng  
 protestacioun þat he wold neuyr com Aʒene In to Englonð  
 tyll he had full Endyd þe wer by twne fraunce and hym 7  
 So in the xxv 3er of hys reygne in the wyntyrtym the kyng  
 was trauelyd in the reme costys And about Sent hyllery  
 tyd he departyd hys host and went to Burgeyne ward wyt  
 home met pessably The Duke of borgone be hotyng to heme  
 lxx M<sup>l</sup> florens þat he shuld spar hys meñ and the pepyll  
 and the kyng grauntyd at hys request and dwellyt þer on  
 to þe xvij day of Marche the wych day his<sup>b</sup> come to kyng  
 Edward hard þat þe strong thewys wer on the See vndyr þe  
 Erle Sent powle the xv day of march lying A wayt vp on  
 townys and castellys Rye 7 othyr plassys 7 wellagys on the  
 See Costys haddyne entryd as enmys to þe towne of wynchelf  
 and slow yn all þat euyr wyth stod heme And wytsayd her  
 comi yng wer for þe kyng was gretly mevyd and wrathed And  
 he tornyd aʒene to parysward And comandyd hys host to  
 dystroy 7 Sell wych<sup>c</sup> dent of Swerd hym þat he had be for  
 hond sparyd (fol. 138<sup>a</sup>) and the xij day of Apperell þe  
 kyng come to pareche and ther he departyd hys host in ix  
 batayllys wyt CCCC of knyʒtes new dobyd on the to syd of  
 hym And syr harry duke of lancastyr vndyr pesse and trewys  
 went to þe 3atys of the Cyte profryng to haue þat he wold  
 abyð a batayll in the feld ondyr such a condycioun þat yf  
 the kyng of Englonð wer ouyr come þer as god fforbede þat  
 þan he shuld neuyr challenge þe kyng of fraunce And when  
 he had of hem A schort Scorne full



answe<sup>r</sup>. 7 a noon he tolde þe kynge 7 his lordis. what  
 he had herde 7 what þey sayde // 7 þanne a noon forth  
 with þe newe kny3tes with many op<sup>er</sup>e made a grete sawte  
 vnto þat Cete<sup>e</sup>. 7 distroyde hougely þe Sobarbis of þat  
 Cete // 7 while alle [þis]<sup>8</sup> þis was adoyng<sup>e</sup> þe englysshe  
 men made hem redy to ben avenged vpon þe shame 7 dyspite  
 þat was do þat 3ere at winchelse. 7 ordeyned Naue of  
 iiij<sup>xx</sup> Shippes of mennis of london. 7 of op<sup>er</sup>e Marchauntis  
 7 xiiij M<sup>l</sup>. of men of Armes 7 archers. 7 wenten 7  
 distroiden hem 7 scomed þe See<sup>i</sup>. 7 manly token 7 helde  
 þe yle of kaux // wherfore þe frenshe men þat is for to  
 saye þe Abbot of Clunye þe erle of Tankeruyde 7 sere  
 Bursegaunt þat was þat tyme Steward of ffraunce with many  
 op<sup>er</sup>e men of þe same contrey by comune assente of þe  
 lorde karoll þat was Regent of ffraunce. þey hasted hem  
 7 wenten vnto þe kinge of england askyng<sup>e</sup> 7 by seching<sup>e</sup>  
 him of stedfaste pees 7 euere lastyng<sup>e</sup>. vpon serteyne  
 condiciouns þat þer were shewed wreten // þe whiche whan  
 þe kynge 7 his counseile had seen hit pleyed hem neuere  
 a dell // But sith hit wolde. ben none op<sup>er</sup>e in tyme of  
 better acorde 7 deliberacioun þe ffrenshemen besily 7 with  
 grete Instaunce askyd trewes. for her See costes. 7 þe  
 kynge graunted hem // 7 in þe morow after þe vtas of  
 pasche þe kynge turnyd him with his oste. toward  
 orlyaunce destroyng<sup>e</sup> 7 wastinge alle þe contreye by þe  
 way // 7 as þey wenten þedirwarde þere felle vpon hem  
 suche a storme 7 tempeste. þat none of owre nacioun herde  
 ne sawe (fol. 94<sup>a</sup>) neuere none seche. þoru3 þe whiche  
 þowsandes of oure men 7 of here hors in here Iorneyng<sup>e</sup>  
 as hit were þoru3 veniaunce sodenly were slayne 7  
 pershede // þe which tempeste ful moche 3itte fered no3t  
 þe kynge ne moche of his peple. þat þey ne wente forþ in  
 here viage þat þey had be gonne // wherfore abowte þe

---

<sup>8</sup> Erased.

Answer he told þe kyng and hys lordys wat he had hard and  
 what þay sayd 7 þe furthwyt þe new knyztys makynge A sawte  
 to þe Sitte wyt mony oby<sup>r</sup> and þay dystroy hugely þe  
 Ebbarbys<sup>a</sup> of þe Cyte And whyll all thes thyngys wer a  
 doynge þe Englesmeñ mad hem redy to be vengyd on the same  
 and dyspit þat was done þat 3er at wynchylse and hordynid  
 a nawe of iiij<sup>xx</sup> Schippys of men of london 7 othyr  
 marchandyys<sup>b</sup> 7 xiiij M<sup>l</sup> of meñ of harmes and archerys and  
 went dystroyd heme and sýnyd<sup>c</sup> þe See and mañly toke the  
 Ille of Caux werfor the frenche meñ that ys for to say þe  
 Abbot of Cluyne þe Erle of tankyrwyll and syr Bursegaunt  
 þat þan was þe steward of fraunce wyt meny othyr meñ of  
 the same contre be comeñ assent of the lord carold þat þo  
 was ge<sup>l</sup> Regeunt of fraunce þay hastyd hyme and went to þe  
 kyng of Englonde askyn hyme 7 be sekyn hyme hym stedfastly  
 pesse and lastyng vp on A Serten condycioun þat þer wer  
 schewyd wryting (fol. 138<sup>b</sup>) the wyche when the kyng And  
 hys counsell had sent<sup>d</sup> hyt þat plesyd hym neu<sup>r</sup> a dell  
 but Say hit wold be none nothyr in tym of bettyr And in  
 the morrow þe kyng turnyd hym wyt hys host toward  
 horlyauns and wastyne all þe contre be the way and as  
 thay wentyn þedyrward þer fyll vppoñ hym such a storme 7  
 tempest þat none of oure nacione herd ne sawe neu<sup>r</sup> no  
 suche toward þe wyche a I M<sup>l</sup> of our meñ and of howr hors  
 wars<sup>e</sup> in Iurnayng as hit wer þorw wengaunce Sodenly wer  
 slayne and perchyd þe wych tempest mech ryth feryth nouth  
 þe kyng ne myche of hys pepyll þat þay wentyn forth in her  
 vyage þat l<sup>f</sup> thay had be gone wher for A bouth the



feste of holy Rode day in May.~ fastby Carnocum be forsaide  
 lordis of ffrance metynge þere with be kyng of englonde  
 maden þere a peseble acorde & and afynyall vppon serteyne  
 condyciouns and grauntes Articulerlyche<sup>a</sup> gadrid and  
 wreten to gedre for euere more to laste full discretely  
 made & to boþ kynges profitable & to here Reames bothe  
 with one assent of karoll be Regent & gouernour of  
 ffrance & of be peeres of be same Reame ewreten & made  
 vndir be date of Carnocum be xvj day of may.~ þey offrede  
 & proferede vnto be kyng of englonde // Requiringe his  
 grace in all þing.~ y wreten þat he wolde benyngly admytte  
 hem.~ & holde hem fferme & stable vnto hem & to here heyres  
 ffor euermore.~ be whiche þinge & articles // whan kinge  
 edward had seyne hem.~ he grauntyd hem.~ so þat boþe parteis.~  
 sholde be sworn vpon goddis body.~ & vpon be holye  
 euaungelies þat be forsayde couenauntis sholde be  
 stabullissed<sup>b</sup> & þey a graunted & a cordiden graciously. //  
 þere were ordeyned & desstressed<sup>c</sup> on euery asyde ij Barouns  
 .ij. Baronettes & ij kny3tes to admytte and resseyue be  
 Othes of be lorde karoll Regent of ffrance.~ & of Sere  
 edwarde be ferste.~ Sone and heire of kyng edwarde of  
 englonde // And be x day of May þere was songen a solempne  
 Masse at paris.~ & aftir be iij<sup>e</sup>. Agnus dei I seyde with  
 dona nobis pacem & in be presence of be forsayde men þat  
 þere were ordeyned to admitte & resseyue be Othes & of  
 alle opere þat þere my3te be // be same karoll leyde his  
 ry3th hande vpon be patene with goddis body<sup>d</sup>.~ & his  
 lifte hande vpon be Missall & seyde // we .N. And .N.<sup>e</sup>  
 sweren vpon goddis body & vppon be holy gospels þat  
 we shal trewly & stedfastly holden toward vs be pees &  
 be a corde made bytwene be .ij. kinges.~ and in no manere  
 to do be contrarye.~ & þere a monge alle his lordis for  
 more love & strengthe of witnesse he deled & departed be  
 reliques of be Crowne of criste vnto be kny3tes of  
 englonde.~ & þey curteysly token here leue // and on be



fest of hollyrod day in may fast be carnacioun þe forsayd lordys of fraunce Metyng ther wyt the kyng of Englonde in a paysable acord 7 a fynell vp on A serten condycioun and grauntys Artyculus gaddred and wretyn to giddy euyr mor last full dyscretly mad and to both kyngys profetabyll to her remys bothe wyt one Assent of Caroll þe g<sup>g</sup> Regent and gouernor of fraunce and of hys pesse of the same reme I wrytiñ and mad vndyr þe datt at Carnacoun þe xv day of Maij þay offerd and proferd to þe kyng of Englonde requyryng hys grace in all thyngys I wrytten þat he wold benyngly 7 hold hym ferme 7 stable to hem and to her hayrys for euyr mor the wyche þyngys and artyculus when kyng Edward had sene hem so þat both partyis shuld be sworn opoñ godys body and on holy Ewangelest þat forsayd couinantys Suld be stabyll holden and so þey accor (fol. 139<sup>a</sup>) did gracyusly þer for þer wer hordynyde 7 dressyd on euyry Seyd ij borrows<sup>1a</sup> ij knyztys to Amet and Ressayue þe hodys<sup>b</sup> of the lord Caroll Regent of fraunce and of syr Edward þe fyrst Soñ harry of kyng Edward of Englonde þe x day of may þer was be gone a solempne messe at parisch and aftyr iij Agnus þer was sayd wyt dona nobys paceme in presens of the forsayd men þat wer ther hordynyde to A myth and ressyuyd þe othys and of all othyr þat þer myzt be þe same Caroll layd hys ryth hond on the patent godys body and hys left hond on þe missall 7 sayd we and Swor on godys body and þe holy gospell þat we shall trewly and stedfast houdyn<sup>c</sup> toward vs þe pesse and the corde mad wy<sup>d</sup> twene ij kyngys 7 in no maner and do þe contrary and among all her lordys for my love and strenthe of wytnesse he de led and the partyd þe relekys of crowne of cryst to þe knyztys of Englonde and thay curtesly tokyn her leve in the

---

Fol. 139 <sup>1</sup>First -o- partly over -r- by scribe.



ffryday nexte. ⁊ þe same manere othe in presense of þe  
forsayde knyȝtes and (fol. 94<sup>a</sup>b) of alle opere worthy  
men. Prince edwarde made at louers // and aftir warde boþ  
kinges and here Sones. ⁊ þe moste nobill men of boþ  
Reames with Inne þe same ȝere maden þe same Othe // ⁊ for  
to strengþe alle þese forsayde þinges. ⁊ þe kyng of englond  
axed þe grettest men of ffraunce // ⁊ he hadde his axynge  
þat ys forto sayne .viij. dukes .viij. erles .xij. lordis. ⁊  
þat is to sayne Barouns ⁊ worthi knyȝtes // ⁊ whan þe  
place // ⁊ þe tyme was a synyd in þe whiche boþe kynges  
with here counceylle sholde come to gedres all þe forsayde  
þinges bytwene hem spoken. ⁊ forto Ratefie ⁊ make ferme ⁊  
stabill // þe kinge of englond a none wente towarde þe  
see. ⁊ and at hounde flete<sup>f</sup> he be gan to sayle. ⁊ leuyng to  
his othes þo þat were lefte by hynde. ⁊ by cause of his  
absence token<sup>g</sup> moche heuynes // ⁊ after þat þe xix day  
of May he come into englond ⁊ wente to his paleys at  
westmynstre ⁊ come þedir vpon Seint donstonis day. ⁊ þe  
iiij. day after he visited Iohn the kinge of ffraunce þat  
was in þe Toure of london ⁊ delyuered him frely from  
alle manere presouns. ⁊ Sauynge ferste þey were a corded  
of .iiij. Milliouns of ffloreyne for his Raunson. And þe  
kinge comforted him ⁊ chered him in alle places with all  
þe solaces and merþes þat longed to akinge in his goynge  
homwarde // ⁊ þe ix day of Iull in þe same ȝere. ⁊ þe same  
Iohn kinge of ffraunce. ⁊ þat afore hande lay here in  
Ostage wente home A ȝen into his owne lande. ⁊ to trete of  
þoo þinges and of moo opere. ⁊ þat longed ⁊ fillen to þe  
gouernaunce of his Reame // and aftirwarde metten and  
comen to gedres at Caleys bothe .ij. kinges with bothe  
here counseiles a bouten all halowentyde ⁊ þere were  
shewed þe condiciouns ⁊ þe pointes of þe pees. ⁊ and of  
þe a corde on boþe sydes. ⁊ I wreten ⁊ þere with outen any  
with saynge of boþ sydes graciously þey þere a cordid //  
⁊ þer was done ⁊ songen A Solempne Masse. ⁊ after þe



frydy nex þe sam maner oth in presens of forsayd knyztys  
 and obyr wordy meñ Prens Edward mad at louerys Aftyrward  
 both þe kyngys and her Sonnyys 7 þe most nobyll meñ of  
 bothe Remys wyt in the same 3er madyne the same othe And  
 for to strenth all thys forsayd thyngys the kyng of  
 Englund Askyd þe forsayd meñ of fraunce and he had his  
 haxiying þat ys for to sayne vj dukys viij Erles xij  
 lordys þat ys to sayne barons and worthy knyztys And wane  
 þe plassee 7 the tyme was assynyd in the wych both kyngis  
 wyt her consell shuld com to gyddyr all the forsayd  
 thyngys by twne hem I. (fol. 139<sup>b</sup>) spoke forto radyfi and  
 make ferme and stabyll the kyng of Englund anon toward  
 the See and hat houndflet he be to sayll lyuely<sup>e</sup> to hys  
 hostys þat wer I left by hynd hyme by cause of hys Absente  
 meche enmyes And aftyr xix day of May he come into Englund  
 and whente to hys Plasys<sup>f</sup> at westmestyr on Sent donstonys  
 day and iij day aftyr he wesyt Iohn þe kyng of fraunce  
 þat was in the tour of london And delyuer hym from all  
 maner of presoun Saff fyrst day wer accordyd of iij  
 Melyons of florens for hys raunsoun and the kyng comfortyd  
 hyme cheryd hym in all plassys wyt all solasse and merthis  
 þat longth to þe kyng in hys goyng homward 7 þe ix day of  
 Iule in the same 3er þe same Iohn kyng of fraunce þat afore  
 honde lay her hostage and went hym Azenne vn to hys owne  
 lond and trefte of the thyngys 7 of other þat longydeñ 7  
 ffelly vn to þe gouernaunce of hys reme and aftyrward  
 mettyñ and come to gydyr at Cales both ij kyngys wyt bothe  
 her counsell Abowt all halwyntyd and þer wer schewd  
 decondycioun and the poyntys wyt out ony wyth Sayeng on  
 bothe sydes gracyusly they Accordyd 7 þe was done 7  
 Sonyne<sup>g</sup> A Solempne messe And aftyr þe



Agnus dey vpon goddis body. And alle so vpon þe Masse boke. boþe kinges 7 here Sones 7 þe grettest lordis of bothe Reames 7 of here counseyles þat þanne were presente and noȝt hadde swore by foren. þe forseide othe þat þey had made. 7 was tyteled by twene hem boþe. þey be hyȝten þere to kepe. 7 alle oþer couenauntes þat weren twene hem<sup>1</sup> hem ordeyned // 7 in þis same ȝere men. Beestes. Trees 7 (fol. 94<sup>b</sup>a) and houses with sodeyne Tempeste and greet lyȝtnynges weren peryshed // and þe deuell<sup>2</sup> apered bodyly. in Mannes licknesse to mekell peple as þey wente in dyuerse places in þe contray 7 spake vnto hem<sup>3</sup>

Kynge<sup>4</sup> edward in þe xxxvj ȝere of his Regne a none aftir cristesmasse in þe feste of conuersioun sancti paule he helde his parlement at westmynstre in þe whyche was put forthe 7 shewyd all þe acorde and þe tretis. þat was stablissed 7 I made by twene þe .ij. kinges // þe whiche a cord plesed mekell þe peple 7 þere fore by þe kynges commaundement þere were gadryd 7 come to gedre in westmynster cherche. þe fferste Sonday of lente. þat is to say þe ij kalen of ffebruar þe fforseyde englysshe men 7 ffrenshe men. where was a masse songe ful Solemplye of þe trinite / of þe erchebyssshop of Caunterburye Mayster Symond Islepe // and whan agnus dei was do. þe kyng beyng þere with his Sones. 7 also with þe kinges Sones of ffraunce 7 oþere noble 7 grete lordis with candelles liȝt in here handis. 7 crosse I brouȝt fforthe // Alle þo þat were called þer to 7 were nouȝt Swore. Sworen þere þe same othe þat was wreten vpon goddis body 7 vpon þe Masse

---

Fol. 94 <sup>1</sup>twene hē by scribe in right margin of col.; vertical stroke as insertion-mark in text. <sup>2</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; vertical stroke as insertion-mark in text. <sup>3</sup>Four lines left blank for rubricated chapter-heading. <sup>4</sup>Three-line ornamental initial in blue with red pen-flourishes; the initial letter of each succeeding chapter is of the same size and similarly ornamented unless otherwise indicated in the notes.

iiij Agnis day vp on godys body 7 also on the messe boke both kyngys and her Sonys and the grettyst lordys of bothe remes And her counsell þat þer wer þen present 7 not had [hy]<sup>2</sup> Swor by for þe forsayd oth þat þay had mad and was tytild by twne heme þay be heythtyn þer to kepe and all oþyr couinantys þat wer by twen hem I ordynyd And thys same 3er meñ bestys treys (fol. 140<sup>a</sup>) and housyng wyt Soden tempest and strong lythnyng þat war Perschyd 7 deuel Aperayd<sup>1</sup> bodely in mannys lyknes to much pepyll As thay went in dyuers places in the cuntre and spak to hem

K<sup>2</sup> kyng Edward in the xxxvj 3er of hys Reygne anone Aftyr Crystemesse in the conversacioun of sent pawle held hys parlemente At westmestyr in the wyche put furth and schewd þe accord and the treys þat was Staby lysche mad by twne þe ij kyngys þe Acord to much pepyll And ther for by the kyngys Comandement þe wer gadryd a comente to gyddyr in westmestyr chyrche þe sonday of lent þat ys to say the ij kalend of feuerer þe forsayd Englysche meñ and frensch meñ þer was 7 Songyn A Solempne messe of the trinyte of the Arschbyschop of Cantyrbury Mastyr Symond slepte and wane Angnus dei was done þe kyng being þer wyt hys sonys And also wyt þe kyngys sone of fraunce And oþyr nobyll of gret lordys wyth Canlys lythe 7 Crossys brouth forth all þat wer callyd þar to þat wer noghte I Sworn Afor Sworn þat same othe þat was wretyn on godys body and vp on the messe

---

<sup>2</sup>Scratched through. Fol. 140 <sup>1</sup>-e- by scribe above.  
<sup>2</sup>Three-line blue initial.



boke in þis wise // we .N. and .N. Sweren here vpon holy  
 goddis body. 7 vpon alle þe Gospelles stedfastly. 7 to holde  
 7 kepe to ward vs þe pees 7 þe a corde made by twene þe  
 two kynges. 7 neuere for to do þe contrarie 7 whan þey  
 had þus Sworne. 7 þey toke here scrowes<sup>h</sup> þat þe othes weren  
 comprehended in to<sup>5</sup> þe Notaries // And in þis same 3ere.<sup>6</sup>  
 in þe assencioun euen aboute Midday was Seen þe Eclypse<sup>6</sup>  
 of þe Sonne // 7 þere ffolowed seche a newe drouste. 7 þat  
 for defaute of Reyne. 7 þere was grete Scarsite of corne.  
 frute 7 haye // and in þis same<sup>4</sup> 3ere þe vj kalende of  
 Iuny þere ffell a Sangweyne Rayne all moste like to blode  
 at Burgoyne. 7 and a Sangweyne Crosse ffrom morowe vnto  
 prime was seyne 7 appered at Boleyne in þe Ayer // þe  
 which many a man hit sawe. 7 aftir hit meued 7 felle in  
 þe See myddes // 7 in þe same tyme boþe in ffraunce 7 in  
 england 7 in (fol. 94<sup>b</sup>) opere many londis as þey þat  
 dwelled in playne contreys and deserte bare witnesse.  
 þat Sodenly þere Apperyd .ij. Castellis // of þe whiche.  
 wente oute .ij. Osters of armyd men. 7 þat one Oste was  
 heled<sup>i</sup> 7 clothed alle in white. 7 þat opere in Black //  
 7 þe whan<sup>7</sup> bataile by twene heme was by gone þe white  
 ouere come þe blake // 7 a none aftur þe blake token  
 herte vnto hem. 7 ouere come the whyte // 7 aftir þat  
 þei wente a 3en in to here Castell. // 7 a noon alle þe  
 castell 7 boþe Osters vanshed a way // 7 in þis same 3ere  
 was a grete 7 an honge pestilence of peple 7 namely of  
 Men // whos wyfes as oute of gouernaunce token housbondis.  
 as wel strengers as opere lewde 7 semple peple þe whiche  
 for3etinge here owne worshiþe 7 berthē // and coupeled 7  
 marred hem. 7 to hem þat<sup>8</sup> weren of lower degre 7 lytell

<sup>5</sup>Vertical stroke divides in and to. <sup>6</sup>Repeated in red by scribe in left margin of col., þe Eclipse <sup>7</sup>By scribe in left margin of col. with caret; caret in text in wrong position. <sup>8</sup>hē þt by scribe in right margin of col. with caret; caret in text.

boke in thys wysse .W.N.7.N. Sworne vp oñ holy godys body  
 and the gospelos stedfastly to hold and to kepe toward vs  
 þe pes and þe acord mad be tweñ þe ij kyngys and neuyr to  
 do þe constrary<sup>a</sup> and when þay had þus Swor þay tokyne her  
 Scrowys þat þe othys wer comprehendyd in to notarys And  
 þis same 3er in the Assencyoun abowte medday was seyn  
 Schippis<sup>b</sup> of the Sone And ther ffolowd Such a heuy drouthe  
 (fol. 140<sup>b</sup>) þat for the fawte of rayne þer was gret bernys<sup>c</sup>  
 of Corn freuth an hey and in the same 3er þe vj kalend of  
 Iune fell A sangweyn reyne all most lyke blod at Burgoyne  
 7 A Sangweñ crosse fro morow into prime was Abowlyng in  
 the Eyr þe wych meny A mañ saw And aftyr yt meuyd a fell  
 in the Myddys of the See and in the same tyme in fraunce  
 And in Englond and othyr meny londys as thay that dwellyt  
 in the playne contre And in the same was agrett and an  
 huge Pestens of pepyll and namly of myschewys as women out  
 of gouernance token hosbondos as well strangerys as obyrl  
 lewd Symple pepyll þe wyche for 3etyn her owne worschip  
 and cowpelyd and Maryed hem þat we of lewd de gre and  
 lytyll



reputacioun // In þis same 3ere dyede henry þe duke of  
 lancaſtre / And alſo in þe ſame 3ere Sere edwarde Prince  
 of walys wedded þe Countaſſe of kent þat was Sere Thomas  
 wyfe houlonde // þe whiche was departyd 7 deuorſyd. 9 ſom  
 tyme from þe erle of Salisburie. 9 for cauſe of þe ſame  
 knyght // 7 aboute þe ſame tyme 9 þere be gan 7 a roes a  
 grete companie of dyuerſe naciouns 10 gadrid to gedre. 9 of  
 whom here leders 7 gouernoures weren engliſſhe men. 9 þey  
 were clepyd a peple with oute an hede. 9 þe whiche deden  
 mekel harme in þe parties of ffrance // 7 nou3t longe  
 aftir þere a roes a nobere companie of dyuerſe naciouns  
 þat was called þe white companie k // þe whiche in þe  
 partyes 7 þe contreys of lombardie deden mokell ſorowe //  
 þis ſame 3ere Sere Iohn of Gaunt þe ſone of king edward. 9  
 þe .iiij. was made duke of lancaſtre // by reſoun 7 cauſe  
 of his wyfe. 9 þat was þe douſter 7 þe heyre of henry ſome  
 tyme þe duke of lancaſtre. 9

Of þe grete wynde 7 howe the gode Prince Edward hadde of  
 his fadir the lord ſhippe of Guyan 7 wente peder. 9

And in þe xxxvij<sup>e</sup> 3ere of his Regne kinge edwarde þe xv  
 day of Ianuar þat is to ſaye vpon Seint Mawry day a bowte  
 euensonge tyme. 9 þere a Roes 7 come ſeche a wynde 1 Oute  
 of þe Sowth with ſeche a fersneſſe. 9 þat he braste 7 blew  
 a downe hie houſes. 9 7 ſtronge Bildynges Towres cherches  
 7 ſtipelis 7 opere ſtronge þinges. 10 7 alle opere  
 ſtronge werkes þat ſtonden ſtille weren ſo y ſake m þer  
 with. 9 þat þey ben 3et 7 ſhal ben (fol. 95<sup>a</sup>) euere more  
 þe febler and weker while þey ſtonde. 9 7 þis wynde laſtyd  
 with oute any Seſynge .viij. dayes continualiche / And a  
 noon aftir þere folowid ſeche waters in hey tyme 7 in

<sup>9</sup>By ſcribe in right margin of col. with caret; caret in  
 text. <sup>10</sup>þinges. 9 by ſcribe over erased word(s).

repytaunce<sup>d</sup> In thys same 3er deyð harry duke of lancastyr  
 And also in thys 3er Edwardys prens of walys weddyd þe  
 countys of kente þat was syr Thomas wyf[f]<sup>3</sup> holand þe  
 wyche was departyd 7 devorsyd S<sup>m</sup> tyme fro the Erle of  
 Salusbury for cause of the same kny3te And a bout the same  
 tyme þer be gane and arosse A gret Company of dyuers  
 naciouns gadryd to gyddyr hom her lettys<sup>e</sup> and Englysmen  
 7 þer wer clepyd a pepull wyt out An hed þe wyche dedyne  
 much harme in the party of fraunce And long aftyr þer a  
 Rosse a nothyr company of dyuers naciouns þat was callyd  
 in þe wyche company<sup>f</sup> in the partes 7 of þe Countes of  
 lombardy mowe<sup>g</sup> sorrow Thys same 3er syr Iohn of gaunte þe  
 sone of kyng Edward þe thyrd was mad duke of (fol. 141<sup>a</sup>)  
 lancastyr be resoun and cause of hys wyf þat was the  
 douthur of þe Eyre harry Sum tyme duke of lancastyr

Of the grett wynd 7 prens Edward had a lordschip of Gueon<sup>1</sup>  
of kyng Edwardys and went bedyr Capitulo CC xxxij<sup>o2</sup>

And in the xxxvij 3er of kyng Edward the xv day of Ienyfer  
 þat ys say on Sent maurys day abouth evesong tyme þer  
 Rosse and cam Such a wynd out of the South west such  
 fersnese þat he brest tourys and chyrchys and blew done  
 to grond hys housys and strong bylddyngys tourys cherchys  
 and stepyllys and opyr strong thyngys 7 all opyr strong  
 workys þat stodyn styll war so I sake þer wyt þat bene  
 3et 7 shall bene euyr mor the febeler 7 wykry while þay  
 stond And thys wynd lastyd wyt out any sessyng vij dayes  
 contenually And none aftyr þer folwed Syche watrys in  
 hys tyme and in

<sup>3</sup>-f partly erased. Fol. 141 <sup>1</sup>G- over Q- by scribe.  
<sup>2</sup>Chapter-heading by scribe, underlined in red.



heruestyme. pat alle ffelde werkys weren strongliche  
 Iletted 7 lefte vndone // 7 in pis same 3ere Prince  
 edward toke þe lordshipe of Guyane. 7 dede to his fadir  
 ffeaute 7 homage þere fore. 7 wente ouere þe See in to  
 Gascoyne with hys wyfe 7 his children // 7 a noon  
 aftirwarde kynge edwarde made his Sone lyonell duke of  
 clarence 7 edmonde his opere Sone erle of Chaumbrygge //  
 And in xxxviij 3ere of his Regne hit was ordeyned in þe  
 parlement. pat men of lawe boþe temperall 7 of<sup>1</sup> holi  
 chirche lawe. ffro þat tyme forþe sholde plete in here  
 modir tonge<sup>a</sup> // 7 in pis same 3ere come in to englond  
 .iiij. kinges. pat is to saye þe kynge of ffraunce. þe  
 kyng of Sypres. 7 þe kynge of Scotlonde. by cause to  
 visite 7 to speke with þe kynge of englonde. to whom þey  
 were wordir<sup>b</sup> welcome 7 moche worshippid<sup>2</sup> 7 aftir þat þey  
 hadde ben here longe tyme. ij. of hem wente a3en home  
 in to here owne. kyngdomus // But þe kinge of ffraunce  
 þoru3 grete sykenes 7 maladie. pat he hadde lefte stille  
 in englond // <sup>3</sup> And in<sup>4</sup> þe xxxix. 3ere of his Regne was a  
 stronge 7 an huge froste 7 þat lasted longe tyme. pat is  
 for to saye from Seint Andrewes tyde vnto þe xiiij kalende  
 of aprill þat þe telthe<sup>c</sup> 7 sowynge of þe erthe 7 opere  
 seche felde werkes 7 hande werkes weren meche I lefte for  
 colde 7 hardnesse of þe erþe // 7 at Orrey in brytayne  
 þat tyme was ordeyned a grete dedly Batayle by twne Sere  
 Iohn of Mountforde duke of Britayne. 7 Sere Iohn Charles  
 of Bloys // But þe victorye ffelle to þe for sayde Iohn //  
 þoru3 helpe 7 socoure of þe englisshe men. 7 þere were  
 take many kny3tes. 7 squyers þat weren I noumbryd as 3e  
 shal here // In the whiche Batayle was slayne Sere

---

Fol. 95 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text. <sup>2</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; inverted caret in text. <sup>3</sup>Small space betw. // and And. <sup>4</sup>By scribe above; caret in text.

harvest tyme þat all fell werkys wer strongly let and  
 lefte ondoñ And in the same 3er prens Edward toke þe  
 lordschip of Gueyoun<sup>3</sup> and dyd to hys fadyr fewte 7 homage  
 þer for and went ouyr þe See in to gascoyn wyff and hys  
 chyldren And anone aftyr kyng Edward mad syr lyonell hys  
 sone duke of clarens 7 syr Edmond hys hodyr son Erle of  
 Cambryge And in the same 3er comyn in to Englund iiij  
 kyngys that ys to fay<sup>4</sup> þe kyng of fraunce þe kyng of  
 Syprys and the kyng of Scotlond be casse to wysit and to  
 spek wyt the kyng of Englund of whome (fol. 141<sup>b</sup>) þay had  
 wondyr and much worschyp and aftyr thay had ben her long  
 tyme ij of hem went A3ene home but þe þ<sup>a</sup> kyng of frauns  
 þour gret seknes 7 malaudy<sup>5</sup> left styll in Ingland And in  
 th xxxix 3er of hys reigne was A strong huge frost þat  
 last long þat ys to say fro Sent Andrews tyde onto þe  
 xiiij kalend of Aperell þat þan they tyllyd and Sew in<sup>b</sup>  
 the Erthe and othyr sicke feld wyrkys and hand werkys  
 wer mucche left Adone<sup>c</sup> for cold and hardenes of the Erthe  
 And at A ray in bretoun þat tyme was hordynyde a gret  
 dedly batayll bytween syr Iohn Munforth Duke of bretayne  
 and syr charlys of Bluys but þe wictory fell to þe forsayd  
 syr Iohn throw helpe and Socour of þe Englysmen And wer  
 take meny kn3ttys and Squierys and othyr men I nombryd In  
 the wyche batayll was slayne

<sup>3</sup>Poss. -o-, not -e-. <sup>4</sup>Long s- has crossbar. <sup>5</sup>-la-  
 above -u- and -d- over -y- by scribe.



Charlis<sup>5</sup> him silfe & alle þat stoden abowte him & of þe enlisshe men were slayne but vij persones þanked be god // And in þe same 3ere dyed at Souoy<sup>d</sup> Iohn þe kinge of ffraunce whoes seruyce & exequies kyng edward let ordeyne. & dede in many places worshipfully to be done. & to douere worshipfully him ordeined with worshipful men worthyly to ben ladde with his owne costes & expences. & (fol. 95<sup>a</sup>b) from þens he was fette into ffraunce and buryed at Seint denys.

In þe xl 3ere of kyng edward þe vjj kalende of ffeuerer was Borne edwarde Prince edwarde sone / þe whiche whan he was but vij. 3ere olde deyde // And in þe same 3ere hit was ordeyned þat Seint Petres Pens from þat tyme forth sholde nou3t ben paied // þe whiche kynge Iva. som tyme kyng of englond of þe contre of west Saxsons. þat he gan to Regne in þe 3ere of owre lorde DC lxxix<sup>e</sup> firste hem grauntyd to Rome for þe Scolle of englond<sup>e</sup>. þere to be continued // And in þat same 3ere þere fel so mekel Rayne in hay tyme. þat hit wasted & destroyed boþe corne & haye. & þere was seche a debate & ffy3tinge of Sparowes by diuerse places in þese dayes. þat men fonde vnnumerable & multitudes of hem dede in þe feldes as þey wenten // & also þere felle suche a pestilence þat neuere none seche was seen. in no mannes tyme alyue ffor many men a non as þey were go to Bedde hooll & in gode point sodeinly þei dyeden // Also þat tyme a Sykenes þat men calle þe Pockes<sup>f</sup> slowe boþe men & wemen & childrine þoru3 þe effectinge of þat sickenes & in þe xli 3ere of kyng edwarde / was borne at Burdeux Ricarde þe secunde Sone of Prince edward of englonde / þe whiche Ricard. kyng Rycard of Amorycañ heued<sup>g</sup> atte ffonston.

---

<sup>5</sup>-lis by scribe in right margin of col. over double hyphen.

Charlys hym Self wyt all þat stod about heme and of þe Englysmen wer slayne but vij. And in þis 3er deid at Savey Iohn þe kyng of fraunce whos seruys 7 exquies kyng Edward lett ordayn and did in dyuers plasys worchepfull men hordynyð hym werthely to be led of hys owne costys and expensys 7 from thens he was fett in to fraunce and beryd at Sent Denys in the xl 3er of kyng Edward þe vij kalend of feuerer was borne preynce Edward hys son the wych kyng som tyme kyng of Englonð and of the contre of west saxons þat he gane to reygñ in the 3er of our lord vj C lxix fyrst grantyd to rome for the Scholl of Englonð þer to be contynuyd And in the same 3er þer So much reyne in hey tyme þat it wastid 7 dystried both corn and hey (fol. 142<sup>a</sup>) And ther was suche Abatte<sup>a</sup> and fy3thyng of Sperrows by dyuers plasys in the See<sup>b</sup> dayes þat men fondoñ an orrebyll nombyr of hem dyid<sup>1</sup> in þe feldys as thay wentyn And after fell suche a pestelens þat noñ sych was don in menys tyme Alyve for meny men Anon as thay wer goo to bed holl And in good poynte Soudenly þey deid Also þat tyme a Seknes men callyn yt þe Pockys Slou bothe men and women thorow her fythyng<sup>c</sup> And in the xlj 3er of kyng Edward was born At Burdeus Rychard the Second Soñ of prens Edward of Englonð the wyche Rychard kyng Rychard of Amorycañ hevyd at þe fonstoun

---

Fol. 142 <sup>1</sup>Small mark after -y-, poss. a badly formed -i-.



Aftir whom he was cleped Ricard // 7 þes same Ricard whan  
 his ffadur was dede. 7 kinge edwarde all so. he was  
 crownde kynge of englonde þe. xj<sup>e</sup> 3ere of his Age. þoru3  
 ry3t line 7 heritage. 7 alle so by commune assent 7  
 desyre of all þe comminalte of þe Reame // A boutē þis  
 tyme at kyng edwardis commaundement of englonde. whan  
 alle þe castelles and townes were 3elden vnto him þat  
 longe tyme weren holde in ffrance by a grete companye  
 ensemblede to gedre Sere Bertram Claykyn<sup>h</sup> knyzt an horped  
 Man 7 a gode werryoure. wente 7 purposed him. to putte  
 oute Petre þe kinge of Spayne. oute of his kyngdom. with  
 helpe of þe moste partie of þe grete companye forseide //  
 trusting also vpon helpe 7 fauore of þe pope. ffor as  
 myche as hit is come to his eres þat þe same Petre sholde  
 lede<sup>6</sup> 7 vse þe moste werste 7 synful lyfe oute // þe  
 whiche Petre king of Spayne Ismeteñ with drede (fol. 95<sup>b</sup>a)  
 of this tythinge fledge in to Gascoyne vnto Prince edwarde.  
 ffor to haue helpe 7 socoure of him. and whan he was fled  
 oute of Spayne. henre his broþere þat was a Bastard. by  
 assente of þe moste party of Spayne. 7 þoru3 help of þe  
 ferful companie þat I spake of erste. was made 7 crowned  
 kinge of Spayne // 7 noumbre of þat same companye was  
 rekened 7 sette in noumbre of .lx. M<sup>1</sup> fytinge men // þis  
 same 3ere in þe mounthe of Iuine þere come A grete  
 companie. 7 a Nauey of danes 7 gadred hem to gedre in þe  
 Northe See. purposinge hem to come in to englonde. to  
 reue 7 rubbe<sup>i</sup> 7 also to slee with whom þey entercountryd  
 7 metten in þe See. Marineres 7 alle opere orpide  
 fy3tynge men of þe same contre. 7 disperplede<sup>j</sup> hem // 7  
 þey foule ashamed wenten home into here owne contre //  
 But amonge alle opere þere was a boystis 7 stronge vessel  
 of here Nauee þat was ouere Sailed<sup>k</sup> of þe englisshe men.

<sup>6</sup> By scribe in right margin of col. with caret; caret in text.

after home he was callyd Rychard And þus same Rychard was  
 hes fadyr was ded and kyng Edward Also was Crownyd kyng  
 of Englonð þe xj 3er of hys age þorow ryth lyn̄ and erytage  
 And also be comen Asente and desyr of the comente of the  
 reme About þis tyme þat kyng Edward Comandyd of Englonð  
 when all þe castellys and townys wer zeldyn̄ vnto hym þat  
 wer holdyn̄ in fraunce be a gret company Assembled to gydyr  
 syr bartram cleykyn kny3te and orpyd mañ And a good  
 werroure went and pursuyd hym to put out piers of Spayn̄  
 out of the kyngdome wyth helpe of the most party of þe  
 forsayd company And also þorow helpe of fauoure of the  
 pope for as much as yt com to hys heyrrys þat þe forsayd  
 Pers shuld led 7 vsse most worst Synfull lyff out of þe  
 wych kyng of spayn̄ Smyteñ wyth hys dred ffled in to  
 Gascoyne to prens Edward for to haue helpe and Scour<sup>d</sup> of  
 hym. And when he was fled out of spayne harry hys brother  
 (fol. 142<sup>b</sup>) þat was a bastard be asent of all the worthy  
 meñ of spayn þourch help of þat fersfull company þat I  
 spake of erst was mad 7 crownyd kyng of spayne And the  
 nombyr of that company was clepyd at lx M<sup>l</sup> fisting meñ  
 þis same 3er in the monyth of Iueñ þer come a grett  
 company And a neve of danys and gadyrd hem to gyddr in  
 the north See purposyng hem to come in to Englonð to robb  
 and to stell wyt whom mettyn in the See marinerys 7 othyr  
 orpyd fy3tyng meñ of the same contre and hem dysparbulyd  
 And þay A Schamed went hom a3ene in to her owne contre  
 But Among all opyr was A boystous and a strong wessell of  
 her new þat was ouyr saylid of Englismeñ



⁊ þat was pershed ⁊ dreinte // In þe whiche þe Steward  
 ⁊ opere worþy ⁊ grete men of denmark weren take presoners.  
 ⁊ by þe. kinge of englond ⁊ his counsayle I preserved //  
 þe whyche lordis of þe danes comen afterward and sowten  
 alle aboute. for to haue had a 3en here godis þat þey  
 hadde loste / And þey nou3t well payede ne plesed of þe  
 answeze þat þey hadde here. ⁊ turneden homwardes A3en.  
 levynge be. hinde hem in here Innes preueyly writen in  
 scorwes ⁊ vpon walles þese wordis 3et shall danes haue  
 these wanes<sup>71</sup> þan happid hit þat þere come an englisshe  
 man þat was a writer. ⁊ wrote a 3ens þe danes in þis  
 manere of wyse ⁊ seyde Here shall Danes fette here banes<sup>81</sup>  
 And in þis tyme Petre þe kinge of spayne with opere  
 kinges. þat is for to saye þe kinge of Nauerne. ⁊ þe  
 kinge of Malogre. beingge menes wenten by twene // ⁊  
 praiden counseil ⁊ helpe of Sere edwarde þe Prince //  
 þoro3 whos counsaile whan he had vndirstonde here  
 Articles and desyre þat he was required of þese.ij.kinges.  
 loth he was ⁊ a shamyd to saye naye. ⁊ to contrarye hem. but  
 natheles he was agaste laste hit sholde be any pregedyce  
 a3ens þe pope // longe he taried hem ar he wolde graunte  
 ⁊ consente þere to. vnto þe tyme þat he hadde Better  
 counseile ⁊ a vysement with good (fol. 95<sup>b</sup>) deliberacioun  
 of kynge edwarde his keter<sup>m</sup> and hys ffadir // But whan þat  
 he was euery day prayed ⁊ continuel be sekynge of so many  
 nobil men. ⁊ requirede ⁊ spoken to. ⁊ with many prayers  
 I sente<sup>9</sup> vnto. ⁊ made by twene. þan þe Prince edwarde  
 sente vnto his ffadir<sup>10</sup> boþe by playnyngge letters. ⁊ also  
 by comfortable conteynyngge all here Suggestiouns ⁊ causis  
 with alle þe opere epistles ⁊ lettres for to haue comforte

<sup>7</sup>3et ... wanes in red, followed by 10 red flourishes.

<sup>8</sup>Here ... banes in red, followed by 4 red flourishes.

<sup>9</sup>Caret after sente; scribe has written w<sup>t</sup> in margin. A wrong insertion. <sup>10</sup>Scribe has written ⁊ seyde in margin (to be inserted after ffadir?). A wrong insertion.

And was perchyd and drenche in the wyche the Seward and  
 opyr worthy meñ of denmarke wer takyne presoners þe wych  
 lordys þe danys aftyrward aftyr ward comandyd all a bout  
 for to haue had wyt her goodys þat hast lost And not well  
 I payd of þe þe Answer þat þay had þay wentyn home Azen  
 leuyng be hynd hem in her Innes wretyn scrowis and on  
 wallys / 3it shull danes þesse banes<sup>e</sup> Thañ happyd þer and  
 Englismeñ wrot azens þe danys in thys maner wysse / her  
 shall danys feet her banys And in thys tyme pyerse kyng  
 of spane wyt othyr kyngys þat ys to say þe kyng of Nawern  
 7 þe kyng of malogre beyng meny wentyn bytwne 7 prayd þe  
 consell and helpe of Edward þe prynce þorow hosse concell  
 when he had vndyrfonge her Articlis þat he required of  
 the kyng loth he was 7 aschamyd (fol. 143<sup>a</sup>) and to say  
 nay and contraryd hem mechyll he was A gast þat yt shuld  
 be on the pryujce<sup>1</sup> azenst þe pope long he tarryd and abod  
 tyll he had bettyr consell 7 deliberacioun of hys kyng  
 Edward hys fadyr but wen he was contenuelly be segyd eny<sup>a</sup>  
 of So worthy meñ sent to hys fadyr be playne letters and  
 confertabyll consentyng [her]<sup>2</sup> her causus wyt þe kynges  
 consell for to hau conforte



7 helpe of þe wronges. 7 noȝt only to þe kinge of spayne  
 Ido. 7 but also for seche þinges þat myȝte falle vnto opere  
 kinges also. 7 ȝif hit nere nouȝt þe sonner holpin 7 a  
 mendid. 7 þoruȝ þe dome 7 helpe of knyȝthode<sup>11</sup>. 7 to hem þat  
 hit askyth 7 desyreth // þe whiche lettres whan þe kinge  
 7 his counceyle hadde seyne hem 7 well vnderstonde. 7 he  
 hadde grete compassioun 7 heuynes. 7 of suche a noble  
 kynges Spoylynge 7 Robbinge with moche meruayle // 7 in  
 haste sente aȝen comfortable lettres vn to prince edward  
 his Sone. 7 to þe opere forsaide kynges. 7 warnede him  
 to Arme him in haste. 7 to ordeyne him a ȝens þat mysdores.  
 7 to with stonde hem. 7 by þe grace of god. 7 þat weren suche  
 enemyes vnto kynges // whan þis noble 7 worthi Prince  
 hadde resseyued þese lettres. 7 him selfe. 7 with þe opere  
 kinges. 7 by fore alle here counseile weren clepid to  
 gedre. 7 or þat he wold vndirtake þe quarell. 7 he bonde  
 7 knytte<sup>n</sup> sore þe kinge þat was deposed with a grete  
 othe. 7 þat is for to saye. 7 þat he sholde euere aftir  
 mayntene þe Riȝth beleue 7 feith of holy cherche // 7  
 also with all here Mynestres ryȝtes 7 libertes to defende  
 from all here enemyes 7 alle eueles 7 alle þat weren þere  
 a ȝenste bitterly to. 7 ponesse 7 destoble // 7 þe Riȝt  
 libertes 7 preuelages of holi chirche to encrease mayntene  
 7 a mende // 7 all þinges þat were wrongfully be nome  
 with drawe 7 bore away by hym opere by any opere. 7 by  
 cause of him hastely to [be]<sup>12</sup> restore a ȝen. 7 dryue  
 7 put oute Sarazines 7 all opere mys beleuyd<sup>o</sup> pepul oute  
 of his kingdom. 7 with alle his strenȝe 7 his power. 7  
 suffre ne admitte non seche. 7 for no manere þinge ne cause  
 to dwelle þere inne // 7 þat whanne he hadde take a  
 cristen woman to wyfe. 7 þat he sholde neuere come in non

<sup>11</sup>knyȝt by scribe over erasure; hode by scribe in left  
 margin of col. with caret in text. <sup>12</sup>Expuncted by  
 underline of 3 dots.

and helpe of the wrongys of the kyng of<sup>3</sup> spayne And also  
 þat myȝt hap to hodyr kyngys ner þat wer holpyn̄ The wyche  
 lettres when þe kyng and hys wyff<sup>b</sup> counsell all had Sayne  
 and vnderstod he had grett compassion of Such kyng Spoylyng  
 And sent Aȝen confertabyll lettys<sup>4</sup> to Pryns Edward and  
 hys sone And to þe tother for sayd kyngys Awarnyd hem for  
 to harme and horden hym aȝenst þat mesdoher 7 forto wyt  
 stond hem<sup>5</sup> wyt þe help of god þat wer such enmys to þe  
 kyngys when thys nobyll prynce had resayuyd þes letters  
 hym sleff<sup>c</sup> wyth othyr kyngys all her consell clepyd to  
 gidyr or that he wold ondyr take þe quarell he knet sor  
 and bond þe kyng þat was deposyd wyt A gret host<sup>d</sup> þat ys  
 for to say þat shuld neuyr<sup>e</sup> after mayntayn̄ þe ryth be  
 leue and fyth for holy chyrch and all holy chyrche defend  
 And all thyngys þat wer borne A way by hem or ony othyr  
 by cause of hem to restor Aȝene And to dryve out Sarsyns  
 and all other mysbeleuers And when he had takyn A serten  
 women̄ to wyf he shuld com neuyr in non

---

<sup>3</sup>Long -s shape uncrossed in MS. <sup>4</sup>Macron above -tt- to indicate abbreviation of -y-. <sup>5</sup>Small hole obscures third minim of -m.



opere wommans bedde. ne non opere Mannes wife to defoule  
 // And alle þese forsayde (fol. 96<sup>a</sup>) þinges treweliche  
 to be kepte continue and fulfille all his lyfe tyme he  
 was bounde & Swore by his Othe afore Notaryes. in  
 presense & witnesse of .ij. kinges with opere princes //  
 & þan þilke gracious prince edwarde toke þe viage &  
 vndirtoke þe quarell & cause of þe kinge þat was deposed  
 // & he be hyt hym with þe grace of god. to restore him  
 azen vnto his kingdom // & a non lete ordeyne & gadre to  
 gedres forþ with in alle haste his Naue with men of armes  
 to werre & ffyhte in þis forseide cause // & in þis same  
 tyme vpon þe Sande of þe Scottysse See. þat many a man  
 hit say. .iiij. dayes to gedre þere were seyne .ij. Egles //  
 of þe whiche. þat one come oute. of þe South. & þat  
opere oute of þe North. & crewelly & strongli þey fozten  
 & eke wrasteled to gedre // & þe South egle first ouere  
 come þe North egle. & all to rent & tare him with his  
 bele & clawis. in so moche þat he myhte nat reste ne  
 take no breþe // & aftir þe South egle fley home vnto  
 his owne coste // & anon aftir þere folowyd & was seen  
 in þe morne afore þe sonne rysynge. & aftir in þe laste  
 day of October // but one sterre. & þat many sterres  
 gadred to gedres vpon an hepe & ffellen downe vnto þe  
 erthe. leuyng be hinde hem many feyre<sup>a</sup> Bemes in  
 listnyng // whoes flames & hete brent & consumed mennes  
 cloþes & mennes here walkynge vpon þe erþe. as hit was  
 seen & knowen of many a man & sette þis ylke Northern  
 wynde þat is euere. redy & destinat to all evelles.  
 ffrom Seint katherine evyn tyll .iiij. dayes aftir loste  
 good with owte nombre vnrecouerable & in þese same dayes  
 þere felle & come al so : Seche listnyng þundres snowe  
 & hayle. þat hit wasted & destroyed men & bestes houses  
 & eke Trees

womans bed ne none othyr mannys wyff to the foule<sup>f</sup> // All  
 (fol. 143<sup>b</sup>) thes thyngys to countenew all hys lyue tyme  
 he was bond by othe and for notarys in presence of the  
 kyngys wyth obyr preync<sup>6</sup> And þan þis gracious prynce  
 vndyr toke the cauusse and þe quarell of the kyng þat was  
 be posyd<sup>g</sup> and be hy3th heme wyt þe grace of god to restor  
 hym in to hys kyngdome a3ene Anone lett gadyr in hast hys  
 nave wyt meñ of harmes for to fy3t vn thys for sayd causse  
 And in the same tyme vp on þe Sond of þe Scottycys See  
 þat meney amane yt say iiij dayes togedyr wer sayne ij  
 Eglis of wych comen out of the South and tothyr come out  
 of þe north 7 cruelly and strongly þay fouthen togyddyr  
 And the southe Egle fyrst ouyrcome þe north Egle and all  
 to rent hem and tar heme wyt hys byll and clowys þat he  
 shuld not rest ne take no berth and the South Egle fled  
 hom to hys owne costys And or the sone rosse In the last  
 day of Octobyr waw on<sup>h</sup> meny sterrys gadryd to gydryd And  
 hon help<sup>i</sup> fallyng downe to þe Erthe leuyng be hynd hem  
 fery bemis in maner of ly3tenyng whos flames 7 hett  
 consumed and wastyd menys cloþis and mennys her walkyng  
 on the Erth as yt was sene of meny a mañ And the Northryn  
 wyn þat ys distanyd to all ewyll from sent keteryns Ewyne  
 tyll the iiij dayis aftyr lost good wytout nombyr on  
 resonabyll And in the same dayes þer fyll such a lythnyng  
 þondere Snawe An hayll that yt dystroyd meñ 7 bestys  
 howsys 7 tres

---

<sup>6</sup>Badly formed -3.



Off þe Batayle of Spayne by twene Prince Edward 7 henry  
þe Bastard of Spayne Capitulo

IN<sup>1</sup> þe 3ere of owre lorde .A.M<sup>1</sup>.CCC.lxviij. 7 of kinge  
edward þe xliij 3ere þe bridde day of Aprill þer was a  
stronge Batayle 7 a grete in a large felde I clepid  
Pria3ers ffaste by þe water of Nazers in Spayne. 7 by twene  
Sere Edwarde þe Prince. 7 harry þe Bastard of Spayne.  
but þe victorie felle to Prince edwarde by þe grace of  
god // 7 þis same Prince edwarde hadde with him Sere  
Iohn duke of lancastre (fol. 96<sup>a</sup>b) hys owne Broþer 7  
opere worþi men of armes. in to þe noumbre of xxx.M<sup>1</sup>. 7  
þe kynge of Spayne hadde in his syde of men of armes of  
dyuerse Naciouns into þe noumbre of an.C.M<sup>1</sup>. and passinge  
of well fy3tinge men // wherfore þe sharpnesse 7 þe  
fersnes of his aduersarie with his foule Boistenes 7 ful  
grete strengþe maden 7 dreuen þe Ri3t ful partie abacke  
a grete way but 3ette þoru3 þe grace of god all my3ti.  
euere passinge any mannes strengthe // þilke huge Oste  
was my3tili disperpeled. by þe noble and worthy duke of  
lancastre 7 his Ooste. 3e or þat þe gode prince edwarde.  
my3 come ny hym // 7 whan harry þe Bastard þat say. a  
none he turnede with his men. in so grete haste and  
strengþe for to flee. þat an houe company of his men.  
In þe forseide fflod 7 þoru3 fallynge downe of þe Brygge  
þere weren perished // 7 þere was take þe erle of dene  
7 Sere Bertram Clayken. þat was cheff maker 7 causer of  
alle þat werre. 7 alle so þe Cheefenteyn of þe vauntwarde  
of þat Bataile with manye opere lordis 7 worthy kny3tes  
// in to Noumbre of .ij.M<sup>1</sup>. of whom .ij.C. weren of  
ffraunce. 7 manye of Scotlonde. 7 þere were felde in þe  
felde vpon owre enemyes syde. of worthy lordis 7 kny3tes.  
7 opere mene peple. in to þe Noumbre of vij.M<sup>1</sup>. 7 moo //

---

Fol. 96 <sup>1</sup>Eight-line ornamental initial I in blue outside  
left margin of col. with red pen-flourishes.

(fol. 144<sup>a</sup>) Of þe bataill of spayn̄ be tweñ prince Edward  
and harri the bastard of Spayn̄ Capitulo CC xxxiiij

And in ther 3er of our lord M<sup>l</sup> CCC xlviiij And kyng Edward  
þe xij the iij day of Aperell þer was a strong batayll ?  
a gret in A large feld I pera3ers fast by þe watyr of  
na3ers in spayn̄ by twene Edward p̄rens and harry bastard  
of Spayne but þe fell to p̄rens Edward be þe grace of god  
And thys p̄rens Edward had wyt hym Syr Iohn̄ de duke of  
lankastyr̄ hys brother and meny worthy meñ of harmes A but  
þe nombyr of C xxx M<sup>l</sup> And þe kyng of Spayne had hoñ hys  
syd meny dyuers nacions to þe nombyr a C M<sup>l</sup> and passyng  
but þus þe grace of all my3ty god þat huge ost was  
dysparbulyd my3tfully be þe nobyll duke of lancastyr̄ or  
þe pryñce Edward come ny3e hem and harry the bastard se  
þat he turnyd wyt A gret hoste to slee<sup>l</sup> þat An huge  
company fyll down on A bryge and perchyd and þer wer  
takkeñ þat was cheff maker and Cawser of the wer And also  
þay be tyne<sup>a</sup> on of þe wonward of þe batayll wyt meny oþyr  
lordys and kny3tys to nombyr of ij M<sup>l</sup> of home to hondryd  
wer of fraunce and meny of Scotlond And ther wer kyllyd  
in the feld of our Enmys syd of lordys and kny3tys wyth  
othyr my3che pepyll to þe nombyr of vj M<sup>l</sup> and moo

---

Fol. 144 <sup>1</sup>No crossbar on long s-.



⁊ of englysshe me but a fewē banked be god. ⁊ after þis  
 þat noble Prince edwarde restored þe same Petro in to his  
 kyngdom aȝen // þe whiche Petro sone afterward þoruȝ  
 trechorie ⁊ falsnes of þe forsaiðe Bastard of Spayne.  
 as he satte atte his Table. he was strangled ⁊ þer he  
 deyde // But aftir þis victorie . Many a noble ⁊ hardy  
 man of englonde. þere in Spayne. þoruȝ þe flyxe ⁊ opere  
 dyuerse syckenes token þere here dep // ⁊ in þis same  
 ȝere in Marche was stella Comata<sup>2b</sup> seyne // by twene þe  
 North coostes ⁊ þe west whoes Benes strecched towarde  
 ffrance // ⁊ in þe ȝere nexte suyngē of kynge edwarde  
 in his Regne xliij. in Aprill Sere lyonell kynge edwardis  
 Sone. þat was duke of clarence wente towarde Myleyne.  
 with a choyse meyne of þe gentellest of all englonde.  
 ffor to wedde Caloys douȝter ⁊ haue here to wyfe // By  
 whom he sholde haue half þe lordshyp (fol. 96<sup>b</sup>a) of  
 Meleyne and after þat þey weren Solempnely wedded // ⁊  
 þe same duke a bowte natiuite of oure lady nexte  
 folowyngē dyede // ⁊ in þe same ȝere þe ffrenshe men  
 broken þe pes ⁊ þe trewes. þey rydingē vpon þe kinges  
 grounde ⁊ lordshepis of englonde in þe shyre ⁊ contre  
 of Pountif. ⁊ token ⁊ helden castelles ⁊ eke townes ⁊  
 boren þe englysshe men on hande<sup>c</sup> falsly ⁊ sotelly þat þey  
 weren cause of þe brekinge of þe trewes // ⁊ in þis same  
 ȝere dyede þe duchesse of lancastrē<sup>d</sup>. ⁊ was worshipfully  
 beried at Seint Poules cherche // þe xliij ȝere of  
 kinge edwardis Regne was þe grete pestlence of men ⁊  
 women childryn ⁊. eke greet Beestis // ⁊ by grete  
 fallinge<sup>3</sup> of waters þat felle þat tyme. þere felle grete  
 hinderyngē ⁊ destroyinge of Corne // in so meche þat þe  
 nexte ȝere aftir a busshe of whete was sold for xld //  
 ⁊ a boute þe laste ende of May. kynge edwarde helde his

<sup>2</sup>Repeated in red by scribe in right margin of col., Stella  
comata    <sup>3</sup>First l by scribe over erasure.

And of Englysmen̄ but A fewē And aftyr thys þat nobyll  
 Pryns Edward restoryd þe same Peirs to hys kyngdom azen  
 þe wych Pers (fol. 144<sup>b</sup>) Aftyrward þorw tretery and  
 falsnes of þe sayd bastard of payne<sup>b</sup> As he satt at þe  
 tabyll he was strangelyd and deid but aftyr þis victory  
 meny A hardy mañ of Englonð in Spayne þorow þe flex and  
 meny oby<sup>r</sup> dyuers Seknes toke her dethe and in the same  
 3er in Marche wasse Sayne Stella Cāmata be twne þe  
 northe Costys and þe west hosse bemes strechid toward  
 fraunce and in the 3er nex suyng of kyng Edward Reignyd  
 xliij in Aprell syr lyonell kyng Edwardus sone þat was  
 duke of Clarauns wenet toward melene wyt A cheff mayne  
 of þe gentelys of Englonð for to wed galys doustyr by  
 home he shuld haue half þe lordschip of meleyñ but aftyr  
 þay wer weddyd About þe natyuyte of our lady the same  
 duke deid And in the same 3er þe frens meñ brakyn þe Pesse  
 Rydyng vn to þe kyngys grond of Englonð in the Schyr and  
 contre of pountyfe and tokyne And and<sup>c</sup> helden þe castell  
 and townys and bren the Englysmen̄ on hond falsly 7  
 sotylly þat þay wer ther cause of brekyng of truesse And  
 in the same 3er deid de duches of lancastyr and ys berryd  
 worschipfully at Sent powlys chyrche The xliij of<sup>2</sup> 3er of  
 kyng Edwardus regn̄ was A grett pestelens of meñ and of  
 bestys and gret fallyng of waturs þat fellyne þat tyme in  
 dystruyng of Corn̄ in So much<sup>3</sup> þat the next 3er aftyr A  
 busschell of wett sold at iij<sup>s</sup> iiij<sup>d</sup>[.]<sup>4</sup> (fol. 145<sup>a</sup>) And  
 about þe last hend of may þe kyng held hys

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out. <sup>3</sup>MS. has 6 minims for mu-. <sup>4</sup>Erasure.



parlemente at westmynster in þe whiche parlement was  
 treted ⁊ spoken of the Othe ⁊ Trewes þat was broken by  
 twene hym ⁊ þe<sup>4</sup> kynge of ffraunce. ⁊ how he miȝte best  
 vpon his wronge ben avenged // in þe same ȝere at þe  
 assumpcioun of oure lady dyede Quene Philip of englond  
 a ful noble ⁊ a gode woman ⁊ at westmynster was entered  
 // ⁊ aboute Missomere þe duke of lancastre ⁊ þe erle of  
 herford with a grete company of knyȝtes wenten in to  
 ffraunce. ⁊ where þey gat hem lytell worshep. ⁊ for þere was  
 an huge oste of fraunce men vpon Chakkehill Brigge. ⁊ a  
 nobere Oste of englishe men by þe same Brygge. ⁊ þat long  
 tyme had ley þere. ⁊ nomen councell ⁊ ordeyned hem for  
 to ȝeue Bataille vnto þe frenshe men But þe forseide  
 lordis wold noȝt consente þerto for no manere þing //  
 ⁊ anon aftir hit happed þat þe Gode erle of warwyk come  
 þedirward forto werre ⁊ whan þe frenshe men herd of his  
 comynge. ⁊ or þat he come fully to londe. ⁊ þey lefte here  
 Tentes ⁊ alle here stoffe ⁊ preuely. ⁊ ffledden away // ⁊  
 wanne þe erle was come to lond he wente in alle haste to  
 warde Normandie //<sup>5</sup> ⁊ destroyed þe yle of kaux þoruȝ dynte  
 of Swerde ⁊ ffere // But allas in his returnynge to  
 englond ward at Caleys he was take with sikenes of  
 Pestilence ⁊ deide on whos soule al myȝti god haue peete  
 Amen. ⁊ leuyng nouȝt by hynde him in his (fol. 96<sup>b</sup>) dayes. ⁊  
 so worthy a knyȝt of Armes ⁊ ȝette in þat tyme Regned ⁊  
 werred þylke orpyde knyȝt Sere Iohn hawkwode. ⁊ þat was an  
 englisshe man Borne // havinge with him at his  
 gouernaunce. ⁊ þilke tyme þe whyte companye þat is a fore  
 nempned // þe whiche weren one tyme aȝens holy chirche. ⁊  
 a nobere tyme aȝens lordis // þe whiche werede ⁊  
 ordeynyd grete Batailles ⁊ in þat contre he dede many  
 meruayle þinges // ⁊ Aboute þe Conuersioun of Seint

<sup>4</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>5</sup>Poss. a misplaced double hyphen and not //.

parlement At westmestyr at þe wyche parlemente was spokyn  
 of þe trewys þat was broþen<sup>a</sup> by twen heme and the kyng of  
 fraunce and how he myzt best vpon hys wrong be avengyd in  
 þe same 3er in the Assumssioun of [or]<sup>1</sup> our lady deid quen  
 Phelip of Englonð Afull nobyll A good man<sup>b</sup> and at  
 westmestyr full worchpfully<sup>2</sup> ys beryd And about messomer  
 þe duke of lancastyr and þe Erle of herford wyt a gret  
 company of knyztys went in to fraunce wer thay gat hem but  
 lytyll worschip for ther was An hug host vp on schalky<sup>3</sup>  
 hyll bryge And anothyr host of Englysmen fast by the same  
 bryge þat long tyme had leyne ther and meny worthy men of  
 Englysmen gaff Consell for to fyth a3ene batayll to the  
 frensche men but þe forsayd lordys wold no thyng consent  
 therto Ther anone aftyrward yt happyd þat þe Erle of  
 warweke come thedyr forto wer and wen the frensme hard of  
 hys comyng So þat he come thay left her tentys and  
 Pauylions wyt all her wytayllys And went A way preuely  
 And when þe Erle was Comen to lond he went[.]<sup>4</sup> [went]<sup>5</sup>  
 and all hys host toward Normandy and dystroyd the Ile of  
 Cause þourow Dent of Swerd (fol. 145<sup>b</sup>) But at hys returnyng  
 home a3ene at Castell<sup>c</sup> he was take wyt pestelens and dyed  
 at leuyng be hynd hym So nobyll A knyzt And þat tyme  
 reignyd syr Iohn hawdebeke wold hauyng wyt hem at hys  
 retenew þe wyche<sup>d</sup> company þat ys afor nemyd þe wych tyme  
 A3enst holy chyrche anothyr tyme A3ens lordys wer and  
 hordynyd grett batayllys

Fol. 145 <sup>1</sup>Erased. <sup>2</sup>-ly stroked. <sup>3</sup>-y stroked out.  
<sup>4</sup>Erasure at end of line. <sup>5</sup>Stroked out and then erased.



Poule kynge edwarde whan he hadde ended & done þe enterynge. he & his lordis with grete costes & Rialtes aboute þe sepulture & berynge of quene philyppe hys wyfe he helde his parlement at westmynster // In þe whiche parlement was axed of the Clergye. a iiij. 3eres dyme<sup>e</sup>. þat is for to saye a grete dyme to ben payed iiij. 3eres durynge And þe clergie putte hit of. & wolde nouȝt graunte hit. vnto Estre nexte comynge & þan þey graunted well. in iiij 3eres by certeyne termes þat dyme sholde be payed & also of þe lay ffe was iiij 3eres grauted vnto // þe kynge

How Sere Robert knollys with opere Serteyne lordis of þe Reame of englonde wente Ouere þe [Ce]<sup>6</sup> See in to ffraunce & of here gouernaunce [7 of]<sup>6</sup>

And in þe xlv 3ere of kynge edwarde<sup>7</sup> with vñ wyse counceille & vndescrete. borowede a grete some of gold of þe prelates lordus & Marchauntes. & opere Riche men of his reame. saynge þat hit sholde be dispendyd in defendynge of holy chirche & of his Reame // But neuere þe later hit profited nouȝt wherfore aboute Mydsomere<sup>4</sup> þe kynge made a grete Ooste of þe worthiest men of his Reame. A monges whom weren summe lordis þat is for saye<sup>f</sup>. le ffyt3 water. þe lord Graunson & opere worthy knytes<sup>4</sup> // Of whiche knyȝtes. þe kinge ordeyned Sere Robert knolles a prouede knyȝt & a well assayd in dedis of armes. for to be here gouernoure & þat þoruȝ his gouernaunce & counsayle al þinge sholde be redressed // & whan þey come in to ffraunce as longe as þey dwelled & held hem hole togedre þe frenshe men durst nat falle vpon hem // & at laste & in þe beginnyng of wynter. for

<sup>6</sup>Expuncted by underline of 3 dots. <sup>7</sup>Repeated by scribe in right margin of col., king edward

And þan kyng Edward held his parlement At mestmestyr<sup>e</sup> in the wych parlemente was exelyd<sup>f</sup> of the chyrch A thre 3erys dymes for to be payd in iij 3er duryng 7 the chyrch put yt of and wold nott grauntyd tyll Estyr nex sueyng and þa<sup>n</sup> thay grauntyd yt shuld be payd in the 3er and of the lyff<sup>g</sup> A xv peny was grauntyd<sup>6</sup>

(fol. 146<sup>a</sup>) Howe Robert knolles went ouyr the See in to ffraunce 7 here gouernaunce Capitulo CCxxxiiij

And in the xv 3er of kyng Edward þorow on wysse counsell borwyd a gret some of gold of the prelatys and lordys and of marchandys and of othyr worthy me<sup>n</sup> of hes reme Semyng þat yt shuld be spente in defendyng of holy chyrche and of hys Rem neuyr the lesse yt proferryd nat werfor a bout messemer aftyr kyng mad agret host of þe worthyst<sup>1</sup> of hys Rem amongys wer some lordys þat ys to say þe lord fuatur þe lord Graunsoun and othyr worthy kny3tys þe kyng hordynyd syr Robert knollys A Preuyd kny3te and well asayd in ded of Armes for to be gouernor And that þorū hys gouernance All thyngys shuld be govyrnyd And þat þourch hys gouernance and dressyd And when þay come into fraunce as long as thay held hem holl to gyddyr þe frensme<sup>n</sup> durst nott fall vppon hym And at þe last about the begyngynnyng<sup>a</sup> of wyntyr for

---

<sup>6</sup>Twelve lines ruled but left blank. Fol. 146 <sup>1</sup>Badly formed -y-.



enuye & couetyse þat was amonges hem. & alle so discorde.  
 þey sondred & partyd hem in diuerse companies vn̄ wysely  
 and (fol. 97<sup>a</sup>) folily // & Sere<sup>1</sup> Robert knolles & his  
 men wenten & kepte hem saaf with Inne a Castell in  
 Bretayne // and whan þe ffrenshemen sawe. þat oure men  
 were devyded in dyuerse companyes & places. nouȝt  
 holdynge no strenþinge hem to gedres. as þey ouȝte forto  
 do // þey fell fersly vpon oure men. & for þe most parti  
 token hem. or slowen hem. & þo þat þey token ladden  
 forth with hem as presoners And in þe same ȝere Pope  
 Vrban come fro Rome to Avyon for echesoun & cause þat he  
 wolde a corde make & pees by twene þe king<sup>2</sup> ffrance<sup>a</sup> &  
 þe kinge of englond for euere more But allas ar he bygan  
 þis Tretyes he dyede with Syknes þe xxj day of decembre  
 & was I beryed as for þe tyme. in þe Cathedrall chirche  
 at Avyoun faste by þe hy autere // & þe nexte ȝere after  
 whan he had ley so. his bones were taken oute of þe erpe.  
 & beried newe in þe Abbay of Seint victor. faste by  
 Marcyle. of þe whyche abbay he was some tyme abbot him  
 silfe & in boþe places þat he was beried Inne. þere bene  
 manye meracles don. & wrouȝt þoruȝ þe grace of god to  
 many a mannes helpe. & eke vnto þe worshepe of god & of  
 oure lady // After whom folowyde nexte & was made Pope  
 Gregorie Cardynall dekene. þat be ffore was cleped Pers  
 Roger In þe same ȝere þe Cetee of lymage rebelled & fauȝt  
 azens þe Prince. & opere Cetees in Guayne & deden ful<sup>b</sup>  
 gret taxes<sup>3</sup> costages & raunsouns þat þey were put inne.  
 & I sette by prince edwarde. wheche charges weren in  
 portable<sup>c</sup> & to chargeable<sup>d</sup> // wherfore þey turnede alle<sup>4</sup>  
 ffrom him & turnede vnto þe kinge of ffrance & whan

Fol. 97 <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text.

<sup>2</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>3</sup>ful ... taxes by scribe over erasure. <sup>4</sup>Followed by  
superfluous double hyphen.

enmys þat was amongys hem Afor discord þas<sup>b</sup> was a mong  
 þe Sawgors þay partyn into dyuers company vnwysly but  
 syr Roberd knollys and hys mayne went and kepte hem saue  
 in the castell in Bretayn And when the french men sawe  
 that our many wer deuydyd in to dyuers companys and þe  
 plasse nott heldyng hem togydyr and fyll fresly on our  
 men and for the most party tok hym and A Slow heme and  
 led wyt hym presoners and in the same 3er pop vrbañ came  
 from rome to Avioun for by causse þat he wold make by  
 twene þe kyng (fol. 146<sup>b</sup>) of fraunce and the kyng of  
 Englund but or thys treis my3th be mad he deid wyt seknes  
 þe on An xxj daye of desember and was beryd for the tyme  
 in the Cathoderall chyrch of Avioun And þe next 3er after  
 hys bonys wer berryd in the abbay of Sent victure fast by  
 marchyll of the wych abbay he was some tyme Abbot 7 bothe  
 plassys he was berryd and he did gret myrakyllys after  
 home folowd nex and was mad Pope Grygore Cardenell þat  
 be for [was]<sup>2</sup> was Clepyd pers roger

---

<sup>2</sup>Erased.



prince edwarde sawe þis he was a chafed 7 y greuyd 7 in<sup>2</sup>  
turnyd<sup>e</sup> homwarde a 3en to englonde with sore skermys<sup>s</sup>hes  
 7 fy3things 7 also grete asoutes made vnto hem with his  
 manye. he toke þe forsaid Cetee 7 distroyed hit all most  
 vn to þe grounde. And slowe alle þat euere he fonde in  
 þat Cetee<sup>f</sup> // 7 þan forto say þe soþe what for dyuerse  
 syknes 7 maladyes þat he had 7 also for defaute of money  
 þat he my3t nat with stande ne tarye on his enemyes he  
 hyed him a3en in englonde. And aboute þe beginnyng of  
 Ianuarij he come in to englonde with his wyfe 7 his meyne  
 leuyng be hinde hym in<sup>5</sup> Gascoyne þe duke of lancastre 7  
 ser edmonde erle of chambryng<sup>g</sup> with opere worthi 7 orpede  
 men of armes // In þe xlvj 3ere of king (fol. 97<sup>a</sup>b)  
 edwarde atte ordynaunce 7 sendyng of kynge edward þe  
 kinge of Nauerne come<sup>2</sup> to him to Claryngdoun to trete  
 with him of serteine þinges towching his werre in  
 Normandie where kinge edwarde had lefte serteine Seges  
 in his stede tyll he come a 3en // but kynge edwarde  
 my3te not spede of þat he askyde of him 7 so þe kinge of  
 Nauerne with grete worshepe 7 grete 3iftes toke his leue  
 7 wente home a 3en And aboute þe beginnyng<sup>6</sup> of Marche  
 whan whan<sup>h</sup> þe parlement at westmynster was by gone. þe  
 kinge askide of þe Clergie A Subsidie of .l. M<sup>l</sup>.lj. þe  
 whiche by a gode a vysement 7 of a generall conuocacioun  
 of all þe Clergie hit was I greted<sup>i</sup> 7 I graunted 7 I  
 ordeyned þat hit shulde be payede of þe layfee 7 in þis  
 parlement atte requeste 7 axinge of þe lordis in haterede  
 of men of holy chirche þe Chaunseler 7 þo þat were  
 bysshopis þe treserer 7 þe Clerke of þe preue Seall were  
 remeued 7 put oute of here of office 7 in here stedes  
 were seculere men put inne // 7 while þis parlement

---

<sup>5</sup>Added by scribe in margin at end of line. <sup>6</sup>Three dots  
 below -nge; poss. intended to expunct whan but wrongly  
 placed.

I the xvj<sup>o</sup> 3er of kyng Edward at þe request of the kyng  
 of nawarne come to hym to Claryngtoun to tret wyt hem of  
 Serteñ thynis tochyng hys wer in normandy wer kyng Edward  
 had lost c[.]erteñ<sup>3</sup> Segis tyll he com hom A3ene but kyng  
 Edward my3th nott Sped of that he haskyd of hym And so  
 the kyng of naverne wyt grett worschip and 3eftys went  
 home a3ene And aboute þe begynnyng of marche when the  
parlement of westmestyr was by gone þe kyng askyd of þe  
 clarge A Subsydye of l. M<sup>l</sup> pownd þe wyche by god  
 Awyssement was grauntyd and hordynynd þat yt shuld be payd  
 of the ley ffee And in thys parlement At þe request And  
 axyng of the lordys in hatered of meñ of holy chyrche the  
 Chaunceler And þo þat wer bysschopus þe tresuerer and þe  
preuy sell wer remevyd and put out of her offyces And in  
 he<sup>c</sup> sted wer put Senculer meñ // And wyll þis parlemente

---

<sup>3</sup>Letter erased.



lastede. <sup>✓</sup> pere come Solempne Ambassiatoures I sente fro  
 þe Pope to trete with þe kinge of pees <sup>7</sup> seyden þat þe  
 Pope desyred to fulfille hys predecessoures wille but  
 for alle here comynge þey spedden not of here purpose

Off þe Sege of Rochell and how the erle of Penbroke was  
 take of the Spaynardis <sup>7</sup> was had vp in to Spayne and many  
 opere worthi lordis with him <sup>7</sup> pere was he put vnto his  
 Raunsoun

The ix day of Iune kinge edwarde in þe xlvij 3ere of his  
 regne. <sup>✓</sup> held his parlement at winchestre. <sup>✓</sup> <sup>7</sup> hit lastede  
 but viij dayes. <sup>✓</sup> to þat parlement were Sompnede by writte  
 of men of holi chirche .iiij. Bysshopis <sup>7</sup> iiij Abbotys  
with outen Any moo // And þis parlement was holden for  
 Marcheantes of london <sup>7</sup> of<sup>7</sup> Norwyche <sup>7</sup> of opere dyuerse  
 places for dyuerse þinges and poyntes of tresoun þat þey  
 were defamed of / þat is forto saye. <sup>✓</sup> þat þey weren  
 rebelle <sup>7</sup> wolden ryse a 3ens þe king<sup>5</sup> // þis same 3ere  
 þe duke of lancastre <sup>7</sup> þe erle of Cambrygge his broþer  
 come oute Gascoyne in to Englund <sup>7</sup> token <sup>7</sup> (fol. 97<sup>b</sup>a)  
 wedded to here wyfes Petres dou3tes some kynge<sup>j</sup> of Spayne.  
 of whiche ij. dou3ters þe duke had þe eldre <sup>7</sup> erle þe  
 3onger <sup>7</sup> þat same tyme pere were sent .ij Cardinals fro  
 þe Pope. <sup>✓</sup> þat is to saye an englisshe Cardinal <sup>7</sup> a  
 cardinal of Paris to trete of pees by twene þo .ij.  
 Reames // þe whiche whan þey had bene bothe. <sup>✓</sup> longe in  
 here prouinces <sup>7</sup> places <sup>7</sup> countres faste by. <sup>✓</sup> trefyng of  
 þe for sayde pees. <sup>✓</sup> atte laste þey toke with hem here  
lettres of procuracye. <sup>✓</sup> <sup>7</sup> wente A3en to þe Courte of Rome  
 warde with outen any effecte of here purpos // <sup>7</sup> in þis  
 3ere also pere was a stronge Batayle on þe see. <sup>✓</sup> by twene  
 englisshe men <sup>7</sup> fflemmynges. <sup>✓</sup> but þe englisshe men had þe

---

<sup>7</sup>By scribe over erasure.

last com Solempne enbassaturys Sent fro þe pope to trett  
wyt the kyng of pesse And Seydyn̄ the pope desyryd to  
fulfyll his predycessorys wyll (fol. 147<sup>a</sup>) but for all  
her comyng þay sped not of her purposse

Of the sege of Rochell 7 howe þe Erle of Penbroke was  
take of Spaynardis

In the ix [3.r]<sup>1</sup> of Iune kyng Edward in the xliij 3er of  
hys reigne held hys parlement at wenchestyr thys parlemen  
wa holden̄ for Marchandus of london̄ of norwych and of  
dyuers placys of dyuers poyntys of tresoun þat þay wer  
defamyd of that ys for to say þat þay wer rebell and  
wold arysse aʒenst þe kyng Thys same 3er de duke of  
lancastyr the Erle of Cambryge come oute of Gascoyne in  
to Englund and wedyd to her wywys petrys dou3trys Som  
tyme kyng of spayne of the wych ij dou3terys þe duke  
weddyd þe elder and þe Erle þe 3ongyr and that same tyme  
wer sent to Cardenallys fro the pope þat ys to say an  
Englyche and þe Cardenall of parys to trett of pesse be  
twene þe remys but þay went home aʒen wytout any purposse

---

Fol. 147 <sup>1</sup>Word erased, prob. 3er.



victory panked be Ihesus 7 token xxv. Shyppis I charged with Salte. Sleyng 7 drenchinge alle þe men þat weren with Inne þo Shippis vñ wetinge hem þat þey weren of þat contre<sup>k</sup> 7 redely meche harme had falle by cause þere offe. ne had pees þe sonner be made by twene // 7 in þis same 3ere þe ffrenche men bysegged þe Towne of þe Rochell wherfore þe erle of Penbroke was sente in to Gascoyne with a grete companye of men of armes. for to destroye þat Sege. þe whiche passedenden<sup>1</sup> þe See 7 come faste to þe hauene of Rochechel<sup>8m</sup> 7 whanne þey were þere atte hauene Mouthe. or þey my3te entre / sodenly come. vppon hem a stronge Naue of Spayne. þe wheche ouere comen oure englisshe men. in meche blemeshinge hurtinge and Sleyng of many persones. ffor as meche as þe englisshe men weren not redy at þat tyme forto fy3te. ne warre of of here comynge 7 in þis comynge vpon of<sup>7</sup> þe Spaynardis. alle þe englishe men eyþere þere were taken or slayne. 7 x of hem were wounded to þe deth 7 alle here shippis I brent 7 þere þey tokene þe erle with an houghe tresoun of þe reame of Englund. 7 many oþer noble men. also on Missomere even þe whiche is Seint Mildredes day. 7 ladden him with hem into Spayne // 7 of þis myschef was no<sup>4</sup> grete woundre. ffor þis erle was a ful euell leuere. as an open lecchoure 7 also in a serteyne parlement<sup>n</sup> he stode 7 was a 3ens þe ry3tes 7 þe ffraunches of holy chirche 7 also he counseyled þe kynge 7 his counseile þat he (fol. 97<sup>b</sup>) sholde Axe more of men of holy chirche þan of oþere persones of þe lay fee // 7 for þe kynge 7 oþere of his counseile accepted 7 token rapere<sup>2</sup> þat<sup>o</sup> here euell openyons 7 causis a 3en of holi chirche. þan he dede for to defende 7 maintenyne þe ry3th of holy chirche // hit was seen in many tymes aftur þoru3 lackynge of ffortune 7 grace. þey had not ne bore a way þe vyctorie

---

<sup>8</sup>-chel inserted later by scribe.

And in the same yer the frenschmeñ be segyd to<sup>2</sup> þe towne  
 of Rochell wer for þe Erle of Penbroke was sent in to  
 gascoyne wyt a gret company of men of Armes for to dystroy  
 þe Sege the wyche passyd the See and comeñ saue to þe  
 hauyn of Rochell And when thay wer ther At þe hawyn mouth  
 or that þay myȝt Entyr Sodenly com vp on hem a strong  
 nawy of spayñ þe wych ouyr come þe Englysmen for the  
 Englysmen wer natt war of hem ne wer nott redy to fythe  
 and þis comyng all the Englysmen othyr thay wer taky Or  
 slayñ and x Iwondyd to þe dethe and þeyr Schyppys brent  
 and ther thay toke þe Erle wyt and (fol. 147<sup>b</sup>) huge  
 tresoure of þe reme of Englund And meny othyr nobyll men  
 And of thys no gret wondyr for he was An ewyll leuyr 7 vp  
 on lecherye<sup>a</sup> And a-in<sup>2</sup> in a certyn parlement he was aȝens  
 the ryth of holy chyrch

---

<sup>2</sup> Stroked out.



ne power azens here enemyes as þey deden by fore // þis  
 same 3ere þe kyng with a grete Oste entred þe See. to  
 remeue þe Sege of þe Rochell. but þe wynde was contrarye  
 evene to him. 7 suffred him not long tyme. to go ferre  
 from þe lande // wherefore he abode a serteyne tyme vpon  
 þe See coostes. A bydinge a gode wynde for him. 7 3et  
 come hit nou3t so. 7 atte laste he come þens with his  
 men to londewardes a 3en[.]<sup>9</sup>. 7 a noon as he was on  
 londe þe wynde be gan to turne. 7 was in a nopere coost  
 þan he was by fore //

How þe Duke off lancastre with a grete Oste wente into  
 flaundres 7 passede by Paryse þorow all ffraunce Tyll þat  
 he come to Bordeaux.

Sone aftir in þe .xlviij. 3ere of kyng edward . þe duke  
 of lancastre with agrete oste wente in to. fflaundres 7  
 passyd by parys þorow Burgoyne 7 þorow all ffraunce  
 tyl[.]<sup>10</sup> he come to Burdeux. with outen any manere with  
 standyng of þe ffrenshe men. 7 he dede hem but lytelle  
 harme. Saue he toke 7 raunsomed many places 7 townes 7  
 many men. lete hem gone<sup>p</sup> after frely // þe same 3ere þe  
 kyng sente serteyne Ambassatoures to þe Pope. praynge  
 him þat he shold leue of 7 nou3t medle in his Courte of  
 þe kepynges 7 reseruaciouns of þe benefices in englonde.  
 7 þat þoo þat were chose to Bisshopis Sees 7 dignitees.  
 ffrely 7 with full ry3th my3te Ioye 7 haue 7 be confermyd  
 of here Metropolitanes 7 erchebyssshopis as þey were wonte  
 forto be of olde tyme. of þese pointes 7 of opere  
 towchinge þe kinge 7 hys Reame // And þey hadde here  
 answeere of þe pope. he engeyned hem þat þey sholde  
 sertefye hym A3en. by lettres of þe kinge wylle 7 of his  
 (fol. 98<sup>a</sup>) Reame or þat þey determyned ou3t of þe

<sup>9</sup>Letter erased, prob. -e. <sup>10</sup>Two letters erased, prob. -ee.

Thys same 3er the kyng wyt a gret ost enteryd vnto the sege of rochell, but þe wyne<sup>b</sup> was euyne contrary to hym wer for he abbod<sup>3</sup> acerteyn [a serten]<sup>4</sup> tym vppon þe See costys Abydyng good wyne and 3it come noñ at þe last he come a3ene vnto londward and anone he was A lond þe wynd be gan to torne

Howe þe duke of lancastre with a grete hoost went in to fflaundris And passid be certen parties purh Burgoun  
Capitulo ducentesimo tricesimo sexto

A noñ aftyr the xlviiij 3er of kyng Edward þe Duke of lancaster went wyt A gret hoste in to flandres and passyd be parysse þour burgoyñ and þorow all fraunce tyll he come to burdueys wyt out ony maner wyt [...] <sup>4</sup> stondyng of the frensche meñ and ded hym but lytill harm for he toke and Raunsonyd mony placys 7 townys and meny meñ he lett goo fryly The same 3er the kyng let send a certen in bassatreis to þe pop prayng hem þat he shuld leve of þat he shuld nott medyll<sup>5</sup> in his corte of the kepyngis and of the serwauntys and benefices of Englund and þat bysschopis sesse and dygniteis frely and hath be confermermyd of her matrypolytans And Ersbysschopps as thay wer wont to be of old tyme And of thes poyntys and othyr (fol. 148<sup>a</sup>) the kyng and hys rem when thay had her Answer of the pope þe phylip enyodyd<sup>a</sup> hem and þat þay shuld sertyfy hym a3ene by [...] <sup>1</sup> her lettyrys of the kyngys wyll And of hys reme or be deternyte out<sup>b</sup> of the

<sup>3</sup>Badly formed -o- like a. <sup>4</sup>Erasure. <sup>5</sup>-edy- by (?) scribe over erasure. Fol. 148 <sup>1</sup>Erasure.



forsayde Artycles // In þis same 3ere deyde Iohn the  
 erchebysshop̄ of 3orke Iohn Bissshop̄ of ely william Bissshop̄  
 of worcestre // In whoes stedes folowyng 7 weren made  
 Bissshopis by auctorite of þe Pope Maister Alexander  
 Nevile to þe erchebissshopriche of 3oke Th<sup>1a</sup> Thomas of  
 Arundell to þe Byssshopriche<sup>2</sup> of Ely 7 Sere herry wakefeld  
 to þe Bissshopriche of worcestre // In whiche tyme hit was  
 ordeyned in þe parlement. ʃ þat alle Cathedrall cherches  
 sholde ioye 7 haue here eleccions hool<sup>b</sup> 7 þe kinge fro  
 þat tyme aftirwarde. ʃ sholde not write a 3ens hem þat were  
 chosen. ʃ but rather helpe hem by his lettres to here  
 confirmacioun // 7 þis statute was kepte 7 dede moche  
 profite 7 good // 7 in þis<sup>3</sup> parlement was grauntyd vnto  
 þe kinge a dysme of þe clergie. ʃ a xv. of þe layfee //  
 The xlix. 3ere of kinge edwarde þe .v. day of Iuyn deide  
 Maister william wytlessey erchebyssshop of Caunterbury. ʃ  
 wherfore þe Monkes of þe same cherche / Asked 7 desyred  
 a Cardinall of englonde to be erchebyssshop̄ 7 þerefore  
 þe kinge was sore a greuyd 7 had mynte<sup>c</sup> 7 purposed to  
 haue exiled þe Monkes of þe same hous. ʃ so þey spended  
 mekil good<sup>d</sup>. ʃ or þey my3te haue þe kinges grace a 3en. ʃ  
 7 his loue // but 3et wolde not þe kinge consente ne  
 graunte to here eleccioun of þe Cardinall. ʃ ne þe Pope  
 also ne his Cardinals / 7 a boute þe begynyng of August  
 hit was treted 7 spoken at Brugges of serteyne poyntes  
 7 articles hanginge by twene þe Pope 7 þe kinge of  
 englond // 7 þis tretis lasted all most .ij. 3ere . but  
 at þe laste a corde was made by twene hem. ʃ þat þe Pope  
 fro þat tyme forthe sholde not<sup>4</sup> vse ne dele with þe  
 reseruacions of benefices in englonde 7 þat þe kinge

---

Fol. 98 <sup>1</sup>Followed by small hole in vellum. <sup>2</sup>riche  
 by scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.  
<sup>3</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.  
<sup>4</sup>-t by scribe above; caret in text.

forsayd artyclos And in the sam 3er deid Iohn Arsbysshop<sup>us</sup> of yorke Ion þe bysschop of Ely wylliam byschop of wenchestyr in who ys stedys wer mad bysshopp<sup>us</sup> be Autoryte of the pop Mastyr Alexander Newyle to þe ersbysshop of yorke Thomas Arundell to þe byschoprych of Ely and syr harry wakfeld to þe byschop of worcester In the wych tyme yt was hordynyd in þe parlement þat all the Cathedrall chyrchys shuld Ioy And haue her elecciouns hole and þat þe kyng fro that tyme afterward shuld nott wryt a3enst hym þat wer I chosyn but rather help heme be hys letters to her confyrmacioun and þis statut was kepte and ded much profet and good in thys parlement was graundynt a damys<sup>c</sup> of the clergie and a xv of the ley ffee The 3er nex afterward the xlix the ix day of Iun dyd mastyr wytlasse Arsbysshop of Cantyrbury werfor the monkys þo of þe same chyrch askyd a cardenall of Englonde to be Ersbysshop and therfor the kyng was agreuyd and purposyd to exile þe monkys of the same house and so thay Spendyd much good or thay my3th haue the kyngys grace a3en 3et wold not the consent to her Eleccioun of the cardenall ne of the pope Also ne hys cardynallys and bout þe be gynnyng of hawgust (fol. 148<sup>b</sup>) yt was tretid and hys cardenall<sup>2</sup> spokyn At brygges of certeyn poyntys and articlis haggyne betwen þe<sup>3</sup> pope and the kyng of Englonde and thys tretys lastyt almost ij 3er at þe last hyt was accordyd by twen heme þat þe pop fro that tym forth shuld not dell wyt reseruacions<sup>4</sup> of benefych in Englonde and that þe kyng

---

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out. <sup>3</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text.  
<sup>4</sup>Macron above -ci- as abbreviation-mark for -a-.



shold not lete. ne graunte no benefices by his writte  
 þat is clepid Quare impedit<sup>e</sup> // but as<sup>3</sup> towchinge þe  
 eleccions abouesaide. þer was no þinge towched ne sayde  
 ne doo // 7 þat was I wyted 7 put vpon<sup>f</sup> serteyne clerkes.  
 þe wheche þe rather supposed 7 hoped to be a vaunsed. 7  
 promoted to Bysshopryches. wheche þat þey desyred 7  
 couetyd by þe<sup>5</sup> courte of Rome. þan by any eleccions /  
 þis same 3ere aboute Can (fol. 98<sup>a</sup>b) delmasse. þere  
 comen and metten to gedre At Brugges many a noble 7  
 worthy man of bothe Reames to trete of pees be twene þo  
 ij. kyngdomes // 7 þis tretis lastede .ij. 3ere with  
 grete costes 7 houghe spenses of boþe partyes. 7 atte  
 laste þey wente 7 departyd pennes with oute any a corde  
 or effecte // þe nexte<sup>6</sup> 3ere aftir þe .l. 3ere of kinge  
 edwarde þe iiij day of May beyng 3et voyde 7 vacaunt  
 þe erchebisshop ryche of Canterbury . Mayster Symond  
 Sudbery Bisshop of london was made erchebisshop of  
 Caunterbery. 7 Mayster william Courteney þat was Bysshop  
 of herford. was made þan Bisshop of london. 7 þe Bisshop  
 of Bangore was made Bisshop of herford 7 in þe same tyme  
 in a certeine tretis 7 spekinge of pees trewes was take  
 bytwene ffrance 7 englonde fro Missonere vnto missonere  
 come a 3en all an hole 3ere // 7 aboute þe beginnyng of  
 Aprill þe duke of Bretayne with many erles Barouns 7  
 noble 7 worthy men of england wenten ouere þe See in to  
 Bretayne where he hadde alle his luste desire 7 purpose.  
 ne had þe forsayde trewes be so sone take þe whiche  
 letted hem mekel / þis same tyme þe Ile of Constantyne<sup>g</sup>.  
 where þat þe castell of Seint Savyoure is inne. þat  
 longe tyme was fou3te ate. 7 þe Seged of þe ffrance  
 men. was þan 3elden vp vn to þe ffrenshe men with alle  
 þe a purtenaunces in to grete harme 7 hindringe of þe

---

<sup>5</sup>Inserted above by scribe. <sup>6</sup>Prob. added later by scribe  
 at end of line.

shuld nat graunte ne lett non benefys be hys wryt that  
ys clepyd quare impedyt but astochyng to þe Eleccioun  
Abowsayd þer was nothyng tochyd ne do And þat was wytid  
on certen clerkys þe wyche sopposyd to be A waunsyd and  
promotyð wyt þat þay dysyrid and couetyd by the cort of  
rome þan be eny Elecciouns Thys Same 3er aboute Candelmes  
ther mettyn to gyddyr at brugys meny nobyll worthy men  
of both remes to tretyn of pesse betwen the to kyngdoms  
and thys trefyd lastyd ij 3er wyt gret Spensys and at þe  
laste þay departid wytout ony effecte þe nex 3er aftyr of  
kyng Edward beyng woyd þe Arsbyschopus of Cantyrbury  
Mastyr Symond sodbery byschop of london þay mad  
arsbyschoppus of cantyrbury And maystyr<sup>5</sup> wylliam  
Corteney þat was byschop of harford was mad bysschop of  
london ande byschop of Bangor was mad bysshop of harford

---

<sup>5</sup>-ayst' by corr. at end of line.



Reame of englonde // 7 þis same 3ere þere were so grete  
 7 so passinge hetes. 7 þere with alle a grete pestilens  
 in englonde. 7 in opere dyuerse parteys of þe worlde.  
 þat hit destroyed 7 slowe vyolently 7 strongly boþe men  
 7 wommen with outen nombre // þis same 3ere deide Sere  
 edwarde þe lord þe Spencere A worthi knyzt 7 a bolde.  
 7 in þe Mynystre of Teukesbery. worshepfully is beried  
 // 7 lastinge þis grete pestilens þe Pope atte instaunce  
 7 prayere of þe englisshe Cardinall. granted too . all  
 þe peple þat deide in englond. þat weren sory 7  
 repentaunt ffor hire synnes. 7 also screven ful  
 remissioun by .ij. bulles vnder lede .vj. Monthes þan  
 nexte to laste // in þis same 3ere þe erle of penbrok  
 was take 7 raunsoned by Bratran<sup>h</sup> Claykyn. by twene paris  
 7 Caleys as he come toward englond vpon Seint Etheldredes  
 day. (fol. 98<sup>b</sup>a) þe whiche Seint As hit was sayde þe same  
 erle of tymes had offended. 7 with in[.]<sup>7</sup> a whyle aftir  
 he deyde // 7 in<sup>5</sup> Nouembre nexte after þere metten at  
 Brugges þe duke of lancastre. 7 þe duke of Anyoye with  
 many oper lordys 7 prelatys of boþe Reames for to trete  
 of pees

Off the dethe of the gode Prince edwarde and of Dame  
 [Alicie]<sup>8</sup> Alys Perers 7 off Peres de la Mare Capitulo  
 CC<sup>mo</sup>

NOt longe afture þe .lj. 3ere of þe Regnynge of kynge  
 edward he lete ordeyne 7 helde his parlement at  
 westmynster. þe grettest þat was seen many 3ere afore //  
 in þe whiche parlement he axede of þe cominalte of þe  
 Reame as he had done often tyme byfore. a grete subsidie.  
 to be graunted vn to him. for defendyng of him 7 of his

<sup>7</sup>Prob. one letter erased. <sup>8</sup>Expuncted by underline of  
 4 dots.

In the same 3er the Erl of Penbrok was takyn and Raunsonyd  
 be Barteram cleykeñ by twene parys and calesse And com  
 toward Englund vppon Sent Eldtredys day þe wyche sent as  
 yt was sayd the sayd Erle had afendyd oft tymes and wyt  
 in a wyll aftyr he dyd in nouembr nex aftyr (fol. 149<sup>a</sup>)  
 þer mettyn at brygys þe duke of lancastr the duk of  
 Anyoye wyt meny lordys and prelatys and for to trett of  
 pesse

Of the deeth of Prince Edward And of Dame Alis And of  
Piers dylamar

N<sup>l</sup> not long aftyr þe 1j 3er of kyng Edward lett hordynynd  
 hys parlement at westmestyr þe grettys þat was sayne meny  
 3er befor in the wych parlement he axid of the cominte of  
 þe reme as he had done be forne agret subsedy to be  
 grantyd to hyme fore defendyng of heme and of hys



Reame // but þe comens answerd 7 saide þat þey were so ofte peled<sup>i</sup> day by day. 7 so greued 7 charged with so many talages 7 subsidies. 7 þat þey my3te no lenger suffre none seche birthens ne charges 7 þat þey knewen 7 wisten well þat þe kinge had I now for sauynge of him 7 of his Reame. 3if þe Reame were welle 7 trewly gouerned // but hit had be so longe euell gouerned by evell officers. 7 þat þe Reame my3te neyþere be plenteuous of chaffare<sup>j</sup> 7 Marchaundises ne tresour ne riches as hit was wonte to be // 7 þese þinges þey profered hem selfe. 3if þe kinge wolde / serteynly to proue 7 stonde þere by // 7 3yf hyt were founde 7 proued contrarye. after þat. 7 þanne 7 þe kinge had nede þey wolde. gladly euery man aftur his powere 7 his astate him helpe 7 3eue. 7 aftir þis were þere<sup>9</sup> publessed 7 shewed in þe parlement many playntes 7 defautes of dyuerse officers of þe Reame. 7 namely of þe lord latimere þe kinges chamberleyne. of his euell gouernans boþe to þe kinge 7 eke to his Reame // 7 atte þe laste alle so þere was treted 7 spoken of dame Alys Perrers<sup>10</sup> vn to þe king. for þe grete wronges 7 euell gouernance þat was done by here. 7 by here counsayle with ine þe Reame // þe whiche Dame Alys Perrers þe kyng had longe tyme holde to his lemmam<sup>k</sup> // wherfore hit was þe lasse wondur. 7 þorowe þe freelte<sup>l</sup> of þe wommanes exytinge<sup>m</sup> 7 sterynge<sup>n</sup> 7 consentynge to (fol. 98<sup>b</sup>) here lewednesse and euell counsayle þe whiche Dame Alys Perrers 7 þe lord latimere. 7 opere seche þat stered þe kinge to euell gouernance. 7 a 3ens þe prophete of þe Reame also 7 of all þe comenalte of englonde desyred 7 askyde þat þey sholden be remeved 7 done away 7 in here stedes wyse men 7 dyscrete 7 well proued of gode gouernaunce shulden be put in here stedes //

<sup>9</sup>Added later by scribe at end of line. <sup>10</sup>Three dots above -ers; ? poss. to expunct þere in line above.

reme But the comenoris Answerd þat þay wer sor Agreuyd



So a monge alle opere here was amonge þe comens a wyse knyzt 7 a trewe 7 an eloquent Man. whos name was Pers de la Mare // 7 þis same pers was chosen speker for þe comens in þe parlement / And for þis same pers tolde 7 publysshed þe trowþe 7 rehersyd many wronges a 3ens þe forsayde dame Alys 7 opere serteyne persones of kynges counseyle as he was boden boldly be þe commons. 7 also trustinge meche for to be subported 7 maynteyned moche in þis mater. by helpyng 7 fauoure of þe prince // <sup>11</sup> but a none as þe prince was dede. Atte instaunce 7 requeste of þe forseide dame Alys Perers. Pers de la Mare was Iugged to perpetuall presoun in þe Castell of Notyngham. in þe wheche he was .ij. 3ere // 7 þe .vj. kallend of Iuyll lastinge þe same parlement deyede þe gode Prince edward kynge edwardus fyrste Sone // þat ys for to saye in Trinite Sondag. in worshepinge of þe same ffeste of the Trinite. he was wonte euery 3ere where so euere he were in alle þe worlde to make agreeet ffeste 7 holde þe moste Solempte þat he myzte or cowde with all his lordis 7 with his power in worshepe of blessyd 7 all myzty Trinite // whoes mane of ffortune of kny3thode was neuere 3ete none seche. ne had bene saue a nobere Ectoure<sup>o</sup> ffor alle men boþe<sup>3</sup> cristen<sup>12</sup> 7 hethen. whyle þey leueden 7 weren in good poynte<sup>p</sup> drad hem wondur sore // whoes body of þis worshepful prince is worthely beryed At Crycherche in Caunterbury. whos soule al myzty Ihesus take vnto his mercy Amen // 7 in þe same 3ere þe erles men<sup>13</sup> men 7 tenauntes of þe erle of warwyk a resen malyciously. a 3ens þe Abbot 7 þe couente of Euesham 7 here tenauntes. 7 destroyeden fersly þe Abbot 7 þe towne. 7 wounded 7 bete

<sup>11</sup>In left margin of col. by scribe no<sup>α</sup> Presumably an abbreviation of nota; on succeeding fols. indicated by simply the abbreviation-mark α. <sup>12</sup> Nomen sacrum siglum 'xpeñ' used. <sup>13</sup>þe erles mē by scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

So among all opir þer was one a mong þe comens þat was Awis knyzt and atrew and an eloquent mañ whos name was pers delamer and þis pers was schosyne to spek for þe comens in the parlement and for this Pers told and pubblyschyd þe treuth and<sup>2</sup> rehersyd meny wrongys aʒens the forsayd dame alys and othyr serten persones of the kyngys housse as he was bothe by the comens And also trust mech to helpe in thys of the prynce Anone as þe pryns was ded at þe instaunce of the forsayd dame Alys þis forsayd Pers was Iuget to perpetuall preson in the castell of nothyng~~ham~~ in the wyche he was ij 3er And in the vij kaland of Iull lastyng þe same parlement deyde prynce Edward þe kyngys fyrst sone on the trenyte sonday of the worschp of þe wych fest he was wont euyry 3er wer þat euyr he wer to make and to hold þe most Solempnyte þat he myth whos name and kny3hod heuyry man praysyd whos body was worthely beryd at Crychyrche at (fol. 149<sup>b</sup>) Cauntyrbury And in the same 3er þe Erls meny A Resone malyscely aʒenst þe Abbot the þe Couente of Euessham 7 her tenauntys dytroyd<sup>a</sup> fersly þe abbot And hys couente and her tenauntys wondyt and bett

---

<sup>2</sup>MS. has one minim for -n-.



here men & slowe of hem wondir manye. & aftir wente to  
 here places & maneres & deden mekell harm & broken downe  
 here places parkes & closes & brent & slowen here (fol.  
 99<sup>a</sup>) wylde beestys and also chased hem. & aftir pat  
 broken here ffyssh ponds. & lete þe water of here  
 ponds stewys & Ryueres renne out. & token þe fyssh &  
 bare hit with hem & made hem merye þere with. & dede hem  
 alle þe harme þat þey coude or myȝte. In so ferforthe.  
 þat for sob þey had caste hem. to haue destroyed  
 perpetually þat abbay with alle here membres and  
 Appurtenaunces // but ȝif þe kinge þe sonner had holpen  
 hit. & take hede þer too. & þere fore þe kinge sente his  
 lettres to þe erle of warwyke. charginge & comaunding  
 him þat he sholde sese & stinte of þat stryfe þat his  
 men had be gonne. & þat he dede amende & do redresse þe  
 euell doers & brekers of his pees<sup>1</sup> & so by menes of  
 worthi lordis & opere frendes of boþe sydes pees & good  
 acorde was made & gode loue by twene hem // & for þis  
 horlynge<sup>a</sup> as hit was sayde. þe kinge wolde nouȝt be  
 gouerned at þat tyme by his lordis þat were in þe  
 parlement But he toke & made his Sonne þe duke of  
 lancastre gouernour of his Reame / þe whiche stode so  
 styлле gouerned vn to þe tyme þat he deyede. þe same  
 ȝere Anone aftir Candelmasse or þat þe parlement were  
 done. þe kinge axede a subsidie of þe clergie. & of þe  
 layfee. & hit was graunted him. þat is for to saye þat  
 he shulde haue of euery persone of þe lay ffee. boþe of  
 man & woman. þat passyd .xiiij. ȝere of age. iiij. oute  
 take pore beggers þat weren knowen opinly for nedy pore  
 beggers // & þat he sholdde haue of euery man of holy  
 chirche. þat was beneficed or promoted .xiij. & of alle  
 oper þat were not promoted iiij. outake þe foure /

---

Fol. 99 <sup>1</sup> By scribe in margin at end of line; 3 dots  
 above his may indicate omission.

hem and slow meny one 7 and whent to her manars and dyd much harme and broke doune her parkys and slow her wyld bestys and chased hem and bropen<sup>b</sup> her fysch pondys hedys and lett þe watyr renne oute and toke the fysche and ber hyt wyt heme and dyd all þe harme þat þay myth In so fer forthe þat þay had dystroyd perpetually þe abbay ne had þe kyng help þer to And the kyng send hys letters to þe Erl and [and]<sup>3</sup> schargyd þat he shuld stent of hys regure and so be menys of lordys and othyr frendys on both pesse and a cord was mad by twne hem and for thys huclyng<sup>c</sup> As yt was sayd þe kyng wold nat be gouerned At þat tyme be hys lordys þat wer in parlement But mad hys duke of lancastar<sup>4</sup> hys couernour of hys reme wych stod styll So gouernor tyll þat he dyed The same 3er A none aftyr Candelmesse hor þe parlement was done þe kyng axid A subcedy of the clarge 7 of the lee fey hyt was grauntyd hym þat he shuld haue ouyry<sup>d</sup> persone of the lay fee both a mañ and A womañ þat passyd xiiij 3er of age iiijd out take beggerys þat wer knowe opynly And þat he shuld haue of euyry mañ of holy chyrche þat was promotyd xijd And of all þat wer not promotid iiijd out take þe

---

<sup>3</sup>Erased. <sup>4</sup>-n- over -y- and second -a- over -e- by scribe.



ordres of ffreres þat weren beggers // þis same 3ere  
 aftir My3calmasse Rycard prince edwardis Sone was made  
 prince of walis.⁹ to whom also þe king 3af þe ducherye  
 of Cornewale with þe erldom of Chestre // And abowte þis  
 tyme þe Cardynall of englond.⁹ þe iiij day byfore Marie  
 Magdalene day aftir mete sodenly was smete ⁊ take with  
 a palsie.⁹ ⁊ þere he loste his speche.⁹ ⁊ on Marie  
 Magdaleyne day he deyde

Off the dethe of kyng Edward 7 how Sere Iohn of  
 Mosteroworþe<sup>b</sup> kny3th was hanged 7 drawe for his fals  
 tresoun 7 quarterd

Ry3t A none aftir in þe .liij. 3ere of þe Regnynge of  
 kynge edward in þe be gynnyng of (fol. 99<sup>a</sup>b) of Octobre  
 Pope Gregorie þe xj. brou3te ⁊ remeved with his Courte  
 from avyon to Rome // ⁊ þe xij day of Aprill ser Iohn  
 Mousterworthe kny3t at london was drave ⁊ hanged.⁹ ⁊ þan  
 beheded ⁊ aftir his body quarterd And sente to iiij  
 cheef townes of englond.⁹ ⁊ his hede was sette vpon  
 london Bregge // ffor þis same Iohn was ful vntrewe to  
 þe kynge ⁊ to þe Reame.⁹ ⁊ ful couetous ⁊ vnstable.⁹ for  
 he toke ofte tymes grete Sommes of money of þe kynge ⁊  
 of his councel.⁹ ffor men of armes wages.⁹ þat he shulde  
 haue payede vnto hem / And toke hit vn to his owne vsee.⁹  
 ⁊ he dredinge þat atte laste.⁹ ⁊ þat he shulde be shente  
 ⁊ accused for þe same cause.⁹ A none he fledde preuely  
 vnto þe kynge of ffraunce ⁊ þere was swore to him ⁊ be  
 come his man.⁹ ⁊ be hy3te to brynge him a grete Navee of  
 Spayne in confusoun ⁊ destroyng of þe Reame of englond  
 // but ry3th ful god to whom no preuete is vnknowe.⁹  
 suffred hym ferste to be shent ⁊ spilte<sup>c</sup>.⁹ or þat he  
 shulde so falsly ⁊ tretoursly be gyle hes<sup>2</sup> lege lorde

---

<sup>2</sup>-s inserted above by scribe; caret in text.

fryres and beggerys Thys sam 3er aftyr Mykylmes Rychard prynce Edward Soñ was mad prynce of walys to home the kyng gaf Also to þe Duchery of Cornewall wyt þe Erldom of chestyr (fol. 150<sup>a</sup>) And about þe tyme was þe Cardenall of Englond sodenly take wyt a paluesay and lost hys spekche and one Mary mawdellen day deyð

Of þe deeth of kyng Edward And howe syr Iohn Mounsterworth was drawen ⁊ hangit ⁊ quarterid

R ytte Anone aftyr in the lij 3er of the regnyng of kyng harry<sup>1</sup> Edward in the be gynnyng of Octobur pop Gregory þe xj remeuyd his corte wyt hem ffrom Avyoun to rome And the xiiij day of Aprell Iohn Mounsterworth knyzt was drawyne and hangyd ⁊ be hedyd and body quartryd ⁊ send to iiij Cleff<sup>a</sup> townes of Englond and hys hed sett at london bryge for thys same Iohn was full vn trewe to þe kyng and to þe Reme and full couetouse for he toke outh<sup>b</sup> tymes gret Somes of money of the kyng and hys counsell for meñ of Armes wages that he shuld Apayd hem and toke yt in to hys owne vsse And for dred þat he shuld be Accusyd he fled preuely to þe kyng of fraunce and Swor to hym and by come hys mañ and be hi3t hem l<sup>c</sup> to breng A gret navy of spayñ in confucyoun of Englond Butt Almy3thy god Suffyrd hem fyrst to be spelt

---

Fol. 150 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out.



þe kinge of englond 7 his peple 7 eke his Reame. in þe  
 whiche grounde þe Same Iohn was bore ine. And 3it he  
 with his wickednes 7 false tresoun purposed him þorow  
 batayle to destroye 7 brynge his cursed entent aboute.  
 but god of his gracious godhede wolde not suffre hym //  
 7 in þe feste of Seynt Gregorye þan nexte sewynge kynge  
 edwarde 3af to Richard of Bordeaux his heyre þat was  
 prince edwardis Sone. at wyndesore resseyved þe ordre  
 of kny3t hode<sup>d</sup>. 7 made him kny3t // þe whiche kynge  
 edward whan he had regned .liij. 3ere 7 more þe xj.  
 kalend of Iulye he deyede at Shene. 7 was I beryed  
 worshepfully at westmynstre. on whos soule alle my3ty g<sup>e</sup>  
 god haue mercy. Amen.<sup>3f</sup>

And aftir king edward þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. þat was born at wyndesore  
 Regned Rychard of Bordeaux þat was Prince edwardis Sone  
 of walis whiche prince edward was Sone of þis king  
 edward

And aftir þe good kyng edward þe .iiij. borne at wyndesore  
 Regned Richard þe seconde þat was þe gode Prince edward  
 Sone whyche kinge Richard was born in þe Cetee of Bordeaux  
 in Gascoyne 7 was crownd (fol. 99<sup>b</sup>a) at Westmynstre in  
 þe .xj. 3ere of hys age. 7 in þe secounde 3ere of hys  
 Regne for<sup>g</sup> a debate þat was bytwene þe lord latimere 7  
 Sere Raffe fferres kny3th þat weren a 3ens hawle 7  
 Shakell Squyers for a presonere þat was taken in þe  
 Batayle of Spayne by þese two Squyers. 7 whiche lord  
 latymere 7 Sere Rafe fferrers wolde haue had. þe whiche  
 presonere was þe erle of dene þat þey toke in þe Batayle  
 of Spayne wherfore þese two lordis comen in to þe chirche  
 of westmynster. 7 fonde þis one Squyer herynge his Masse  
 by syde Seint edwardis Scryne / 7 þere þey slowe hym þat

---

<sup>3</sup>Pen-flourish after (.).

in the of Sent gregore nex suyng kyng Edward 3aff to  
rychard of Burdeus his herre þat was prynsse Edwardys  
soñ At wensor þe hordyr of kny3t hode the wych kyng  
Edward when he had Reignyð xxj 3er A more þe xj kalend  
of Iune he dyd At chene And ys buryed worschipfully at  
westmestyr<sup>2</sup>

(fol. 150<sup>b</sup>)<sup>3</sup> // Aftir kyng Edward the third þat was born  
at wyndesore was dede / regned Richarde the seconde þat  
was Edwardis sone prince of walis

And aftyr þe good kyng Edward þe iiij<sup>e</sup> that was borne att  
wendesore Reygnyð Rychard þe eo<sup>1</sup> Second þat was þe good  
Edwardus sone Pryns of walys wych kyng Rychard was borne  
in the Cytte of burdeaux in Gascoigne and was crouned Att  
westmester in the xj 3er of hys age And in the second 3er  
of hys reigne for the debatte þat was by twene lord  
latymere And syr Raff fferreres<sup>4</sup> knyght þat wer a3ens  
hawelle And Schakyll Squiers for the pr<sup>u</sup>soner that was  
takyne in the bataylle of spayne by thesse ij Squiers  
And the wych lord latymer and syr Raff ferrers wold haue  
had The wych pr<sup>u</sup>soner was the Erles of Dene þat þay toke  
in the batayll of Spayne wher ffor þat þes ij lordys  
comyn in to the chyrche of westmester and fond þis one  
Squiers heryng hys messe by syd synt Edwardys Scryne And  
ther thay slow hyme þat

---

<sup>2</sup>Three lines left blank to foot of page. <sup>3</sup>Large character  
like reversed P in red in left margin before chapter-  
heading. <sup>4</sup>Second -r- over -e- by scribe.



men called hawley & Shakel was a rested & put in to þe towre of london & þer he was longe tyme for he wolde not delyuere þe erle of Dene his presonere vnto þese two lordis by Sere Aleyne Buxhull constable of þe toure & by Sere Raffe fferrers on of his aduersaries tyll þe kinge graunted him grace & in þe bridde 3ere of kyng Richard. come þe Galeys of ffraunce in to englond vn to diuerse Portes & brent & robed & slowe mekyl dyuerse peple of englond þat is to saye. at winchelseye Rye & hastynge & Portysmowthe hampton stonere<sup>h</sup> & Gravesende & deden mekyl harme & wente home a 3en & in þis same 3ere<sup>4</sup> was a parlement hold at westmynster / And at þat parlement was ordeyned þat euery man womman & childe þat weren at þe age of xiiij. 3ere & a bouen þorowe oute þe Reame / pore folke & opere sholde paye to þe talage iiijd wherfore þere come afterward grete myschef & mekell desese to alle þe comnalte of þe Reame & in þe iiij. 3ere of þe Regne of king Richard þe Comens a resen vp in dyuerse parties of þe Reame & deden mekel harme þe whiche þey callyd þe hurlyng tyme<sup>i</sup> & þey of kent & of essex maden hem .ij. cheuetaynes to rewle & gouerne þe company of kent & of essex þat one men called Iacke Strawe & þat opere wat Tyler & þey comen & assembled hem vpon þe Blake heth in kent on þe Corpus cristi<sup>5</sup> day / And aftir þey come downe in to South worwerke<sup>j</sup> & broken vp þe preson howses þat is to wete þe kynges Benche & þe marchalsye<sup>k</sup> & delyuered oute Alle presoneres & so þe same day þey comen in to london & þere þey robbenden þe (fol. 99<sup>b</sup>) pepul and slowen alle þe allyons þat þey my3te fynde in þe cetee & aboute þe cetee & dyspoyled alle here godis & maden havock & on þe ffryday aftir / þat was on þe Morne. þey comen vnto london þe Toure. &

<sup>4</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>5</sup>Nomen sacrum siglum 'xpī' used.



meñ callyd hawell and Shakyll was a rest and put in the  
 tour of london and ther he was long tyme for he wold nott  
 delyuer the Erl of Dene hys presoner vn to þesse ij lordys  
 by Syre Aleyn Buxhull constable of the tour And by Syr  
 Raff ferreres one of hys aduersarys tyll þe kyng grauntede  
 hym grace /In the þyrd 3er of kyng Rychard come to  
 Caleys<sup>d</sup> of fraunce in to Englund vn to dyuers portes And  
 brent and Robbed and slow much peple of Englund þat ys to  
 say att wynchelese<sup>5</sup> Rye and hastyng 7 portysmoth hamptoun  
 stormor and grauysende and deden much harme and went home  
 Azene. And in þis same 3er was a parlement hold at  
 westmester 7 at þat (fol. 151<sup>a</sup>) parlement was hordynyd  
 þat heuyry mañ womañ and chyld þat weryne at þe age of  
 xiiij. 3er and a bowe þorough out all the reme porre  
 folke And othyr shuld pay to þe talag iiijd wherfor come  
 afturward gret myschef and much dessesse to all þe  
 cominalte of the reme // And in the iiij 3er of þe reigne  
 of kyng Rychard þe commens Arysyne vp in dyuerse placys  
 of the reme and dedyne much harme þe wyche thay callyd  
 þe hurlyngtyme and they of kent And of Esseñ madyn hem to  
 Cheuetayns to rewyll and gouerne þe company of kent and  
 of Esseñ þat meñ callyd Iake Strawe 7 þat opyr wat Tyler  
 And thay comen and Assemlyd hem vp on the blake heth in  
 kente And on þe corpus cristi<sup>1</sup> day and after þey comen  
 dowene in to Sowthwarke and brekyn vp the presone house  
 þat ys to wytt þe kyngkys benche and Marchalsey and  
 delyuerde out all the presoners and so þe same day þay  
 comen [in]<sup>2</sup> to london and ther thay Robden þe pepyll and  
 slow all alyons þat þay mygh fynd in the Cytte And a bout  
 þe Cytte and dyspoiled all her goodys and mad havokey And  
 on the ffryday nex after þat was on the morowe and þane  
 þay comen vn to þe tour of london and

---

<sup>5</sup>-ese squashed in before Rye by scribe. Fol. 151 <sup>1</sup>Nomen  
 sacrum siglum 'xpi' used. <sup>2</sup>Erased.



þe kyng beyng þo<sup>6</sup> þere ynne þey fette oute of þe toure  
 þe erchebyssshop of cauntylbery<sup>1</sup> Sery<sup>m</sup> Symond Sudbery &  
 Sere Robert halys hospitaler Prioure & Mayster of Seint  
 Iohnes hous & a whyte ffrere þat was confessour vnto  
 kyng Richard & brouȝte hem vnto þe toure hylle & þere  
 smetten of here hedes & comen a ȝen to london & slowe mo  
 pepul of men of lawe. & opere worthy men in dyuerse  
 parties of þe cetee & þanne þey wente vnto þe dukes place  
 of lancastre by ȝende Seinte Marie stronde þat was called  
 þe Sauoye<sup>n</sup> & þere þey deuoured & destroyed all þe godis  
 þat þey myȝte fynde þere Inne & bare hem a way & brent  
 vp þe place & þan after þey wente to Seint Iohnes<sup>o</sup> with  
 oute Smeth feld & destroyed þe godis þere & brent vp þat  
 hous & wenten to westmynster & so to Seint Martynes þe  
 graunt & made hem to gon oute of Seint warie<sup>p</sup> alle þat  
 weren with Inne for any maner[y]<sup>7</sup> of gryth<sup>q</sup> & þanne þey  
 come vnto þe Temple<sup>r</sup> & to all þe opere Innes of men of  
 lawe & dispoyled hem & robbed hem of here godis & all to  
 tare here bokys of lawe & þanne þey come in to london &  
 brake vp þe presoun of Newgate & droffe out alle þe  
 presoneres ffelouns & opere of bope counters<sup>s</sup> & alle þe  
 pepul þat were with Inne hem & distroyed alle þe bokes  
 of bope countourres & þus þey contened<sup>8</sup> forþe bope  
 Saterdag & Sonday vnto þe Monday nexte folowyng in all  
 here malise & wickednes & þan on þe Monday kyng Rycharð  
 with his lordis þat weren with hym þat tyme & with þe  
 Mayre of london william walworth þat was þat tyme com<sup>4</sup>  
 with þe Aldermen & þe comuners of þe cetee come into  
 Smethfeld to here & knowe þe entencioun of þese rowde<sup>t</sup>  
 & mys gouerned pepul & þis lacke strawe þo made an ope  
 in þe felde þat alle þe pepull of his a corde shold come

<sup>6</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.  
 abbreviation-mark added by scribe.  
 vellum betw. w and e.

<sup>7</sup>-y erased and er  
<sup>8</sup>Small hole in



þe kyng beyng þer Inne þay fet out of þe tour the  
 Arssbysschp̄ of Cantyrbury Syr Edmond Sudbery and syr  
 Robert halys hospytaler Pryour and master of Sent Iohn̄s  
 hous 7 a wythe frere þat was confessour vn to kyng Rychard  
 and broughen hym vn to þe tour and þer þay Smetyn̄ of thayr  
 hedys and comeñ a3en vn to london̄ and slow mo pepyll of  
 meñ of lawe and opyr worthy meñ in dyuers partyis of þe  
 Cytte An þan thaye went vnto þe duches<sup>a</sup> (fol. 151<sup>b</sup>) plassee  
 of lancastyr by 3end sent mary Strond þat was calyd þe  
 saway and ther dey deworyd and dystroyd all þe goodys þat  
 þay myzt fend þer in and bar hem Away and brent vp the  
 plassee And aftyr þay went to Sent Ihonys wyt out Smetweld  
 and dystroyd þe goodyis þer and brent vp all þe howsys  
 and went to westmestyr and so to Sent Martyns þe graunte  
 And mad hem to goo out of þe Sentuery all þat weryn wyt  
 in for any maner of gryth And þane come vn to þe tempull  
 and to all Innes of meñ of lowe and dyspowlyd hem and  
 Robbyd hem of her goodys and also þer<sup>b</sup> her bokys of lawe  
 and þane þey come to london̄ and brake vp the presone of  
 newegatt 7 drouf out all the presoners felouns and othyr  
 and of both Countours And all þe pepyll þat wer wyt in  
 hem and distroyd all the bokys of bothe Countres And þus  
 thay contenuyd forthe saturday and sonday vn to þe monday  
 next followyng in all her malys and wykydnes and þan̄ on  
 the monday kyng Rychard wyt hys lordys þat wer wyt hem  
 þat tyme and wyt þe mayr of london̄ wlliam walworth þat was  
 þat tyme come wyt þe Aldermeñ and the com[.]mens<sup>3</sup> of þe  
 Cytte and com into Sothwarke to her and to knowe þe  
 entencyoun of þes rewyllys<sup>c</sup> and mys gouernyd pepyll And  
 thys Iake Strawe þan mad a noth in the feld þat all þe  
 peple of acord shuld come

---

<sup>3</sup>Letter stroked out at end of line, prob. two minims.



nere & here his clamoure & his crye & his wille & þe  
 lordis & Mayer & þe aldermen with þe connalte. havynge  
 Indignacioun of his couetyse & falsenes & his foule  
 presompcioun A none william walworthe þat tyme beynge  
 Mayre drowe his knyfe & slowe Iacke strawe<sup>u</sup> (fol. 100<sup>a</sup>)  
 and a none ryzt þere dede do smyte of his hede & sette  
 hit vp on a Spere shafte & so was bore þorowe london &  
 sette on hye vppon london Brygge a none all þese rysers  
 & mys gouerned pepull weren voyded & clene vanshed as  
 hit had nozt bene þey And þan þe kynge of hys grete  
 godenes and by prayer of his lordis made þere .vj.  
 kny3thes of gode & worthy men of þe cete of london þat  
 is to saye william walworth<sup>1</sup> þat þat tyme was Mayre &  
 slowe Iak Strawe & þe secunde was Nychol Brembre & þe  
 iiij<sup>e</sup>. Iohn Phelpot & þe iiij. Nicholas Twyford & þe .v.  
 Robert laundes & þe vj. Robert Gaytoun & þan þe kynge  
 with hys lordis & his kny3ttes retorned a 3en vnto þe  
 Toure of london & þere he rested him tyll þis pepull  
 were better sesed & setten in reste & alle þes & þan by  
 prossesse of tyme as þey my3te gete & take þese Rebellis  
 & rysers þey honged hem vp on þe nexte galowes in euery  
 lordshepe þorowe oute þe Reame of englond by xl & xxx.  
 be .x. & be xij euere as þey my3te be gete & take in any  
 parties / & in þe .v. 3ere of kynge Richard Regne was þe  
 gret erthe quave<sup>a</sup> & was don generally ouere alle þe worlde  
 þe wendesday afforne wyssonday. In þe 3ere aftir þe in  
 In carnacioun of oure lord Ihesus Crist a M<sup>1</sup>. CCC iiij<sup>xx</sup>  
 & xj. were of alle þe pepul weren sore agaste & adrad  
 longe tyme aftir for þe vengeaunce & grete drede þat oure  
 lord god shewyd & dede And in þe vj. 3ere of þe Regne of  
 kynge Richard Sere henry Spenser Bisshop of Norwyche /  
 wente with a croyserie<sup>b</sup> ouere þe se<sup>2</sup> þe<sup>c</sup> in to þe contre  
 of fflaundes & þere þey gat þe towne of Gravenynge & þe

Fol. 100 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in  
 text. <sup>2</sup>By scribe later over second þe.



ner and her hys clammours<sup>4</sup> and hys cry and hys wyll 7 the lordys and þe mayr and þe aldermen wyþ þe comente hawying in dyngnacioun of of hys Couetusse and falsnes and hys full presomysoun and a none wylliam walle worth that tyme beyng mayr drowe out hys (fol. 152<sup>a</sup>) knyef and slow Iak Straw and a non ryth þer ded smyth of hys hed and settyd vp on A Sper schaft And so hyt was borne þorow london and sett hes hed op on london bryge anone all thes reysers and mys gouernyd men weryne woyd and clene wesched<sup>a</sup> as yt had nouth bene þay and the kyng of hys gret goodnes mad þer vj kny3thys of good and worthy men of the Cytte of london þat ys to say wylliam waldworthe þat tyme was mayr and slow Iake Strawe and þe Second was Nycoll Brembre and the iiij Iohn Philipot and þe iiij Nicolas Twyword and v. Robert laundes þe vj Robert Gaytoun And thane the kyng wyt hys lordys and hys kny3tys retorne a3ene vn to the Tour of london and þer he restyd hem tell þe peple wer bettyr Sessyd and sett in rest and pesse 7 þan by processe of tyme as þey mythe gett and take þese rebbellys and ryseres þay hong hem vppon þe next gallows in euyry lordschip þour out þe reme of Englund by i<sup>l</sup> xl and by xxx<sup>ti</sup> by x and þe xij euyr /As thay my3th be gatt 7 take in anny partyes and in the v 3er of kyng Rycharde reigne was a grett Erte-q<sup>l</sup> Erthe quake and that done generally ouyr þere þe worryld þe wenysday aftyr wytsonday in the 3er aftyr þe incornacioun of our lord Ihesus Cryste A M<sup>l</sup> CCC<sup>mo</sup> iiij<sup>xx</sup> and xj wher of all the peple wer sor A gast and dred long tyme aftur for the wengauns and grett dred þat our lord god shewyd and ded And in the vj 3er of þe reigne of kyng Rycharde Syr henry Sppenser þe byschop of north wyche<sup>b</sup> went wyt a crower<sup>c</sup> ouyr the See in to þe contre of flaundres and þer þay gatt (fol. 152<sup>b</sup>) the towne of grauenyng and the

<sup>4</sup>MS. has 5 minims for -mm-. Fol. 152 <sup>l</sup>Stroked out.



towne of Broburowe donkerk 7 newporte 7 þere þey laded 7  
ffreyzte .1j. Shippis with pelage forto haue come in to  
englond with þese shippis 7 godis 7 þe Bisshop of Norwyche  
7 his councel let brenne þese shippis with all þe pelage  
in þe same hauene all in to harde Asshes 7 at donkyrke  
was done a grete Batayle by twene þe fflemmynges 7 þe  
englisshe men / And at þat Batayle was slayne a grete  
multitude of þese flemmynges<sup>3</sup> 7 a passing noumbre 7 þan<sup>3</sup>  
wente þe Bysshop with his retenewe vnto ypre 7 þe seged  
hyt alonge tyme but hit myzte nouzt bene goten 7 so he  
lefte þat sege 7 come a 3en in to englond (fol. 100<sup>a</sup>b)  
ffor oure englysshe pepull weren foule destroyd 7 many  
deyde on þe fflyx / 7 in þis same 3ere come quene Anne  
in to englond for to be wedded vnto [kyng]<sup>4</sup> kynge  
Richard 7 here ffadir was emperour of Almayne 7 kynge of  
Beeme 7 with here come þe Duke of Tassy here vncle 7 many  
opere worthy lordis 7 knyghtes of here contraye of Beeme  
7 of opere duche<sup>d</sup> tonges to done here reuerence 7  
worshepe 7 Sere Symond of Beuerley a worthy knyght of<sup>5</sup>  
þe Garter 7 opere knyghtes 7 Squyers. þat weren þe kinges  
ambassatoures brozte here in to englond 7 so forth to  
london 7 þe pepull of þe cetete<sup>e</sup> þat is to saye þe Mayre  
7 þe Aldermen 7 alle þe commeners reden a 3ens here to  
well come here 7 euery man in a gode araye / 7 euery  
crafte with hys Minstralsye in þe beste manere mette  
with here on þe Blake heth<sup>f</sup> in kent 7 so brouzten here  
vnto london þorowe þe cetee 7 so forth vnto westmynstre  
vnto þe kinges Paleyes 7 þere she was wedded vnto kyng  
Richard well 7 worthyly in þe Abbay of westmynster 7  
þere she was crowned 7 made quene of englond 7 alle here  
ffrendes þat comen with here had grete 3eftes 7 weren

<sup>3</sup>By scribe in bottom margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>4</sup>Expuncted by underline of 5 dots. <sup>5</sup>By a corr. in right margin of col.; no insertion-mark.



tone of broburgh Dunkyrke and new port 7 per pay lad and  
 fraythe 1j Schippys wyþ pesage<sup>d</sup> for to haue come in to  
 Englund wyt þes Schippys 7 goodys and þe byschop of  
 northwyche and hys counsell lett brene þesse Schippys wyt  
 all þe pellige in the same hawyne all in to þe hard asshes  
 And att Dounkerke was done agrett batayll by twen flemyngys  
 and Englysmen at þat batayll was slayne a grett Moltitud  
 of thes flemyngys and a passyng nombyr and went þe byschop  
 wyt hys reuenewe vn to Ipyr and besegyð a long tyme but  
 yt my3th nott be goten and so he left þat Segre<sup>e</sup> and come  
 a 3ene vn to Ingland for our Englymen wer fowly dystroyd  
 and many dyden of þe flexe And in the same 3er come quene  
 Anne in to Ingland for to be spouse vnto þe kyng Rychard  
 and her fadyr was Emperour of almayne and þe kyng of beme  
 and wyt her come þe Duke of Tassay and her huckyll and  
 meny oþyr worthy lordys and kny3thes of her contre of Beme  
 and of oþyr Duch tongys and to her reuerens and worschip  
 and syr beuerle a worthy kny3th of the Gartar and oþyr  
 kny3tys and Squyers þat werren þe kyngys ambassatours  
 brouth in to Englund and so forth vn to london and the  
 pepyll of the Cytte þat ys to say Mayr and the Aldermen  
 and all þe comente rydyne a3enst her and welcomd her and  
 euyry a man in good aray and euyry Craft wyt hys  
 menstreltys in the best maner mett wyt her on the blak  
 heth in kent and so brouth her into london þorugh the  
 Cytte and so forth in to westmestyr vnto þe kyngys pales  
 And þer che was Spowsyd vn to kyng rychard well and  
 worthely in the abbay of westmes[.]<sup>2</sup> 7 þer Sche was  
 crounyd Queñ (fol. 153<sup>a</sup>) of Englund and all her frendys  
 þat came wyt her had gret 3iftys and weryne

---

<sup>2</sup>Followed by small hole in vellum.



well cheryd & refresshed as longe tyme as þey abeden  
 here / And in þis same 3ere ware<sup>6</sup> was a Batayle doñ with  
 Ine þe kinges Paleys At westmynster for serteyne poyntes  
 of treson by twene Sere Iohn of amesley knyzt defendante  
 & Catertoun Squyer þe Appellaunt but þis Sire Iohn of  
 Amesley ouere come þis Catertoun & made him to 3elde him  
with Inne þe lystes & a none was þis Carterton dispoyled  
 of his harneys & drawe oute of þe listes & so forth to  
 Tyborne & þere he was hanged ffor his falsnesse & in  
 viij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of þe Regne of kynge Richard Sere edmund of  
 langeley erle of Cambrygge þe kynges vncle wente in to  
 Portingale<sup>g</sup> with a fayre meyne of men of armes & of  
 archers in stringthinge & helpinge þe kynge of Portingale  
 a 3en þe kynge of Spayne & his power & þere þe kynge of  
 Portingale had þe victorie of his enemyes þorowe þe helpe  
 & þe comferte of oure englisshe men & whan þat Iorney  
 was done þe erle of Cambrynge<sup>h</sup> come a 3en with his peple  
 in to englond in safte blessyd be god of his gracious  
 3iftis amen --<sup>7</sup> (fol. 100<sup>b</sup>a) And þis same 3ere kynge  
 Richard helde his Cristemasse in þe Manere of Eltam &  
 þe same tyme þe kynge of Ermonye<sup>i</sup> ffledde oute of his  
 owne londe & come in to englond for to haue socour &  
 helpe of oure kyng a 3ens his enemyes þat had dreven him  
 of his Reame & so he was brouzte vnto þe kynge to Eltam  
 þere as þe kynge helde his Ryall ffeste of Crystysmasse  
 & þere oure kyng welcomed hym & dede hym Reuerence &  
 worshope & comaunded all his lordis to make hym all þe  
 chere þat þey cowde & þan be processe demaunded hym of  
 his comyng in to englond & þanne he be souzte þe kinge  
 of grace & helpe & of comferte in his nede & þat he myzte  
 be brouzte azen in to his kingedom & lond[...]<sup>8</sup> ffor þe  
 Turkes had destroyed & deuoured mekell parte of his londe

<sup>6</sup>Stroked out. <sup>7</sup>Two pen-flourishes. <sup>8</sup>Two letters  
 erased.

well cheryd and Refresched as long tyme as þay abbydeñ  
 her And in the same 3er was a batell done wyt in the kyngys  
 ba<sup>1</sup> Pales att westmestyr for serten pontys of tresoun by  
 twen Syr Iohn of Ansley kny3th defendaute and Cartoun  
 Squyer þe appallaunt but þis syr Iohn of Ansby ouyr<sup>2</sup> come  
 þe Cartoun and mad hem to 3eld heme wyt in the leystys And  
 anone was þis Cartoun dispoulyd of hys harmes and draw out  
 of the lystys and so forth to tyborn And þer he was hangit  
 for hys falsnes And in the vij 3er of hys reigne of kyng  
 rycharð And whane þat Iorney was done þe Erle of Cambryge  
 he come home A 3en in to Englonð wyt hys pepyll in hast  
 blessyd be god and hys gracyous 3ift Ameñ And in þis same  
 3er kyng Rychard held hys Crystmes in the maner of Eltañ  
 and þe same tyme þe kyng of Ermonye ffled out of hys owne  
 lond and come in to Englonð for to haue Socur and help of  
 our kyng a3ens hys enmys þat had draweñ hym of hys rem  
 and so he was brouth vn to þe kyng of<sup>1</sup> to Eltham þer as  
 þe kyng held hys ryall fest of Crystmes and þer ouyr<sup>3</sup> kyng  
 welcomd hem and dyd hym reuerence and worchyp 7 comandyd  
 all hys lordys to make hem all þe cher þat coud and þan  
 he be south of grace and helpe 7 of hys counforte in hys  
 ned and þat he my3th be brouth a3ene to hys hond kyngdome  
 and lond for the turkes had deuoryd and dystroyd much  
 parte of hys lond

---

Fol. 153 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>Hole in vellum; writing round  
 it. <sup>3</sup>Normal abbreviated form of ouyr 'over'.



7 for drede how he fledde 7 come hedir for socour 7 helpe  
 7 panne þe kyng hauyng compassioun of his grete myscheffe  
 7 greuous desese anone he toke his conceile 7 askyd what  
 was beste to done. 7 þey answerd 7 seid 3if hit lyked hym  
 to geue him any good . hit were well y do. And as tochinge  
 hys pepull to trauayle so ferre in to oute londis hit  
 were a grete Ieperde. 7 so þe kinge 3af hym gold 7 siluere  
 7 many ryche 3eftes 7 Iewelles 7 be tauzte hym to god 7  
 so he passed a 3en oute of englond 7 in þis same 3ere  
 kyng Richard with a ryall power wente in Scotlond ffor  
 to werre vppon þe Scottys for hir falsnes 7 destruxioun  
 þat þe Scottis had done vnto englisshe men in þe Marches  
 7 panne þe Scottes come downe vnto þe kynge for to entrete  
 with hym 7 with his lordis for trewes as for serteyne  
 3eres . 7 so our kynge 7 his counceyle graunted hem  
 trewes for serteyne 3eres . vnto here askyng 7 oure  
 kynge torned hym home a 3en in to englond 7 whan he was  
 come to 3orke þere he abode 7 rested hym. 7 þere<sup>1</sup> Sere  
 Iohn holond þe erle of kentes broþer slowe þe Erles sone  
 of Staffor / 7 his heyre with a dagger in þe cetee of  
 3orke wherfor þe kynge was sore ameved 7 greuyd. 7 remeved  
 ffrom þens 7 come to london 7 þe Mayre 7 þe aldermen 7  
 þe comens with all þe solempnite þat myzte be doñ. reden  
 a3ens þe kyng 7 brouzte hym Ryally þorowe þe cetee 7 so  
 forth to Westmynster vnto his owne paleys 7 in þe (fol.  
 100<sup>b</sup>) ix<sup>e</sup> 3ere of kynge Rychardes Regne he helde a  
parlement at westmynster 7 þere he made two dukes 7 A  
 Marquys 7 v. erles þe firste þat was made .duke. was was  
 þe kynge vncle Sere Edmond of langeley erle of Cambrygge  
 7 him he made duke of 3orke 7 his opere vncle Sere Thomas  
 of wodestoke was<sup>j</sup> erle of Bokingham. hym he made duke of  
 Gloucestre 7 Sere Robert le veer þat was erle of  
 oxinfforde . hym he made Markeys of deuelyn 7 Sere henre  
 Bolyngbroke þe dukes Sone of lancastre hym he made erle  
 of derby 7 Sere Edward þe dukes Sone of 3orke. hym he



and for dred how he fled and com hedyr for Socour 7 helpe  
 and þan the kyng hauyng compassyoun of hys grett messscheff  
 and grewos dyssese anon he toke (fol. 153<sup>b</sup>) hys counsell  
 and askyd watt was þe best to done And þay Aunswerd and  
 sayd 3if yt like hym to geff hyme ony good It wer well I  
 doo and as tochyng hys pepyll to trawell so fer in to  
 outlondus hyt wer agret Iebardy and so 1<sup>a</sup> the kyng 3aff  
 hym gold and syluyr and many rich 3eftys and Iewellys and  
 be toke hem to god and went forthe a3ene out of Englund  
 and in the same 3er kyng Rychard wyt aryall pour went in  
 to Scotlond for to wer vppoñ þe Scottys for her falsnes  
 and dystroccioun þat þe Scottys had doñ vn to þe Englysmen  
 in the marchys And thane þe Scottes come down vn to þe  
 kyng for to entre<sup>b</sup> wyt hem and wyt hes lordys for trewes  
 as for Sertene 3er and our kyng and our counsell grauntyd  
 hym trewys serten 3erys vn to her haskyne and our kyng  
 tornyd home a3en vn to Ingland And when he was come to  
 yorke þer he abbod and restyd heme þer Syr Iohn hollond  
 þe Erle of kentes brother slow þe Erles sone of Stafford  
 and hys heyr wyt a dager in the Cyte of 3orke wher for  
 the kyng was sor amevyd and greuyd And remeuyd from thens  
 And come to london and þe Mayr and þe Aldermen and the  
 comenis wyt all Solempnyte þat my3th be done ryden a3ens  
 þe kyng And brouth hym ryally þour the Cyte and so forthe  
 to westmestyr vnto hys one Palys and in the ix 3er of  
 kyng Rychard regne he held aparlemente at westmestyr and  
 þer he mad ij duckys and a Marquyes and v. Erles þe fyrst  
 þat was mad Duke of<sup>1</sup> þe (fol. 154<sup>a</sup>) kyngys vncle Syr  
 Edmond of langale Erle of Cambryg and hym mad duke of  
 yorke and hys other vncle syr Thomas of woodstok þat was  
 Erle of bockyngham hym mad duke of Glowcestyr and syr  
 lever þat was Erle of Oxynforthe hem mad Markeys of  
 Develyn and henry of bolynbroke þe duches sone of  
 lancastyr hym he mad Erle of Derby and syr Edward þe  
 duches sone of yorke hem he



made erle of Rutlonde 7 Sere Iohn holond þat was þe erle of kentes broþer hym he made erle of hontyngdon 7 Sere Thomas Mowmbray erle of Notyngham 7 þe erle Marchall of englond. 7 Sere Mychell of pole knyzt him he made erle of Suthfolke 7 chaunceler of englond 7 þe erle of Marche at þe same parlement holden at westmynster in pleyn parlement a monge all þe lordis 7 comōnes. 7 was proclaymd erle of the Marche 7 heire apparent of þe Crone of englond aftir kyng Richard þe whiche erle of Marche wente ouere þe See in to Irlond vnto his<sup>l</sup> lordship 7 londis for þe erle of Marche ys erle of hulstre in Irlond be ryzt lyne 7 herytage 7 þere At a castell of his. 7 he lay that tyme 7 þere come vp on hym a grete multitude in bussumentys of wyld Irysshe men hym for to take 7 haue destroyed 7 he come oute fersly of his castell with his pepull 7 manly faušte with hem 7 þere he was take 7 hewe all to peces 7 þere he deyede on whos soule god haue mercy amen. 7 And in þe x. 3ere of kyng Richardes Regnyng þe erle of a rundell wente vnto þe See with a grete Naue of shippis well en armed<sup>k</sup> with men of armes 7 gode archers 7 whanne þey comen in to þe brode See þey metten with þe hole fflete þat comen with wyne lade from þe Rochell þe wyne weren enemyes godes. 7 þere oure Nave sette vppon hem 7 toke hem alle 7 brouzte hem vnto dyuerse portes 7 hauenes in to englond 7 somme come to london 7 þere 3e myzte haue had a tonne of Rochell wyne of þe beste for xx. s. sterlingis 7 so we had grete chepe of wyne þorowe oute þe Reame at that tyme þanked be all myzty Ihesu.

And how the ffyve lordis A Resen at Ratkote Brygge azens king Richard

(fol. 101<sup>a</sup>) And in þe Regne of kyng Rychard þe xj. 3ere þe .v. lordis a resen at Ratcotte Brygge in þe destruxioun



mad Erle of Rottlond Syr Iohn holond þat was þe Erle of kentys brother hym he mad Erle of hontyngtoun Syr Tomas Moubray Erle of Notyngham and Erle marchall of Englund and syr Mychell of polle knygh hym he mad Erle of Southfolke and chanceler of Englund and þe Erle of Marche at the same parlement holden att westmestyr in playne parlement amongys all the lordys and commens<sup>1</sup> was proclamed Erle of the marche and heyr [<sup>a</sup>]<sup>2</sup> off Apparaunt to þe Crowne of Englund aftyr kyng Rychard þe wyche Erl of marche went ouyr the See in to Irlond vnto hys lordschippys and londus for þe Erle of Marche ys Erle of hulstre in Irlond and by ryght lyne and herytage and ther at þe castell of hys he lay þat tyme And þer com vppoñ hem A grett multytud in a busshment of wyld Irys meñ for to take and dystroy and he come out fresly of hys Castell wyt hys pepyll and manly fauthe wyt hem and ther he was tak hew<sup>3</sup> all the pesse and þer he deid on hosse sole good haue mercy Amen And in the x 3er of kyng rychard Reygnyd<sup>4a</sup> þe Erle of Arondell wen vn to þe See wyt a grett navy of Schippys en Armyd wyt meñ of harmes and good Archers And when thay come in to þe brod see þay metyne wyt the holl flett þat comen wyne lad from Rochell þe wynys wer enmys goodys and þer ouyr<sup>5</sup> nauy sett vppoñ hem and toke hem all and brouth hem in to dyuers portys (fol. 154<sup>b</sup>) and hawyns in to Ingland and som to london and þer 3e my3th haue tonne of Rochell wyne of the best for xx<sup>s</sup> of starlyng and so we had grett chep of wyne þour out þe reme att þat tyme þankyd be god almyghty

Howe the fyve lordis a resen at Rattecotebrigg Capitulo  
CC xlj

[A]nd<sup>6</sup> in the regne of kyng Rychard þe xj 3er þe v<sup>e</sup> lordus a Resen att Rattekoce<sup>b</sup> brygg in the dystruccions

Fol. 154 1MS. has 5 minims for -mm-. <sup>2</sup>Scratched when wet and blotted; two dots indicate expunction. <sup>3</sup>-e- blotted. <sup>4</sup>Superscript -d to indicate abbreviation. <sup>5</sup>Normal abbreviation for ouyr 'over'. <sup>6</sup>Blue initial erased.



of all Rebelles þat weren þat tyme in all þe Reame þe  
 fferste of þo .v. lordis was Sere Thomas of<sup>1</sup> of wodstoke  
 þe kynges vncle 7 duke of Glowcestre 7 þe secunde was  
 Sere Rychard erle of arundell 7 þe bridde was Sere  
 Richard erle of warwyk . þe iiij<sup>e</sup>. was Sere herry of  
 Bolyngbrok erle of derby 7 þe .v. was Sere Thomas  
 Mowbray erle of Notyngham 7 þese .v. lordis say þe  
 mysgouernaunce 7 þe falsnes of þe kynges counceyle 7  
 þey purposyd hem to a mende hit by here better counsel  
 7 gouernance wherfore þey þat weren þat tyme cheff of  
 þe kynges counceyle fledden oute of þis londe ouere þe  
 see þat is to saye Sere Alysaundre Nevyle þe erchebisshop  
 of 3orke 7 Sere Robert ver Markeys of develyn 7 erle of  
 Oxinford / And Sere Michell de la pole erle of Southfolke  
 7 Chaunceler of englond 7 þese þre lordis wenten ouere  
 þe see 7 comen neuere a 3en.<sup>✓</sup> for þere þey deyden.<sup>✓</sup> And  
 þan þese fforsayde .v. lordis aboven sayde maden a  
 parlement at westmynstre 7 þere þey token Sere Robert  
 Treselyan þe Iustyce 7 Sere Nycholl Brembre knyzt 7  
 Cetezyne of london 7 Sere Iohn Salysbery kny3th of þe  
 kinges hous hold 7 Thomas vske Sergeante of armes 7  
 manye mo of opere pepull weren take 7 Iugged vnto þe  
 deth by þe conseyle of þese .v. lordis in here  
 parlement at westmynster for tresoun þat þey putte vpon  
 hem.<sup>✓</sup> to be drawen ffrom þe Toure of london þorowe þe  
 Cetee 7 so forþe to Tyborne 7 þere to be hanged 7 þere  
 here þrotys to be cutte 7 þus þey weren seruyd 7 deyden  
 7 aftir þat in þe same parlement at westmynster was Sere  
 Symonde of Beuerle þat was a knyzt of þe Garter 7 Sere  
 Iohn Beuchamp knyzt þat was steward of þe kynges houshold  
 7 Sere Iames Berners knyzt weren for Iugged vnto þe dep  
 7 þan þey veren lad on fote þorowe þe cetee of london vn  
 to þe Toure hylle 7 þere weren here hedes smeten of.<sup>✓</sup>



of Rebellys þat weryn þat tyme in all þe Reme þe fyrst of  
 þe ffyve lordus was syr Thomas of woodstok þe kyngys huncle  
 and Duke of Glawsestyr and þe second was syr Rychard of  
 Arondell and the iiij was syr Rychard Erle of warweke þe  
 fourth was Syr henry bolynbroke Erle of Derby and the v.  
 was syr Thomas Moubray Erle of nothyngam And thesse ffyve  
 lordus saw þe messscheff and mysgouernance and falsnes of  
 þe kyngys Consell wher ffor þay þat weryn̄ that tyme cheif  
 of the kyngys consell fledden out of thys lond ouyr þe see  
 þat ys to say syr Alysaunder Neuele þe Ersbyschop of yorke  
 and syr Robert lever Markys of Dewlyne and Erle of  
 Oxinforthe and syr Nycolle de la Polle Erle of Southfolke  
 and chanceler of Englund And þes iiij lordys wentyn̄ ouyr  
 the See and come neuyr A3ene for thay deid And þan þes  
 forsayd lordy<sup>7</sup> v lordys above sayd maden̄ aparlemente at  
 westmestyr and þer þay tokyn syr Roberd Cresclyan þe  
 Iustice and syr Nycoll Brembre kny3th and Cete3ane of  
 london̄ and syr Iohn̄ Salysbury knythe of the kynges  
 houshold and Vske sergaunt of Armys and meny moo And opyr  
 pepyll weryn take and Iuged vn to þe dethe be (fol. 155<sup>a</sup>)  
 the counsell of þes v. lordus in her parlemente at  
 westmestyr for tresoun þat þay put h<sup>a</sup> vp on hem to be  
 drawyne frome þe tour of london̄ þour þe Cyte and so forthe  
 to tyborne and þer to be hangys and þer her trotys to be  
 g<sup>b</sup> cutt and þus þay wer serwyd and dydene And aftyr þat  
 in thys parlement at westmestyr was syr Symond Beuerle  
 þat was kny3th of the Garther and syr Iohn Beauchampe  
 kny3th þat was stouard of þe kyngys houshold And syr Iames  
 Berners weryne for Iuged vn to the deth And þan þay weryn  
 lad on fott vn to þe tour hyll and þer weryne her hedys  
 Smytyn̄ of

---

<sup>7</sup>Stroked out.



7 many opere mo.<sup>v</sup> by þe Iuggement of þese .v. lordis . in  
 þe same forsayde parlement 7 in þe xij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng  
 Richardis Regne he lete crye 7 ordeyne a generall Iustes  
 þat (fol. 101<sup>a</sup>b) ys callyd A turment<sup>a</sup> of lordys kny3tes  
 7 Squyers and þis Iustys 7 turnement<sup>2</sup> was holden at  
 london in Smethefeld for all manere of straungers of  
 what londe or contrey what so euere þey weren offe.<sup>v</sup> 7  
 þedyr þey weren welcome / 7 to hem 7 all opere was holden  
 open housholde 7 grete ffestes 7 also grete 3eftes weren  
 3eve to all manere of straungers.<sup>v</sup> 7 on þe kynges syde  
 weren þe .xxiiij. kny3tes of þe Garter<sup>b</sup> 7 þey weren all  
 of sute<sup>c</sup> here cotys here Armoure sheldes hors trappure  
 7 all was whyte hertys with crownes abowte here neckes  
 7 chaynes of gold hanginge þere vppon 7 the crowne  
 hanginge lowe byfore þe hertys body þe whyche herte was  
 þe kynges lyuerey<sup>d</sup> þat he 3af to lordis 7 ladyes kny3tes  
 7 Squyers for to knowe his houshold from þe opere pepull  
 7 at þe ferste comynge to here Iustes .xxiiij<sup>e</sup>. ladyes .  
 ladden þese .xxiiij. lordis of Gartour with chaynes of  
 golde 7 alle in þe same sute of hertes as is a forne  
 sayde from þe toure on hors backe þorowe þe cete of  
 london in to Smethefeld þere þe Iustis sholde ben holde.<sup>v</sup>  
 7 þis feste 7 Iustys was holde generall 7 open to alle þo  
 þat comen of what londe or nacioun þat euere he were.<sup>v</sup> 7  
 þis was<sup>3</sup> holde duringe .xxiiij<sup>e</sup>. dayes of þe kynges owne  
 coste 7 þese xxiiij. lordis to answeere alle manere peple  
 þat wold come þedre 7 þedre come þe erle of Seint Poule  
 of ffrance 7 many opere worthy kny3tys with him of  
 dyuerse parties full well arayed 7 oute of holonde 7  
 henaude come þe lord Ostrevaunt þat was þe dukes Sone of  
 holond 7 many worthy knythes with hym boþe of holond 7

<sup>2</sup> ne by scribe in right margin of col. with caret; caret  
 in text. <sup>3</sup> By scribe in right margin of col. with caret;  
 caret in text.

and many oþyr Moo by þesse v. lordus in the same 3er<sup>c</sup>  
 forsaid parlemente and in<sup>1</sup> xij 3er of kyng Rycharde  
 regne he lett cry and ordayne a generall Iustys þat ys  
 callyd a tornement of lordus kny3thtys and Squyers and  
 þis Iustysse 7 turment<sup>d</sup> was holdeñ at london in Smetfeld  
 for all maner of Strangers of wat lond or countre what so  
 euyr they wer of and thedyr þay wereñ ryth welcome to hem  
 and to all oþyr was holden a gret fest and gret 3efftys  
 wer 3euyn to all maner meñ and at þe fyrst comyng to her  
 Iustys xxiiij ladyis ladd þesse xxiiij lordys of the  
 Carter<sup>e</sup> wyþ chaynys of gold and all in þe same suete of  
 hertes as ys afor sayd from þe Tour on hors bake þorough  
 þe Cytte of london in Smetfeld þer the Iustys shuld be  
 hold And thys fest 7 Iustys was holdyne generally to all  
 þo þat wold come of wat lond or nacioun þat euyr her<sup>f</sup> wer  
 And this was hold duryng xxiiij dayis of the kyngys owne  
 cost and þesse xxiiij lordus to Answerd all maner of  
 pepyll þat wold com þedre // 7 (fol. 155<sup>b</sup>) thedyr come  
 þe Erle of Sent poull of w<sup>2</sup> ffraunce and meny oþyr worthy  
 lordys wyt hym of dyuers partyes ffull well arayd 7 out  
 of holond 7 henaud come þe lord Ostrewance þat was de  
 dukes sone of holond and many other worþi kny3tys wyt hem  
 boþe of holond and

---

Fol. 155 <sup>1</sup>Carelessly formed; almost 4 minims. <sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



henaude fful well Arayed 7 whan pis ffesste 7 Iustes was  
 ended þe kynge þanked þese strangers 7 3af hem many grete  
 3eftes 7 þan þey token here leue of þe kynge 7 of opere  
 lordis 7 ladies 7 wenten home a 3en in to here owne  
 contreyes with grete loue 7 mochell þanke 7 in þe .xiiij.  
 3ere of kynge Rychardis Regne þere was a Batayle don in  
 þe kynges paleys at westmynster betwene a Squyer of  
 Nauerne þat was with þe kinge 7 a nobere Squye<sup>e</sup> þat men  
 callyd Iohn walshe for poyntis of tresoun þat þis Nauerne  
 putte vpon þis walshe but þis Nauernere was ouere come  
 7 3elde hym creante to his aduersarie 7 a non he was  
 despoyled (fol. 101<sup>b</sup>a) of hys Armour 7 drawe oute of þe  
 paleys vnto Tyborne 7 þere he was hanged for his falnes  
 7 in þe xiiij. 3ere of kyng Rycharde Regne Sere Iohn of  
 Gaunt duke of lancastre wente ouere þe See in to Spayne  
 for to chalenge his ryzt þat he had by hys wyfes tytle  
 vnto þe Crowne of Spayne with a grete oste of peple of  
 men of armes 7 archers 7 he had with hym þe douchesse  
 his wyfe 7 his þre douztres ouere þe See with him in to  
 Spayne 7 þere þey weren a grete whyle 7 at þe laste þe  
 kinge of Spayne by gan to trete with þe duke of  
 lancastre 7 so þey weren acorded to gedre þorowe here  
 boþe counseyles in þis manere þat þe kyng of Spayne  
 sholde wedde þe dukes douzter of lancastre þat was þe  
 ryzt heire to Spayne 7 þe kynge of Spayne sholde 3eue  
 vnto þe duke of lancastre of gold 7 seluere þat weren  
 caste into grete wegges 7 many opere Iewellys as many  
 as .viiij. chariotis<sup>f</sup> myzte carye 7 euery 3ere aftir  
 duryng þe lyfe of þe duke of lancastre 7 of þe duchesse  
 hys wyfe .x. M<sup>l</sup> Marke of gold þe wheche gold aventur<sup>g</sup>  
 costes 7 charges þey of Spayne sholde a venture<sup>h</sup> 7  
 bringe 3erly vnto Bayone to þe dukes assines<sup>i</sup> by good  
 suerte made Also þe duke of lancastre Married a nobere  
 of his douztres vn to þe kynge of Portynggale þe same  
 tyme 7 whan he had don þus he come home a 3en in to



full well Arayd and whene þes fest and Iustes was endyd  
 þe kyngys þanked þesse Straungers and 3aff hem meny grett  
 3iftys and þan þay tokyn her leue of þe kyng 7 of othyr  
 lordus and la<sup>g</sup> wyþ gret love 7 much tanke And in the xiiij  
 3er of king Rycharð Reignyd þer was a batayll done in þe  
 kyngys pales at westmestyr by twene a Squyer of Nauerne  
 þat was wyt þe kyng and a nobyr Squyer þat men callyd  
 Iohn Walse for pontys of tresoun in þis maner put vp on  
 thys walsch but þis man<sup>h</sup> ouyr come 7 3eld hem creaunte to  
 hys aduersary and a none he was despoulyd of Armir and  
 drowe out of þe pales vn to tyborne and þer he was hanged  
 for hys falsnesse and þe xiiij 3er of þe regne of kyng  
 Rycharð Syr Iohn of Gaunt duke of Glaucastre<sup>i</sup> went ouyr  
 the See into Spayne for to chaleng hys righ þat he had be  
 hys wyfes talle<sup>j</sup> vn to þe Oroune<sup>k</sup> of Spayne wyþ a gret  
 host of peple of meñ of Armes And archars and he hadd wyt  
 hym þe Duchesse his wif and his þre doughtours ouyre þe  
 See wyt hem in to Spayne and þer þay weryne a gret whyle  
 And att þe last þe kyng of Spayne begane to trett wyþ þe  
 duke of lancastyr and þay weren accordyd to gydre þorough  
 her boþe counseyles in thys maner þat þe kyng of Spayne<sup>3</sup>  
 (fol. 156<sup>a</sup>) shold wed þe dukys dou3tyr of lancaster and was  
 the rith heyr to Spayne shuld 3eff vn to þe Duke of  
 lancaster gold and syluyr þat weryn cast into gret weggys  
 and meny othyr Iewellys as amany<sup>l</sup> as viij Charietes my3th  
 cary And euyry 3er aftyr duryng þe lyff of þe duke of  
 lancaster and of hys duches w<sup>a</sup> hys wyff x M<sup>l</sup>. Marke of  
 gold þe wyche gold aventur charges þay of ps<sup>b</sup> spayne shuld  
 hauentur and bryng 3erly vn to bayoun to þe duckes assyignes  
 by surte<sup>2</sup> mad Also þe Duke of lancastyr marryd anobyr of  
 hys doughtours vnto þe kyng of Portyngall þe same tyme And  
 whan he had done þus he come a3ene in to

---

<sup>3</sup>Catchword by scribe below: shuld wed Fol. 156 <sup>l</sup>Caret-like mark below a-, prob. mark of deletion. <sup>2</sup>Superscript -r-.



englond ⁊ þe gode lady his wyfe also but many a worthy man deyed in þat viage vpon þe fflyx. And in þe .xv. 3ere of kyng Rychardis Regne he helde hys Cristemasse in the manere of wodestoke ⁊ þere þe erle of Penbrok a 3onge lorde ⁊ tendre of age wolde lerne to Iuste with a kny3th þat men called Sere Iohn Seint Iohn ⁊ reden to gedre in þe parke of wodstoke ⁊ þere þis worpy erle of penbroke was slayne with þat opere kny3tes spere as he keste hyt from hym whan þey had cowped<sup>j</sup> ⁊ þus þis worthy erle made þere hys ende ⁊ þerfore þe kyng ⁊ þe quene made mekel sorowe for hys dep<sup>4</sup>

(fol. 101<sup>b</sup>) And in þe .xvj<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng Richardes regne Iohne hende beyng þat tyme Mayre of london ⁊ Iohn Shadworthe and henry vanner beyng Shereves of london þe same tyme a Bakers man bare a basket of hors brede<sup>k</sup> in too flete strete towarde an Ostry hous<sup>l</sup> ⁊ þere come a 3eman of þe Bysshopys of salisbury þat was callyd Romain ⁊ he toke an horse lofe oute of þe bakers basket ⁊ he Askyd hym why he dede so ⁊ þis Romaine turned a3en ⁊ brake þe bakers hede ⁊ ney3bours come oute ⁊ wolden haue restyd þis<sup>l</sup> þis Romaine ⁊ he brake from hem ⁊ fledde in to his lordis place ⁊ þe Constablysse wolde haue had him oute but þe Bysshoppis men shette faste þe gates ⁊ kepte þe place þat no man my3te entre ⁊ þanne mekyll more peple gadryd þedre ⁊ seyden þat þey wolden haue him oute or elles þey wolden brenne vp þe place ⁊ alle þat weren with inne ⁊ þo come þe Mayre ⁊ þe Shereves with opere mekell pepull with hem ⁊ sesed þe malise of þe Comons ⁊ made euery man to gon home to here houses ⁊ kepe þe pees ⁊ þanne þis Romaines lord þe Bysshop of Salisbury Sere Iohn waltham þat þat tyme was treserer of englond wenten to

---

<sup>4</sup>Two lines left blank at foot of col. for rubricated chapter-heading.

Englonde and þe good lady hys wyff Also but meny A worthy  
 man in þat viage vppon the flex deid and in the xv 3er of  
 kyng Rychard Reigne he held hys Crystmes in the maner off  
 woodstoke and þer þe Erle of Penbroke a 3ong lord 7 tender  
 of Age wold lern to Iust wyt þe kny3th þat men callyd syr  
 Iohn and rydyn to geddyr in the Parke of woodstoke And  
 þer þis worthy Erle of Penbroke was slayne wyt þat oþyr  
 kny3t hys spere as he kest hit from hem when þay had  
 cowped And þus þis good Erle mad þere<sup>3</sup> his End and þer  
 for þe kyng and the Queene 7 mad much sorow for hys dethe  
 And in the xvj<sup>e</sup> 3er of kyng Rychard reigne Iohn hend  
 beyng that tyme Mayr of london and Iohn walworth / And  
 þis Romain torned a3ene and brake þe bakers hedd and  
 nyghtbours comen out and wold haue restyd þis romayne and  
 he brake frome hem and fled vnto þe lordys plasse And the  
 Constabl (fol. 156<sup>b</sup>) A<sup>4</sup> wold haue had hem out but þe  
 bysshopps men shet fast þe gatys and kep þe plasse þat  
 nomañ my3th entur And þane much mor pepyll gedryd to  
 gydir and said þat þay wold haue hym or else wold brene  
 vp the plasse and all þat wer wyt in And come þe Mayr 7  
 the Schyryvis wyt oþyr much pepyll and sesyd the Malys  
 of the Commens and mad euyry man to gone hom to her  
 howsys and kepe the pesse And þis Romainys lord þe byschop  
 of salysbury Syr Iohn waltham þat tyme was tresorer<sup>5</sup> of  
 Englonde went to

<sup>3</sup>-e unfinished. <sup>4</sup>Stroked out. <sup>5</sup>Poss. -e-, not -o-.



Sere Thomas of a rondell erchebyssshop of 3orke 7 also  
 chaunceler of englond 7 pere be Bysshop made his complaynte  
 vnto be Chaunceler vppon be peple of be cetee of london 7  
 pan pese .ij. Bysshopis of grete malice 7 veniaunce come  
 vnto the kynge to wyndesore 7 made a grete complaynte  
 vpon be Mayre 7 Shereves 7 on all be cetee afterward  
 wherfore be kyng 7 his counseyle caste vnto hem a greuous  
 herte 7 wondre grete malice 7 a none sodenly be kyng  
 sent for the Mayre of london 7 for be to Shereves 7 pey  
 come vnto hym to be castell of wyndesore 7 be kyng  
 rebuked be Mayre 7 be Shereves ful fowle for be offence  
 pat be pey had don a 3ens him 7 his officers in his  
 chambre at london. wherfor he deposyd 7 put oute be Mayre  
 7 bope Shereves 7 pis was don a xiiij. dayes a forne be  
 ffeste of Seint Iohn be Baptiste (fol. 102<sup>a</sup>) and panne  
 be kyng called to hym a knyzt pat men cleped Sere  
 edward dalyngrygge 7 made hym wardeyn 7 gouernoure of  
 hys cetee 7 chaunbur<sup>a</sup> of london 7 ouere alle hys pepull  
pere inne 7 so he kepte be offyce but ffoure wekes be  
 cause he was so tendre 7 gentyll vnto be cetezines of  
 london wherfore be kyng deposyd hym 7 made Sere Bawdewyn  
 Radyngtoun kny3th pat was countroller of be kynges  
 houshold wardeyne 7 gouernoure of his chambre 7 of be  
 peple pere inne 7 he chees vnto him too worthy men of  
 be cetee to ben Shereves with him for to gouerne 7 kepe  
 be kinges lawes in be cetee 7 pat one men callyd Gylberd  
 Mawfelde 7 pat opere Thomas Newyngtoun 7 pese pre good  
 men had be gouernaunce of be cete vnto be tyme of be  
 Mayres elexioun nexte 7 pan was william Staundoun chose  
 Mayre 7 pis Gylberd Mawfelde 7 Thomas Newyntoun Shereves  
 style 7 panne be Mayre 7 be .ij. Shereves 7 alle  
 Aldermen with all be worthy craftys of london wenten on  
 fote vnto be Toure 3ate 7 pere come oute be constable of  
 be Toure 7 3affe be Mayre 7 be Shereves here othe 7 charge  
 as pey shold haue take in be cheker<sup>b</sup> of westmynstre in be



syr Thomas Arundell Arssbysschop of 3orke and also  
 Cchanceler<sup>c</sup> of Englonde and þer þe byschop mad hys complayne  
 vnto þe chaunceler vpon̄ the pepyll of londone And þan þes  
 ij byschopus of grett malece and wengaunce com vnto þe kyng  
 to wensor and mad agret complaynte vppon̄ the Mayr and þe  
 Scyrywys And a none all the Cytte afterward wer þe for the  
 kyng and hys counsell cast vn to heme a geuous<sup>d</sup> harte and  
 wondyr gret malesse An anone Sodenly sent<sup>6</sup> for þe Mayr of  
 london̄ and for þe ij Schreffys and þay come vn to heme to  
 þe Castell of wyndsor and þe kyng rebuked þe mayr and þe  
 shereffes full foule for þe offence þat þay had don̄ a3ens  
 hym and hys f<sup>e</sup> Offecers in hys Chambur att london̄ werfor  
 he deposyd and put out þe Mayr bothe Schereffes and thys  
 was done A xiiij dayes afor the fest of Sent Iohn̄ Baptyst  
 And þan þe kyng callyd to hem a knyght þat meñ (fol. 157<sup>a</sup>)  
 callyd Syr Edward Dalyngseg and mad hem warden and  
 gouernour of þe Cytte and Chambur of london̄ and ouyr all  
 hys pepyll þer Inne And so he kepte þat of ffysse<sup>1</sup> but  
 iiij wekys<sup>2</sup> be cause he was to tendyr and gentyll vnto þe  
 Cytezins of london̄ wherfor the deposyd hym and mad syr  
 Bawdyne radyngtoun kny3th þat was Countler<sup>3</sup> roller of the  
 kyngys house warden 7 gouernour of hys Chambur and so þe  
 pepyll þer ine and ches vn to hem ij worthy meñ of þe  
 Cytte to bene Schereffes wyt hyme for to gouernyd the  
 kyngys lawys in the Cytte And one meñ callyd Gylbard  
 Mawfeld and þat opyr Thomas Newentoun and þes ij good meñ  
 hath þe gouernance<sup>4</sup> of þe Cytte vn to þe tyme vn-<sup>5</sup> of þe  
 Mayres eleccioun next þane wylliam Staundoun chosyne Mayr  
 And thys Gylbard Mawfeld 7 Thomas Newentoun Shereffes 7<sup>6</sup>  
 þan þe Mayr and ij. Scherffes all þe aldermeñ wyt all þe  
 worthy Craftys of london̄ wenten̄ v<sup>a</sup> hon fotte vn to þe tour  
 and þer come out þe constabyll of þe tour and 3aff þe Mayrs  
 and Schiriffis<sup>7</sup> her hotte and charg as þay shuld haue take  
 in the Chekyr of westmestyr in the

<sup>1</sup>Badly formed -e- like o. Fol. 157 <sup>1</sup>of at end of line;  
 ffysse on next line. <sup>2</sup>Badly formed -e- like o. <sup>3</sup>-ler  
 stroked out. <sup>4</sup>MS. has one minim for second -n-. <sup>5</sup>Stroked  
 out. <sup>6</sup>Blotted. <sup>7</sup>MS. has two uncrossed long ss for -ff-.



kynge courte of his Iustices & Barouns of þe cheker &  
 þan wente þey home aȝen. And þanne þe kynge & hys  
 counceyle for grete malice of þe cete of london & for  
 despyte remevyd alle his courtes from westmynstre vnto  
 þe cete of ȝorke þat ys to saye þe chauncerye þe cheker  
 & the kynges Benche & all so þe comen place<sup>c</sup> & þere þey  
 helde alle þis courtes of lawe from Myssomere þat ys  
 to saye þe ffeste of Seint Iohn þe Baptyste vnto þe  
 ffeste of Cristismas nexte comynge & þan þe kyng & his  
 counceyle sey hyt noȝt so profitable þere as hit was at  
 london þan the kynge a non remeved hyt aȝen vnto london  
 & so to westmynstre for grete ese of hys officers & a  
 vantayge for the kynge & alle þe comens of þe Reame &  
 whan þe pepull of london seye & knewe þat þese courtes  
 weren come aȝen & þe kyng & hys peple also þan þe Mayre  
 & þe Aldermen with the cheffe comeners lete gadre agrete  
 (fol. 102<sup>a</sup>b) Somme of golde of alle þe Comeners of þe  
 cete & ordeyned & made a grete Ryalte aȝens hys comynge  
 to london & forto haue his grace & hys good loue &  
 lordship & also here liberteis & fraunches grauntyd vnto  
 hem aȝen as þey to forne tymes hadde & þanne by gret  
 Instaunce & prayer of þe quene Anne & of opere lordys &  
 ladies þe kynge grauntyd hem grace & þis was done at  
 Shene in Sothereye<sup>d</sup> & þanne þe kynge with Inne a ij dayes  
 aftir come to london & þe Mayre of london Shereves  
 Aldermen And all þe worthy cete afterward reden aȝens þe  
 kynge in good a raye vnto þe heth on þis syde þe manere  
 of Shene submyttyng hem humbely & mekely with all manere  
 obeysaunces vnto hym as þey oweth to done & þus þey broȝt  
 þe kyng & þe quene to london þere þey presentyd hym with  
 a Milke whyte stede Sadled & brydeled & trappyd with  
 white cloth of gold & rede partyd to gedre & þe quene A  
 palfraye Alle whyte & in þe same a ray trappyd with  
 whyte & reed & alle þe condites in london rannen whyte  
 wyne & reed for alle manere of pepull to drynke of & by



kyngys Courte of hys Iustices and barons of the Cheker And  
 pane went pay home A 3ene And þan þe kyng and hys counsell  
 for gret Malys of þe Cytte of london̄ and for despyte  
 remeved all hys Courtys from westmestyr vn to þe Cete of  
 yorke þat ys to say þe Chauncery þe (fol. 157<sup>b</sup>) Chekyr and  
 þe kyngys benche And also þe comen plasse and þer þay held  
 all the cortys of law from myssomer þat ys to say þe fest  
 of Sent Iohn̄ þe babtyst vnto þe fest of Crystmes nex comyng  
 And þan the kyng and hys counsell saw hyt nought so  
 profytabyll þer as yt was at london̄ þan anone he remevyd  
 a3ene vnto london̄ and so to westmestyr for grett esse of  
 his offycers and awantag for the kyng and all the comens of  
 þe reme And whan pepyll of londone sawe and knew þis corte  
 weryne comen̄ a3ene and þe kyng and hys pepyll Also þane þe  
 Mayr and þe aldermen̄ wyt þe cheff comemers lett 1<sup>b</sup> gedyr A  
 gret some of gold of all þe comente of london̄ and hordynynd  
 and mad agret Ryalte a3ens hys comyng to london̄ And also  
 her letters and franchise3 grauntyd vn to hem a3en as þay  
 afor tyme had And þan by grett Instaunce and prayour of  
 quene Anne and of her lordys and ladyis þe kyng grantyd  
 hem grace and þys was done at schene in Sothray 7 þan þe  
 kyng wyt in to dayes aftyr com to london̄ and the mayr of  
 london̄ Scherffes aldermen̄ and all þe worthy Cyte afturward  
 reden̄ a3ens þe kyng in good aray vn to þe heth an þis syd  
 þe maner of Schen̄ Submyttyng hem humbley and mekly all  
 maner obesaunes vn to hem as þay owth to don̄ (fol. 158<sup>a</sup>)  
 And þus þay brouth þe kyng and þe Quene to london̄ And when  
 þe kyng come come<sup>a</sup> to þe gatt of the bryg of london̄ þer þay  
 presentyd hem wyt a Milke wyt sted sadyll and brydell and  
 trappyd in wyth clothe of gold and red partyd togydyr and  
 þe quene a Palfray all wyt and in the same Aray trappyd  
 wyt wyht and red and all þe condytes of london̄ renneñ white<sup>1</sup>  
 wyne and red for all maner pepyll to dryng of And by

---

Fol. 158 <sup>1</sup>-h- by scribe partially over -y-.



tweyne Seint Poules & þe cros in chepe þere was made a  
 stage Ryall stondinge vp on hye & þere Inne were many  
 aungels with diuerse melodyes & songe & one aungell come  
 a downe ffrom þe stage an hy by vyses<sup>e</sup> & sette A Crowne  
 of gold & precious stones & perle vpon þe kynges hed &  
 a nobere Crowne vpon þe quenes hed & so þe Cetezines  
 brouzt þe kynge & quene vnto westmynstre in to his paleys  
 & þanne on þe morne aftir þe Mayre & þe Shereves & þe  
 aldermen of london comen vnto þe kynge in Paleys at  
 westmynstre & presentyd him with .ij. Basynes of Seluere  
 & ouere gilte full of coyned gold þe Som .xx. M<sup>l</sup>. libri  
 prayng him of his hye mercy & lordsheppe & specially  
 grace þat þey myzte haue his gode loue & here lyberteys  
 & fraunches lyke as þey haue had by forne tymes & by hys  
 lettres & patentis & here chartre confermed. & þe quene  
 & opere worthy lordis & ladies fell on knees & by souzte  
 þe kynge of grace to conferme þis. And (fol. 102<sup>b</sup>a)  
 thanne þe kynge toke vp þe quene and grauntyde here alle  
 here askyng & þanne þey þanked the kynge & þe quene &  
 wente home a 3en & in þe xvj. 3ere of kyng Rychardis  
 Regne serteyne lordis of Scottlonde comen in to englond  
 to gete worshiþe as by ffeet of armes þese were þe  
 persones þe erle of Marre & he chalenged þe erle Marchall  
 of englond to Iuste with hym serteyne poyntis hyt<sup>f</sup> on hors  
 bak with sharpe speres & so þey reden to gedre as two  
 worthy lordis serteyne courses<sup>g</sup> but not þe full challenge  
 þat þe Scottyssh erle made for he was cast boþe hors &  
 man & ij. of his Rybbes broken with þat ffall & so he  
 was born oute of Smethefeld home vnto his Inne. & with  
 Inne alytell tyme aftir he was caried homeward in a leter  
 & at 3orke þere he dyede / And Sere william darell kny3th  
 & þe Banerere of Scotlond was made a nobere challenge with  
 Sere Peers Courteney kny3th & þe kynges Banerere of  
 englond of serteyne cours hit<sup>h</sup> on hors bak in þe same  
 felde. & whan he had reden serteyn cours hyt. & saye he



twhene Sent Powlys ~~day~~<sup>2</sup> and þe crosse in chepp þer was mad  
 astage a Ryall standyng vp on hye and þer Inne wer m.ny<sup>3</sup>  
 Aungles com a done from þe stage and hy by wysse and sett  
 a cround of gold and presios stonis and perles vp on the  
 kyngys hed And an nobyr Croune vp on the quenys hed and so  
 þe Cytezins brough þe kyng and þe Quene vn to westmynstyr  
 into hys Palys And þan on þe morne aftyr þe Mayr and þe  
 Schereffers 7 the aldermen of london come vnto þe kyng in  
 hys pales att westmestyr and presentyd hym wyt ij  
 Basynnesse of Syluyr and ouyr gylte ffull of coyned gold þe  
 Som<sup>4</sup> of xx. M<sup>1</sup> pond prayng hem of his hie mercy and  
 lordschep and specyall grace þat þay myghte haue hys good  
 lowe and leve and libertes and ffraunchyse lyke as þay had  
 be for tymes and by hys lettris and patentys and Charter  
 counfermed<sup>5</sup> And þe quene and obyr worthy lordys and ladyis  
 fell on kneys and sough þe kyng of grace (fol. 158<sup>b</sup>) to  
 conferme þis Thane þe kyng toke vp the quene and wenton hom  
 A3ene and in the xvj 3er of kyng Rychard Regne Serten lordus  
 of Scottlond comen in to Englonde to gett worchyp as be fett  
 of harmes þesse wer þe personys þe Erle of Marre and he  
 chalange þe Erle Marchall of Englonde to Iust wyt hem Serten  
 poyntys on horsbake wyt Scharp sperys and so thay ryden to  
 gyddyr and ij worthy kny3tys and lordus sertene Coursers but  
 not þe full Schalenge þat þe Scotte Erle mad for he was cast  
 bothe hors and man and ij of hys rybbys broken wyt þat fall  
 And so he was borne out<sup>6</sup> of Smytwyld hom to hys In And wyt  
 in alytll tyme aftur he was carryd home ward in a lyter and  
 att yorke þer he deid And syr wylliam Darell kny3the and  
 topyr banar of Scotlond was mad anobyr chalange wyþe syr  
 Peers Courteney kny3th and þe kyngys baner of Englonde  
 Courses hit on hors bake in the same feld And when he had  
 reden sertayne Courses hit said he

<sup>2</sup>Stroked out. <sup>3</sup>Tear in vellum obscures letter. <sup>4</sup>au/a  
 abbreviation-mark used. <sup>5</sup>First minim of -u- squashed  
 together with -o-. <sup>6</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in  
 text.



my3te no3t not haue þe bettyr he 3affe hyt ouere 7 wolde  
 no more of hys challenge 7 torned hys hors 7 reed home vnto  
 hys Inne / And þanne one Cokeborne Squyer of Scotlond  
 chalenged Sere Nycholl hawberk kny3th of serteyne cours  
 hit with sharpe speres on hors bak 7 þey reden .v. cours  
 hit to gidres 7 at euery cours þe Scott was caste a downe  
 boþe hors 7 man 7 þus oure englisshe lordis þanked be god  
 hadden þe felde þanked be Ihesus // And in þe xvij<sup>e</sup> 3ere  
 of kynge Richardis Regne diede þe gode 7 gracious quene  
 Anne þat was wyfe to kynge Rychard in þe Manere of Shene  
 in þe<sup>1</sup> Shere of Surre vpon whitsonday 7 þan was she brou3t  
 to london 7 so to westmynster 7 þer was she beryed 7  
 worthely entered bysyde Seint edwardis Shryne on whos soule  
 alle my3ti god haue mercy 7 pete Amen

How king Richard Spoused Dame Isabell þe kinges dou3ter  
 of ffraunce in þe towne of Caleys 7 brou3t here in to  
 englond 7 lete crowne here Quene of englond in the Abbay  
 of Seint Petres of westmynstre

(fol. 102<sup>b</sup>) IN<sup>2</sup> þe xx. 3ere of kynge Rychardes Regne  
 he wente hyim ouere þe See to Caleys with dukes erles  
 lordis 7 Barouns 7 many A worthy Squyer in grete aray /  
 and mekel comyn peple of þe Reame in good Aray as longed  
 to seche a worthy kyng 7 prince of his nobley / 7 of his  
 owne persone to done hym reuerence 7 obseruauance as ou3te  
 to be do vnto here lege lorde 7 so my3ty a kyng 7  
 emperoure in his owne to a byde 7 resseyue þere þat  
 worþy 7 gracious lady þat shold ben his wyfe a 3onge  
 creature of ix. 3ere of age dame Isabell the kynges  
 dou3ter of ffraunce 7 a mong opere lordis of gret name  
 boþe Barouns 7 kny3tes with mekel opere peple þat comen

---

Fol. 102 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in  
 text. <sup>2</sup>No blue initial; I in left margin of col., poss.  
 by a corr., and N at edge of vertical line of writing  
 (i.e. no space left for ornamental initial).

my3th not haue de bettyr he 3aff hyt ouyr and wold no mor  
 of his schalenge but turnyd hys hors and went home in to  
 hys owne In And one Cokborn Squier of Scotlond chaleng syr  
 Nycoll hawbarke kny3th of Serten Coursys hyt wyt Scharp  
 sperys on hors bake and ryden v. Corsys hyt to gydder at  
 euyry cors þe Scott was cast A done bothe hors and mañ and  
 þus our Englyslordys þanked be god hadden þe feld and in  
 the xviij 3er of kyng rycharde Reigne deid þe good gracous  
 Quene Anne þat was wyff to kyng Rychard in the maner of  
 Schen (fol. 159<sup>a</sup>) in þe Shyre of Surre vp on wetsonday<sup>1</sup>  
 and was she brouth to london and so westmestyr and þer was  
 sche berid and worthely enteryd by syd sent Edwardys scryne  
 on hosse sold<sup>a</sup> allmythty god haue mercy and Pytte Amen

Of the mariage be twene kyng Richarde kyng of Englonde /  
 And Dame Isabell þe kyngis dou3tyr of ffraunce þat were  
weddit at Caleyse

In the xx 3er of kyng Rychard regne he went hem ouyr the  
 See to Caleyys wyt Dukys Erles lordus and barons and many  
 oþyr worthy Squyers in grett Araye and Comen pepyll of the  
 reme in good aray as long to such a worthy kyng and pryns  
 of hys nobley and of hes owne Persone to done hem reuerens  
 and obsarwance<sup>2</sup> as owte to bene done wn to her lord And so  
 myhte a kyng and þe Emperour in hys owne to A beid and  
 Ressayve þer þat worthy and gracyous lady þat shold ben  
 his wyff a 3ong creatur of ix 3er of age dame Isabell þe  
 kyngys doughtour of fraunce and meny <sup>3</sup> oþyr worthy lordys  
 of gret name bothe Erles and kny3tys wyt much oþyr pepyll  
 þat come

---

Fol. 159 <sup>1</sup>-d stroked out. <sup>2</sup>-b- from long -s- by scribe.  
<sup>3</sup>Stroked out.



vn to þe towne of Grauenynge 7 ij. dukes of ffraunce þat  
 one was þe duke of Burgoyne 7 þat op̄ere þe duke of Barre  
 // But þese forsayd lordis nold nouzt come to Caleys to  
 þe kynge of england lasse þan þen<sup>i</sup> þey had plegges for  
 hem. 7 þanne kyng Richard delyuered .ij. plegges for hem  
 two to go saffe 7 come saffe . his two worthy vncles þe  
 duke of lancaſtre 7 þe duke of Glouceſtre 7 þey ij. wenten  
 ouere þe water vnto Grauenynge 7 a beden þere as for  
 plegges vnto þe tyme þat þe Mariage 7 feste was done.<sup>v</sup>  
 7 þat þese ij. dukes of ffraunce weren come A 3en vnto  
 Grauenyng water 7 þanne þese two worthy dukes comen ouere  
 þe water at Grauenyng 7 so forþ to Caleys with þis  
 worchepfull lady dame Isabell þat is þe kynges douster  
 of ffraunce with here come many a worthy lorde 7 eke lady  
 7 kny3thes 7 Squyers in þe beſte aray þat myzte be 7 þere  
 þey metten with owre menye at Caleys þe weche well comyd  
 here 7 here manye with þe beſte honoure 7 reuerens þat  
 myzte be 7 ſo brouzte here in to Caleys towne 7 þere  
 ſhe was reſſeyved with all þe Solempnite 7 worſhepe þat  
 myzte be done vnto ſeche a lady 7 þanne þey brouzte here  
 vnto þe kynge. 7 þe kynge toke here vnto hym 7 well comed  
 here<sup>3</sup> 7 alle here ffayre meyne 7 made þere all þe  
 Solempnite þat myzte be doñ. 7 þan þe kyng his counceyle  
 asked of þe ffrenſhe lordis wheþere all þe couenauntes  
 7 forwardis<sup>j</sup> with þe composiciouns<sup>k</sup> þat weren ordeyned  
 7 made on boþe partyes ſhould ben trewly kepte 7 holde by  
 twene hem 7 þey ſeyde 3e / And þere þey were ſworne 7  
 toke her charge vp on aboke and<sup>4</sup> (fol. 103<sup>a</sup>) made here  
 othe well 7 trewly hyt to be holde in alle manere poyntes  
 with outen contradiccoun or delay in any manere wyſe 7

<sup>3</sup>Added by ſcribe in right margin at end of line. <sup>4</sup>In  
 bottom margin of col. by ſcribe las þan þey had for hem  
7 þan king Richard delyuered .ij. plegges for hem .ij.  
to goo ſaff. 7 come ſaffe (ſee above in text).

vn to þe towne of Grawenyng and ij Duches of ffrance<sup>4</sup> þat  
 one was de duke of burgone And þat opyr þe duke of barryd  
 þat wolld none farder ne lasse þay had Plegys for hem And  
 þane þe kyng Rychard delyuerd to pleggys for hem to goo  
 saff and come saffe hys ij worthy vncles þe Duke of  
 Glaucestre and abyden ther as for pleggys vn to þe tyme  
 þat þe maryage and þe fest was done And þane þes ij worthy  
 doukys come ouyr the watyr att grawenyng And so to Caleys  
 wyþ þis worschipfull lady Dame Isabell þat (fol. 159<sup>b</sup>) ys  
 þe kynges doughtur of fraunce And wyt her come meny A  
 worthy lord and eke lady and knyts and Squyers in þe best  
 Aray þat myth be And ther þe mettyñ wyt our mayne at Cales  
 the wyche welcomd her and her mayne wyt þe best honour and  
 reuerence þat myzth be And so brouth into Cales towne And  
 þer Sche was ressayvid wyt all solempnite and worschyp þat  
 myzth be done And þan þe kyng and hys Counsell askyd of  
 the frennce<sup>b</sup> lordys whetyr all the Couenantys 7 forwardus  
 wyþ þe composiccioun þat wer hordynynd and mad on bothe  
 partyis shuld bene trewly kepe and hold by twne hem And  
 þay sayd 3ee And þer Sworne and toke her Charge vp on a  
 boke and mad her hoth well and trewly hyt to hold in all  
 maner of poyntes and cōuentys wyt outen conturdiccioun  
 or de lay in any maner wysse And

<sup>4</sup>Badly formed -c- like a minim.



panne was she brou3t vnto Seynt Nycholas chirche in Caley's  
 7 þere she was worthely wedded with þe moste Solempnite  
 þat any kinge and quene my3t haue with erchebyssshopys  
 Bysshopis and all opere Mynystres of holychirche 7 panne  
 weren<sup>1</sup> þey brou3t home vnto þe Castell 7 sette to mete  
 7 þere weren serued with all manere of delicacie of Ryall  
 metys 7 drynkes plenteuously to alle manere of straungers  
 7 all opere 7 no creatur werned<sup>a</sup> þat ffeste but alle  
 weren welcome for þere were grete hailes 7 tentes sette  
 vppon þe grene with oute þe Castell to resseyue alle  
 manere of peple 7 men of euery offyce redy to serue hem  
 all and þus þis worthy Mariage was Solempely doon and  
 endid with all Ryalte. þan þese .ij. dukes of ffraunce  
with alle here peple token here leue of king and quene  
 and wenten a 3en to Grauenynge water / and þere þe  
 ffrenshe lordis a beden with alle heremenye<sup>b</sup> vnto þe tyme  
 þat oure .ij. lordis þat ys to seye þe .ij. dukes 7 alle  
 here manye weren come ouere þe water of Grauenynge a 3en /  
 and þere þey metten and eueryche toke leue of opere 7 so  
 þey departyd 7 wenten ouere þe water 7 so home in to  
 ffraunce a 3en. And a none aftir þe king made him redy  
with his quene and all his lordis 7 ladyes 7 alle opere  
 peple with hem 7 comen ouere þe See in to englond 7 so  
 to london. and þe Maire and the Shereues with all þe  
 Aldermen 7 worthy comeners reden a3ens hem vnto þe blacke  
 heth in kent 7 þere þey mette with þe kinge 7 quene 7  
 well comed hem 7 þat in a good araye 7 euery man in his  
 clothinge of his crafte<sup>c</sup> 7 here mynstralles to fore hem  
 7 so þey brou3te hem to Seint Georges Barre in South  
 werke 7 þere þey token here leue / 7 þe king 7 þe quene  
 Reden to kenyngtoun 7 þan peple of london torned hem home  
 a 3en 7 in þe tornyng a3en to london on london Brygge  
þere was so mekyll prees boþe on hors 7 on fote þat þere

---

Fol. 103 <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text.



þane was sche brouth vn to Sent Nycolas chyrche in Cales  
 and þer she was worthely wedded wyt þe most solemnite þat  
 ony kyng or quene mythe haue wyt Erssbyshoppes and  
 bysshopps 7 all Menstrellys<sup>c</sup> of holy chyrche And weryne  
 brough home vn to þe Castell and sett to mett And þer wer  
 serwyn wyt all maner delykatys of all Ryall mettys and  
 drynkeys plenteuosly to all maner of Straungers and all  
 opyr And non creatur wernyd þat fest but all weryn welcome  
 for ther wer gret halles and tentys sett vppon the grene  
 wyt out þe Castell to ressayue all maner of pepyll and  
 euyry offece redy to serve heme all /And þus worthy Maryage  
 was solempnely done ended wyt all Riallte þān þes ij dukys  
 of fraunce wyt her pepyll tokyn her leve of the kyng And  
 Quene And wenton a3ene to Grawenyng watur And þer þe  
 frennce lordys þat ys to say þe ij dukys and all her mayne  
 weryne comen ouyr the watyr of gravenyng and þer thay  
 mettyne and euyryche (fol. 160<sup>a</sup>)<sup>1</sup> toke leue of othyr and  
 so þay departid and our lordys come A3ene vnto Cales and  
 þe frenche lordys wente ouyr þe watur and so forth in to  
 fraunce a3ene And anone aftyr the kyng mad hem redy wyt þe  
 quene and all her hei<sup>2</sup> lordus and ladyis 7 all opyr pepyll  
 wyt hem and comen ouyr the See into Ingland and so to  
 london and þe mayr and scerffers wyt all the Aldermen and  
 worthy comeners and rydene a3ens hym vnto blake Ethe in  
 kent and þer þay mettyn wyt þe kyng and þe Quene and  
 welcomyd hem and þat in good aray and euyry man in hys  
 clodyng of hys Craft and her menstrellys to for heme And  
 so þay brough heme to Sent Gorges barr in Southwarke and  
 þer þay token her leue 7 the kyng And þe Quene Rydene to  
 kenyngtoun and þane þe pepyll of london tornyd home A3ene  
 and in turnyng a3ene to london bryge þer was so mich presse  
 bothe onne hors and of ffotte þat þer

---

Fol. 160 <sup>1</sup>Writing often faint or rubbed and difficult  
 to read on this page. <sup>2</sup>Poss. -r, not -i.



weren ded on the brygge .xj. persones of men 7 wemen 7  
 chyldryn on whos soules god haue mercy amen 7 þan aftirward  
 þe quene was brouzt vnto þe Toure of london 7 þere she  
 was all nyzt 7 on þe morne she was brouzt þorowe þe cetee  
 of london all ouere and so forthe to westmynstre 7 þere  
 she was Crowned quene of englond (fol. 103<sup>a</sup>b) and than  
 was she brouzte a 3en in to þe kynges Paleys 7 þere was  
 holdin an open and a Ryall ffeste At here Coronacioun for  
 all manere of peple þat þeder come 7 þis doñ þe Sunday  
 aftir the feste of Seint Clement in þe xx 3ere of king  
 Richardis Regne 7 þan þe xxv. day of August nexte  
 folwyng by euell exitacioun 7 falss counceyle 7 for grete  
 wrathe 7 malice þat he had of olde tyme vnto his vncler þe  
 Gode duke of Gloucestre 7 to þe erle of aroundell 7 to þe  
 erle of warrewyke þe kyng by his evell counceyle late  
 in þe evenyng on þe same day above seyde made him redy  
 with hys strength and rode vnto essex vnto þe towne of  
 Chelmesford and so come to Plasshe sodenly þere sere  
 Thomas of Wodstoke þe gode duke of Gloucestre lay 7 þe  
 Gode duke come to well come þe kyng 7 a none þe kyng a  
 restyd þe gode duke him selue his owne body 7 so he was  
 lad downe to þe watir 7 a none putte in to a shyppe 7 a  
 none was had vnto Caleys 7 brouzte in to þe Capteynes  
 warde to be kepte in holde by þe kynges comaundement  
 of englond 7 þat tyme erle Marchall of englond was  
 Capteyne of Caleys. 7 a none aftir by sonde<sup>d</sup> 7 by  
 comaundement of the kyng 7 by his fals counceyle comaunded  
 þe Capteyne to putte him vnto þe dep. and a none a  
 serteyne meyne þat come fro þe kyng 7 from þe Capteyne 7  
 þo men þat had þe gode duke in keping a none þey toke  
 here councyl how þat þey wolden put hym vnto þe deth. 7  
 þis was here poyntement þat þey sholde come vpon hym whan  
 he were a Bedde 7 a slepe vpon a fetherbed 7 a none þey  
 bounde hym ffote 7 hande 7 charged hym to lye styll 7  
 whanne þey had do þus þey toke .ij. smale towayles 7 made



weryne ded on the bryge xj personys of meñ and of women  
 and of Schyldren on hous sold god haue mercy Amen And þan  
 afterward þe Quen was brouthe vn to þe tour of london  
 And þer che was all nyth and on the morow sche was brouth  
 þoru þe Cytte of london all ouyr and so forthe to  
 westmestyr and þer che was Crond Quene of Englonð And þane  
 was she brouth A 3ene vn to þe kyngys pales And þer was  
 holdyne Anopyr Ryall fest at her Cornacioun of for all  
 maner pepyll þat theþir come And þis was done de sonday  
 after the fest of Sent Clementes in the xx<sup>3</sup> 3er of kyng  
 Rychard reigne And þane þe xxv day of August nex folloing  
 by Euyll exitacion and false counsell and for grett wratte  
 and males þat he had of hold tyme vnto hys vncle de duke  
 of Glawcestre And to þe Erle of Aroun (fol. 160<sup>b</sup>) dell  
 and þe Erle of werwerke þe kyng by hys Euyll consell lat  
 in the Euenyng in the same day aboue sayd / Mad hem redy  
 wyt hys strenth and rodd in to exsex vnto þe towne of  
 Chelmesforthe And So come to Palyslasse<sup>4</sup> sodenly þer syr  
 Thomas of woodstoke þe good duke of glowsester lay and þe  
 good duk hym selfe hys owne body And so he was lad downe  
 vnto þe wator anone and put into Aschip And anone had in  
 to Cales and brouth in to þe Capetaynis ward to be kepte  
 in hold by the kyngys Comandement of Englonð and þat tym  
 the Erle Marchall of Englonð was Capetayne of Cales And  
 Anone after send<sup>a</sup> and Comandemet<sup>b</sup> of the kyng and by hys  
 false Counsell Comandyd þe Capetayne to put hem to dethe  
 and þis was her poyntement þat shold com oppon hem when  
 he wer in bed and aslepe on Afedyrbed And anone þay bond<sup>5</sup>  
 hem fott and honde and chargyd hem to lye styll And when  
 þay had done þus þay token ij Small towellys

---

<sup>3</sup>Second x by scribe above. <sup>4</sup>-lasse by scribe above -alys;  
 Plasse intended but orig. letters not deleted. <sup>5</sup>Badly  
 formed -o- like e.



on hem two redyng knottys 7 casten þe towayles a bowte  
 þe gode dukes necke 7 þanne þey token þe ffetherbed þat  
 laye vndir hym 7 casten hit a boue hym 7 þanne þey drowen  
 here towayles eche wayes 7 somme lay vpon þe ffetherbed  
 vpon hym vnto þe tyme þat he were dede by cause þat he  
 shold make no noyse 7 þus þey strangled þys worþy duke  
 vnto þe deth on whos soule god for his pite haue mercy  
 Amen. 7 whan the (fol. 103<sup>b</sup>a) kyng had a restyd þis  
 worthy duke and his owne vncle 7 sentte hym to Caleys  
 he come a 3en to london in alle haste with a wounder  
 grete peple 7 a none as he was come he sente<sup>2</sup> for þe  
 erle of Aroundell 7 for þe gode erle of warrewyke. 7 a  
 none as þey come he a restyd hem boþe his owne selue 7  
 Sere Iohn Cobham 7 Iohn Cheyne knyghtes boþe he a rested  
 hem in þe same manere tyll he made his parlement 7 a none  
 þey were putte in to holde. but þe erle of aroundel wente  
 at large vnto þe parlement tyme ffor he fond sufficient  
 suerte to a byde þe lawe 7 alle manere of answeere at  
 alle poyntes þat þe kyng 7 his counceyle wold putte  
 vpon hym

How king Richard mad 7 ordeyned a parlement at westmynstre  
 þe whiche was cleped þe grete parlemen<sup>e</sup> 7 þere þey satte  
 in Iuggemen 7 Iugged þese lordes afore seyde.

And in þe xxj. 3ere of kyng Richardis Regne he ordeyned  
 hym a parlement at westmynstre // þe whiche was called  
 þe grete parlement. 7 þis parlement was made ffor to  
 Iugge þese þre worthy lordis 7 opere moo as þem leste<sup>f</sup>  
 at þat tyme 7 for þat Iuggement þe kyng lete make in  
 alle haste a longe 7 a large house of tymbre þe whiche.  
 was callyd an hale 7 couered with tyles ouere 7 hit was  
 open all abowte on boþe sydes 7 at þe endys þat alle

---

<sup>2</sup> Added by scribe in right margin at end of line.

A bouthe þe dukes neke And þan þay token þe fedyrbed þat lay vndyr heme and cast yt aboue hem And þay /Drowyne her towellys eche wayes and som lay on the fedyrbed vpon heme vnto þe tyme þat he wer ded by cawse þat he shuld make none noys And þus thay stranglyd þis worthy duke Vn to þe deth on hosse sold god haue Mercy Amen And when þe kyng had arestyd þis worthy duke and hys owne vnclē and sent hem to Cales he come aȝen vn to london in all hast wyt A wondyr grett pepyll And as he was come he sent A for þe Erle of Arondell and for the good Erle of werwyke and anone as thay come he restyd hem bothe hys owne selfe Syr Iohn Cobhom and syr Iohn (fol. 161<sup>a</sup>) Chayne knyth he arestyd heme in the same maner tyll he mad hys parlement and anone þay wer put in to hold but þe Erle of arondell went att large vn to þe parlement tyme for he fawne Soffesen sewrte to abyde þe lawe and all man<sup>a</sup> of<sup>l</sup> Answer att poyntes þat þe kyng and þe Counsell wold put vp on hem

Of the deeth of þe lordis þat kyng Richard putto deth

And in the xxj 3er of kyng Rychard reign he ordynyd hym a parlement att westmestyr The wyche was clepyd a grett parlement And þis parlement was mad for to yogge þes worthy lordus and opyr moo as hem lyst att þis tyme and for þat Iugement þe kyng lett make in all þe hast Along and a large howsse of tymber þe wyche was callyd and hall and Couvyrd wyt tyllis ouyr and hyt was hopyne all A bouthe on the sydys and at þe Endys þat all

---

Fol. 161 <sup>1</sup>Badly formed o- like a.



manere of men my3te see þorowe oute 7 þere þe dome was holden vpon þese forsayde lordis 7 Iuggement 3eue at þis forsayde parlement 7 forto come vnto þis parlement þe kyng sent oute hys wryttes vnto euery lord Baroun kny3t 7 Squyer in euery Shere þorow out englond 7 þat euery lord<sup>3</sup> gadry 7 bryng his Retenu of peple with hym<sup>3</sup> in as short tyme 7 in þe beste araye þat þey my3te gete in maynteing<sup>g</sup> 7 in strenþing of þe kyng azens hem þat were his enemyes 7 þat þis were do in all hast 7 þey to come to hym in peyne of dethe 7 þe kyng (fol. 103<sup>b</sup>) hym selfe sente in to Chestre Shere vnto the Cheuetaynes of þat contrey 7 þey gadred 7 brou3te a grete 7 an houghe multitude of peple boþe of kny3tes 7 Squiers 7 principally of 3eman of Chestre Shere þe wheche 3emen 7 Archers þe kyng toke vnto his owne courte 7 3afe hem bouche of courte<sup>h</sup> 7 gode wagis to be kepers of owne body boþe be ny3te 7 be day aboue all opere persones 7 moste belouyd 7 beste truste þe whiche sone aftirward tornyd the kinge to grete losse shame hyndryng 7 his vtterly vndoyng 7 destruxioun as 3e shall here sone aftirwarde 7 þat tyme come Sere henry erle of derby with a grete meyne of men of armes 7 archars 7 þe erle of Rutlonde come with a stronge powere of pepull boþe of men of armes 7 archers 7 þe erle of stafford come with a grete power of men of armes 7 archers 7 þe erle of kent brou3te a grete power of men of Armes 7 archers þe erle Marchall come in þe same manere þe lorde despencer in þe same manere þe erle of somersete come in þe same maner<sup>4</sup> þe lord þe Neuyle in þe same manere þe erle of Northhunberlond 7 Sere henry Percy hys sone 7 Sere Thomas Percy þe erles Broþere 7 all þese worthy lordis brou3teñ a fayre meyne

<sup>3</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>4</sup>þe erle of som'sete ... man' by scribe in right margin of col. for insertion (here?) in list.

maner men my3the See þour out and þer þe dome was holdene  
 and Iugementys 3et<sup>b</sup> at þe for sayd parlement 7 for to  
 come into þis Parleme<sup>n</sup>te þe kyng sent hys wryttes vnto  
 euery lord barone knygh and Squer in euery chyr þour out  
 Englonde and þat euery lord gadyr and bryng hys tr<sup>c</sup>  
 retenewe of pepyll h<sup>d</sup> wyt heme in as schort tyme and in  
 the best Aray þat þay mythe gett in mayntengne 7 in  
 strenthen of þe kyng A3enst hem þat wer hys Enmys 7 þat  
 þis wer done in all the hast and come to hem in payne of  
 dethe and þe kyng heme self sent in to Schestyr<sup>s</sup>chyr on  
 to þe chevetens of þat contre and þay gadryd and brouth  
 an hug muiltytud<sup>2e</sup> of pepyll bothe kny3tys and Squyers  
 and prensypaly of the me<sup>n</sup> of Schester þe wyche sone aftyr  
 þe kyng to grett losse sham hendryng and hys vittery<sup>f</sup>  
 vndoyng and dystreccioun as 3e shall her sone aftyrward  
 7 þat tyme (fol. 161<sup>b</sup>) come Syr henry Erle of Darby wyt  
 agret mayne of men of harmys and Archars and þe Erle of  
 Rottlond and archares And all þes worthy lordys brout a  
 fayr mayne

---

<sup>2</sup>MS. has 6 minims and macron to indicate abbreviation of  
 -1-.



⁊ a stronge power ⁊ eche a man in his beste aray ⁊ þe  
 duke of lancastre ⁊ þe duke of 3orke comen in þe same  
 manere with men of Armes ⁊ archers folowing þe king ⁊  
 Sere william Scrope treserer of englond come in þe same  
 manere ⁊ þus in þis araye comen alle þe worthy men of  
 þis londe vnto þe kinge ⁊ all þese pepull comen to  
 london in on day in so mekyll þat euery strete ⁊ lane  
 in london ⁊ in þe subbarbys weren ful of hem logged . ⁊  
 a .x. or .xij. miles aboute london euery way ⁊ þese  
 pepul brou3ten þe kyng to Westmynstre. ⁊ wenten home  
 a3en vnto here loggingis boþe hors ⁊ man. ⁊ þan þe  
 Monday þe .xviij<sup>e</sup>. day of Septembre þe parlement be gan  
 at westmynstre þe whiche was cleped þe grete Parlement  
 ⁊ on þe ffryday nexte folowyng þe erle of aroundell was  
 brou3t in to þe parlement a monge alle þe lordis. ⁊ þat  
 was on Seint Mathewes (fol. 104<sup>a</sup>) day þe apostle ⁊  
 euaungeliste ⁊ þere he was for Iugged vnto þe dethe in  
 þis hale þat was made in þe Paleys at westmynstre ⁊ þis  
 was his Iuggement þat he sholde gone on fote with his  
 [his]<sup>1</sup> hondys bounde be hinde him from þe place þat he  
 was for Iugged Inne ⁊ so forþe þorowe þe cetee of london  
 vnto þe Tourehylle ⁊ þere his hede to be smeten of ⁊ so  
 hit was done in dede in þe same place ⁊ .vj. of þe grete  
 lordis þat sate on his Iuggement reden with him vnto þe  
 place þere he was don vnto þe deth ⁊ to see þat  
 execucioun were doo aftir here dome ⁊ þe kynges  
 comaundement ⁊ with hem wente on fote of men of Armes ⁊  
 archers a grete multitude of Chestre Shere men in  
 strengthing of þe lordis þat brou3te þis erle vnto his  
 deth. for þey dradden þat þe erle sholde haue ben rescued  
 ⁊ take ffrom hem whan þey comen in to london but þus he  
 passed forth þorowe þe cete vnto his deth ⁊ þere he toke  
 hit ful paciently on whos soule god for his mekel pete



and a strong pour and eche men in hys best Aray and þe duke of lancastyr and de duke of yorke comen in the same maner wyt men of harmes and archars foloyng þe kyng And syr wylliam Scrope tresur of Englonð come in the same maner And þus in a ray come all worthy men of hys lond and our kyng 7<sup>3</sup> all his pepyll come to london in one day in so much þer euyry stret of london was foll of pepyll and x or xij myll about london and þes kyng<sup>4</sup> pepyll brouth þe kyng to westmestyr and wenton hom a3ene vnto her loggyng boþ<sup>5</sup> hors 7 man And þan on the monday þe xviij day of Septembyr þe parlemement be gane at westmestyr þe wych was clepyd agrett parlement and on þe fryday nex follouynge the Erle of Arondell was brouth vnto þe parlement A mong all the lordus and þat was on sent Mathewys day þe apostell Euaunagylist<sup>6</sup> þer he was for Iugged on to þe deth in thys hall þat was in þe pales at westmestyr and þis was hys Iugement þat he shuld gone on foot wyt hys hondys bond be hynd hem from þe plasse þat he was for Iugged Inne and so forthe þoruch þe Cyte of london vnto þe tour hyll and þer his hed to be Smettyn of and hit was done in ded in the sam plasse And vj of gret lordys þat sat on hys Iugement ryden wyt hym vnto þe plasse þer he was done vn þe dethe and to se þat þe exicucioun wer done aftur her dome and by þe kyngis comandement wyt hem wenton on fott of men of Armes and harchars Agret (fol. 162<sup>a</sup>) multytud of Chestyr Schyr men in strenth of the lordus þat brouth þis Erle vnto hys dethe for thay dradyne þat þe Erle shud<sup>1</sup> haue bene reskewyd and take frome hem when þay come into london þus he passyd forth þour the Cytte vn to hys deth and þer he toke hyt foll pacienly on hoss soull god

---

<sup>3</sup>Inserted above by scribe. <sup>4</sup>Stroked out. <sup>5</sup>Followed by yr abbreviation-mark. <sup>6</sup>au abbreviation-mark above -a-. Fol. 162 l-d by scribe over orig. letter, poss. -h.



haue mercy amen ⁊ þan come þe ffreres of Augustinus ⁊  
toke vp þe body ⁊ þe hed of þis gode erle ⁊ bare hit  
home vnto here hous ⁊ beryed him in here quere.<sup>✓</sup> ⁊ on þe  
morne Aftir was Sire Richard þe erle of warrewyk brouzt  
in to þe parlement þere as þe erle of Arondell was for  
Iugged ⁊ þey 3af þe erle of warrewyk þe same Iuggement.<sup>✓</sup>  
þat þe forseide erle had but þe king had compassioun of  
him be cause he was of more age ⁊ relese him in to  
perpetuell presoun ⁊ put him in to þe<sup>2</sup> Ile of Man.<sup>✓</sup> ⁊  
þanne þe Monday nexte aftir þe lord Cobham of kent ⁊  
Sere Iohn Chayne knyzt weren brouzt in to þe parlement  
into þe same hale ⁊ þere þey were<sup>3</sup> Iugged to be hanged  
⁊ drawen but þorowe þe prayer ⁊ grete Instaunce of þe  
lordis þat Iuggement was for 3eue hem ⁊ relese to  
perpetuell presoun ⁊ þis same tyme was Richard whetintoun  
Mayre of london ⁊ Iohn wodkok ⁊ william askham Shereves  
of london ⁊ þey ordenyd at euery 3ate ⁊ in euery warde  
of london stronge wacche of euery man of armes ⁊ of  
archers ⁊ principally at euery 3ate of london durynge  
þis same parlement.<sup>✓</sup> ⁊ at þe same parlement þe king dede  
make .v. dukes a duchesse ⁊ a Markeys (fol. 104<sup>a</sup>b) and  
iiij. erles and þe ferste of hem was the erle of derby  
⁊ he was made duke of herford ⁊ þe secounde was þe erle  
of Rutlande ⁊ he was made duke of awmarle ⁊ þe þridde was  
þe erle of kent / ⁊ he was made Duke of Surre ⁊ þe iiij<sup>e</sup>.  
was þe erle of huntingdoun ⁊ he was made duke of excestre  
⁊ þe Marchall he was made duke of Northfolke ⁊ dame  
Margarete þe olde lady of northfolke<sup>1</sup> was made duchesse  
of Northfolke ⁊ þe erle of Somersete he was made þe[e]<sup>4</sup>  
Markeys of dorsede / ⁊ þe lord Spencer was made erle of  
Gloucestre ⁊ þe lord Neuyle of Raby was made erle of  
westmorlande<sup>3</sup> ⁊ Sere Thomas percy was made erle of

<sup>2</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text. <sup>3</sup>By  
scribe later in right margin at end of line. <sup>4</sup>-e erased.

haue mercy And on the morow aftyr was syr Rychard Erle of  
 werweke brouth to the parlement þer as þe Erle Arrondell  
 was Iugyd and þay 3af þe Erle of warwyk þe same Iugement  
 þat þe forsayd Erle þe lordys had compassyoun of hem by  
 cause he was of mor age and relessyd heme to perpetuall  
presoun and put hem in þe Ile of mañ and þane þe mond next  
 aftyr þe lord Cobbam of kent Syr Iohn Cheny knyzt was  
 brouth in to þe parlemeñ in to þe same hall and þer þay  
 wer iu gett to be hangyt and drawe but þoru þe gret  
prayer and grett Instans of all þe lordys þat Ingelond<sup>a</sup>  
 was for3eff heme and relesyd to perpetuall presoun And  
 in þis same tym was Rychard whytyngtoun Mayr of london  
 and Iohn woodstok and wylliam askame Schereffes of london  
 And þay hordynid at euyry 3att and in euyry ward strong  
 wech of euyry mañ of Armes and of Archars and pryncypaly  
 of euyry 3att at london duryng þe same parlement And þe  
 Erle of kent and he was mad Duke of Sorrow And þe erle of  
 Notyng he<sup>b</sup> was mad duke of norfolke And dame Marget the  
 hold lady of Northfolke And þe Erle of Somersett he was  
 mad þe Markeys of Dorsett 7 þe lord (fol. 162<sup>b</sup>) Spenser  
 was mad Erle of Glaucestre and the lord newell of raby was  
 mad Erle of westmerlond And syr Thomas Percy was mad Erle  
 of



worcestre ⁊ Sere william Scrope þat was treserer of englond he was made erle of wyltshere ⁊ Sere Iohn Mountagewe erle of Salisbury ⁊ whan þe king had þus done he endid þe parlement and made a Riall feste vnto all his lordis ⁊ to alle manere of peple þat þedre wolde come And in þis same 3ere deide Sere Iohn of Geaunt<sup>5</sup> þe kynges vncle ⁊ duke of lancastre in þe Bysshopis Inne of ely in holborne ⁊ was brouzt from þens to Seint poules ⁊ þere þe kinge made ⁊ helde his terment wel ⁊ worthyly with alle his lordis in þe cherche of Seint poules in london ⁊ þere he was beried be syde dame Blaunche his wyfe þat was dou3ter ⁊ heyre to þe gode henry þat was duke of lancastre / ⁊ in þe same 3ere þere fell a dissencioun ⁊ debate by twene þe duke of herford ⁊ þe Duke of Northfolke in so meche þat þey waged Batayle ⁊ caste downe here gloues ⁊ þan þey were take vp ⁊ aseled<sup>a</sup> ⁊ þe Batayle Ioyned ⁊ þe Batayle Ioyned<sup>b</sup> ⁊ þe day I sette ⁊ þe place assyned where ⁊ whan þe day sholde be ⁊ vtterly assyned to be don at Couentre on seynt Edward day þe Martyr before Mydsomer day // ⁊ þedre come þe kyng with alle his lordis at þat day ⁊ was sette in þe felde ⁊ þan þese .ij. worthy lordis comen in to þe felde clene armyd ⁊ wel a rayed with all here wepen ⁊ redy to don (fol. 104<sup>b</sup> a) here Batayle and weren in þe place redy to ffy3te at þe vtterest but þe king of his grace ⁊ ryall magiste ⁊ by good counceyle of his lordis þat weren þere present þe king bad hem sese ⁊ toke þe qurell<sup>c</sup> in to his owne hande ⁊ forþ with ry3th þere present exiled þe duke of herford for þe terme of .x. 3ere ⁊ þe duke of Northfull<sup>d</sup> for euere more ⁊ Sere Thomas of aroundell erchebysshop of Caunterbery was exiled þe same tyme for euere ⁊ deposed of his See for malise of þe king ⁊ a none

---

<sup>5</sup>By scribe in right margin of col., of þe deb of Iohn of Gaunte

worscestre And syr wylliam Scrope þat was tresorer of  
Englond he was mad Erle of wylschyr 7 syr Iohn Montague  
Erle of Salysbury And whane þe kyng had þus done he held  
þe parlement Aryall fest vn to all hys lordus and to all  
maner of pepyll þat þedyr wold come And in the same 3er  
deid syr Iohn of Gaunte þe kyngys Vncle and duke of  
lancastyr And in the same 3er der fell A dyssencyone 7  
debatt by twne þe duke of hardford and þe duke of  
Northfolke in so much þa wagyd batayll and cast done her  
glouys and þan þay wer take vp and selyd and þe batell  
seynded and þe day sett and as þe plasse Assynyd wher and  
wane þe day shuld be vntterley<sup>c</sup> assyned to be done att  
þe Contre<sup>d</sup> And þedyr com þe kyng wyt all hys lordus att  
þat þay<sup>e</sup> and was sett in the feld And þan þes ij worthy  
lordus comen vn to þe feld clen Armyd and well a rayd  
wyt all her wepyne and redy to done her batayll and  
weryne in the plasse Redy to feith at the vtterest but  
þe kyng bad heme sesse and toke þe quarell into hys hond  
and forth rythe þer presente exiled þe duke of herford  
for þer<sup>f</sup> terme of x 3er and þe duke of Nortfolke for  
euyrmor And syr Thomas Arundell Erchbesshop of Cauntyrbury  
was exilid þe Same tyme for euyr and deposed of hys see  
for malys of þe kyng And anone



þese .iiij. worthy lordis weren comaunded ⁊ defended þe  
 kinges Reame And a none þey gate hem Shippis at diuerse  
 hauenes ⁊ wenten ouere þe See in to diuerse londis eche  
 his way ⁊ þe duke of Northfolke wente to Venyse ⁊ þere  
 he dyede on whos soule god haue mercy Amen ⁊ þanne king  
 Richard made Sere Rogere walden a Clerke of hys  
 erchebisshop of þe See of Caunterberye. ⁊ king Richard  
 held a ryall Cristismasse at lichefeld ⁊ þere was many  
 a lord ⁊ many a lady ⁊ grete festes ⁊ ryall Iustis . all  
 þo .xiij. dayes ⁊ þere was Sere Robert Morley named þe  
 best Iuster of englond. And in þe .xxij. 3ere of king  
 Richardis Regne by concel<sup>3</sup> he was enformyd þat diuerse  
 tresones were purposyd for him ⁊ þen he lete ordeyne þat  
 alle manere Men weren sworn to be trew to him ⁊ þen  
 weren made ⁊ ordeyned blank Charters<sup>e</sup> ⁊ made hem to bene  
 Seled of all manere of peple þorowe oute þe Reame in so  
 moche þat þey compellyd dyuerse peple to sette to here  
 Seales ⁊ þis was done for drede but hyt avayled not //  
 And þanne kyng Richard wente hym ouere þe See in to  
 Irlond before witsonday next þo xxij. 3ere of his regne .  
 ⁊ many a grete lord with him with grete hostes forto  
 strenþe kere<sup>f</sup> kyng as men of . Armes Archers ⁊ mekill  
 grete stuff ⁊ ryzt gode ordynaunce as longe vnto werre  
 ⁊ or he passed þe See he ordeyned ⁊ made Sere edmounde  
 of langeley his vncle þe duke of 3orke his leve tenaunte  
 of englond in his abscens with þe gouernaunce ⁊ gode  
 conceile ⁊ þanne he passyd þe See ⁊ come into Irlond ⁊  
 þere he was worthyly resseyuèd ⁊ þese Rebelles of  
 Irlond þat bene cleped þe wylde Irysshe men anon (fol.  
 104<sup>b</sup>) here Cheuetaynes ⁊ here gouernoures and here  
 leders comen downe vnto þe kynge ⁊ 3elden hem vnto him  
 boþe body ⁊ godis alle at his wille ⁊ þey sworn to be  
 hys lege men ⁊ to hym deden homage ⁊ ffeaute ⁊ þus he  
 conqueryd þe moste party of Irlond in a litel tyme



þesse iij worthy lordus weryne comandyd and defendyd þe  
 kyngys Reame<sup>2</sup> and anone þay gatt hem Schippys att dyuers  
 hawenys and wenton ouyr þe See into dyuerse londus eche  
 hys wayis and þe duke of northfolke went to veneysse and  
 þer he dyed on hosse soulle god haue mercy Amen And þane  
 þe kyng rycharð mad syr Roger wolden a Clerke of hys  
 Erschebyssshop of Caunturbury and in the xxij 3er of kyng  
 Rycharð rayne by false counsell and Imagynacyoun of  
 Covetus men (fol. 163<sup>a</sup>) þat weryn about hem wer mad and  
 hordynyð blanke Chartours and mad hem to be seld of all  
 maner ryche men þourghout þe reme in so much þay compellyd  
 dyuers pepyll to sett here sell to and þis was doo for  
 grett couetus wer for all good hartys of þe reme weryne  
 clene tornyd a3ene Away from hem þat is þe kyng euyr aftur  
 and þat was vttyrly dystruccyoun and hend þat was hei and  
 so Exelent akyng þour covetysse and false consell allas  
 for pette þat suche a kyng my3th nott See And þan þis  
 rycharð sett hys kyngdome of hys riall lond of Englund to  
 ferme vn to iij personys þe wyche weryne þes Syr wylliam  
 of Scrop Erle of welscher<sup>a</sup> and tresorer of Englund And  
 syr Iohn Bosshe and henry Grene and syr Iohn Bagot  
 kny3this wych þat torny hem to mich mescheff and dethe  
 wyt Inn lytyll tyme her aftyr as 3e shall her fynd  
 Iwrytten sone aftyr and þan kyng rycharð mad a gret  
 hordynans and wenton hem ouyr the See in to Irlond and  
 many gret lordus wip hem gret hostys for to strenth her  
 kyng as men of harmes archars and much grett stuff and  
 ryth good hordynans as longeth to wer or he passyd þe  
 See he hordynyð and mad syr Edmond of langelay hys vnclē  
 þe duke of yorke

<sup>2</sup>MS. has 4 minims for -m-; poss. -um- intended.



How henry of Bolyngbrok Erle of Derby come in to Englonde  
to challenge his heritage while king Richard was in  
Irlonde

And in þe mene tyme whyle þat king Richard was þus in  
Irlond Sere henry of Bolingbrok erle of derby þat þe  
kyng had made by forne duke of herford þe whiche duke þe  
kyng had exiled for x. 3ere oute of his londe was come a  
3en in to englonde forto challenge þe duche of lancastre  
as for his heritage 7 he come downe out of ffraunce by  
londe 7 so come to Caleys 7 þere mette with hym Sere  
Thomas of Arundell þat was erchebyssshop of Cauntylbury<sup>g</sup>  
þat was exiled oute of englonde 7 with him come þe erle  
of Arundell Sone 7 his heire þe whiche was in warde 7 in  
keping of Sere Iohn Shelley knyght Some tyme with the  
erle of hontyngdoun 7 with þe duke of Excestre þe whiche  
was in þe Castell of Reygate in Southsex 7 þere he stole  
away ffrom þis Shelley 7 come to Caleys 7 þere he was  
kepte wel 7 worthely tyll þese opere two lordis weren  
come to Caleys 7 þanne þis worthy duke 7 þe erchebyssshop  
of Caunterbery arundell 7 þe erles Sone of Arundell with  
opere meyne Shippeden in þe haue<sup>h</sup> of Caleys 7 drowe here  
cours Northward 7 aryveden in 3orke Shere at Ravensporne  
faste by weedelyngtoun 7 þere he come 7 entrid þe londe  
7 þese too lordis with him 7 here mayne.<sup>v</sup> 7 þo meche peple  
of þe Reame wan þey weste of his<sup>6</sup> comynge 7 weste where  
he was a none þey drowe vnto hym 7 well comyd þese lordis  
7 socoured him in all manere þinges // 7 þan he passyd  
forthe in to þe londe and gadrid mekell pepull / And  
whan kyng Richard herd 7 wyste þat þese .ij. lordis  
 weren come a 3en in to englonde 7 weren loded.<sup>v</sup> þan þe  
king lefte all hys ordinaunce in Irlonde and come in to  
englonde in (fol. 105<sup>a</sup>) alle þe haste þat he myzte

---

<sup>6</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; caret in text.

And he come doune out of fraunce by lond to Cales 7 per  
 mett wyt hem syr Thomas of Arundell þat was Erssbyschop  
 of Cantyrbury þat was exilid out of Englonð and wyt heme  
 come þe Erle of Arundell sone and hys heyr þe wech was in  
 ward and in kepyng of syr Iohn̄ Selly kny3th som tyme wyt  
 þe Erle of hontyngtoun and wyt þe duke of Excestyr þe  
 wyche was in the Castell of rigatt in southsex and þer  
 he stall away from Schelley and com to Calles and þer he  
 was kepte well (fol. 163<sup>b</sup>) and worthely till þes opyr  
 lordus weryne come to Cales 7 þane þe worthy duke and þe  
 Ersbyssshop of Cantyrbury Schippyn in þe hawen of Cales and  
 drowf her cors Norhward and areyveden in yorke Schire att  
 Rauesporne fast by wydlyngtoun and þer he come and enteryd  
 þe lond and þes ij lordus wyt hem and her mayne And a [a]<sup>1</sup>  
 none þe pepyll of þe rem westyn þerof þay welcomd þes  
 lordus and socord heme in all maner thyngys and passyd  
 forth in to þe lond 7 gaderd much pepyll And lordus wern̄  
 comyne A3ene into Englonð and weryne londyd þan þe kyng  
 left all hes hordynauns in Irlond and come in to Englonð  
 ward in all þe hast þat he my3th



come in to Walys vnto þe Castell of fflynte and þere he  
 abode forto take his counceyle what myzte beste be doñ .  
 but to him come none.⁹ and þan Sere Thomas Percy of erle<sup>1</sup>  
 worcestre þat was þe kinges steward.⁹ weste 7 knewe þis /  
 a none he come in to þe halle a mong all þe peple 7 þere  
 he brake þe 3erde<sup>a</sup> of þat Riall kynges housholde 7 þere  
 þat hushold was dysparpeled 7 euery Man wente hys way 7  
 for soken here maystre 7 souereyne lord 7 leften him  
 allone and þus was king Richard brouzte a doñ 7 destroyed  
 7 stode a lone with outen confort or socoure or good  
 conceyled of any man.⁹ a las for pete of þis Ryall kyng .  
 7 þanne come tythinges þat henry of Bolingbroke was vp  
 with a wondir stronge power of peple 7 þat all þe Sherefes  
 of englond reysed vp þe Sheres in strengthing 7 reliuyng  
 of him a 3ens þe king Richard and þan Sone he was come  
 oute of þe<sup>2</sup> Northcontre to Berstowe<sup>b</sup> 7 þere he mette  
 with Sere william Scroupe erle of wilt Shere treserer of  
 englond 7 with Sere Iohn Busshe 7 Sere henre Grene 7 Sere  
 Iohn Bagot but he a scapyd from him 7 wente ouere þe see  
 in to Irlond 7 þese opere .iiij. kny3tes weren take 7  
 here hedes smetten offe . 7 þus þey deyeden for here  
 false covetise.⁹ 7 þanne was king Richard take 7 brouzte  
 vnto þe duke.⁹ 7 a none þe duke putte him in saffe warde  
 7 stronge holde vnto his comyng to london 7 þanne was  
 þere a romere in london 7 a stronge noyse þat kyng  
 Richard was come to westmynstre 7 the pepull of london  
 ronne þedre 7 wold haue done mekyll harme 7 scape<sup>c</sup> in  
 here wodenes nadde þe Meyre 7 þe aldermen 7 opere worthy  
 men sesed hem with fayre wordis 7 torned hem home a 3en  
 vnto london 7 þere was take Sere Iohn Slake deen of þe  
 kinges chapell of westmynstre and brouzte to london 7  
 put in presoun in ludgate.⁹ 7 Bagot was take in Irlond 7

---

Fol. 105 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; caret  
 wrongly placed in text. <sup>2</sup>Inserted above by scribe.

and com vn to þe Castell of flente and þer he abod for to take hys counsell and wat mythe best be done but he hym anon<sup>b</sup> and þan syr Thomas percy Erle of woscester þat was þe kyngys steward west and knew þis anone he come vnto þe hall a mong all pepyll and þer he brake þe yerd of þe ryall kyngys hous shold<sup>c</sup> dysparbylid and euyry mañ went hys way 7 for soke her mastyr and souerayne lord and leften hem a lone and þus was kyng Rychard brouth A done and dystroyd 7 stott<sup>d</sup> all one wyt out comfort or socur or good consell of Anny mañ alas for pette of thys riall kyng and anone com tydynis þat hevery<sup>e</sup> of Bolyngbroke was vp wyt a wondur strong pepyll and þat all þe Scherwes of Englund reysen vp þe Schyres in the strenth of heme a3ens kyng rychard and þus sone he was come out of the northe contre to brestow and þer he mett wyt syr wylliam Scropp Erle of wylscher tresorer of Englund and wyt syr Iohn Buche and syr henry Grene Iohn bagott but he eschapyd frome heme and went ouyr the See Into Irlond þes iij kny3thys weryn take 7 her hedis smettyn off (fol. 164<sup>a</sup>) And þus þay dedyne for her falsse couetyssse And þane was kyng rychard take and brouthe vn to þe duke and a none þe duke put hem in Saw gard and strong hold vn to hys comyng to london And þan was þer a Romere in london and astrong noysse þat kyng rychard was come to westmestyr 7 þe pepyll of london rane þedur and wold haue done much harme and scathe in her woodnes nad þe Mayr and þe aldermen and opyr worthi men sesid hem wyt fayr wordus and turnyd hem hom a3ene in to london And þer was Iohn Slake dene of þe kyngys Chapell of westmestyr take and brouth to london and put in presone in ludgatte And bagott was take in Irlond and



brouzt to london 7 put in presoun in Newgate pere to be  
 kepte 7 to abyde his answe<sup>r</sup> 7 sone aftir þe duke brouzte  
 kyng Richarde preueyly to london 7 put him in þe toure  
 (fol. 105<sup>a</sup>b) vndir kepynge as presonere and þanne come  
 þe lordys of þe Reame with all here counceyle vnto þe  
 Toure to kyng Richard and sayde to him of his mys  
 gouernaunce 7 extorcioun þat he had done made 7 ordeyned  
 to oppresse alle þe comen pepull And alle so to<sup>1</sup> his  
 Reame Aftir. wherfore alle þe pepull of his<sup>3</sup> Reame wolde  
 haue him deposed of his kingdom 7 so he was deposyd at<sup>4</sup>  
 þat tyme in þe Toure of london by all his lordis  
 counceyle 7 comen assent of all þe Reame 7 pere he was  
 putte from þe Crowne 7 had ffrom þe Toure. vnto þe  
 castell of ledes in kent 7 pere he was kepte a whyle 7  
 þanne was he had from þennes vnto þe Castell of Poumfret  
 in þe Northcontre to ben kepte pere in preson 7 sone  
 aftirward ry3th pere he made<sup>4</sup> his ende 7 þanne whan king  
 Richard was deposyd 7 had resyned hys crowne 7 his  
 kyngdom 7 he kepte faste in holde. þan alle þe lordis of þe  
 Reame with þe Commens assent 7 by one a corde chosen þis  
 worthy lord Sere henry of Bolingbroke erle of derby duke  
 of lancastre by ry3t line 7 heretage 7 for his my3tfful  
 Manhode þat þe pepull fonde in him by forne all opere.  
 þey chase 7 made hym kinge of englond a monges hem

How henry of Bolingbroke erle of Derby was made king of  
 englond 7 how king Rychard<sup>5</sup> þe secunde was deposed and  
 put adowne of hys dignite

And how<sup>d</sup> kyng Richard þe secunde was deposed 7 put out  
 of hys kyngdom 7 how þe lordis 7 comens alle with one

---

<sup>3</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text. <sup>4</sup>Followed by  
 superfluous double hyphen. <sup>5</sup>Added later by scribe in  
 right margin of col.

brouth to london and put in presone in Newgatt þer to be kepte and to abyd hys hanswer And sone aftyr de duke brouthe kyng rycharð preuely to london and put hem in the tour vndyr sur kepyng as a presoner and þan com þe lordus of the reme wyt all her counsell vnto þe tour to kyng rycharð and saydyn to hem of hys mysgouernauns and þat he had done 7 mad and hordynyð to oppresse<sup>1</sup> all þe comen pepyll and al so to all þe reme wold haue hem desspsyð<sup>a</sup> of hys kyngdom and so he was deposyd of hys kyngdom at þat tyme to þe tur of london by all his lordus consell and þe comen assent of all þe reme And þer he was put frome þe tour vn to þe Castyll of ledys in kent and þe was<sup>2</sup> kepte a whill And þane he was had from þens vnto þe castell (fol. 164<sup>b</sup>) of Pomfrett in the north Contre to be kepte in presone and sone aftyrward ryth þer he mad hes hende and þan whane kyng Rycharð was deposid he had res<sup>3b</sup> hys croune and hys kyngdome and hem kepte fast in hold þan all þe lordus of þe reme wyt þe comens Assente and by accord cheson þis worthy lord Syr henry of belyngbroke Erle of Darby Duke of Herford and Duke of lancastyr be ryth lyne and herytage and for hys mythfull manhod þat þe pepyll found in hem by for all oþyr þay chase hem and mad hym kyng of Englonð amonges hem

Aftir that kyng Richard was deposed 7 put oute of his kyngdome // Sire harry of Bolyngbrooke erle of Derby sone 7 heire to Iohn þe duke of lancastir was made kyng of Englonð

And aftyr kyng Rycharð þe Secounde was deposyd and put out of hys kyngdome þe lordus 7 þe comens all wyt one

---

Fol. 164 <sup>1</sup>er/re abbreviation-mark used for -r-. <sup>2</sup>w- over h- by scribe. <sup>3</sup>Poss. -c, not -s.



assent 7 alle opere worthy of þe Reame chosen Sere henre of Bolingbroke erle of derby 7 Sone 7 heyre of Iohn þe duke of lancastre for his worthy Manhede þat often tyme had be founde in hym 7 in dede proued.<sup>v</sup> vpon Seint Edwardis day þe confessor he was Crowned kyng of englond at westmynstre by alle þe Reames assent nexte aftir deposyng of kyng Richard.<sup>v</sup> and þanne he made henre hys eldist Sone 7 his heire Prince of walis 7 duke of Cornewale 7 erle of Chestre 7 he mad Sere Thomas of aroundelle erchebysshop of Caunterbery a 3en as he was beforen 7 Sere Rogere of walden þat kyng Richard had made erchebisshop (fol. 105<sup>b</sup>a) of Caunterbery.<sup>v</sup> he made hym Bysshop of london ffor þat tyme hyt stode voyde . 7 he made þe erles Sone of aroundell þat come euere<sup>d</sup> bis þe see with him fro Caleys in to englonde.<sup>v</sup> he made him erle of Aroundell 7 put him in possessioun of all his londis 7 þere he dede homage 7 feaute vnto his lege lorde 7 king as alle opere lordis had don / 7 þan a none deyede kyng Rychard in þe Castell of Pountfret in þe Northcontre for þere he was enfamyed vnto þe deth By his kepers for he was he was kepte in to foure of .v. days<sup>e</sup> from mete 7 drinke 7 so he made his ende in þis world.<sup>v</sup> But 3ette mekel peple in englond 7 in opere londis seyde þat he was a lyue many 3eres aftir his dep But wheþere he were a lyue or dede 7 for wordes 7 openyons 7 fals beleue þat men hadden mekell pepul aftirward comen to myscheffe 7 to foule dep<sup>6</sup> as 3e shal here<sup>7</sup> Aftirward And whan kyng henry wyste 7 knowe þat he<sup>f</sup> verely þat he was dede he lete Sere his body in þe beste manere 7 closyd hym in lynyn cloþe alle saue þe vesage . 7 that men myzte see 7 knowe his persone ffrom alle opere men 7 so he was brouzte to london with torche lyst brennyng vnto Seint Poules 7 þere he had his Masse

<sup>6</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.  
<sup>7</sup>-e inserted above by scribe; caret in text.



Assent and all opyr worthy of þe reme chosen Syr henry of  
 bolyngbroke Erle of derby sone 7 heyr of ~~fohd~~<sup>4</sup> Iohn de duke  
 of lancastre for hys worthy manhod þat oft tyme had be  
 found in hym and inded provyd on sent Edwardus day þe  
 confessour he was Crownyd kyng of Englund att westemynstre  
 be all þe Remmes assent nex aftyr þe deposyng of kyng  
 Rychard þanne he made henrye hys heldest sone (fol. 165<sup>a</sup>)  
 and hys heyr Pryns of walys de duke of Cornuall and þe  
 Erle of chestyr And he mad syr Tohmas of Arundell  
 Ersbyschope of Cauntyrbury aʒen as he was be for 7 syr  
 Roger of waldeñ and kyng Rychard had mad Erschysshop of  
 Cauntyrbury<sup>a</sup> he mad hym bysshop of london for that tyme  
 he stod vude and he mad þe Erlys sone of Arondell þat come  
 ouyr the See wyt hem frome Cales in to Englund he mad hem  
 Erle of harondell and put hem in possessioun of all hys  
 londus and þer he mad homage and feaute vnto hys lege lord  
 þe kyng as all opyr lordus had done And þan a none deid  
 kyng Rychard in þe Castell of Pomfrett in the northe  
 contre for þer he was en famend vn to þe deth by his keper  
 for he was kepe into iiij or v dayis frome mett and drynke  
 and so he mad hys hend in thys world 3itt much pepyll in  
 Englund 7 in opyr londus sayd þat he was alyve meny 3erys  
 aftyr hys dethe but whethyr he wer alyve or ded forth he  
 held her false apynyons and beleve þat men had 7 much  
 pepyll and aftyrward comyne to myscheff And to foule dethe  
 as 3e shall her aftyrward And wen kyng henry wylt and kewe<sup>b</sup>  
 verely þat he was ded he lett ser hem in the best maner  
 and closyd hit in a fayr chest wyþ dyuers spyces 7 baumes  
 7 closed hem in alynnen cloth all save hys visage and þat  
 was left open þat men mygh se and knowe hys persone from  
 all opyr men 7 so he was brough to london wyþ torch lyght  
 brennyng

---

<sup>4</sup> Stroked out.



7 hys dyryge with mekell Reuerence 7 Solempnite of seruice  
 7 from Poules he was brouzt in to þe Abbay of westmynstre  
 7 þere he had all his hole seruice a 3en 7 from  
 westmynstre he was had to langle 7 þere was he beried  
 on whos soule god haue mercy Amen.<sup>8</sup> And in þe firste  
 3ere of king henries Regne he helde his Cristemas in  
 þe Castell of wyndesore 7 on þe .xij. eve come þe duke  
 of Avmarley vnto þe kynge 7 tolde him þat he 7 þe duke  
 of Surre 7 þe duke of Exestre 7 erle of Salysbeyry 7 þe  
 erle of Glowcestre 7 opere moo of here affinite weren  
 acorded to make a mommyng vnto þe kinge on þe .xij. day  
 at nyzt 7 þere þey casten to sle þe kynge in here  
 Reuelynge . [7]<sup>9</sup> þus-duke-warned-þe-kyng<sup>10</sup> And þus þat  
 duke warned þe kynge 7 þan þe kynge (fol. 105<sup>b</sup>) come  
 þe same nyzte to london preuely in alle the haste þat he  
 myzte / to gete him helpe socoure and counceyle 7 a none  
 þese opere þat wolde haue don þe kyng to dep ffledden in  
 alle þe hast þat þay myzten for þey knewe well here  
 counceyle was be wreyed<sup>8</sup> 7 þo fledde þe duke of Surre 7  
 þe erle of Salisbery with all here Meyne vnto þe towne  
 of Cyssetre 7 þere þe peple of þe towne wolde haue a  
 rested hem 7 þey nolde not stonde to here a reste but  
 stoden at a fence 7 fouzte with hem manly but þe laste  
 þey weren ouer come 7 take 7 þere þey smote of þe dukes  
 hede of Surre 7 þe erles hede of Salesby 7 many opere mo  
 7 þere þey quarterd hem 7 senten hem to london vnto þe  
 kyng þe quarters in Sackes 7 her hedis on polis<sup>11</sup> on  
 polis<sup>h</sup> born on hy 7 so þey were brouzt þorowe þe Cete of  
 london vnto london Brygge 7 þere here hedes weren sette  
 vp on hy 7 here quarters weren sente to opere gode townes  
 7 Cetees 7 sette vp þere //<sup>12</sup> And at Oxinford weren take

<sup>8</sup>In left margin of col.: & <sup>9</sup>Erased. <sup>10</sup>Stroked out.  
<sup>11</sup>... polis by scribe in right margin of col.  
<sup>12</sup>// like a double hyphen.

and hys derige wyt much reuerens and Solempnite of seruice  
 And from poulys he was brought in to the abbay of westmestyr  
 and per had all hys holle serwysse A 3en and from westmestyr  
 he was had to langely 7 per he was (fol. 165<sup>b</sup>) beryd one  
 whos<sup>c</sup> god haue mercy Amen / And in the fyrst 3er of kyng  
 henry Regne he held hys Crystmesse in the Castell of wensor  
 And on the xij Evyn come pe duke of awmarke vn to pe kyng  
 and told hem pat he And pe duke surre and pe duke of  
 excester and pe Erle of Glassynbury And pe Erle of  
 glowcestyr and opyr moo of her affinite wer accorded to  
 make a Momyng vn to pe kyng on the xij day at nythe and  
per thay castyn to Sle the kyng in her Revelyng and pus  
pat duke warnyd pe kyng and pan the kyng come pe same nyth  
 to london preuely in all pe hast pat he my3th to gett hym  
 help and Socur and comfote And counsell And anone pesse  
per<sup>1</sup> opyr pat wold haue donne the kyng to dethe fleddyn  
 in all pe hast pat pay my3th for thay knowyn well pat her  
 consell was be wrayd And pan fled de duke of surry and the  
 Erle of Salysbury wyt all opyr mayne vn to pe Toune of  
 Chester and per pe pepyll of pe towne wold haue restyd  
 heme and pay nold nott stand to her arest but stodyn att  
pe fence and faugh manly but at pe last pey weryne ouyr  
 come And toke and per pay sn<sup>2</sup> Smott of de dukes hed of  
 Surry and pe Erls heed of Salysbury and meny opyr moo and  
per thay put pe quarters in sakes and her hedys one polys  
 borne on hey And so pay wer broughte pourgh the Sytte of  
 london vn to london brygge And ther here hedysse weryn  
 sett vpp on hye and here Quarters [Text breaks off,  
 recommencing on fol. 168<sup>a</sup>]

---

Fol. 165 <sup>1</sup>er abbreviation-mark stroked out; (?) delete  
 whole word. <sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



Sere Thomas Blont knyzt 7 Benet Cely knyzt 7 Thomas wyntersehille Squyere 7 pese weren be heded 7 quarterd.<sup>v</sup> 7 be knyztēs hedes weren sette on poles 7 brouzt to london / And sette on london Brygge 7 be quarters sente forthe to opere places and townes 7 in be same 3ere / At Prytelwell in a Mille in Essex þere was Sere Iohn holondon<sup>i</sup> be duke of Excestre take with be Commens of be countre 7 þey brouzte him fro þat mylle vnto plasshe 7 to the same place þere kyng Richard a rested Sere Thomas of wodestoke be duke of Gloucestre / 7 ryzt þere in be same place þey smeten of be duke of Excestres hed / 7 brouzte hit to london vpon a pole / 7 hit was sette on london Brygge / 7 in be same 3ere at<sup>5</sup> Bristowe was take be lord dispencer þat kyng Richard had made erle of Gloucestre / 7 be commens of be towne of Bristowe toke<sup>13</sup> him 7 broute hym in to be Market place of be Towne 7 þere þey smeten of his hed 7 sente hit to london 7 hit was on london Brygge / 7 in be same 3ere was Sere Bernard Brokeys kny3th take 7 a rested (fol. 106<sup>a</sup>) and putte in to the twre of london 7 Sere Iohn Shelley kny3th 7 Sere Iohn Magdeleyñ 7 Sere Iohn<sup>1</sup> william fferby persons of kyng Richard / 7 þey weren a rested 7 putte in to be Toure of london 7 þedre come be kinges Iustes<sup>a</sup> 7 sat vpon hem in be Toure 7 þere þey weren dampned alle .iiij<sup>e</sup>. vnto be deth 7 be dome 3eve vnto Sere Bernard Brokeys þat he sholde gone on ffote from be Toure þorowe london vnto Tyborne 7 þere to be hangit<sup>2</sup> 7 aftir hys hede smeten of 7 Sere Iohn Shelley kny3th 7 Sere Iohn Magdeleyñ 7 Sere william fferby persons weren drawe þorowe oute london to Tyborn 7 þere hanged 7 here hedens<sup>b</sup> smeten of 7 sette on london Brygge / and in pis

<sup>13</sup>Prob. added later by scribe in space at start of line. Fol. 106 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>-it inserted above by scribe; caret in text.

same 3ere kyng henry sente Quene Isabell home a 3en in  
 to ffraunce þe whyche was kyng Richardys wedded wyfe 7  
 3af here gold 7 Seluere 7 many opere Iewelles and so  
 she was discharged of alle here dowre 7 sente oute of  
 englond And<sup>3</sup> in þe secounde 3ere<sup>4</sup> of þe Regne of kyng  
 henry þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. was Sere Roger of Claryngdoun kny3th  
 7 .ij. of hys men . 7 þe Priour of launde 7 viij. ffrere  
 Menoures<sup>c</sup> 7 some. Maistres of diuinite 7 opere for  
 tresoun þat þey wrou3te a 3ens þe kyng weren drawe 7  
 hang at Tyborne all xij<sup>e</sup>. perones to gedre 7 þis was  
 here ende þere for tresoun / and in þis same 3ere þere  
 be gan a dyssencioun 7 debate in þe contre of walys  
 bytweyn þe lord Gray Ryffyn 7 Ewayne of Glendore Squyer  
 of walys / 7 þis Ewayne arered a nombre of walshe men  
 7 kepte all þat contre a boutte ry3t stronge 7 dede  
 mekell harme 7 destroyed þe kinges townes 7 lordshpes  
 þorowe owte walys 7 robbed 7 slowe þe kingis pepull boþ  
 englisshe 7 walshe / 7 þus he endured a .xij. 3ere  
 large / 7 he toke þe lord Greye Ryffyn presenere 7 kepte  
 him ffaste in holde tyll he was<sup>4</sup> Raunsoned / And in þe  
 .iiij. 3ere of kynge henry Ewayne brent a towne of þe  
 erle of þe Marche in walys þat heght knyhtoun 7 in þe  
 morñ after seynt Albone day was þe Batayle betwene ser  
 Edmond Mortemer 7 Ewayne 7 [in]<sup>5</sup> þis Batayle was (fol.  
 106<sup>a</sup>b) on þe blake hille besyde pylhaley 7 þere Ewayne  
 toke Sere edmund Mortimere þe erles Brother of Marche  
presenere 7 kepte him longe tyme in holde 7 at laste he  
 made him wedde one of his dou3ters 7 kepte hym þere  
 styllle with hys wyfe 7 sone aftir he deyde / And þanne  
 þe kynge hyringe 7 knowynge þis myschef dystroxion 7  
 tresoun þat þis Ewayne wro3te þanne a none he ordeyned  
 hym a stronge power of men of armes 7 of archers 7 mekyl

<sup>3</sup>In left margin of col.: & <sup>4</sup>Added later by scribe in  
 right margin at end of line. <sup>5</sup>Erased.



opere stuffe þat longed to werre / ffor to abate 7  
 destroie þe malise of þese false welshe men / And whan  
 þe kyng come in to walis with his power for to destroie  
 þis Ewayne 7 opere Rebelles ffalse walshe men / a none  
 þey fledden in to þe Mountaynes 7 þere myȝte no man do  
 hem harme in no manere wyse but often tyme þey token þe  
 kynges Caryage<sup>d</sup> 7 euery day destroyed his peple / but  
 Ewayne 7 his men for þe moste party a scapyd harmeles  
 ffor þe kyng ne his meyne myȝte not come by him in no  
 manere wyse for þe Mounteynes / 7 so þe kinge come in to  
 englond a ȝen for lesinge<sup>e</sup> of more of his pepull 7 þus  
 he sped not þere 7 in þis same ȝere was grete scarsite  
 of whete in englond for a quarter of whete was at .xvj.ȝ.  
 7 þanne Marchaundes of englond senten ouere þe See in to  
 Spruse<sup>f</sup> for whete 7 a none þey had lade 7 ffreyȝte  
 Shyppis I nowe 7 comen home in safte y blessyd be god of  
 all hys ȝiftes 7 in þe iiij<sup>e</sup>. ȝere of king henries Regne  
 þere was a sterre seyen in þe ffyrmament þat shewyd him  
 sylfe þorowe alle þe worlde for dyuerse tokenes þat shulde  
 be falle sone aftir þe whiche sterre was namyd 7 called  
 by clerkes stella comata<sup>6g</sup> And on þe Seynt Marie  
 Magdaleyne day nexte folowyng in the same ȝere was þe  
 Batayle of Shorvesbery 7 þedir come Sere henry Percy þe  
 erles sone of Northhumberland with a grete multitude of  
 men of armes 7 archers 7 ȝaf a batayle to king henre. þe  
 .iiij. þorowe the false conceyle 7 wycked rede of Sere  
 Thomas<sup>1</sup> Percy his vncle erle of worcestre 7 þere was  
 Sere henry Percy slayne 7 þe moste party of hys meyne in  
 þe felde 7 (fol. 106<sup>b</sup>a) Sere Thomas Percy take and kepte  
 in holde. .ij. dayes 7 tyll þe kinge had sette reste a  
 monge his peple on boþe sydes // And þanne Sere Thomas  
 Percy was Iugged to ben dede þat is to wete draue hanged

<sup>6</sup>Space left in text for rubricated stella comata, which  
 is written in black in right margin of col. by (?) Hand D.

7 his hede smeten of for his fals treson at Srovesbery  
 7 his hed was brouzte to london 7 sette on london Brigge  
 7 alle þe opere peple þat þere were slayne on boþe  
 partyes. þe kyng lete berie 7 þere were slayne on þe  
 kinges syde in þat Batayle þe erle of Stafford 7 Sere  
 water Blonte in þe kinges cote armour vndir þe kyngis  
 Banere 7 many mo worthy men on whoes soules god haue  
 mercy Amen / 7 in þe .iiij. 3ere of king henries Regne  
 come þe emperour of constantynople of grece with many  
 lordis 7 knyghtes 7 mekel opere peple of his contre in to  
 englonde to kyng henry with him to speke 7 to dysporte  
 him 7 to see þe gode<sup>7</sup> gouernaunce 7 þe condiciouns of  
 our pepul 7 to knowe þe comoditeys<sup>8</sup> of englond and owre  
 kyng with all hys worthy lordis godely 7 worshepfully  
 him resseyved 7 well comed with alle hys meyne þat com  
 with him 7 dede him all þe reuerence 7 worship þat þey  
 cowde 7 myzte 7 a none þe kyng comaunded him all manere  
 of officers þat longed vnto suche a worthi lord 7  
 emperoure<sup>n</sup> 7 all on his owne coste as longe as þe  
 emperoure was in englonde 7 alle his men þat comen with  
 him And<sup>3</sup> in þis same 3ere come dame Iana þe duchesse of  
 Breteyne in to englond 7 loded at ffalmowthe in  
 Cornewayle . 7 from þens she was brouzte to þe Cetee of  
 wynchestre 7 þere she was wedded vnto kyng henry þe iiij.  
 in þe Abbay of Seint Swythynes of wynchestre with alle  
 þe Solempnyte þat myzte be done 7 made / And sone aftir  
 She was brouzt from þennes to london / 7 þe Mayre 7 þe  
 Aldermen 7 all þe commens of þe Cetee of london reden a  
 3ens here 7 here well comed 7 brouzte here þorowe þe  
 cetee of london vnto westmynster 7 þere she was crowned  
 7 made quene of englond 7 þere þe kyng made a ryall 7 a  
 Solempne ffeste for here 7 for all manere of men þat þedir

<sup>7</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; caret in text. <sup>8</sup>of  
 our ... comoditeys by scribe in left margin of col.



wolde come . 7 in þis same 3ere was dame Blaunche þe  
 eldest douster of king henryes þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. was I sente ouere  
 þe See with þe erle of Somersete here vncle 7 with  
 Mayster Richard Clyfford þan Bysshop̄ (fol. 106<sup>b</sup>) of  
 worcestre and with many opere lordis kny3tes and ladyes  
 7 worthy Squyers as longed to seche a worthy lady 7 comen  
 vnto Coleyne 7 þeder come þe Dukes Sone of Bayre with a  
 faire meyne 7 resseyued þis worthy lady 7 þere þe Bysshop̄  
 of worcestre wedded 7 sacrid hem to gedre as holi chirche  
 wolde 7 þere was made a Ryall ffeste 7 a grete Iustes in  
 þe Reuerence 7 worshep of hem 7 to all peple þat come  
 þedre 7 whan þis Mariage 7 ffeste was done þe erle 7 þe  
 Bisshop with all here meyne token here leue of lord 7  
 lady 7 comen home a 3en in to englond in safte þanked be  
 god. 7 in þe .v<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries Regne þe lord  
 Thomas king henries sone þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. wente ouere þe See 7  
 þe erle of kent 7 many opere lordis 7 kny3tes 7 men of  
 Armes 7 archers a grete meyne venten to þe See to chastice  
 þe Rebelles þat to forne had don mekel harme to oure  
 Englisshe Marchaundis 7 to many townes 7 portes in  
 englond vpon þe See coostes 7 þe lord Thomas þe kynges  
 sone come in to fflaundres to fore a towne þat is callid  
 þe Skluse amonge alle þe Shippis þat weren in þe Swyn<sup>i</sup>  
 7 þere reden with here Shippis a monges hem 7 wenten a  
 londe 7 sported hem þere .ij. dayes 7 comen a 3en to  
 here Shippis 7 token þe Brode See 7 þere þey metten with  
 .iiij. Carikes of Gene<sup>j</sup> þat weren lade with dyuerse  
 Marchaundises 7 well I manned 7 þere þey fou3ten to gedres  
 longe but þe englisshe men had þe victorie 7 brou3ten all  
 þre Carikes in to þe Caumbre<sup>k</sup> by fore wynchelsee . 7 þere  
 þey canted<sup>l</sup> pese godes 7 one of pese Carykes was sodenly  
 brent 7 þe lordis 7 here peple torned hem home a 3en 7  
 wenten no ferþere at þat tyme 7 in þat same 3ere / Serle  
 3eman of þe king Richard Robes<sup>m</sup> come in to englond 7  
 seyde to dyuerse pepull þat king Richard was alyfe in

Scotlond 7 so mekill pepull by leuyd in his wordis  
 wherfore mekel of þe Reame weren in grete errour 7  
 greccinge<sup>n</sup> a 3ens the kinge þorowe informacioun of hys  
 lyes 7 fals lesinges<sup>o</sup>. þat þis Serle had made. for mekell  
 pepull trusted 7 beleued in hys seyng but at þe laste he  
 was taken in þe North contre 7 by lawe Iugged to ben drawe  
 þorowe euery Cete 7 good Borowe towne in englond 7 so  
 he was (fol. 107<sup>a</sup>) serued and the laste he was brouzte  
 to london vnto þe Gylde halle by fore þe Iustices 7 þere  
 he was Iugged for to ben brouzt to þe Toure of london 7  
 þere to be leyde on an herdell / and þanne to be drawe  
 þorowe þe Cete of london to Tyborne 7 þere hanged 7  
 þanne quarterd 7 his hed Smeten of 7 sette on london  
 Brygge 7 his quarters to ben sente to .iiij. gode townes  
 of englond 7 þere sette vp 7 þus ended he for his false  
 tresoun 7 dysseyte / And þe .vj<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries  
 Regne þe erle of Marre of Scotlond by safe condite come  
 in to englond to challenge Sere edmund þe erle of kent  
 of serteyne cours of werre hit<sup>a</sup> on hors bak 7 so þis  
 challenge was accepte 7 graunted 7 þe place take in  
 Smethefeld at london 7 þis erle of Marre þe Scotte come  
 proudly in to þe feld as his challenge askep 7 a none  
 come Inne þe erle of kent 7 rode vnto þe Scotte 7  
 manfully reden to gedir with sharpe sperys dyuerse cours  
 but þe erle of kent had þe feld 7 gate him mokol worshep  
 7 þanke of all maner of men for his manful dedis / And  
 in þe .vj<sup>e</sup> 3ere<sup>1</sup> of kyng henries Regne þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. Sere  
 Richard of Scroupe erchebisshop . of 3orke 7 þe lord  
 Mowbray erle Marchall of englond gadred vnto hem a  
 stronge meyne in þe northe contre a 3ens kyng henry / and  
 þanne þe kyng heryng þere of in alle þe haste þat he  
 my3te come with his power northward 7 mette with hem at

---

Fol. 107 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; caret in  
 text.



3orke 7 þere were þese .ij. lordis taken 7 brou3te vnto  
 þe kynge 7 a none þe Iugges weren sette 7 þese .ij.  
 lordis<sup>2</sup> brou3t forth 7 þere þey were dampned vnto þe  
 deth þat bothe here hedes shold be smeten of 7 þere þey  
 made an ende on whos soules god for hys pite haue mercy  
 Amen 7 whan þis was don þe king come to london a 3en 7  
þere rested hym / And a none god of his grete godenesse  
 wrou3te 7 shewed many grete meracles for þis worthy  
 clerke erchebisshop of 3orke þat þus was don vnto the dep  
 And<sup>3</sup> in þe .vij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries Regne dame luce  
 þe dukes Suster of Melane come in to england 7 so vnto  
 london 7 þere was wedded to Sere edmund of holond erle  
 of kent in þe priori of Seint Mary Ouereys in South  
 werke<sup>b</sup> with mekell Solempnite 7 grete worshep (fol. 107<sup>a</sup>b)  
 for the king was þere hym selfe and gaf here at the  
 chirche dore 7 wan þey were wedded 7 masse was don þe  
 king his owne persone brou3t 7 ledde þys worthy lady in  
 to þe Bysshopis place of wynchestre 7 þere was a wondir  
 grete fesste holden to alle manere of peple þat þedir  
 comen And in þe same 3ere Sere Robert knolles / kny3th  
 þe worthy werryour deyde at his manere in Northfolke 7  
 ffrom þennes he was brou3th to london vpon an hors bere<sup>c</sup>  
 with mekell torche ly3th 7 so was he brou3te vnto þe  
 whyte ffreres in flete strete<sup>d</sup> 7 þere was don 7 made for  
 hym a Solempne feste 7 a Ryall terment for alle þo þat  
 þeder wolde come boþe pore 7 ryche 7 þere he lythe beried  
 by dame Custaunce his wyfe in þe myddes of þe body of þe  
 Cherche on whos soule god for his pete haue mercy Amen /  
 7 in þis same 3ere Sere Thomas of Rampston kny3th  
 Constabull of þe Toure of london was dreinte at london  
 Brygge as he come fro westmynster towardis þe toure in  
 a Barge 7 all þorowe lewednes / And in þe same 3ere dame

<sup>2</sup>Added later by scribe in right margin at end of line.

<sup>3</sup>In left margin of col.: α

philip be 3onger dou3ter of kyng henri be .iiij<sup>e</sup>. was  
 lad ouere be See with Sere Richard be dukes broþere of  
 3orke 7 Sere<sup>4</sup> edmounde Courteney Bysshop of Norwyche 7  
 many opere lordis kny3thes 7 squyers ladies 7 Ientell  
 wemen as longid 7 perþeyned vnto seche a worthi kynges  
 dou3ter / And comen in to denmark to a towne þat is  
 callyd Elsyngborowe / And theder come be kinge of denmark  
 with his lordis And resseyued þis worthy lady for his  
 wyfe 7 well comed þese worthi lordis 7 dede hem mekell  
 reuerence 7 grete worshepe 7 þaṅ þey were brou3t to a  
 towne þat me calleþ london in denmark<sup>e</sup> / 7 þere was þis  
 lady wedded 7 sacrid to be kyng of denmark with mekell  
 Solempnite 7 þere was she crowned quene of denmarke  
 Norway 7 Swethe<sup>f</sup> 7 þere was made a Ryall feste / 7 whan  
 þe feste 7 mariage was done 7 ended þese lordis 7 ladies  
 token here leue of kyng 7 quene 7 comen home a 3en in to  
 englond in safte þanked be Ihesus 7 in be .viij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere  
 of kyng henries Regne þere was a Man þat was clepyd be  
 walse clerke<sup>5</sup> walshe clerke<sup>g</sup> 7 he appeled a kny3t of  
 walys þat me callyd Sere Percyuale Sawdoun of tresoun 7  
 þere þey<sup>6</sup> weren Ioyned to fy3te vnto þe deth (fol. 107<sup>b</sup>a)  
 with in the lystes and þe day 7 tyme and place assigned  
 7 lemyted to be done 7 ended in Smethefeld at wheche daye  
 þese .ij. perþones comen in to þe felde 7 fou3ten sore  
 7 my3teli to gedre but at þe laste þe kny3th ouere come  
 þe clerke 7 made hym 3elde him creaunt of his fals a  
 pechement þat he had seide on hym 7 þan was he dyspoyled  
 of his armoure 7 drawe oute of þe felde to Tyborne 7  
 þere was he hanged 7 þe kny3th take to grace 7 was a gode  
 man / 7 in þis same 3ere Sere<sup>1</sup> henry Erle of Northumberlond  
 7 þe lord Bardulff comen oute of Scotlond in pregidise 7

<sup>4</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text. <sup>5</sup>was  
 clepyd ... clerke by scribe in right margin of col. <sup>6</sup>By  
 scribe over erasure.



distruxioun of kyng henri wherefore þey of þe Northcontre  
 a resen vpon hem 7 faust with hem 7 scomfited hem 7 token  
 hem 7 smeten of here hedes 7 quarterd here bodies 7 sente  
 þe hed of erle 7 a quarter of þe lord Bardulff to london  
 7 þere þey were sette vpon þe Brigge for here fals treson  
 þat þey had purposed azens þe kyng / 7 in þe .ix<sup>e</sup>. 3ere  
 of kyng henries Regne was sere edmond of hoolond<sup>7</sup> erle  
 of kent made amerell of england<sup>h</sup> forto kepe þe See 7 he  
 wente to þe See with many a<sup>8</sup> Ryall Shipp þat weren ful  
 welle a rayed 7 appereyled 7 en armyd with many gode men  
 of armes 7 of archers 7 of gode defence of werre in þe  
 kinge name of england 7 so he loded at þe laste in þe  
 coste of Bretayne in þe Ile of Briacke with all his peple  
 7 beseged þe Castell 7 sawted hit but þey with stode him  
 with grete defence 7 strengthe / 7 anone he lete sette  
 hys ordinaunce 7 in þe leyng of a gonne come a quarell  
 7 smote þe gode erle in þe hede 7 þere he cau3te his  
 dethes wounde but 3et þey lefte not tyll þey had gete þe  
 castell 7 all þat was þere In 7 þere þis gode lord deyde  
 on whos soule god haue mercy amen And his meyne come home  
 A 3en into england with þis erles body 7 was beryed amonge  
 his Aunceters ry3th worthyly 7 in þe same 3ere was a  
 grete ffroste in england þat dured .xv. wekes 7 in þe  
 .x<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kynge henries Regne iiij<sup>e</sup>. come þe Seneshall  
 of henaude with opere meyne in to þis londe to seke  
 auntres<sup>i</sup> (fol. 107<sup>b</sup>) to gete him worshepe in dedis of  
 Armes bothe on horse bake 7 on fote of alle manere  
 poyntes 7 dedis of werre 7 þe Seneshall chalenged þe  
 erle<sup>2</sup> of Somersete 7 þe erle delyuered him manfully in  
 all his chalenges 7 putte his aduersarye to þe worse in  
 poyntys 7 wan hym grete worshepe 7 had þe gre in þe felde  
 7 þe nexte day come in to þe felde a nobere man of armes

<sup>7</sup>hoo- by scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>8</sup>Small oblique stroke like superfluous hyphen after a.

of þe Seneshall partye 7 a 3ens him come Sere Richard of  
 aroundell kny3th 7 þe henaude had þe better of hym of fote  
 in one poynte for he brouzte him on hys one kne 7 þe  
 pirdde day come in a noþere Man of armes in to þe ffelde  
 7 a 3ens him come Sere Iohn Cornewayle kny3th 7 manly 7  
 kny3thly quyt hym in all manere of poyntes a 3ens his  
 aduersarie 7 had þe better in þe feld / And on þe .iiij.  
 day come Sere Iohn Cheyneys Sone / 7 manly quyt hym a  
 3ens his aduersarie for he caste hors 7 man in to þe felde  
 7 þus he had þe ffeld / 7 þe kyng for hys manhode at þat  
 tyme dubbud hym knyzt 7 þe .v<sup>e</sup>. day þere come a noþere  
 man of armes of þe henaudes party in to þe ffelde 7 to  
 him come in Iohn Steward Squyer 7 manfully quyt him þere  
 in all manere of of<sup>j</sup> poyntes 7 had þe better / 7 in þe  
 .vj<sup>e</sup>. day come in a noþere henaude / 7 to him come  
 william Porter Squyer / 7 manfully he quyt hym 7 had þe  
 better in þe felde / And þe kyng dubbud him kny3th þe  
 same tyme / 7 þe .vij<sup>e</sup> day come in a noþere henaude into  
 þe felde 7 to hym come Iohn Standisshe Squyer 7 manfully  
 he quyt him on his aduersarie 7 had þe better in þe felde  
 7 þere þe kyng dubbud hym kny3th þe same day 7 on þe same  
 day come in a noþere henaude 7 to hym come a Squyer of  
 Gascoyne 7 proudly 7 manly he quyt hym on his aduersarie /  
 7 þere had þe better 7 a none þe kyng dubbud him kni3th /  
 7 in þe .viij<sup>e</sup>. day come in to þe ffelde .ij. Men of  
 armes of henaude 7 to hem come .ij. Sowdyours of Caley's  
 þat weren breþeren / and weren cleped þe Borowes 7 well  
 7 manly quyt hem on here aduersaries 7 (fol. 108<sup>a</sup>) had  
 þe better in þe felde / And þus ended þese challenges  
 with mekell worshep 7 þe kyng in þe reuerence of þe  
 straungers made a gret feste ta<sup>a</sup> alle manere of men 7 he  
 gaf the strangers riche 3eftes / 7 þey token here leue 7  
 wenten home in to here contre / 7<sup>l</sup> in þe .xj<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of



kyng henries Regne þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. þere was don a grete batayle  
 in Smethefed<sup>b</sup> by twene .ij. Squyers . þat one me called  
 Gloucetre þat was þe appellant 7 arthure þat was  
 defendaunt and well 7 manfully fousten to gedres long  
 tyme / And þe king for here manfulnes / 7 of his grace  
 toke here querell in his hande 7 made hem to go oute of  
 þe felde boþe at onys / 7 so þey weren dymissed of here  
 batayle 7 þe king gaf hem grace / And<sup>1</sup> in þe xij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere  
 of kyng henries Regne þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. Ryse of dye a Squyer of  
 walis þat was a rebell 7 a ryser 7 a supporter of Ewayne  
 of Glendore þat dede mekell destruxioun vn to þe kinges  
 peple in walis was taken 7 brouȝte to london 7 þere he  
 come afore þe Iustices 7 was dampned for his tresoun /  
 7 þan he was had to þe toure of london 7 þere he was  
 leyde vpon an hirdell 7 so drawe forth vn to Tyborne  
 þorowe þe Cete 7 þere he was hanged<sup>2</sup> 7 lete downe a 3en  
 7 his hed smeten of 7 his body quarterd 7 sente in to  
 .iiij. Townes 7 his hed sette vpon london Brygge 7<sup>1</sup> in  
 þe .xiiij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries Regne þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. deyde  
 Sere Iohn Beauford þe erle of Somersete þat was captayne  
 of Caleys. At þe abbay of Toure hyll on whos soule god  
 haue mercy Amen / And in þe same 3ere þe lord Thomas kyng  
 henries Sone wedded þe Countesse of Somersete 7 in þis  
 same 3ere come þe enbassatoures of ffraunce in to england  
 from þe duke of Burgoyne vnto þe prince of englonde kyng  
 henries sone 7 heyre for helpe 7 socour of men of Armes  
 7 archerrs a3en þe duke Of orleaunce hys enmye 7 at þe  
 Princes ordynaunce wente ouere þe erle of Aroundell 7  
 Sere Gilbert vmfirvile erle of keme / And þe lord Cobham  
 Sere Iohn Oldecaste<sup>c</sup> 7 many opere gode knyȝthes 7 worthy  
 (fol. 108<sup>a</sup>b) Squyers of men of Armes 7 gode Archers  
 wenten ouere þe See in to ffraunce 7 comen to Parys to  
 þe duke of Bugoyne 7 þere he resseyved 7 well comed þese

---

<sup>2</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.

englisshe lordis 7 all here meyne 7 þan hit was done hym  
 to wete þat þe duke of Orlyaunce was come to Senclowe<sup>d</sup>  
 faste by Parys with a gret mounbir<sup>e</sup> of men of armes 7  
 arblastars / and þeder wente oure englisshe men 7 fouzte  
 with hem 7 gate þe Brygge of Senclowe 7 þere þey slowe  
 mekell meyne of þe ffrenche men 7 arminackis<sup>f</sup> 7 þe  
 remenaunt fledde 7 wente here way 7 wolde no lenger abyde  
 7 oure englisshe men come a 3en to parys 7 þere þey  
 token here leue of þe duke 7 comen hom a3en in to englond  
 in safte 7 þe duke 3af hem grete 3eftes / And in the same  
 3ere a none folowyng þe duke of Orleaunce sent  
 enbassatoures in to englond to kyng henrie þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>.  
 besechinge him of helpe 7 socoure a3ens his dedely enmy  
 þe duke of Burgoyne an þan þe king made his sone / Thomas  
 the duke of Clarence 7 his opere Sone Iohn duke of Bedfor  
 7 his oper sone Vmfrey duke of Gloucestre 7 Sere Thomas  
 Beauford erle of dorsete 7 þe duke of awmarle he made  
 duke of 3orke / And þanne þe kinge ordeyned his Sone  
 Thomas duke of Clarence 7 Sere edward duke of 3orke 7  
 Sere Thomas Beauford erle of dorsete 7 Sere Iohn  
 Cornewale 7 many opere lordis 7 kny3thes Squyers 7 men  
 of Armes 7 many archers to gon ouere þe See in to ffraunce  
 in helpynge and strengthing of þe duke of orliaunce a 3ens  
 þe duke of Burgoyne 7 þese worthy lordis with all here  
 retenewe Shippyd at hamptoun / 7 seylede ouere in to  
 Normandye 7 loded at hogges 7 þere mette with hem þe  
 lord hamby at here londyng with a .viij. M<sup>l</sup>. men of armes  
 of ffrenche men / and þre Sergeauntes of armes with him  
 7 alle were putte to fly3th 7 taken of hem .viij<sup>c</sup>. men of  
 armes . 7 .iiij<sup>c</sup>. hors with outen þo þat were slayne in  
 the felde 7 so þey reden forth þorowe out ffraunce 7  
 token Castelles 7 townes 7 slowe mekel peple of ffrenche  
 men þat with stode hem 7 token (fol. 108<sup>b</sup>a) many preseneres  
 as þey reden and so þey passid forthe tyll þey come to  
 Burdeux and þere þey rested hem a whyle 7 sette the



contre in pees 7 reste tyll þe vengage<sup>g</sup> were redy to  
 seyle 7 þe duke with his meyne come in to englond in  
 safte þanked be Ihesus 7 in þe same 3ere was þe kinges  
 koyne chaunged þorowe oute englond by þe king 7 his  
 counceyle þat is to saye þe nobull half nobull 7  
 fferthinge of gold // 7 in þe .xiiij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kinge  
 henries Regne þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. þe king lete make Galeys of  
 werre for he had hoped to haue passyd þe grete See forthe  
 to Ierusalem 7 þere to haue endid his lyfe but god  
 vesited hym so sone aftir with in firmities 7 grete  
 sicknes þat he my3te not well endure no while so  
 feruently he was take 7 brou3te in bedde / At westmynster  
 in a faire chambir. And as he lay a bedde he asked his  
 chambirleyn what þey called þe chambir þat he lay inne.  
 7 þey answered 7 seyde Ierusalem 7 þan he seide his  
 prophecie was fulfillyd þat was prophecied of him for  
 his prophesie seide þat he shold make his ende 7 die.  
 in Ierusalem 7 þanne he made him redy to god 7 disposid  
 all his will 7 sone aftir he deide 7 was caried by watir  
 from westmynster in a Barge to ffeueresham 7 from þenns  
 to Caunterbery by lande with mekel torche ly3t brennyng  
 in to þe Abbay of crist chirche 7 þere he was worthely  
 7 Solemply entered 7 beried by Syde Seint Thomas Sryne<sup>h</sup>  
 of Caunterbery 7 þus ended þe worthi king. king henri[e]<sup>3</sup>  
 þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. a bowte Midlenten Sondag in þe 3ere of lord  
 Ihesus criste a .M<sup>l</sup>. CCCC<sup>o</sup> 7 .xiiij on whos soule god for  
 his pete haue mercy. Amen

Aftir þe dethe of king henri the .iiij<sup>e</sup>. Regned his Sone  
 þat was born̄ at Monmowthe in walys.

And aftir þe deth of king henri þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. Regned  
 [.....]<sup>4</sup> henrie his sone þat was born̄ at Monmouthe in

---

<sup>3</sup>-e erased. <sup>4</sup>Word erased.

(fol. 168<sup>a</sup>) And aftir þis kyng herry þe .iiij. regned  
herry kyng of Englonde þe .v. a worthy conqueroure

[A]nd<sup>1</sup> aftyr the dethe of kyng herry the .iiij. Reignid  
kyng herry hys sone þat was borne in Monmowth in



walis þat was a worthy kyng 7 a gracious 7 a grete  
 conqueroure / and in þe firste 3ere of his Regne (fol.  
 108<sup>b</sup>) ffor grete loue and godenes he lete sende to  
 langlele þere as his ffadir had don beried kyng Richard  
 þe .ij<sup>e</sup>. 7 lete take vp his<sup>5</sup> body a3en oute of þe erthe  
 7 dede bringe him to westmynstir 7 þere he lete make for  
 him a Riall 7 Solempne terment 7 beried him by quene  
 Anne his wyfe as his owne desire was on the Southside of  
 Seint edwardis Scryne in þe abbay of Seint Petirs of  
 westmynster<sup>i</sup> on whos soule god haue mercy Amen And in the  
 same 3ere weren a certeyne of lollardis 7 fals heretikys  
 taken þat had purposed þorowe false treson to haue slayn  
 oure kyng 7 for to haue haue<sup>6</sup> destroyed alle the clergie  
 of þis Reame 7 þey my3te haue had here fals purpos.<sup>7</sup> but  
 oure lord god wolde not suffere hit / for in hast oure  
 king had warnyng þere of 7 of all here false ordinaunces  
 7 worching<sup>7</sup> 7 come sodenli with all his power to Seint  
 Iones with outen Smethefeld 7 a none þey token of þese  
 lollardys 7 false heretikes 7 bro3te hem vnto þe kynges  
presence.<sup>7</sup> þere þey toke all here false purpos 7  
 ordinaunce how þey wolde haue wrou3t 7 þey my3te haue  
 Regned 7 haue had here wille 7 þere þey tolde whiche 7  
 who weren here Capteynes 7 here gouernowres 7 þan þe king  
 comaunded hem vnto the Toure of london 7 þan þey toke moo  
 of hem bothe with Inne þe Cetee 7 with oute 7 sente hem  
 to Newgate 7 in to bothe countours 7 þan þey weren brou3t  
 in examinacioun by fore þe clergie 7 þe kinges Iustices  
 7 þere þey were convicte byfore þe clergie for here false  
 heresie 7 dampned byfore þe Iustices for here false  
 tresoun 7 þis was here Iuggement þat þey shold be drawe  
 from þe Toure of london þorowe þe Cetee vnto Seint Gyles  
 ffelde 7 þere to be hanged 7 brent galowes 7 all 7 so þey

<sup>5</sup>By scribe in left margin of col.; caret in text.

<sup>6</sup>Stroked out. <sup>7</sup>Scribe has omitted point of (.<sup>7</sup>).



waylis and was a worthy kyng and a gracious mañ and a gret conqueror and the fyrst 3er of hys Reigne for gret love and goodnes he Sent to be fryrs of langlay ther as hys fadyr had done p<sup>a</sup> berryd kyng rycharde be seconde and let take be body out of be erthe and did bryng hym to westmestyr in a ryall Char couverd wyt blake weluet and banars wyt dyuers harmes A boutte And all be horrsys trappyd wer tIn<sup>b</sup> blake and betyne<sup>c</sup> wyt dyuers harmes and meny a torche lyth beryng<sup>2d</sup> by All the way tell he come to westmestyr and ther he lett make for hyme A ryall and A Solempe terment and beryd hym<sup>3</sup> by quene Anne hys wyff and hys desyr was on be fardersyd of Sent Edwardys Chryne in the Abbay of sent Petyrs at westmestyr on hosse soull god haue mercy And in the same 3er wer a sartene of lollers and false heretykys<sup>4</sup> takyne and had pursuyd pource false tresoun to haue dystroyd our kyng And for to haue dystroyd all be charge of thys reme and pay my3th haue her false porpos But our lord god wold not Souyryt it<sup>5</sup> for in hast our kyng had warnyng ther of all be false hordynance and werchyng and come sodenly wyt hys pour to Sent Ihonys wyt oute Smetwelle and a none thay tokyne A Serten of the lollers and false heretykis and brouth hem in to the kyngys Presons and thay told all her false Porposse and ordynauns how pay wold haue done and wrouth (fol. 168<sup>b</sup>) of<sup>5</sup> yf they myth haue reignid and ther thay told wyche wer thayr capeteynys and her gouernours And pane the comandyd to be tour of london And than thay token moo of them bothe wyt in the Cyte and wyth out A Sent hem in to newgat and ij<sup>e</sup> bothe Coountrys and pane pey wer brouthe in excemenacioun befor clerge 7 be kyngis Iustys and per pey wer conuected befor be clerge for har false herosy and dampnyd be for be Iustysse for her false tresoun And pis was her I<sup>6</sup> gemmente pat pay shall be drawe from be tour of london porow london in to Sent Gylis feld And ther to be hangid and brente

<sup>2</sup>-e- by scribe above; caret in text. <sup>3</sup>Inserted by scribe above; caret in text. <sup>4</sup>Badly formed second -e- like o.

<sup>5</sup>Stroked out. <sup>6</sup>Followed by mark, poss. start of u.



weren 7 pere was taken Sere Rogere of acton kny3th bope  
 for lollardrye 7 eke treson a 3ens þe king 7 þe Reame 7  
pere he come afore þe clergie 7 was conuicte for his  
 heresie 7 lewed lollardrye to be brent 7 dampned by fore  
 þe Iustices to be drawe from þe Toure of london (fol.  
 109<sup>a</sup>) þorowe the cete to Seint Gyles ffelde 7 pere to  
 be hanged 7 brent / And in þe .ij. 3ere of king henries  
 Regne þe .v<sup>e</sup>. he held a counceyle of all þe lordis of hys  
 Reame at westmynster 7 pere he putte to hem þis demaunde  
 7 prayed 7 be souzte hem of here good counceyle 7 good  
 wylle to shewe hym as towchinge þe tytelle 7 ry3th þat  
 he had to Normendie Gascoyne 7 Gyane þe whiche þe kinge  
 of ffraunce with helde wrongfully 7 vnry3tfully þe  
 whiche his Auncetres by fore him had holde by trewe  
 tytell of conquete 7 ry3th heritage þe whiche Normandie  
 Gascoyne 7 Gyane the gode kinge edward of wyndesore 7  
 hys auncetres by fore him hadden holde alle here lyfe  
 tymes / And þanne his worthy lordis gaf him counceyle to  
 sende ambassatoures vnto þe king of ffraunce 7 his  
 counceyle 7 þat he sholde 3elde vp vnto him hys ry3t  
 heritage þat is to saye Normandie Gascoyne 7 Gyane þe  
 whiche his predecessoures hadden holde afore hym . or  
 ellis he wolde hit wyne with dynte of Swerd in shorte  
 tyme with þe helpe of Ihesus.// And þan the dolfyn of .  
 ffraunce answered to oure enbassatoures 7 saide in þis  
 manere þat king henre was ouere 3onge 7 to tendre of age  
 to make any werre a 3enste hym 7 was nou3t like 3ete to  
 be no gode werreoure to do 7 to make seche a conquete  
pere vpon hem but be cause þat he was lusty gentyll 7  
 small 7 som what in scorne 7 in dispite he sente vnto  
 him a tonne full of tenyes balles be cause he wolde haue  
 a do to playe with all for him 7 for his lordis. 7 þat  
 be come him bettur þan to mayntene any werre 7 þan he  
 seyde a dev<sup>b</sup>. 7 oure lordis þe whiche were enbassatoures  
 token here leue . 7 comen in to england a 3en 7 tolde

In the 3er of kyng herry Reigne v. held a Consell of all  
 þe lordys of the Reme at westmestyr and þer he put hem  
 þus<sup>7</sup> Demande and prayd and by southe heme of her good  
 counsell and her good wyll to schew hem as tochyng the  
 ry3th þat he had in normandy Gascoyn̄ 7 Gueyne wyche the  
 kyng of fraunce wyth held wrongfully and on rythfully þe  
 wyche hys hancertres<sup>f</sup> be bre<sup>5</sup> forne hem had hold all her  
 lyvys tyme And hys lordys gaff heme consell to send in  
 bassetourys on to þe kyng of fraunce and to hys consell  
 and þat he shold 3eld vp vnto hym hys ryth herytage þat  
 ys to say Normandy Gascne and Guyeñ the wych his  
 predicessourys had hold to for hem And thane anone our  
 lordys ther wer enbassatour Tokyne her leue and comen̄  
 into Englund a3ene and told

---

<sup>7</sup>Superscript -us.



oure king 7 his counceyle of þe vngodly answer þat þey  
 had of þe dolfyn <sup>1</sup> of þe present þe whiche he had sente  
 vnto þe kyng. 7 whan þe king had herde þo<sup>2</sup> wordis 7 þe  
 answeere of þe dolfyn he was wondir sore a greuyd 7 ry3th  
 euell payed towarde þe ffrenshe king 7 þe dolfyn / 7  
 þou3te to a wenge hym vpon hem as sone as god wolde sende  
 hym grace 7 my3te / And a none lete make tenyes balles  
 for the dolfyn in all þe haste þat þey my3te be made 7  
 þat were harde 7 grete gonne stones (fol. 109<sup>a</sup>b) the  
 dolfyne to pleye with all / and þan a none þe king sente  
 for all his lordis 7 helde a grete counceile at  
 westmynster 7 tolde vnto hem þe aunswere of þe dolfyne /  
 7 also of hys worthy presente þat he had sent to him 7 to  
 his lordis to playe with all 7 þere þe king 7 his lordis  
 weren acorded þat þey sholde ben redy in armes with alle  
 here powere in þe beste aray þat my3te be doñ 7 gete of  
 men of armis 7 archers þat my3te begeten 7 all opere  
 stufte þat longed to werre 7 to be redy with all here  
 retenewe to mete with þe king at Southhamptoun by lammasse  
 nexte folowyng with outen any delay for þe king had  
 ordeyned his Nauey of Shippis with all manere of stufte 7  
 vetayle þat longed to seche a werrioure of all manere of  
 ordinaunces in þe hauene of Southhamptoun in to þe nombre  
 of .CCC. 7 xx. Sayles 7 þan fel þere a gret desese 7  
 a foule myscheff . for þere weren .iiij. englisshe  
 lordis whiche þe king truste meche to / for false  
 couetice had purposyd 7 ymaged þe kinges dep / 7 þou3te  
 to haue slayne him 7 all hys Broþeren or he had take þe  
 See þe wheche were named þus Sire Richard þe erle of  
 Cambrigge broþer to þe duke of 3orke . þe .ij. was þe  
 lord Scrope treserer of england þe þrydde was Sere  
 Thomas Gray a kny3th of þe Northcontre / And þese .iiij.  
 lordis afore seide for lucur of money<sup>c</sup> had made promys

---

Fol. 109 <sup>1</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in  
 text. <sup>2</sup>By scribe over erasure.

þe kyng and hys consell of the vngoodly Answer þat þay  
 had of the Dolfyne and of þe presente (fol. 169<sup>a</sup>) the  
 wyche he had sent vn to þe kyng / And when þe kyng herd  
 her wordys and þe hanswer of the dolfyne he was sor A  
 greuyd and ryth euyll A payd toward þe frennsmeñ and  
 toward the kyng And the Dolfene And towth to Aveng hyme  
 vpon hyme and sone as god wold 3eff hym grace and my3t  
 And none let<sup>1</sup> make tenys ballys for the Dolfyne in alle  
 þe hast þat he myth and þo wer grett gonstonyd for the  
 Dolfyne to play wyt all And þer þe kyng and hys lordys wer  
 accordyd þat þay shuld be redy in armys wyt her pour in  
 the best A ray þat my3th be done of meñ of harmys And of  
 harcherys and all opyr stoff þat longythe on to hyt 7 to  
 be redy At Sowthamptoun to met wyth wyt all her retenew  
 be lammas nex foluyng wyth out Any de lay for the kyng  
 hordynyd hys nave of Schippys wyt all maner of stoff and  
 wetayll þat longth to sege<sup>a</sup> Aweryour of all maner of  
 hordynaunce in the hawyne of South hamptoun in the nombyr  
 of CCC xx saylis And than ffyll der agrett dysse and  
 of foule myscheff for þer wer iij lordys þe wych þe kyng  
 trust much for falsse couetyse þat þay had possyd<sup>b</sup> 7  
 Iugd<sup>c</sup> the kyngys dethe and thouth to haue slayne hyme  
 And all hys bretheryne or he had take þe See þe wyche  
 þay wer namyd The fyrst syr Richard þe Erle of Cambryg  
 brother to the duke of yorke // And the Secund was þe  
 lord Scrope Treseryr of Englund And the iij was syr  
 Thomas Gray of the north contre kny3te And þe-Se<sup>2</sup> þesse  
 lordys Aforsayd for lycour of Money þay had mad promesse

---

Fol. 169 <sup>1</sup>Inserted by scribe above; caret in text.  
<sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



to þe ffrenshe men for to haue Slayne oure kyng 7 alle  
 his worthy Bretherne by a false trayne<sup>d</sup> sodenly or þey  
 had be warre but god of his grace helde hys holi honde  
 ouere hem 7 saued hem from þese per<sup>lous</sup><sup>e</sup> meyne 7 for to  
 haue do þis þey resseyved of þe ffrenshe men a Millioun  
 of Golde 7 þat was þere openly proued 7 for here false  
 treson þey were all þre Iugged vnto þe deth 7 þis was  
 here Iuggement þat þey shold be lad þorowe hamptoun 7  
 at þe Northgate þere to be heded.<sup>v</sup> and þus þey ended for  
 here false couetise 7 tresoun 7 a none as þis was done  
 þe kyng / 7 all hys meyne made hem redy 7 wenten to  
 Shippe 7 token þe See 7 seylede forth with .xv. C.  
 Shippys 7 arrayed with Inne Seyne at kedy kaux<sup>f</sup> vppon  
 oure ladies even þe assumpcioun in Normandie with all  
 his ordinaunce

### Of þe Sege of harflewe<sup>3</sup>

And so wente forth to harflete 7 by Seged þe towne alle  
 abowte bothe by londe 7 eke by water 7 sente to þe  
 Capteyne 7 bad hym delyuere þe towne 7 he seide þat none  
 he delyuered (fol. 109<sup>b</sup> a) hym ne none he wolde to him  
 3elde but bad him do his beste / 7 þan oure king leyde  
 his ordinaunce vnto þat towne þat is for to saye Gunnes  
 Engines Tripgetes<sup>g</sup> 7 shotten 7 caste vnto the walles 7  
 eke in to þe towne 7 caste downe bothe towres 7 towne 7  
 leyde hem vnto þe grounde 7 þere he pleyed at þe tenyes  
 with harde gonne stones 7 þere he fayled of neuere a  
 chaas in all þat game<sup>h</sup> wherfore þey þat were with Inne  
 the towne / whan þey shulde haue pleyed . songon  
 weyalawey 7 allas þat euere any seche tenyes balles were  
 made 7 cursyd all þo þat werre began 7 þe tyme þat euere  
 þey were born 7 on þe morne þe kyng dede crie at euery

---

<sup>3</sup>By scribe in black in right margin of col. of

to the frennce<sup>3</sup> meñ for to haue slayne our kynge and all  
 (fol. 169<sup>b</sup>) hys worthy bretheryne wyth false trayne  
 Soudenlych hor thay had be war but god of hys grace held  
 his hond ouyr heme 7 sawe hem from thes perlesse mayne  
 and for to haue doo thys þey ressayvid of þe frennce meñ  
 A Melyoun of goold And was þer oppenly Preuyd And for her  
 fallse tresoun þey wer all Iugyd vn to þethe And þis was  
 her Iugemente þat þay shuld be led þourch hamptoun and  
 wytout þe north gatt ther to be hedid And þus þay endyd  
 for her false couetousse And hit Anone wan þis done þe  
 kyng and all hys mayne mad hem redy 7 wend to schip tokyn  
 and saylith forthe xv. C Chippys clen harmyd wyt in Seyne  
 at Catcause vp on our ladyes Ewyne the Assumcioun in  
 Normandy wyt hys hordynans And so went hem fforth to  
 hartflet And besegid þe towne all Aboute be lond and be  
 watyr and send to þe Capetayne and bad hyme delyuer þe  
 towne And he sayd he wold hym delyuer none ne wold hym  
 yeld but lat hym do hys best And þan our kyng layd hys  
 hordynance vnto þe towne þat ys to say gonnys 7 Guynys<sup>d</sup>  
 and Trypgetis and sawton vn to þe wallys 7 eke in to þe  
 towne and cast done both tour and towne and leyd on to  
 þe grond and ther he play at tenes wyt his hard gonstonys  
 to þem þat wer wyt in þe towne but wan þay shuld play þay  
 Song wellaway and alas þat euyr ony suche tenys p<sup>e</sup> ballys  
 wer mad and Corsy þo þat wer be gan And on the morow þe  
 kyng ded cry at euyry

---

<sup>3</sup>-e- blotted.



gate of þe towne þat euery man sholde be redy on þe morne  
 erly to make a saute vnto þe towne 7 þan þe lord þe  
 Gawcourte þat was þat tyme Capteyne of þe towne 7 Gillam  
 Bocher 7 Iohn de Graunt with .xij<sup>e</sup>. opere worthi Burgeis  
 comen vnto þe kinge 7 be souzte hym of his Riall mageste  
 7 power to with drawe his malice 7 his destruccioun þat  
 he dede vnto hem / 7 be souzte hym of viij. dayes of  
 respyte 7 trewes 3if any Rescwe myzte come vnto hem 7  
 elles to zelde þe towne vnto him with alle here godis  
 and þan þe kinge sente forthe þe Capteyne 7 kepte þe  
 remenaunt stille with him 7 þe lord Gawcourte wente  
 forthe to Rone in all haste vnto þe dolfyn for helpe 7  
 socoure but þere was none ne no manere of rescwe for þe  
 dolfyn wolde not abyde / 7 þus [þis]<sup>4</sup> þis capteyne come  
 a 3en vnto þe kyng 7 zelde vp þe towne 7 delyuered hym  
 þe keyes 7 he called his vncle þe erle of dorsete 7 made  
 him Capteyne of þe towne þat is to saye hardflewe 7  
 delyuered hym þe keyes 7 bad hym go putte oute alle þe  
 ffrenshe pepul bothe man woman 7 child 7 stuffe this  
 towne of harflewe with englysshe pepull 7 þan þe king  
 sente in to englond 7 did crye in euery good towne of  
 englond þat what crafty<sup>i</sup> nam<sup>j</sup>. wolde come þeder 7 in  
 habite him þere in þe towne of harflewe sholde haue hous  
 7 housholde to him 7 to his heires for euer more 7 þeder  
 wente many diuerse Marchauntis 7 crafty men 7 in habited  
 hem þere to strengthe þe towne 7 weren well come 7 whan  
 þe kyng sawe þis þat his towne was well stuffed bope of  
 vetayle 7 of men / þis worthy kyng toke his (fol. 109<sup>b</sup>)  
 leue and wente hym to Caley's ward by londe and þe ffrenshe  
 men herde of his comynge þey pouzten to stoppe his way  
 þat he sholde nouzt passe þat way 7 in haste broken alle  
 þe brygges þere any passage was for hors or man in so  
 mekell þat þere myzte no man passe ouere þo Reueres

---

<sup>4</sup>Erased.

gate of the towne þat eury shuld be redy on the morowe  
 Erly to make a sawte in to þe towne And wylliam Boucher  
 and Ion Graunte wyt xij obyr worthy borges come 1<sup>f</sup> vn to  
 þe kyng and by south hym of hys ryall Maieste (fol. 170<sup>a</sup>)  
 And powr to wyt draw hys malesse and hys distruccioun þat  
 he dyd onto hym and be sowth hym vij dayis of Respyt and  
 trewys yf anny rescew myth come vn to hym and ells to zeld  
 vp the tone to hym wyt all a~~ll~~<sup>1</sup> har goodys And thane the  
 kyng send forthe þe capetayne and kep þe rempnant styll wyt  
 hym And the lord Tancorte went to<sup>2</sup> Rone in all þe hast d<sup>a</sup>  
 to de d~~off~~<sup>1</sup> Dolfeñ for to haue be holpe and rescuyd but  
 þer was none ne no maner of rescewe for de dolfeñ wold not  
 Abyd And þus þe cam a3ene vnto þe kyng and zeld vp þe towne  
 and delyuer heme þe kayis And he callyd hys Vncle þe Erle  
 of Dorset and mad hem hys capetayn of the towne þat ys to  
 say hartflet and delyuer hym þe kayis And bad hym put<sup>1</sup> put  
 out all þe frennce pepyll both mañ and womañ and chyld and  
 stuffys þis towne of harflett wyt Englysmen And þan þe kyng  
 ded send vnto Englund and lett in eury good towne of  
 Englund þat wat crafty mañ wold come depir and inhabyt heme  
 pere in the towne he shuld ahaue A house to hyme and to hys  
 heyrys for eurymor And þedyr went meny dyuers Marchans and  
 Crafty men to enhabyt heme þer And to strenthe þe towne and  
 wer welcome And when the kyng sawe þat thys towne was well  
 I stoffyd both of vytayll and of men thys worthy Prynce þe  
 kyng toke hys lew and whent hym to Caleys ward by lond And  
 þe frenche men hard of hys comyng and thowth to stop hys  
 way þat he shuld not passe þe Way And in hast brake þe  
 bryg ther<sup>1</sup> þer as ony passage wer for horsse in so much  
 þer myth no passage passe ouer the See Reuers

---

Fol. 170 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>Inserted above by scribe.



neypere on hors bak ne on fote but 3if he shulde be  
 drowned wherfore oure king with all his pepull wente 7  
 Sou3te his way ferre vp to Paris warde 7 pere was all  
 þe Riall power of ffraunce redy to 3eue hym Batayle 7  
 hym to destroye and alle his pepull but god þat is all  
 my3ty was his gyde 7 sauyd hym 7 all his meyne 7 with  
 stode hys enemyes purpos I þankyð be god þat saved so  
 his owne kny3th 7 kyng in his ry3tfull tytell / And þan  
 oure kyng by holdyng 7 seyng þe grete multitude 7  
 nombre of his enemyes to with stonde his way 7 forto  
 3eue him Batayle / þan þe kinge with a meke herte 7 a  
 gode sperite lefte vp his handis to all my3ti Ihesus 7  
 be sou3te him of helpe 7 socour 7 þat day to saue his  
 trewe seruauntes 7 þan oure kyng gadrid all his lordis  
 7 opere pepull aboute him 7 bad hem alle to ben of gode  
 chere ffor þey sholde haue afayre day 7 a gracious  
 victorie 7 þe better of all his enemyes 7 prayde hem  
 all to make hem redy vnto þe Batayle for he wolde rapere  
 ben ded þat day in the felde þan to betake<sup>k</sup> of hys  
 enemyes for he wold neuere put þe Reame of englond to no  
 Raunsom for his persone / 7 þan þe duke of 3orke ffell  
 on knees 7 besou3te þe king of a bone þat he wolde  
 graunte him þat day þe vaward<sup>l</sup> in his Batayle 7 þe king  
 grauntid him his askyng 7 seyde gromercy my cosyn 3orke  
 7 prayed hym to make hym redy 7 þan a none he bad euery  
 man do ordeyne him a stake of tre 7 sharpe bothe endys  
 þat þe stake my3te be py3te<sup>m</sup> in þe erthe a slope<sup>n</sup> by  
 fore euery archer þat here enemyes sholde not ouere  
 ryde hem for þat was here false purpos 7 a rayed hem  
 alle þere fore to ouere ryde oure meyne at þe firste  
 meting of hem sodenly in þe firste bronte<sup>o</sup> / 7 alle þe  
 ny3te by fore þe Batayle þe ffrenshe pepull made many  
 grete ffires 7 mekell reuell<sup>5</sup> with howting<sup>p</sup> 7 Showting

---

<sup>5</sup>Added by scribe in right margin at end of line.

nethyr in hors ne on fotte but 3if he shuld be drownyd  
 wher for our kyng wyt all hys pepyll (fol. 170<sup>b</sup>) And went  
 and southe hys way for vp to parrys ward And ther was all  
 be ryall pour of fraunce redy to 3if hym batayll And to  
 dystroy all his pepyll But god þat was hys gide sawyd hem  
 and hys mayne And wytstod hys enmys porposse thankyd be  
 god þat sauyd so hys owne kny3th 7 kyng and hys rythfull  
 tityll And þane þe kyng he holdyng<sup>b</sup> and seyng the multitud  
 of hys pepyll hys enmys to wyt stond hys way and to 3if  
 hem batayll þan þe kyng wyt a meke Speryt lyfte vp hys  
 hondys to all my3ty god And be south of his help and Socur  
 And þat þay<sup>c</sup> to saue hys trew serwantys And our kyng  
 gadyrd all our lordys and oþyr pepyll A boutte hym and bad  
 hem all to be a good cher for þay shuld haue afayr day and  
 a gracyus victory and haue the bettyr of all hys enmyes  
 And prayd hem hall to make hem redy in to the batayll for  
 he wold raper be ded in the feld þan to be take of hys  
 enmys for he wold neuyr put þe rem of Englund to no  
 rawnsoun for hys persone And the duke of yorke fyll on  
 kneys and be sowth the king of A bone þat he wold grante  
 hyme þat þay the wonward of hys batayll and the grantyd  
 hyme his haxing And sayd gramercy Cosyn of yorke and prad  
 hem to make hyme redy / And þan he bad euyry mañ to ordyne  
 hym astake of tre and scharpyd at both Endys þat þe stake  
 my3t be pythe in the erth A Slope þat her enmys shuld nott  
 ouyrryd hem ffor þat was her false porpos and arayd hem  
 all þer to ouyr Ryd our mayne at þe fyrst comyng (fol. 171<sup>a</sup>)  
 of hym Sodenly in the fyrste bronte And in the ny3th be for  
 þe frennce meñ mad meny grett ferys and much rewell wyt  
 howtyng 7 Schowtyng



7 pleyed oure king 7 his lordis at þe dyse 7 .vj. Archers  
 all way for a blank of here money<sup>q</sup> for þey wende all had  
 ben heres / þe morne (fol. 110<sup>a</sup>) A roes þe day gan  
 springe<sup>a</sup> 7 þe king wente to messe first in þe moron 7  
 when masse was don þe lord held þat was presenere to þe  
 duke of Excetre þat stole a way fro þe Castell of Makesey  
 come on message fro þe lordis of ffraunce to þe king / 7  
 sayde to þe king þat he my3t not passe þe daunger of þe  
 lordis of ffraunce þe whiche were þere before hym 7 wen  
 he had seide þe king bede him goo oute of his sight fals  
 forsworne knyghte for he was sworne to be trewe presenere  
 to þe duke of Exceter 7 after he stole away / þan the  
 kinge a none by gode a vyse lete a raye hys Batayle 7  
 his wynges 7 charged euery man to kepe hem hole to gedres  
 7 prayed hem alle to ben of good cher 7 whan þey were  
 redy he askyd what tyde of day hit was. 7 þey seide  
 prime. þan saide [owne]<sup>1</sup> oure king now is good tyme<sup>2</sup>  
 for all oure londe preyed for vs 7 þer fore beth of gode  
 chere 7 lete vs goo to oure iourney / 7 þan he seide  
 with an hie voys in þe name of almy3ty Ihesus 7 of Seint  
 George a vaunt Banere 7 Seint George þis day þine helpe  
 7 þan þese ffrenshe men come prekinge downe as þey wolde  
 haue ouere reden alle oure meyne but god 7 oure Archers  
 made hem sone to stumbe for our Archers shette neuere  
 arowe a mys but þat hit pershed<sup>b</sup> 7 brou3te to grounde  
 man 7 hors for þey shetten þat day for a wayger<sup>c</sup> 7 oure  
 stakes made hem top ouere terbe eche on opere þat þey  
 laye on hepis .ij. spere lenthe of heyþe / 7 oure king  
 with his men of Armes euere leyde downe for hym fell to  
 fy3te þat day his owne handis<sup>d</sup> 7 oure goode<sup>3</sup> Archers þat  
 lacked arowes leyde on with stakys / 7 þus all my3ti  
 Ihesus 7 seint George brou3te oure enemyes to grounde  
 þat day 7 þere were slayne of ffrenshe men þat day in

Fol. 110 <sup>1</sup>Erased. <sup>2</sup>Followed by superfluous hyphen.  
<sup>3</sup>Second q inserted above by scribe.

and playd our lordys 7 þe kyng at þe deys And a narchar  
 for a blanke of her money for þay went all a-had<sup>1</sup> be  
 theyrs The morw arosse þe day gane spryng and þe kyng by  
 good Awyce let Aray hys batayll and hys wengys 7 schargid  
 euyry mañ to kep hem holl to gydyrs and prayd hem all to  
 ben a good cher And when thy wer redy þay Askyd wat tyme  
 of the day it was and þay said prime þan sayd our kyng  
 now ys good tyme for all Englund pray for vs And þerfor  
 be we a good cher and let vs goo to our Iorney And þan þay  
 sayd wyth A my3the voyssse In the name of all My3ty god And  
 Sent gorge A waunt baner And sent fo<sup>2</sup> Gorge þis day þyn  
 help And þan thes frenschemen com prekyng downe as wold  
 haue ouyr red all ouyr mayney But god and our Archeris  
 mad hem Sone to Stombyll ffor our Archerys schot neuyr  
 Arewe a mys for hyt Perschyd and brou3th to þe grownd mane  
 or horsse for thay schot þat pay<sup>a</sup> for A wager And our stake  
 hem mad top ouyr tyrvy echoñ othyr þat þay lay on hepe ij  
 sper lenth of hyth And our kyng wyt hys mayne and wyt w<sup>2</sup>  
 Mene of Armes euyr layd down for hym fyll to fy3th þad day  
 hys owne hondys 7 our good archerys þat lakyd a rewys layd  
 on wyt stakys And þus almy3ty god 7 Sent Gorge brouth our  
 enmys to grownd And 3aff vs þat day þe victory (fol. 171<sup>b</sup>)  
 And þer wer slayne of frensmeñ þat day in

---

Fol. 171 <sup>1</sup>Small stroke betw. a and had. <sup>2</sup>Stroked out.



þe ffelde of agyncourt mo þan xj. M<sup>l</sup>. with oute preseneres  
 þat were taken (fol. 110<sup>a</sup>b) And þere were Nombryd þat day  
 of ffrenshe men in þe felde mo þan Syxe Score þousande / 7  
 of englisshe men nouzt .vij. M<sup>l</sup>. but god þat day ffauzte  
 for vs 7 þan . come þere tythinges to oure king þat þere  
 was a newe Batayle of ffrenshe men ordeyned redy to falle  
 on him 7 comen towards hym / And a none oure king lete  
 crye þat euery man sholde sle his presenere þat he had  
 take 7 a none a rayed his Batayle a 3en redy to fyzte with  
 þe ffrenshe men / 7 whan þey sawe oure men kelle downe  
 here preseneres þan þey withdrowe hem 7 brake here Batayle  
 7 alle here araye / 7 þus oure king as a worthi conqueroure  
 had þat day þe victorie in þe felde of agincourte / 7 þan  
 oure kinge retorned a 3en þere þe Batayle was / 7 was  
 alnyzt þere he was be fore to se what pepul weren dede /  
 7 3if any were herte þat myzte be made hole or holpe / 7  
 þere were dede in þe felde þe duke of Barrey þe duke of  
 lamson þe duke of Braban þe erle of Nauerne þe cheef  
 constable of ffraunce 7 viij<sup>e</sup>. opere erles 7 þe Erchebisshop  
 of Saunce 7 of good Barouns an .C. 7 moo 7 of worthy knyghtes  
 of grete alyaunce of cote armoures<sup>e</sup> M<sup>l</sup>. 7 .v. C. And of  
 englisshe men was ded þat day þe gode duke<sup>4</sup> of 3orke 7 þe  
 erle of Southfolk Sere dauy kam 7 ser Richard kyhley þese  
 too knyghtes asembled first in þe Batayll 7 weren slayne 7  
 of opere of englisshe nacioun þere were nouzt dede passinge  
 .xxvj bodies þanked be Ihesus And a none þe king comaunded  
 to berie hem / 7 duke of 3orke to be caried forþe with him  
 7 þe erle of Southfolke / 7 þere were take preseneres þe  
 duke of Orlyaunce þe duke of Burboun þe erle of vendoun  
 þe erle of Ewe þe erle of Richemounde 7 Sere Bursygaunt  
 Marchall of ffraunce 7 many opere worthi lordis were þere  
 take in þis Batayle of Agyngcourt 7 brouzt vnto þe towne

<sup>4</sup> Inserted faintly above by scribe with caret in text;  
 repeated by scribe in right margin of col. with caret.



the feld of Agyncorte moo than xj Mill wyt out presoner þat  
 wer takyne and þer wer nombyrd in the feld moo þane vj Schor  
 þousand of frenscmen̄ and of Englysmene vij myll but þat day  
 fouzte for vs And aftyr come com ther tydyngys to our kyng  
 þat þer was a new batayl of frenschemen̄ and hordynyð redy  
 to stele on̄ hym 7 cam toward hym And a none our kyng let  
 cry þat euyry mane shuld sle hys presoner þat þay had take  
 and Anon Arayd hys pepy<sup>l</sup> batayll azene redy to fyzte wyth  
 þe french men̄ And wane þay sawe þat our men kyllid downe  
 her presoner þat day wyt drew hym and brake her batayll and  
 all her Ary<sup>l</sup> ray And þan our kyng as a worthy conquerour had  
 þat day de victory of A gyngcorth in the feld þat ys in  
 peccardy And þane our kyng retornyd yt azen ther batayll  
 was to se wat men̄ wer ded of Englyssmen̄ and eff eny wer  
 horth þat myzt be holpe And ther wer ded in the feld þe  
 duke of barry þe duke of launsoun þe duke of brabane þe  
 Erle of Naver̄n þe chef constabyll of fraunce And viij  
 othyr Erlys and þe Ersbyschop Saunce 7 of good Barnys An  
 C 7 moo 7 worthy knyztys And gret Alyons<sup>b</sup> of cott Armorys  
 A M<sup>l</sup> 7 vC And of Englysmen̄ was ded þat day þe good duke of  
 yorke 7 þe Erl of Soffolk and of all othyr Enlyssch  
 naccionis þer was nat ded passyng xxvj personys þankyð be  
 god And thys batayll was Afryday the wyche was crispun  
 crispiany day in the moneth of Octobr (fol. 172<sup>a</sup>) And anone  
 þe kyng comandyd to bery hem And þe duke of yorke for to  
 be carry forth wyt hyme and þe Erle of Soffolke and ther  
 wer presoners of the duk of orlyaunce þe duk of borgn þe  
 Erle of wendwe þe Erle of Elbe þe erle of rygmond and syr  
 brusse gant marchall of fraunce and meny oþyr lordys wher  
 þer takyne in the batayll of Agyngcorte and browthe vn to  
 þe towne



of Caleys 7 so ouere þe see (fol. 110<sup>b</sup>a) with þe kyng  
 in to englond 7 londe at douere in kent with all his  
 preseneres in saffte þanked be Ihesus 7 so come to  
 Caunterbery 7 offerd at Seint Thomas Scryne 7 so roed  
 forth þorowe kent þe nexte way<sup>f</sup> to Eltham 7 þere he  
 rested him tyll he wolde come to london 7 þan þe Maire  
 of london 7 þe Aldermen Shereves with all þe worthy  
 comeneres 7 craftis comen to þe blake heth well 7  
 worthely arayde to well come oure kinge with diuerse  
 melodies 7 þanked almy3ty god of his gracious victorie  
 þat he had shewyd for him<sup>5</sup> 7 þe king 7 his preseneres  
 passed forthe by hem tyll he come to Seint Thomas watering  
 7 þere mette with him all þe Religious with prossioun  
 7 well comed him 7 so þe king come ryding with his  
 preseneres to london þorowe þe cete vnto poules / 7 þere  
 mette with him xiiij Byshopis reuersed<sup>g</sup> 7 mytered with  
 Senceres to welcome þe king 7 songge for his gracious  
 victori Te deum laudamus 7 þere þe king offerd 7 toke  
 his hors 7 rode to westmynster 7 þan þe Maire toke hys  
 leue of þe king 7 rode home a 3en / 7 in þe .iiij. 3ere  
 of king henries Regne<sup>5</sup> þe .v<sup>e</sup>. come þe emperoure of  
 Almayne king of Beeme<sup>h</sup> 7 of hungry in to englond / 7 so  
 to þe cete of london 7 þe Mayre 7 þe Aldermen Shereves  
 of london with all þe worthy craftys of london by þe  
 kinges comaundement mette with him on Blake hethe in þe  
 beste aray þat þey cowde on hors bak 7 þere þey well  
 comed him 7 brou3te him to london with mekell honoure 7  
 grete Reuerence. 7 at Seint Thomas wateryng þere mette  
 þe king with him with all his lordis in gode Aray 7 þere  
 was a worthy metyng be twyxe þe emperoure 7 oure king 7  
 þere þey kyssyd to gedres 7 brased eche opere 7 þane þe  
 king toke þe emperoure by the hande 7 so þey come ryding  
 þorowe þe Cete of london vnto poules þere þey a ly3te 7

---

<sup>5</sup>By scribe in right margin of col.; caret in text.



of Cales and so ouyr the See wyt the kyng in to Englonde and  
londyd at Dowyr in kente wyt all hys presoners fyne fast<sup>a</sup>  
pankyde be Ihesus and so come to cantyrbury And offerd to  
synd Thomas schry<sup>1</sup> And so rood forth þoru kent þe nex way  
to Eltham and þer he restyd hyme tyll he wold come to london  
And þe mayr of london wyth þe worthy aldyrmen and Scherryvis  
wyt all þe worthy comeners and craftys com to þe blake heth  
well A wordly Arayd to welcome our kyng wyth dyuers melody  
And thankyd god of hys graceus victory þat he had schewd for  
heme / And so þe kyng and hys presoners passyd forthe be  
hym tyll he come to sent Thomas watryng And þer þay mett  
wyt hyme all þe relygius<sup>b</sup> wyt processioun and welcomyd  
hyme And so þe kyng come rydyng wyt hys presoners þourch  
out þe Cytte of london wher ther was schewd meny a fay sythe  
at all þe condytis and at þe crosse in chepe as in hewynly A  
Ray of Angell archanchangyllys patricys and profetys and  
vergynis do<sup>c</sup> wyt dywers melodyes syngyng and welcom<sup>2</sup> to our  
kyng and all þe condytis rennyng wyne And þe kyng passyd  
forthe be Sent Poulys And þer met wyt hym (fol. 172<sup>b</sup>) xiiij  
bysschoppus Reuerencyd<sup>d</sup> 7 myterd wyt sensse and welcomd our  
kyng And song for hys gracious victory Te Deum laudamus And  
þer þe kyng offerd and went to westmestyr And thanke<sup>e</sup> þe  
mayr toke hys leve of the kyng a rode home A 3ene And the  
iiij 3er of kyng harry reignyd þe v com to þe Emperour of  
Almayne kyng of Rome and of hongry in to Englonde and so to  
þe Cyte of london and þe Mair and þe Aldermen 7 Scherwy wyt  
þe worthy craftys of london by the kyngys comandemente wyth  
hym on the blake heth in the best a ray þat þay myth gett on  
hors bake And þer þay welcomd hym and brouth hym to london  
wyt much honour and gret reuerens at Sent Thomas wartryn<sup>f</sup>  
ther met wyt hym all hys lordys in good aray and was A  
worthy mettynge by twene þe Emperour and þe kyng And þer

---

Fol. 172 <sup>1</sup>Superscript -r-. <sup>2</sup>Mark after -m, poss. start  
of -e.



offerd 7 all þe Bysshopis stoden reuersyd with sencers  
 in<sup>6</sup> here handis ensensynge 7 (fol. 110<sup>b</sup>) than þey token  
 here hors 7 reden to westmynster 7 þere þe<sup>7</sup> kyng loughyd  
 þe emperoure in hys owne paleys // 7 þere he rested hym  
 a grete while / And at the kynges coste / 7 sone aftir  
 come þe duke of holond in to englond to come 7 se þe  
 emperoure / 7 to speke with þe kyng / 7 was worthely  
 resseyued 7 logged in þe Bysshopys Inne of Ely 7 all at  
 þe kynges coste / 7 whan þe emperoure had wel rested him /  
 7 seie þe londe dyuerse partyes. 7 knewe þe comoditees /  
 þan by prosesse of tyme he toke his<sup>8</sup> leue of the king.  
 but ar he 3ede he was made knyth of þe Garter 7 resseyued  
 7 weryd þe lyuerrey 7 þan he þankyd þe kyng 7 all hys  
 worthi lordis / 7 þan þe kyng 7 he wente ouere þe see to  
 Caleys And abeden þere alonge whyle to haue an aswere<sup>i</sup>  
 of þe frenshe kyng / 7 at þe laste hit come 7 plesyd hym  
 ry3t nouzt 7 þe emperoure toké his leue of þe kynge 7  
 passyd forth in godis name 7 oure kyng come ouere a 3en  
 in to englond in alle þe haste þat he myzte 7 þat was  
 on Seint lukes even þat he come to lambheythe 7 on þe  
 Monday nexte folowyng he come in to þe parlement at  
 westmynster 7 þe same 3ere was a gret derthe of corne in  
 englonde but þanked be god hit last not long

How kinge henry the .v<sup>e</sup>. purposyd and ordeynyd him ouere  
 the See in to ffrance and Normendie by the counceyle of  
 alle his lordis and Comons of the Reame of englond<sup>9</sup>

And<sup>10</sup> in þe .iiij<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries Regne þe .v<sup>e</sup>.  
 he helde his parlement at westmynster in þe begynnyng of

---

<sup>6</sup>Inserted above by scribe; caret in text. <sup>7</sup>By scribe in  
 left margin of col.; caret in text. <sup>8</sup>By scribe over  
 erasure. <sup>9</sup>Half-line and following line left blank. <sup>10</sup>Two-  
 line ornamental initial in blue with red pen-flourishes.

þay kyssyd to gyddyr and brased eche oþyr And þan þe kyng  
 toke þe Emperour be þe hond and so þay come rydyng þourch  
 þe Cytte of london on to synt Powlys 7 ther thay ly3th and  
 offerd And all þe bysshop stot and Sensyd wyt sensors And  
 þan þay tokyne her hors and rydyn to westmestyr And ther  
 the kyng logid þe Empour in hys owne palys And þer he  
 Resayuyd<sup>g</sup> hym A gret wylle and all at þe kyngys cost And  
 sone aftyr come þe Duke of holond into Englund to<sup>3</sup> And  
 come to see the Emperour and to speke wyt hyme and wyth  
 þe kyng 7 he was worthely resayvid and logid in the  
 bysschoppus in of Ely all at þe kyngys cost And whe þe  
 Empour had well restyd hyme and sy þe lond in dyuers  
 partyis and knew þe comediteis þat be processe of tyme he  
 toke hys leve of the kyng but or he 3ed he was knygh of  
 þe (fol. 173<sup>a</sup>) garter and weryd þe leuerey and þan he  
 thankyd þe kyng and all hys worthy lordus and þane þe  
 kyng and he went ouyr þe See to Cales And abyd þer long  
 tyme to haue an ansquer of the frenche kyng And at þe last  
 yt com þat plesyd hym ryth no3te And þe Emperour toke his  
 leue at þe kyng and Passyd forth in godys name And our  
 kyng come ouyr a3ene in to Englund in all þe hast þat he  
 mythe And þat was on Sent lukys Ewyne And he comyth vnto  
 lambeth And in the monday nex followyng he come vn to þe  
 Emperour<sup>1</sup> parlement at westmestyr and in þe same 3er was  
 a grett derthe of Corn in Englund þankyð be god it last  
 not longe

[A]nd<sup>2</sup> in the iiij 3er of kyng harry Reigne þe v. he had  
 hysse parlement at westmestyr in the be gynnyng of

---

<sup>3</sup>Stroked out. Fol. 173 <sup>1</sup>Stroked out. <sup>2</sup>Blue initial  
 partialy erased.



þe Monthe of Octobur 7 lasted vnto þe purificacioun of  
 oure lady þan nexte folowyng 7 þere was graunted vnto  
 þe king to mayntene his werres bothe of spiretualte 7  
 temperalte a hole taxte (fol. 111<sup>a</sup>) 7 a dyme in  
 susteynyng of hys werres 7 þan a none þe kyng prayed  
 al hys lordis to make hem redy to strengthe hym in hys  
 ry3th 7 a none he lete make a newe retenew 7 charged all  
 men to be redy at hamptoun in whitsonweke þan nexte  
 folowyng with outen any delay 7 þere þe kyng made þe  
 duke of Bedford protector 7 defender of hys Reame of  
 englond in his absence 7 charged hym to kepe his lawes  
 7 mayntene all ry3th bothe sperituall 7 temperall 7 whan  
 þe kyng had þus done 7 sette all þinge in kynde. on  
 Seint Markes day þat was þat tyme hoctewesday<sup>a</sup> he toke  
 his hors at westmynster 7 come rydyng to poules 7 þere  
 he offered 7 toke his leue 7 so rode forth þorowe þe  
 cetee takynge hys leue of alle manere of pepull as wel  
 of pore as of Ryche praynge hem all in generall to praye  
 for hym. 7 so he rode forth to Seint Georges 7 þere he  
 offered 7 toke his leue of þe Maire charginge hym to kepe  
 wel his chambir. 7 so rode forth to hamptoun / 7 þere  
 abode tyll hys retenewe were redy 7 come to him / ffor  
 þer was all hys Naueye of Shippis with all his ordynaunce  
 gadered 7 well stuffed as longed to seche a Riall king  
 with all manere of vetayle for seche a Riall peple as  
 well for hors as for man as longed for seche a werrioure  
 þat is to<sup>b</sup> Armoure Gonnes tripgetes engines Soves<sup>c</sup>  
 Bastiles<sup>d</sup> Bregges of lether Scalyng ladders malle<sup>e</sup>  
 spades shoueles pekeys<sup>f</sup> paueyes<sup>g</sup> bone<sup>h</sup> 7 arrowes bowe  
 stringes tonnes chestes 7 pypis full<sup>i</sup> as neded for seche  
 a worthi werrioure þat no þinge was to seche whan tyme  
 come 7 þedir come to him shippis lade with Gonnes 7 Gonne  
 powder / 7 whan all þis was redy 7 his Retenewe come /  
 þe kyng 7 his lordis with all his ryall Oste weste<sup>j</sup> to  
 Shippe 7 token þe See 7 sayled ouere þe nexte way to



þe Moneth of Octobyr and lastyd vn to þe Porficaciounē of  
 our lady þan nex followyng and ther was grantyd vnto þe  
 kyng of þe sperituall 7 temperell an holle taxe 7 adyme  
 in Sustynyng of his werrys And anone þe kyng prayd all  
 hys lordys to make hem redy to strenth hym in hys rythe  
 And anone lett make a new retenew and schargid all meñ to  
 be reddy at hamptoun in wytsonweke nex foluyg wyt out onyd  
 lay<sup>a</sup> And þer þe kyng made þe duke of Bedford protector And  
 defendyr of hys reme of Englund in hys absense and chargyd  
 hyme to kepe hys lawys and to mayntē both sperituall and  
temperall And<sup>3</sup> wenne þe kyng had þus I doo he set all þyng  
 in kynde er<sup>1</sup> on sent Markys day þat was þat tym hocletid<sup>b</sup>  
 he toke hys hors at westmestyr And come rydyng to poulys  
 and ther he offerd and toke his leue (fol. 173<sup>b</sup>) And so  
 rode forth þoru þe Cyte takyng hys leue of all maner of  
 pepyll as well of pore as of ryche and prayd hem to pray  
 for heme And so he rod forth to Sent Gorgis and þer he  
 offerd and toke hys leve of the meñ Prayng hem to kep well  
 hys chambur And so he rod forthe to hamtoun Abbydyng ther  
 tell hys retenew came to hyme for þer was all hys navy of  
 Schyppys wyt hys hordynance gadryd well 7 stuffyd as  
 longythe to sege<sup>c</sup> A kyng wyt all maner of wytayll to syche  
 A Ryall Pepyll as wel for hors as for meñ as longys to  
 Sech werroure That ys to say Armur gonnys Th<sup>d</sup> trypgetys  
 Engines Sowys bastyles bryggys of lethyr schalyng ledders  
 mallys spadys schwelys Pykys pauys bowys harrows  
 bowstrengys Tunnys chestys and pypys full of Arrows þat  
 nothyng was to seche Thedyr come to hyme Schyppys lad wyt  
 gonnys Poudyr And when thys was redy and hys retenew came  
 to þe kyng and hys lordys wyt hys Ryall host and tokyne  
 her Schippys ouyr the See and saylyd in to

---

<sup>3</sup>Superscript -n-.



Normandy (fol. 111<sup>a</sup>b) And londyd at Toke vpon lammasse  
 day þan nexte 7 þere he made .xlviii. knyȝtes at his  
 londyng / And þanne þe king heringe of many enemyes vppon  
 þe See . þat is to saye .ix. grete Carikes Hulkes<sup>k</sup> Galeys  
 7 Shippis þat weren come to destroye his Naueye / a none  
 he comaunded þe erle of Marche to ben cheef cheuetayne  
 7 many worthy lordis with hym with men of Armes 7 archers  
 to goo to þe See þat none of hys enemyes defouled hys  
 Naueye ne entred his londe in none manere partye for to  
 dystrobull his Vyage ne lette his iorneye. 7 a none þe  
 erle toke his meyne 7 wente to Shippe 7 skymed þe See 7  
 kepte þe See costes þat no manere of enemye durste rowte<sup>l</sup>  
 vpon þe See 7 a none þe king sente his herodis vnto þe  
 Capteyne of Toke 7 charged him to delyuere his castell  
 7 his towne 7 ellys he sholde neyther leue man ne chylde  
 a lyue / 7 a none þe Capteyne 7 .iiii. opere Burgeys  
 brouȝten þe keyes vnto þe king 7 be souȝte him of grace.  
 7 þe king delyuered Sere Iohn of kyckeley þe keyes 7 made  
 him Capteyne / 7 comaunded him to putte oute all þe  
 ffrenche pepull bothe of Castell 7 towne / 7 þere besyde  
 was þe castell of louers / 7 þedre þe king sente þe erle  
 Marshall with a fayre meyne / 7 sawted þe towne 7 a none  
 his<sup>m</sup> was ȝelde to þe erle 7 brouȝt him þe keys / 7 þe  
 erle brouȝte þe keyes vnto þe kyng 7 þe king toke him þe  
 keys 7 made hym Capteyne of þe Castell of loueres 7 of  
 alle þat longyd þer to / 7 charged hym to deliury<sup>n</sup> oute  
 alle þe frenshe pepull / 7 þan þe king helde forth his  
 way to Cane þat was a stronge towne 7 a faire 7 a Riall  
 Castell þere inne 7 a none he sente his herodis vnto þe  
 Capteyne 7 charged hym to delyuere his towne 7 his  
 castell or ellys he wolde hit gete with stronge honde /  
 7 þey answerd 7 sayde he toke hem none / ne none þey  
 wold delyuere vnto him 7 þan a none he leyde his Sege  
 (fol. 111<sup>b</sup>a) vnto þe towne 7 layde Gonnes on euery syde  
 7 bete a downe bothe wallys 7 towres 7 slowe mekyll pepull



normandy and londyd at Toke vp on̄ the lammes day þan next  
 folyn̄g And ther he mad xlviiij knyztys at hys londyng And  
 þan þe kyng beryng<sup>e</sup> of many enmysse vppon̄ the See þat ys  
 to say ix grett Carykys hulkys 7 galyes and scheppus þat  
 weryne comen̄ for to dystroy hys nawy And anone he comandyd  
 þe Erle of the Marche to chefteyn And many lordus wyt hym  
 wyth men of harmes and Archers to go to þe See þat non  
 Enmys<sup>4</sup> defoulyd hys nawy ne in trippth<sup>f</sup> his lond in no  
 maner Party for to dystrobyll hys wyage ne hys Iorney And  
 anone þe Erle toke hys men̄ and went to þe schip and skemyd  
 þe See (fol. 174<sup>a</sup>) and kep þe See costys þat no maner of  
 enmys durstte<sup>1</sup> route vp on þe See And a none þe kyng send  
 hys herawdys vn to þe Capetayn̄ of Toke and chargyd hy to  
 delyuerd þe castell and hys towne or ells he shuld nethyr  
 leue mañ ne chyld a lyue and þe Capetayn and iiij othyr  
 borges brouthen þe kayis vnto þe kyng and be southe hym of  
 grace And þe kyng dyd lyuer syr Iohn of kyckyle þe Cayes  
 and mad hyme Capetayne and Comandyt hym to pott out all þe  
 french men̄ both of þe Castell and of the towne And be syd  
 was þe castell of lyuerys And þedyr þe kyng sent þe Erle of  
 þe march wyt Afayr mayne And Sawtid the towne and anone hyt  
 was zeld to þe Erle and brouth hym þe Cayis And he brouthe  
 þe Cayis<sup>2</sup> to the kyng and þe kyng toke hyme þe kayis a 3ene  
 and mad hym Capetayne of the castell of lovers and of all  
 þat longys þerto And chargyd hyme to delyuer all the  
 frenchmen And the kyng held forth hys way to Cane þat was  
 astrong towne and afair ryall Castell ther And anone he  
 send hys harradus to þe Capetayne and chargyd hym to  
 delyuer the towne and hys castell and else he wold get yt  
 wyt trenth<sup>a</sup> of hond And þay answerd and sayd þat þay toke  
 hym none ne non þay wold delyuer on to hyme And thane a none  
 he layd hys sege vnto þe towne and layd gonnys hon euyry side  
 and bett A done both wallys and towrys and slow much pepyll

<sup>4</sup>MS. has 4 minims for -nm-. Fol. 174 <sup>1</sup>-st- inserted  
 above by scribe. <sup>2</sup>Downstroke of C- omitted.



in here houses 7 eke in stetis<sup>o</sup> 7 þe gode duke of Clarence  
 he leyde a downe þe wallys on his syde vnto þe grounde 7  
 so with Inne a while þe kyng by his<sup>1</sup> counceyle Sauted  
 þe towne aboute and a none þe duke of Clarence had gete  
 entre in to þe towne 7 slowe downe ry3t tyll þat he come  
 vnto þe kyng 7 sparyd neyther man ne childe / 7 euere þey  
 cried a clarence a clarence Seint George Seint George 7  
 slowe downe<sup>2</sup> ry3th 7 þere was dede on þe walles a worth<sup>p</sup>  
 man þat me callyd Sprynges þe whiche þe kyng comaunded  
 to be beried in þe abbay of Cane faste by william  
 Conquerour on whos soule god haue mercy Amen / 7 þan  
 come oure kyng in to þe towne with his Brother þe duke  
 of clarence / 7 many opere worthy lordis with mekell  
 Solempnite 7 merthe / 7 þan the kinge comaunded þe  
 Capteyne to delyuere hym his castell / 7 he be sou3te þe  
 kinge to 3eue hym .xiiij. dayes of respite . 3if any  
 Rescue wold come / 7 3yf none come he to delyuere hym  
 þe keys 7 þe castel at hys owne wil 7 comaundement 7  
 vndir þis composisioun was þe towne 7 þe Castell of  
 Bayews with opere towne forteyses<sup>q</sup> 7 velages in to þe  
 nombir of .xiiij. townes / vpon þe hyll be fore þe towne  
 7 þe castell of Cane oure kyng py3te all hys tentys  
 þat semed a towne as mekell as Cane 7 be þanne thythings  
 come þat no rescue wold come þere 7 so at þe .xiiij.  
 dayes ende þe Capteyne come oute 7 delyuered þe keyes 7  
 þe Castell to oure kyng 7 Bayews 7 þe opere xiiij.  
 townes weren delyuered vn to hym also / 7 a none the king  
 delyuered þe keyes to þe duke of clarence 7 made hym  
 capteyne boþe of the Towe 7 castell of Cane / 7 made  
 capteynes of Bayews 7 of all þe opere townes also . 7  
 (fol. 111<sup>b</sup>) in þe Castell of Cane þe king helde his  
 Seint Georges feste 7 þere he made xv. kny3tes of þe

---

Fol. 111 <sup>1</sup>Inserted above by scribe; stroke in text.  
<sup>2</sup>Vertical line divides slowe and downe.

in her housys 7 eke in stretis (fol. 174<sup>b</sup>) And the good duke of Clarence layd downe þe wallys hon hys syd on to þe gronde And so wyt in A wile the kyng by hys consell Sawtyd þe towne all A bouzt and a nothyr<sup>b</sup> duke of Clarence had entryd vnto þe ton and slow done rythe tell he come to þe kyng and sparyd neþyr māñ ner chyld and euyr þay Cryd of Claren Sent Gorg and slouze done ryth And ther was dede on the wallys on the kyng syd A worthy māñ callyd Spryngys the wyche þe kyng Comadyd<sup>c</sup> to be berryd in þe abbay of Cane fast by wylliam conquerour one hose shold<sup>3</sup> sold god haue mercy And then þe kyng com in to þe towne wyt hys brothe þe duke of Clarence 7 meny othyr wordy lordys wyt much Solempnite 7 myzth And þan þe kyng comandyd the Capetayne for to delyuer hym þe Castell and he be southe þe kyng for to 3eff heme xiiij dayis of Respyd yf ony rescu wold come And 3eff none wold come to þe lyuere<sup>d</sup> the Cayis and þe castell all at hys owne comandement And vndyr þis composyssion was the Town and the castell of bawes wyt oþyr townys and wellegis in to þe nombyr of xiiij townys vp on þe hyll be for the castell of Cane our kyng Prayd<sup>e</sup> all hys tenty þat semyd A towne as much as cane And be þat come tydyngys þat noñ rescws wold none com ther And so at þe xiiij dayis end come the capetayn come out and delyueryd þe kayis and the Castell to our kyng 7 Bawayis 7 þe othyr [The text ends]

---

<sup>3</sup>Stroked out.



Bath þat weren Sere lowes Robesert Saloyn Chayne  
 Mongomore 7 many oþere 7 þe king comaunded for to put  
 oute all þe ffrenshe pepull boþe man 7 woman 7 no man  
 so hardy to defoule no woman ne take no manere godis a  
 way ffrom hem but late hem passe in pees vppon peyne of  
 dethe / 7 þere passed oute of þat towne in one day mo  
 þan .xv. C. wemen 7 þanne oure king lete stuffe þe towne  
 7 þe castell with englisshe pepull 7 ordeyned þere .ij.  
 Capteynes one for þe towne a nobere for þe castell 7  
 charged hem vpon here lyfe to kepe well bothe towne 7  
 castell / 7 ar oure king wente þens he gat valeyse  
 Newlyn 7 leyde a Sege to Chirborowe 7 þat Sege leyde þe  
 duke of Gloucestre with a stronge power 7 by prosesse of  
 tyme gat hyt 7 made þere of a capteyne 7 þe same tyme þe  
 erle of warwyk leyde a Sege to dounferont 7 gat hit 7 put  
 þere in a capteyne / 7 to speke more of þe erle of Marche  
 þat þe king sente to skyme þe See 7 to kepe þe costys of  
 englond from enemyes / þe wynde a roes so vppon þat þey  
 wende alle to haue loste here lyues / but þorowe þe  
 grace of god 7 gode gouernaunce<sup>3</sup> þey gat with Inne  
 wy3th<sup>r</sup> 7 reden þere alle þe storme / 7 þere were loste  
 ij. Carykes 7 .ij. balyngers<sup>s</sup> with Marchaundes godes 7  
 all þe pepull þat weren þere Inne 7 a nobere Caryke  
 drowe afore hamptoun 7 þrewe hys Maste ouere þe towne  
 walles 7 þys was on Seint Berthelmewes day / 7 whan all  
 þis storme was sesed þis worthy erle of Marche toke hys  
 Shippe with all his meyne 7 went to þe See 7 loded in  
 Normandie at hogges 7 so reden forthe toward þe kyng 7  
 euere (fol. 112<sup>a</sup>) as he come þe ffrenshe men fledden 7  
 þere come to hem an antony pygge<sup>a</sup> 7 folowed þe oste alle  
 þat way tyll þey come to a gret wasshe 7 þere þey drade  
 to haue ben ded þe water closyd hem so in / þat þey  
 my3te neuere gete oute but at þe laste þey folowyd þis

---

<sup>3</sup>Scribe has used er abbreviation-mark for n.

pygge 7 god 7 he brouzte hem oute all safe 7 þere þey  
 cauhte a gide þat knewe alle þe contre a boutte 7 he  
 brouzte hem þorowe a quyk sonde 7 so in to an Ile 7  
þere þey toke many presoneres in here way towardses the  
 king in here iourney vnto Cane 7 þere þe king well comed  
 him / And toke his iournay vnto argenton 7 a none hyt  
 was 3elde vnto þe kyng 7 þey had here lyfes 7 wente here  
 way 7 þan oure kyng remeved to astronge towne þat me  
 callyd Cessy 7 þere was a fayre Mynystre 7 þey 3elde  
 hit a none vnto þe king. 7 þan þe king wente ffrom þennes  
 to launsoun. 7 wan þe towne 7 þe Brygge. 7 fro þennes  
 þe kyng sente þe erle of warwyk to a towne þat me callyd  
 Belham with a stronge power / 7 a none þey 3elde hem. 7  
 put hem in þe kinges grace 7 so dede many mo stronge  
 townes 7 castellys þat weren in þo partyes. 7 fro þenne  
 þey wente to vernell 7 a none hit was 3elde vnto þe  
 king bothe towne 7 castell bodies 7 godes at þe kinges  
 grace. 7 so þe king gat 7 conquered alle þe townes  
 castelles pyles strengthes abbayes vnto pount large 7  
 fro þennes vnto þe Cete of Rone / 7 in þe .v<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of  
 king henries Regne þe .v. Sere Iohn Olde castell knyzt  
 þat was þe lord Cobham was a rested for lollardrye /  
 And brouzt vnto þe towre of london. 7 a none aftir he  
 brake out of þe towre 7 wente into walis. 7 þere he kepte  
 hym longe tyme 7 at þe laste þe laste<sup>b</sup> þe lord Powes  
 mette with hym. 7 toke hym but he stode at grete defence  
 long tyme 7 was sore (fol. 112<sup>a</sup>b) wonded or he wolde be  
 take / 7 so þe lord Powes Meyne brouzt hym oute of walys  
 to london in a werlegoge<sup>c</sup>. 7 þere he was examined of  
 serteyne poyntes þat weren put vpon hym. 7 he seyde not  
 nay 7 so he was conycte of þe clergie for lolladrye 7  
 dampned a fore þe Iustices vnto þe deth for treson 7 so  
 he was had vnto þe Toure a 3en 7 þere he was leyde on an  
 hyrdell 7 drawe þorowe þe Cetee to Seint Gyles ffelde 7  
þere was made a newe payre of Galowes 7 a stronge chayne



7 a coler of Iren for hym 7 þere he was hanged 7 brent  
Galowes 7 alle for his fals 7 lewed openyons

How king henre þe ffythe . leyde A Sege vnto þe Cete of  
Rone. And how he gat þe Cetee with strenthe 7 manhode

And<sup>1</sup> in þe .vj<sup>e</sup>. 3ere of kyng henries Regne þe .v<sup>e</sup>. he  
sente his vncle Sere Thomas Beauford duke of Excestre  
with a fayre Meyne of men of Armys 7 archers to fore þe  
Cetee of Rone / And þere displayed here Baneres<sup>d</sup> 7 sente  
herodes vnto þe towne And bad hem 3eld þat Cetee vnto  
here king 7 here lege lord 7 þey seyde he toke hem non  
to kepe<sup>e</sup> ne none he sholde haue þere<sup>2</sup> but 3if hit were  
ry3t dere Ibou3th 7 meved with here handis for opere  
answere wolde þey none 3eue but out go Gonnes / 7 þere  
þe duke toke good a vysement of þe Grounde all a bowte /  
7 a none þere Issued out of þe Cetee a grete meyne of men  
of armys bothe on hors bak 7 on fote 7 a none oure meyne  
mette with hem 7 ouere þrewe an hepe of hem 7 þere were  
slayne 7 take a xxx. perones of ry3t gode mennes bodies  
7 þe remenaunt fled in a 3en 7 þe duke retourned a 3en  
7 come to pounte large vnto þe king 7 tolde him how he  
had sped 7 how hym lyked þe Grounde 7 a none as he was  
go þey caste a downe all here Subbarbys (fol. 112<sup>b</sup>a) a  
bowte þe Cetee vnto þe hard grounde for þe king shulde  
þere no refresshing haue at hys comynge / And þe fryday  
byfore lammasse day þan nexte oure kyng with his Oste  
come bifore Rone 7 a none lete leye his Ordinaunce vnto  
þe towne / 7 þe king 7 his lordys weren logged in þe  
Charterhous / 7 grete strengthe a bowte him 7 þat was  
in þe est party of þat Cetee 7 þe duke of Clarence

---

Fol. 112 <sup>1</sup>Two-line ornamental initial in blue with red  
pen-flourishes. <sup>2</sup>Inserted above by scribe with caret;  
caret in text.

logged him at þe weste ende of þe towne in a waste abbay  
 by fore þe Porte de kaus / And þe Duke of Exetre in þe  
 Northside byfore de Porte denyse.<sup>3</sup> And by twexe þe duke  
 of Clarence 7 þe duke of Exetre was þe erle Marshal  
 logged with a stronge power by fore þe Castell gate<sup>3</sup> 7  
 þan was þe erle of Ormound 7 þe lord heringdon 7 þe  
 lord Talbot with here Retenewe nexte hym / 7 þan Sere  
 Iohn Cornewale 7 many opere noble kny3tes of name with  
 here retenewe lay with þe duke of Clarence / 7 from þe  
 duke of Excetre toward þe king weren logged þe lord þe  
 Roes þe lord þe wyleby þe lord þe Phehew / 7 Sere  
 william Porter kny3t with here retenewe by fore þe  
 Porte Seint hillary 7 þan was þe erle of Morteyne with  
 his retenewe logged in þe abbay of Seint katerynes / 7  
 þe erle of Salisbery with his retenewe lay on þe tother  
 syde of Seinte katerines 7 Sere Iohn Gray kny3th was  
 logged at þe abbay þat is called Mounthe seint Mizell /  
 7 Sere Phelippot leche kny3th was logged by twene þe  
 water of Seyne 7 þe abbay 7 kepte þe ward vndir þe hill  
 7 þe Baroun of Carowe with his Retenewe was logged on  
 þe water syde to kepe þe passage 7 Ienyco þe Squyer lay  
 nexte hym on þe water syde 7 þey .ij. kepte Manly þe  
 water of Seyne 7 ffauzte with here enemyes often tymes /  
 7 on þat opere syde of Seyne lay þe erle of hontyngdown  
 7 my Maister Neuyle þe erles Sone of westmorland<sup>f</sup> 7 Sere  
 Gilbert (fol. 112<sup>b</sup>) Vmfurvyle the erle of keme and Sere  
 Richard of aroundell 7 þe lord fferrers with here Retenewe  
 byfore þe Porte de Pounte and eche of þese lordis had  
 stronge ordinaunces 7 the king lete make at þo pounte  
 large ouere þe water of Seyne a stronge 7 a my3ti Chayne  
 of Iren 7 putte hit þorow grete piles faste pi3te in þe  
 grounde 7 þat wente ouere þe Reuere of Seyne þat no  
 vessell my3te passe þat way in no kinde 7 above þat

---

<sup>3</sup>Followed by superfluous hyphen.



Cheyne þe king lete make a Bregge ouere þe water of Seyne  
 þat man 7 hors 7 all opere cariages myzte passe to 7 fro  
 at al tymes whan nede were 7 þan come þe erle of warwyk  
 7 had gete dounforount vnto þe king / 7 a none þe king  
 made him go to Cawdebeke / 7 þe Sege hit 7 whan he come  
 by fore þe towne he sente his herodes vnto þe Capteyne  
 7 bad hym 3elde þe towne vp peyne<sup>g</sup> of deth 7 a none he  
 leyde his Sege 7 þan þe Capteyne be souzte þe erle þat  
 he myzte come vnto his presence 7 speke with him 7 so  
 the gode erle graunted hem / 7 þan he come out / 7  
 iiij<sup>e</sup>. opere Burgeys with him and entreted so with þe  
 erle þat þis towne was vndir composycioun to do as þe  
 Cetee of Rone dede 7 þe erle graunted 7 consented þere  
 to vp þis condicioun þat þe kynges Nauye with his  
 Ordinaunce myzte passe vp by hem in safte with oute any  
 lette or disturbelacioun<sup>h</sup>. 7 here to þey sette here  
 Seeles / 7 þe Shippis passed vnto by hem in safte. 7  
 come byfore þe Cetee of Rone in to an C. Shippis 7 þey  
 caste here ankers. 7 þan þis Cetee was be seged bothe by  
 londe 7 by water / 7 whan all þis was done 7 þe Shippis  
 come vp / þan come þe erle of warwyk a 3en vnto þe king  
 7 logged him by twene Seint katereynes 7 þe king tyl  
 þat an abbay þat was in trete was 3elde<sup>i</sup> vnto þe king /  
 7 þan he remeved from þennes 7 logged him by fore þe  
 Porte Martevyle / 7 þan was þe erle (fol. 113<sup>a</sup>) of  
 Salisbury comaunded by the king to make him redy for to  
 ryde but þere come hasti tythings / 7 made him to a  
 byde / 7 he returned a3en / And logged him be sides þe  
 erle of huntingdoun tyll þe Sege was ended. And come of  
 Glowcestre<sup>a</sup> þe kinges Broþer ffrom þe Sege of Chirborowe  
 þe whiche he had I wonne 7 goten 7 stuffed a 3en vnto þe  
 crowne of englond 7 whan he was come vnto þe king by fore  
 þe Cetee of Rone a none he logged he logged<sup>b</sup> with grete  
 ordinaunce by fore þe Porte Seint hillary more nere þe  
 towne 7 his enemyes þan any opere lay by .xl. Roddes of

lengthe with in Shotte of Gonne 7 quarell 7 with hym lay  
 be erle of Southfolke 7 be lord of Bergeyney with all  
 here Retenewe 7 stronge ordinaunces 7 manly 7 proudly  
 ffousten euery day with here enemyes euery day whan bey  
 Issued oute of be Cetee 7 þan come be Prioure of kylmayne  
 oute of Irlond ouere be See vnto be king with a fayre  
 meyne of men of armes of here owne contre gise<sup>c</sup> be Sum  
 of xv. C. gode mennes bodyes 7 be king welcomed him /  
 And all hys pepull 7 made hym ry3th gode chere / And þen  
 come tythyngys to be king / þat be king of ffraunce and  
 be dolfyne 7 be Duke of Burgoyne wolden come to rescu be  
 towne of Rone with a stronge power of all manere  
 naciouns 7 breke be sege / And he castet hym to entre on  
 the Northside of the king Oste be cause that þere was  
 the best entre 7 most pleyn ground / And þerfore the king  
 assyned the prioure of kylmayne with all his power / And  
 logged him on the Northsyde of be Oste to stoppe here  
 passages / 7 hyt was by the forest of lyons 7 of þat  
 ordinaunce (fol. 113<sup>a</sup>b) they were ful glad 7 so they  
 wente forthe in haste to kepe the grounde þat be king 7  
 hys counsell hadde asyned to them 7 ther they a quytte  
 hem as gode werroures vnto the kinge / Now woll y tell  
 3ow whiche weren the cheffe capteynes and gouernores of  
 þees Cetee of Rone / Moun ser Guy Boteler was chef  
 capteyne bothe of be Cetee 7 of be castell 7 Moun ser  
 Termegaunt he was capteyne of the porte dekaus Moun ser  
 le Roche he was capteyne of be porte de Vesyn Moun ser  
 Antony he was lewtenaunt to Moun ser Guy Boteler . Henre  
 Chamfewe he was capteyne of the porte de pount / Iohn  
 Matryuas he was capteyne of the porte de la Chastell /  
 Moun ser de peneux he was capteine of be porte de Seint  
 Illary The Bastard of Teyne he was capteyn of be porte  
 Martevyle And graunt Iakys / a nother werryour he was  
 capteyne of all the werryoures / And gouernour outward  
 bothe on horsbak 7 oñ fote of all be men of armes whan



þey Issued oute of the sete of all the portes he sette  
 hem in aray as they shulde Counter with oure meyne 7 eche  
 of these capteynes had .v. M<sup>1</sup>. men of Armes 7 somme moo  
 7 whan all þe pepull was hool with inne the cetee at the  
 first comyng of oure king the were Noumbred be herodes  
 in to A CCC. M<sup>1</sup> 7 xij. M<sup>1</sup> Men women 7 childrin what 3ong  
 7 old / 7 a mong all these was many a manful man of hys  
 his<sup>d</sup> 7 so þey proued hem whan the Issued out of þe Cetee  
 bothe on horsbake 7 on fote / for they come neuere out  
 at oo Gate Alone but they come at / iij. or iijj<sup>or</sup> / And  
 at euery gate .A. ij. or .iij. M<sup>1</sup> of gode mennes bodyes  
 well I Armed 7 manfully counterd with owre englisshe  
 men.<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup> And moche people slayne dyuerse (fol. 113<sup>b</sup>a)  
 Tymes wyth gones quarelles and other ordynaunce And  
 thys seyge dured xx wekes 7 euer they off the towne  
 trusted to haue be Rescowed bot ther comenō So at the  
 laste they kepte þe<sup>2</sup> towne So longe þat ther deyed many  
 A thowsandes wyth in the towne for defaut off mete of  
 men 7 chyldren for they had etyn̄ theyr horses dogges 7  
 catteres þat were in the towne And oftyñ tymes the meñ  
 off armes drofe owt the poore people owt of the gates  
 off the towne for spendynḡ off vytaylles And A none owre  
 englysshmen̄ drofe them̄ in to the towne Ayeñ . So at the  
 laste the capytayne of the towne sawe the myschyeff And  
 þat they were not rescued 7 Also the scarsyte of vytayll  
 7 þat the people deyed soo for defaute of mete euery day  
 many thowsandes 7 Also sawe yonge chyldren̄ ly And souke  
 ther moders pappes 7 there dyed ;<sup>3</sup> Than anone they sent  
 to the kynḡ be sechynḡ hym off hys grace And mercye 7  
 broughte the keyes off the towne vn to the kyng 7  
 delyuered the town̄ to hym And all the Souldyours voyded

---

Fol. 113 <sup>1</sup>Hand D commences. <sup>2</sup>þ like y throughout Hand  
 D. <sup>3</sup>Short space left betw. (;) and end of line.

the towne wyth theyr horsses 7 harneys and the comunes  
off the town̄ for to Abyde 7 dwell styll in the town̄  
yerely to pay to pay<sup>f</sup> to hym 7 to hys successours for  
All manere customes And fee fermes 7 kateremes<sup>g</sup> 7 þen  
the kynḡ entred in to the town̄ And rested hym In the  
castell tyll the towne was sett in rulle 7 in  
gouernaunce<sup>4h</sup>

And<sup>5</sup> Anone after þat Roone was gotten Depe 7 many other  
townes In the basse Normandy gaue them ouer wyth owt  
stroke or seyge whan (fol. 113<sup>b</sup>) they vnder stode þat  
the kyng had goten Rone Also thys yere hade ben A peas  
made 7 sworne bytwyne þe Duke of Bugoyne 7 the Dolphyn̄  
wych were sworne oñ godes body þat they sholde loue 7  
assyste eche other A yenst theyr ennemyes 7 After thys  
contrary to thys othe the Duke Iohn̄ of Burgoyne was  
slayne 7 pettuosly mordered in the presence off the  
Dolphyn̄ wherfor the frenshmen were gretely deuyded 7 off  
verey necessyte laubored to haue Atreaty wyth the kynḡ  
of yngelond for the kynḡ of engelond wanne dayely off  
theym townes<sup>6</sup> castelles 7 fortresses . Also thys same  
yere was quene Iane Arested 7 brought In to the castell  
off ledes in kentt 7 one frere Radulf Doctour off  
diuynyte here confessor wyche after wardes was slayne  
by the persoun of the towre fallyng at wordes 7 debate<sup>i</sup>  
and aftyrward quene Iane was delyuered ; And In the vij  
yere both the kyng off fraunce 7 the kynḡ of engeland wer  
A corded 7 kyng henry was made heyre 7 Regent off fraunce  
7 weddet<sup>7</sup> Dame kateryn̄ the doughtter off the kynges off  
fraunce at Troyes in champayne oñ trinite sonday 7 thys  
was made by the meyne off philyp new made Duke of Burgoyne

<sup>4</sup>Space of 5-6 lines left blank for chapter-heading.

<sup>5</sup>Black initial, almost 2 lines high. <sup>6</sup>MS. has 3 minims for n. <sup>7</sup>Superscript t.



wych was sworne to kyng henry to Awenge hys faders Dethe  
 7 was be come englysshe : And wha<sup>n</sup> the kyng wyth hys new  
 wyffe wente to parys wher as he was Ryally receyued 7  
 frome thens he went wyth hys lordes 7 the duke of Burgoyne  
 7 many othere lordes of fraunce And layde syege to  
 dyuerse townnes (fol. 114<sup>a</sup>) And castels pat helde of  
 the Dolphyns partye 7 wanne them but the towne of Mylon  
 helde longe tyme for ther in were good defenders In the  
 .viij yere the kynge 7 the quene came ouer see 7 landed  
 on candylmas daye in the morne at Douer And the xiiij  
 daye of feuaryere the kyng come to london 7 the xxj daye  
 of the same mounth the quene come : And the xxiiij of pe  
 same she was crowned at west mynster Also pat same yere  
 A none after ester pe kyng helde a parlement at  
 westmynster atte whiche parlement it was ordeyned pat  
 golde in englysshe coyne sholde be weyed 7 none Receyued  
 but by weyghte and anone after wytson tyde the kynge  
 sayllede to calays 7 passed forthe so in to fraunce 7 in  
 the xxij daye of marche be for the kynge came ouer the  
 Duke of clarens was slayne in fraunce 7 dyuerse other  
 lordes takyn presoners as the erle of huntynghoun the  
 erle of somerset wyth dyuers other 7 all was by caus they  
 wold not take none archers wyth them but thought to haue  
 ower come the fransshmen them slefe<sup>a</sup> wyth owt archers 7  
 yet when he was slayne the archers come 7 Rescued the  
 body of duke wych they wold haue caryed wyth them god  
 haue mercy on hys sowll he was A walyant man 7 the same  
 yer by twyn crystynmas And candelmas the towne of Myloun  
 was yoldon vn to the kyng . In the ix yere on saynt  
 Nycolas day in decembre was Borne henry the kynges  
 fyrste be gottyn sone at wyndesore (fol. 114<sup>b</sup>) whose  
 godfaders at the fonte stone was syr henry the bysshope  
 of wynchestre 7 Iohn Duke of Bedforde And pe Duchesse  
 off holonde was godmoder and henry chycheley Archebysshope  
 of canterbury was godfader at confermyng : And in the x

yere the cyte of Myaus in Brye was gotten whiche hade be  
 longe beseged 7 thys same yere þe quene shippede at  
 hampton 7 sayled ower to the kyng in fraunce where she  
 was wrychypfully receyued of the kyng 7 Also off the  
 kyng off fraunce her fader 7 of hyr moder 7 thus kyng  
 henry wane faste fraunce 7 helde grett asstate 7 sate at  
 the grett feste In parys crowned 7 the quene Also whiche  
 hade not ben seen be fore 7 All peopyll resorted vn to  
 hys courte bot as to the kyng of fraunce<sup>1</sup> he helde non  
 Astate ne rule but was lefte Almoste Alone : Also thys  
 yere the weder coke was sett vpon poules steple at  
 london 7 thys yere in the moñeth of Auguste the kyng  
 waxed seke at Boys de wyncent 7 whan he saw he sholde  
 deye he made hys testament 7 ordined many noble thynges  
 for hys sowll 7 deuoutely receyued all the Ryghtes off  
 the chirche in so ferre forthe þat whan he was A noynted.  
 he sayd the serwyce wyth the preste 7 at the verse of  
 the psalme Miserere mei Deus þat was Benigne fac domine<sup>b</sup>  
 in bona uoluntate tua sion vt edificentur muri i  
 herusalem he bad tarry ther And sayde thus O good lorde  
 thou knowed þat myne in tent hath ben 7 yet ys yff I  
 myghte lyue to redify the walles off iherusalem And than  
 the prest proceded forth 7 made Añ ende And A none after  
 thys moste noble pryns 7 victorius kyng floure in hys  
 tyme of cristyn chyualrye whom all the worlde doubted<sup>c</sup>  
 gaue hys sowlle in to the hondes off god (fol. 114<sup>b</sup>a) And  
 died 7 made Añ ende off hys naterall lyfe at the for sayd  
 Boys de wyncent be sides pares the xxxvj yere off hys  
 aege vpon whose Sowll god haue mercy Amen Thane was the  
 body in bamed 7 cered 7 layd in A Ryall chare<sup>d</sup> 7 An  
 ymage lyke to hym was layde vpone the corps opyn wyth  
 dyuerse baners 7 horsses couered rychely wyth the Armys  
 off engelande 7 fraunce And also the olde armes off

---

Fol. 114 <sup>1</sup>MS. has 3 minims for -un-.



Saynt Edward And other wyth sante Edmond 7 other wyth  
 grett multitude of torches wyth whome wente the kyng off  
 Scotland 7 many other lordes the wych Acompanyd the Body  
 tyll he come vn to westmynstre by london In Engelande 7  
 In euery towne by the waye he hade solempnely hys dirige  
 on the euen 7 mase on the morne 7 moche Almes was was<sup>e</sup>  
 gyuen to poore people by þe way : And the vij day off  
 Nouembre the corps was broughte thorough london with gret  
 reuerens and solempnyte to weste mynstere wher as he now  
 lyeth it was worchyppfully buryed And after was layd on  
 hys tombe A ryall ymage lyke hym selffe off syluer and  
 golde wych was made at the coste off quen katelyne 7  
 thus endet 7 ys entered and buryed the noble kynge henry  
 the fyfth vpon whose soule 7 All crystyn sowles god haue  
 mercy Amen<sup>2</sup>

Here<sup>3</sup> ys to be notede thate thys kynge henry the fyfth  
 was A noble prynce after he was kynge 7 crowned how  
 beit before in hys youghth he hade benn wylde recheles 7  
 spared nothyng of hys lustes ne desyres but Accomplished  
 them After hys lykyng bot as soon as he was crowned  
 Enoynted 7 sacrede Anone sodaynly he was changed in to  
 A newe man<sup>f</sup> and set all hys in tente to lyue wertuously  
 In maynteyneng off holy church destrowyng of heretykkes  
 kepyng off Iustes 7 defendyng off hys reame 7 subiettes  
 7 for as moch as hys fader hade deposyd by hys lavbure  
 the good kyng Rycharde And petously made hym to deye 7  
 for the offence (fol. 114<sup>b</sup>) done to hym Ayenst hys  
 legeaunce he hade sente to Rome for to be Assoled ther  
 of for whiche offens our holy fader The pope enioyned  
 hym to make hym to be prayed for perpetually 7 lyke as  
 he hade done to be takyne fro hym hys nateralle lyffe

---

<sup>2</sup>Space of 5 lines left blank for chapter-heading. <sup>3</sup>Two-line black initial.

ther for he sholde doo founde iiij tapers to brenne  
 perpetually A boutte hys body þat for the extynccyoun of  
 hys bodely lyfe hys sowlle may euer be remembered and  
 lyffe in heuen In spirytualle lyfe And also þat he sholde  
 Euery weke as on the daye as it come A boutte of hys dethe  
 haue A solempne masse of Requiem 7 on the ewyne Afore a  
 dirige wyth ix lessones 7 A deole<sup>g</sup> to poore peple all  
 waye on þat day off A xj shellynges 7 vijd to be dealed  
 peny mele 7 ones in the yere at hys Anyuersarye hys  
 termente<sup>h</sup> to be holdyn in the moste honest wyse 7 to be  
 dealed þat day xx<sup>ti</sup> ponde in pens to poore peple 7 too  
 euery monke xx<sup>ti</sup>s wych all this thynges performed thys  
 noble kynge for hys fader kynge henry the fourthe hys  
 fader performed it not duryng hys lyfe of whome as it  
 ys sayd þat god dyde touch hym 7 was lepre or þat he  
 deyed And also thys noble prynce lete doo call all the  
 abbottes and pryours of saynt bennettes order<sup>i</sup> in  
 engelond 7 hade all them in to the chapytre hows of  
 westmynstre for the reformacioun of ther ordre wher in  
 he hade communicacioun 7 Also wyth byschopes 7 men of  
 the spirituallte in soo fere forth þate they doubted  
 sore as þat he wolde haue hade the temporaltes owte of  
 there handes where for by the ad wyse laubours 7  
 procuryng of the sperituallte incoraged the kynge to  
 chalenge normandy And hys Ryghte in fraunce to the in  
 tent to set hym an warke there þat he shulde not seke  
 none occasiouns for to entre In to such matters 7 þen<sup>j</sup>  
 [The text ends]



**COMMENTARIES AND NOTES**

### Commentaries and Notes

In the commentaries to MSS. A and B I have used modified forms of the sigla used by MED for reference to the texts printed by Brie: thus Brut-1333 signifies the text of the CV printed by Brie, Brut-1377 signifies the continuation to 1377, etc. BM MS. Harl. 4827 has been used as representative of the EV/1419:B for instances of comparison with MS. B.

To the end of the Cadwallader episode, which is found in MS. B but not in MS. A, the Brut is ultimately based on Geoffrey of Monmouth's Historia Regum Britanniae. A full commentary on this is provided by J.S.P. Tatlock in his invaluable book The Legendary History of Britain, Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1950, and no attempt has been made to reproduce the material found therein or to provide full references in the notes to Tatlock's work.

I have commented on some place-names and have attempted to identify some others, but I have not done so consistently, as there is a lack of any reference work dealing with the medieval nomenclature of places and countries.

For further information on the method and scope of the commentaries see Vol. I, p. 338.

### Commentary and Notes on MS. A

Fol. 1 <sup>a</sup>hym gouerned] 'governed himself'. <sup>b</sup>entendaunt] 'obedient, subject'. <sup>c</sup>weren and weren] The line-division occurs after and. The scribe may have taken earlier comen as a past participle and inserted and to avoid repetition of weren, but the (.) makes this unlikely. Probably a case of simple dittography.  
<sup>d</sup>wers and wors] Antedates OED's first quotation dated



1487 s.v. Worse adv. 2b.

Fol. 2 <sup>a</sup>hete] 'sexual desire, lust' (MED). <sup>b</sup>plenteuous of kynde] 'fertile, sexually aroused'; cf. OED s.v. Plenteous a. 2. <sup>c</sup>lykynges natures] 'semen' (MED). The scribe has omitted a preceding and; poss. he misunderstood the phrase and took lykynges as a present participle and natures as 'natures, spirits'. <sup>d</sup>herkeneth] This and similar words show that the text was intended to be read aloud to an audience. <sup>e</sup>vnderfongedde] Pret. of underfongen 'to receive, take', a weak verb, analogous to underfon, a Class VII contracted strong verb. The latter is also found, e.g. vndirfange, vnderfong(e), vndirfeng. <sup>f</sup>wiphelde hym] 'engaged him in his service'. <sup>g</sup>quented] Var. of acquainted. Cf. OF cointier. <sup>h</sup>glased] 'struck with a glancing blow' (MED s.v. glacen). <sup>i</sup>euele payed] 'ill-pleased, dissatisfied'; cf. OED s.v. Paid ppl. a. 1.

Fol. 3 <sup>a</sup>hadede] Line-division, with hyphen, between hade and de. <sup>b</sup>and seid] 'some' om. after and. <sup>c</sup>wynde 7 weder at wille] An alliterative catchphrase (OED records wind in conjunction with weather from a1225 to 1848, s.v. Wind sb.<sup>1</sup> 5). Cf. OED quotation a1400 Octouian 1237: 'Good wynd and wedyr þay hadde at wylle.' <sup>d</sup>ymage] 'statue'. <sup>e</sup>conable] Var. of convenable 'appropriate, suitable'. <sup>f</sup>And. And] Ditto-graphy.

Fol. 4 <sup>a</sup>Tous] So MS. for Tours. <sup>b</sup>A maugre] 'despite, notwithstanding'. From OF a mal gre, a maugre, and more commonly found as maugre. (In OED s.v. Amaugrey with one quotation dated c1449). <sup>c</sup>busch hym] 'lie in ambush'. <sup>d</sup>buschment] An aphetic form of abusement, embusement 'ambush'. <sup>e</sup>noblissh] 'nobly'; used again



on fol. 6<sup>a</sup>b. <sup>f</sup>Cottonesse] Q and T are often similar, and the scribe has misread his exemplar. <sup>g</sup>Gogmagog] The name of the leader of the giants occurs as Goemagot in Geoffrey of Monmouth, Geomagog in La3amon (c1205), and Gogmagog in Robert of Gloucester (1297). It was altered after the Biblical names, Gog, prince of Meschech and Tubal, and Magog his original home (Ezekiel xxxviii-xxxix). In Revelation and later apocryphal literature, Gog and Magog are aides of Satan the Antichrist (see M. Leach et al., Funk & Wagnall's Standard Dictionary of Folklore, Mythology, and Legend, 1972, p. 457). The figure of Gogmagog was divided in later legend into two giants, Gog and Magog, who survived Brutus's extermination of the giants and were led in chains to the royal palace in London, on a site where later the Guildhall stood. Two 14-foot statues commemorated this, and were known to be standing during the reign of Henry V (1413-22). They were destroyed in the Great Fire, rebuilt in 1708, and again destroyed during the Blitz in World War II. Medieval knowledge of anatomy was slight, and cases of gigantism and finds of prehistoric animal bones gave credence to such legends of the giant inhabitants of early Britain, living in areas such as the Gog Magog Hills south of Cambridge. See T. Brown, 'A note on Gog', Folk-lore 61 (1950), pp. 98-103; K.M. Briggs, A Dictionary of British Folk-Tales Part B 'Folk Legends' Vol. I, London, 1971, pp. 607-8 and references therein. <sup>h</sup>gyrdyl place] 'waist'. Cf. OED Girdlestead, MED girdel-stede. place is an insertion by the scribe, (?) poss. on re-reading. <sup>i</sup>brast] Pret. of bresten. Cf. Brut-1333 brak. <sup>j</sup>an] 'and'. <sup>k</sup>vp on a roche] The Brut follows Geoffrey of Monmouth. Manning says that Corin drops Gogmagog over a rock, which is still called ffaleys 'Falaise'; see F.J. Furnivall, The Story of England by Robert Manning of Brunne,



London, 1887, Part I, ll. 1843-4. <sup>l</sup>sarte] An error, prob. for saute, from OF saut. <sup>m</sup>newe Troye] Recorded in OED s.v. New a. and sb.<sup>2</sup> A 5c, in Dunbar's poems, dated 1500-20. <sup>n</sup>remenbrance] So MS. for remembrance. <sup>o</sup>ery] 'plough, cultivate', from OE erian; a conservative form.

Fol. 5 <sup>a</sup>darwent] The work occurs as a river-name in Cumberland, Derbyshire, Durham, and Yorkshire, and as Darwen in Lancashire. The best identification, however, is the river Darent in Kent, spelled Derwent in Geoffrey of Monmouth (see E. Ekwall, English River-Names, Oxford, 1928, p. 113). <sup>b</sup>and kistonen of lyndeseye] Possibly kistonen is an error for kistouen 'Kesteven (area in Lincolnshire)'; but cf. MS. B. lyndeseye is Lincoln, 'a Brit[ish] derivative of Lindon, the old name of Lincoln, to which was added OE ēg 'island'. The district was practically an island, before the fens on the Witham were drained' (E. Ekwall, Concise Oxford Dictionary of English Place-names, 4th ed., 1960, p. 299). The scribe appears to mean 'and men of Kesteven from Lincolnshire', although kistouen elsewhere refers to the area rather than the inhabitants. <sup>c</sup>drenchit] 'drowned'. Cf. p.ppl. dreynte below. <sup>d</sup>lotryme] So MS. for lotryne. Or -vine. <sup>e</sup>fawchon] 'a large, broad sword with a curved blade ..; also, a short stabbing-sword or dagger' (MED s.v. fauchoun). <sup>f</sup>an hye] an is unusual in this text, but an hye was an accepted phrase; see OED s.v. An prep. <sup>g</sup>loueday] 'a day appointed for a meeting between enemies, rivals, parties to a lawsuit, etc., for the purpose of reconciliation or arbitration'; taken loueday 'to come for reconciliation' (MED). See J.W. Spargo, 'Chaucer's Lovedays', Speculum XV (1940), pp. 36-56. <sup>h</sup>haunted] 'practised'. <sup>i</sup>gradde 7 criede] Word-pair of semantically equivalent



elements. Such word-pairs are typical of the group of MSS. to which MS. A belongs at the beginning of the text. <sup>j</sup>ffor ... 3ere] For a discussion of the syntax see Vol. I, p. 250. <sup>k</sup>doughtynss] So MS. for -nes; e and s are close in shape in many medieval scripts.

Fol. 6 <sup>a</sup>nobley] 'nobility of nature or rank' (OED).

<sup>b</sup>leyle] Leyr 'Lear' is called leyl(e) in all but one of the texts of the group to which MS. A belongs and this confusion is a distinguishing feature of the group (see Vol. I, pp. 59-62). <sup>c</sup>glosed] 'deceived with fair words'. <sup>d</sup>sqiers] The scribe uses a superscript i, which is usually the abbreviation-mark for ri. -qu- was not obligatory in Southern England until the sixteenth century (see OED s.vv. Q, squire). <sup>e</sup>at soiourne] The phrase should be construed as prep. with infinitive; the construction is rare in Southern texts, but an unequivocal case occurs on fol. 26<sup>b</sup>a, at make werre.

Fol. 7 <sup>a</sup>meyne] 'body of retainers, attendants; retinue',

from OF meyne, mesnie. <sup>b</sup>by almyghty god and by his

holi names] Apparently a common expression used of making an oath (it occurs again on fol. 80<sup>b</sup>b). God's

holi names must refer to the three persons of the

Trinity. 'The Holy Name' is the name of Jesus as an object of devotion (see MED s.v. holi (adj.(2) 2 a and

OED Suppl.<sup>2</sup> s.v. holy adj. 3 b). <sup>c</sup>leue] 'believe',

from OE; cf. Anglian lēfan, West Saxon lȳfan, līfan.

<sup>d</sup>kyndom] See MED s.v. kinedom. From OE cynedōm, and not an error for kingdom (from OE cyningdōm).

<sup>e</sup>ownte] OED and MED record no variants with initial o-.

Cf. N. Davis in his revision of Tolkien and Gordon's Sir Gawain, Oxford, 2nd ed., 1967, p. 104, note on

l. 1028. <sup>f</sup>humble] So MS. for 'Humber'.



- Fol. 8 <sup>a</sup>welbe loued] -l- and -b- are joined by a hair-stroke and there appears to be a slight break between -e and l-. <sup>b</sup>who] The insertor of w- either did not recognize ho as a valid variant of who or he recognized but disliked it. <sup>c</sup>he knyzt] was om. after he. <sup>d</sup>he boght ... of all þe lande] his fader has become confused with he, thus losing the sense. The correct sense is 'he thought while his father was alive that he [i.e. Doneband] was the most rightful heir to all the land'. <sup>e</sup>quentyse] 'cunning, craft, underhand dealing' (OED). <sup>f</sup>Donedab] Error for Doneband (b and d transposed, n abbreviation-mark omitted).
- . <sup>g</sup>constitucyon] 'decree, statute, ordinance'; see MED s.v. constitucioun n. 1(c), where the first quotation is dated a1450. <sup>h</sup>Bonebandes] So MS. for Donebandes (passim). <sup>i</sup>a þis halfe] 'on this side of'. <sup>j</sup>strenght Belyn] 'against' om. after strenght. <sup>k</sup>þat was þo þat] 'who was then he whom'.

Fol. 9 <sup>a</sup>þoo fletes two] The post-posed adj. avoids the combination so þat þoo two, which is less euphonious. <sup>b</sup>put her in to his shippes] Logically, the sense requires a singular shippe. <sup>c</sup>a boke] i.e. the Bible. <sup>d</sup>hauelocke þat] þat is an error and should have been deleted. <sup>e</sup>bossinge] 'raising (of a roadway)' (MED). <sup>f</sup>þo loued] loued is an error for leued; the scribe probably construed þo as the 3rd person plural demonstrative pronoun 'those, them' instead of as an adverb 'then'. Cf. MS. B. <sup>g</sup>to Belyn his faders tyme] 'in his father Belyn's time'; cf. OED s.v. To prep. 7 'in, during (a time) (obs. rare)'.

Fol. 10 <sup>a</sup>de] So MS. for he, prob. influenced by following died. <sup>b</sup>xix 3ere and after he deyde] The scribe has omitted a line after xix 3ere mentioning king Howan



(Owan). Cf. MS. B and Brut-1333 (Brie, p. 28 ll. 25-26).  
<sup>c</sup>arblast] 'crossbow'. <sup>d</sup>Moranth] So MS. for Morwith.  
<sup>e</sup>Grauntburgh] Error for Grantham, Graunham (used in the text), the town of Grantham in Lincolnshire. The forms without -t- are due to Norman influence. (?) possibly erroneously associated by scribe with Grandborough in Buckinghamshire, or Grantchester (close by Cambridge).  
<sup>f</sup>debonour] 'gentle, gracious, humble', from OF debonaire, formed from the phrase de bonne aire 'of good disposition'. The -our ending found as a variant in ME beside -aire is probably due to the influence of OF boneure or de bon eur. <sup>g</sup>higanus] The name should be higamus (see Brie, p. 30 l. 4 and MS. B). That the reading in MS. A is higanus and not higamis is shown by the abbreviated form 'higanus' below. <sup>h</sup>petur] Either an error for petitur, or, since the word occurs at the end of a line, the scribe intended the abbreviation-mark to denote itur. <sup>i</sup>pe] The correct word should be hesidur.

Fol. 11 <sup>a</sup>variaunce of letters] For a more detailed 'etymological' account of the name of London, see Geoffrey of Monmouth i.17. <sup>b</sup>norshe] 'bring up, rear'; a variant of nourish (see OED s.v.). <sup>c</sup>and so per aroos.by twene hem. Euelyn ...] 'and it occurred so between them, [that] Euelyn ...' Brie transcribes the proper name as Enelyn (Brie, p. 32 l. 27 passim), and E.G. Withycombe says in the Oxford Dictionary of English Christian Names, 2nd ed., 1950, p. 108, that Evelyn 'as a man's name ... seems to date only from the 17th C and to be derived from the surname Evelyn'. However, the name given in Geoffrey of Monmouth is Cuelinus and confusion between C- and E- would easily result in a form of the name Evelyn. <sup>d</sup>kymbalym] So MS. for kymbalyn. <sup>e</sup>Guyder] This and its variant forms in MS. A is closer to the name given by Geoffrey of



Monmouth, Guiderius. Brut-1333 has Ginder, Gynder (Brie, p. 33 l.28, l.31, passim) Cf. MS. B, which has one instance of Gynder besides erroneous altered forms. <sup>f</sup>worpi in dede] 'valiant, worthy, in war or combat'. <sup>g</sup>Casseban] So MS. for Cassebelan. <sup>h</sup>Turnage] An imaginary form of truage 'tribute' invented by the scribe, who cannot have been familiar with the word (although it is used properly in the chapter-heading). It is used several times in this chapter. The scribe must have been confronted by an abbreviated form in his exemplar, possibly T<sup>u</sup>age, which he expanded wrongly, taking the abbreviation-mark as ur not r and mistaking u for n.

Fol. 12 <sup>a</sup>lyuyngel] A misreading of kynge in the exemplar; k- has been taken as l- and -n- as -u-. The resulting nonsense has been rationalized by the repetition of -ynge. <sup>b</sup>in to the bataile vn to kyng Guider Sire] The scribe has omitted a phrase such as 'and said' either after bataile or Guider. <sup>c</sup>ner and ner] 'nearer and nearer'; cf. OED s.v. Near adv.<sup>1</sup> l.b. <sup>d</sup>Grinderes] So MS. for Guideres. <sup>e</sup>Gunder] So MS. for Guider. <sup>f</sup>And so ... counselde hym] The syntax is confused. The scribe probably referred back to his Romanes and took it as the subject, overlooking that the phrase is already part of a prepositional group. <sup>g</sup>Claudoius] So MS. (and again below) for Claudius. <sup>h</sup>Gonnogen] Possibly a badly formed -e- but more probably an error, influenced by the following o, for Gennogen. <sup>i</sup>amoger] So MS. for armoger. <sup>j</sup>sett in a cheir] 'occupied a bishop's seat'. <sup>k</sup>Beryng] Final er abbreviation-mark om. <sup>l</sup>bod] So MS. for 'body'. <sup>m</sup>Borynger] So MS. for Berynger. <sup>n</sup>Berwike vp Twede] A legitimate variant. Cf. Latin Berewicum super Twedam (1229 in Close Rolls, in E. Ekwall, Concise Oxford Dictionary of English



Place-Names, 3rd ed., 1947, p. 37). <sup>o</sup>And And] Ditto-graphy, with second And written on fresh line. <sup>p</sup>into ffraunce] 'as far as France'.

Fol. 13 <sup>a</sup>contak] 'conflict, strife'. The word often appears as part of a word-pair, as here (cf. quotations in MED s.v. contek). <sup>b</sup>to two] Either a case of ditto-graphy (using variant spellings) or an error for bo two. <sup>c</sup>cam] This verb is superfluous; possibly the scribe referred back in the sentence and mistook the verb sent for the noun sent 'saint', although the grammar would still be confused. <sup>d</sup>ij Archbissopes] The Archbishops of Canterbury and York as Brut-1333 and MS. B tell us. <sup>e</sup>they Roome] of om. after they. <sup>f</sup>poo s] The letter printed here as s has the shape of a long s. However, it is not poos 'those', for long s is not used word-finally. The scribe has begun to write f, as part of of, but noticed his error, that the preceding o belongs to po and stopped before adding the cross-stroke. He then wrote of, but did not delete or expunct his almost formed f. <sup>g</sup>Costante] The scribe was obviously unfamiliar with the correct name, Constance (Brut-1333), and he uses the spellings, Costante, Costance; possibly he could not clearly distinguish c and t in the exemplar. For the omission of -n-, cf. Langland's Costantynes 'Constantine's' (Piers Plowman B. X. 1.324), which form is also used in MS. A below. <sup>h</sup>challenge] 'claim'. <sup>i</sup>t] False start for Truage. <sup>j</sup>Seynt Elenes sone þat fonde the Crosse in the holy lande] i.e. Saint Helena found the True Cross. On the early development of the legend, see P.O.E. Gradon, Cynewulf's Elene, London, 1958, pp. 15 ff. and references therein. <sup>k</sup>Sarezeine] 'a non-Christian, heathen, or pagan; an unbeliever, infidel' (OED s.v. Saracen 2). This is the normal sense of the word in the earlier sections of the Brut; with reference



to the Crusades, it has its modern meaning.

Fol. 14 <sup>a</sup>and a nd a nobir] The line-division occurs between a and nd. The scribe wrote the intended a of a nobir, then mistook the word he was writing when he began the new line. <sup>b</sup>went] Preceding 'he' om. through reduction in unstressed position. Cf. MS. A fol. 19 note b. This applies particularly to dialects also showing a 'he', or to dialects bordering on those with this form. In this respect, see MS. A. fol. 16 note a. <sup>c</sup>Taber] So MS. for Taberne. <sup>d</sup>as miche as they] 'might' om. after they. <sup>e</sup>sires] Cf. Brut-1333 siben (Brie, p. 41 l.14); sires is a misreading of some form of this. <sup>f</sup>assessed] Properly 'seized'. Possibly the scribe was influenced by assessen 'to assess, tax'. A possibility is that the exemplar read a ['he'] sessed. <sup>g</sup>counseyle hed her] hed is probably a false start for her, cleverly altered into a pseudo-preterite ending. <sup>gbis</sup>Eele] So MS. for Erle. <sup>h</sup>clallede] So MS. for callede; the first -l- is an anticipation of -ll-. <sup>i</sup>Amorican] Properly 'Armorica, Aremorica' (Breton, = on the sea). The ancient name of the N.W. part of France, and identified with Brittany during the Middle Ages. See F.P. Magoun, Jr., 'Chaucer's Mediaeval World outside of Great Britain', Mediaeval Studies XVII (1955), p. 120. <sup>j</sup>pa] 'that'; -t om. from influence of following this. <sup>k</sup>Conan po meredoke thonkede] po is possibly a false start for thonkede. <sup>l</sup>maxiniane] So MS. for maximiane. <sup>m</sup>Cooan] So MS. for Conan. <sup>n</sup>spowed] Written by mistake by scribe and not deleted although he wrote the correct word next.

Fol. 15 <sup>a</sup>aschipes] A confusion between singular and plural forms. The correct reading should be plural. <sup>b</sup>as many] Refers to the number of ships (see Brut-1333



and MS. B). <sup>c</sup>senttere] 'sent her'; a graphic representation of phonetic reduction where the pronoun occurs in an unstressed position. <sup>d</sup>sche hade y made here avow] The construction can be analysed in two ways, 'she had made to herself a vow' or 'she had made her vow'. avow can be either a noun itself or a [indefinite pronoun] vow. <sup>e</sup>hundlande] 'Hunland, Germany'. Not recorded in OED or MED (OED Suppl.<sup>2</sup>, Vol. II, has Hunland (one quot., dated 1916) s.v. Hun 5, but this is an independent, modern formation). <sup>f</sup>rivede] 'arrived'; from OF river, an aphetic form of arriver 'arrive'. <sup>g</sup>ouerlayn] 'had sexual intercourse with'; see OED s.v. Overlie v. 2b, where the first quotation is dated 1422. <sup>h</sup>lesse] 'lose'. <sup>i</sup>sarsym] OED records no variants ending in -m s.v. Saracen, but the number of instances where the ending is clearly -m with no apparent error suggests this was a legitimate, if etymologically incorrect, variant. It probably arose from spellings ending in -in. <sup>j</sup>Egla] So MS. for Elga (see Brut-1333). <sup>k</sup>Pehites of donmarkes] 'Picts, from Denmark, ...' There are many variants used of Pehite 'Pict' (see OED s.v. Pict), e.g. pette, pihte, pohete. The final -s of donmarkes is an error. The confusion which makes the Picts apparent inhabitants of Scandinavia can be understood by reference to Geoffrey of Monmouth, where Wanius (= Gowan) is the king of the Huns, and Melga (= Elga, erron. Egla in MS. A) is the king of the Picts. They are not brothers but allies in Geoffrey of Monmouth. <sup>l</sup>ankyldē] 'and killed'; the phonetic reduction of and in an unemphatic position is emphasized by its being written as part of one word with kylde. <sup>m</sup>pat he was herberwed in his hows] he is an erron. addition; the clerk lodges in Albon's house in Brut-1333 and MS. B. <sup>n</sup>rivede portesmouth] at om. after rivede. <sup>o</sup>spettous] 'cruel, ignominious, shameful'; an aphetic form from AF despitous (which form also occurs



in ME). <sup>p</sup>Gowan Meredok] An error caused by mechanical scribal copying without regard to sense for 'Conan Meredok'; the error is also found in Brut-1333 (Brie, p. 46 l.8).

Fol. 16 <sup>a</sup>a] ? 'he'. Cf. MS. A fol. 14 note b.

<sup>b</sup>hors and harneys] A common alliterative catchphrase in the Brut. <sup>c</sup>p] 'the'; together with th, a commonly found reduced form in MS. A. <sup>d</sup>conuertede heme] The first reflexive quotation in MED is dated al450 s.v. converten v. 2(c). <sup>e</sup>good] 'God', not 'good'. <sup>f</sup>not to doñ] Line division after not; 'what' om. after not. <sup>g</sup>Cerle] C- was probably intended as an E-, but the scribe omitted the cross stroke, thus giving the letter the form of C. <sup>h</sup>fare nor medele] 'deal nor concern himself with'. <sup>i</sup>antermetede] 'interfered; engaged in'; see MED s.v. entermeten v. <sup>j</sup>piges] So MS. for pinges; -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>k</sup>lord] Possibly an error for a plural. <sup>l</sup>7 pat worde] Line division after 7; at om. under influence from pat. <sup>m</sup>worthi] Error for wroth; see MS. B.

Fol. 17 <sup>a</sup>Goslyn ... weren lad] The syntax has become confused. <sup>b</sup>kynne folke] OED and MED do not record this form; possibly it represents an intermediate form before kinnesfolk 'kinsfolk' (MED (1459)) became established. 'Kinsfolk' appears to be derived from kin and folk by analogy with earlier 'kinsman'. <sup>c</sup>Towncastel] Error for some form of 'Thongcastel'; the point of the naming of the town is completely lost by this error. The correct name (Thwong castel) is given on one occasion below. <sup>d</sup>brepen] So MS. for brebern or brebren. <sup>e</sup>resonable] 'not going beyond the limit assigned by reason; not extravagant or excessive' (OED s.v. Reasonable 5). <sup>f</sup>be clippe] 'surround'. <sup>g</sup>a thong of askyn]



'a thong made out of a skin'. <sup>h</sup>appairedlde] The scribe has written the first -d- by mistake. <sup>i</sup>Rodewyne] Error for Ronewenne etc. (correctly named in the chapter-heading).

Fol. 18 <sup>a</sup>wassayll] On the history of the terms wassayll and drynke haille (which first occur in Geoffrey of Monmouth), see the note in OED s.v. Wassail. Their use here, as in Geoffrey, is anachronistic. <sup>b</sup>a well langaged man] 'a man fluent in one or more languages' (MED s.v. langaged, wel langaged dated a1500). <sup>c</sup>to have here] Cf. Brut-1333 to haue here to wyf (cf. also MS. B). <sup>d</sup>Vortiger] Error for Vortimer, caused by confusion of the similar names of the father and son. <sup>e</sup>wistener] 'never knew'. Brut-1333 reads wist nou3t (cf. MS. B). <sup>f</sup>downe the grounde] Line-division after the; the scribe has omitted 'castle to'. <sup>g</sup>tyme no non of his] 'Engist' om. after tyme.

Fol. 19 <sup>a</sup>kyghtes] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>that muste] Possibly nothing is omitted; 'he' may be so reduced that it does not appear. See MS. A fol. 14 note b. <sup>c</sup>flehy] n abbreviation-mark poss. om. over -y. <sup>d</sup>Merc hemerich] 'Mercia'. The OE name for the Mercians was Mierce 'borderers', usually taken to be with reference to their position in relation to Wales, but possibly with reference to their position between North and South on the Humber (see P. Hunter Blair, Archaeologia Aeliana, 4th ser., XXVI (1948), pp. 98-126, and P. Hunter Blair, Introduction to Anglo-Saxon England, Cambridge, 1970, p. 26). The form here represents 'the kingdom of the Mercians', from the gen. plur. Merchene + riche 'kingdom, realm'; cf. Merkine riche in the Chronicle of England in Ritson's Ancient English Metrical Romancees, London, 1802, Vol. II, pp. 270-313



(cited in Stratman, Middle-English Dictionary). <sup>e</sup>the vortiger] 'king' om. after the. <sup>f</sup>whther] 'whether'; cf. wth 'with' below. <sup>g</sup>nvir] So MS. for nevir. <sup>h</sup>the Ther dwellyng vortiger] Some words have been omitted. The required sense is 'the land there. Vortiger was dwelling ...'. <sup>i</sup>wth] This orthographic variant of with occurs on several occasions. <sup>j</sup>this comaunded] Possibly nothing has been omitted. See MS. A fol. 19 note b. <sup>k</sup>clylde] So MS. for chylde. <sup>l</sup>his letter and enselled hit] On the importance of the medieval seal as an organ of government see V.H. Galbraith, 'The Literacy of the Medieval English Kings' (British Academy Lecture, 1935), in L.S. Sutherland, Studies in History, Oxford, 1966, esp. pp. 96-105. <sup>m</sup>stande 7 chide] Infinitives are used, not present participles. <sup>n</sup>y sete at no force] 'I pay no attention; I consider of little account'. <sup>o</sup>hasted] The scribe has confused a present form and a preterite form. <sup>p</sup>wordly] Not an erron. form. See OED s.v. Worldly and variants s.v. World. <sup>q</sup>was my] in om. after was. <sup>r</sup>he pleyde with me game of loue] Cf. the quotations in MED s.v. game n. 2d, 'Amorous play, love-making; esp. sexual intercourse'. In passing, it is interesting to speculate why the fair bachelor was able to visit the lady's chamber ofte tymes without the lady warning her father. Possibly because he was not a wordly man.

Fol. 20 <sup>a</sup>proue] 'turn out well, succeed'. <sup>b</sup>comaunde] Error by haplography for comaundede. <sup>c</sup>thei] i.e. the men who dig, not the dragons. <sup>d</sup>boot] 'bit', rather than 'beat'. <sup>e</sup>thede] 'did'; poss. a Kentish relict form. See Vol. I, p. 234. <sup>f</sup>Constance that tretorsly] This phrase is superfluous and does not make sense, but it appears again in similar context below. Probably in the scribe's exemplar it was in the opposing



column to the text at this point and he mistakenly transcribed it. <sup>g</sup>Cottnesse] So MS. for Tottnesse; see MS. A fol. 4 note f. <sup>h</sup>Tho Aurilambros] 'asked' om. after Tho. <sup>i</sup>tretoirsly] Minim prob. om. from intended tretoursly. <sup>j</sup>Geuerche] Brut-1333 reads Generth (so Brie, p. 60 l.1). Geoffrey of Monmouth calls it Genoreu. <sup>k</sup>wilde fir] An alternative name for Greek fire, a highly combustible mixture made according to various recipes, using ingredients such as petroleum, oil, bitumen, sulphur, resin, naptha and pitch. It was usually made into fire-arrows, but could also be shot from tubes and siege catapults such as trebuchets. See L. White, Medieval Technology and Social Change, Oxford, 1962, pp. 96-100 and 163-4; P. Warner, The Medieval Castle, London, 1971, pp. 69-70. <sup>l</sup>to had] 'have' om. after to.

Fol. 21 <sup>a</sup>hitaciounes] So MS. for habitaciounes; abbreviation-mark through h- om. <sup>b</sup>mounte aubrian] Brie transcribes as Anbrian, and the founder of the monastery as Anbry (Brie, p. 60 l.23, l.25). Geoffrey of Monmouth names both as Ambrius, but the Brut-1333 (and cf. MS. B) also call the mountain 'pe mount of Bryan'. Aubrey was a 'fairly common' name in England in the Middle Ages (E.G. Withycombe, Oxford Dictionary of English Christian Names, 2nd ed., 1950, p. 34). <sup>c</sup>knight] -i- or -y- om. <sup>d</sup>the Carolle of Geauntes] Stonehenge, here applied to the ring of stones (Carolle) while still in Ireland. MED records geauntes carole in this sense in Hardyng's Chronicle, dated 1543 (1464). <sup>e</sup>waissshed] 'washed'. Also Wyclif's form. <sup>f</sup>an one] The usual division is a none. <sup>g</sup>Thane] 'when'; an archaic form at this time, but found on several occasions in MS. A. Cf. ban 'when', used by Hand C in fol. 102<sup>a</sup>. <sup>h</sup>Collomer] So MS. for Guillomer.



Fol. 22 <sup>a</sup>theip] So MS. for thei. <sup>b</sup>sclep] 'slept'.  
<sup>c</sup>kynesmen] An error for kynges men by confusion with  
 'kinsmen'. <sup>d</sup>alla bowte] 'all about'; the apparently  
 arbitrary word-division is paralleled elsewhere in  
 MS. A. Also written as one word (see MS. A fols. 17<sup>b</sup>,  
 41<sup>b</sup>). <sup>e</sup>at te bought] 'at the curve or bend'; see MED  
 s.v. bught n. <sup>f</sup>straught] 'stretched'. <sup>g</sup>what  
 meruailous] 'the' om. after what. <sup>h</sup>beene longyng to]  
 'pertain, belong, to'. <sup>i</sup>lette thee] rere 'raise' or  
 some such word omitted after lette. <sup>j</sup>And Brittones]  
 'the' om. after And. <sup>k</sup>wherfore hade] See MS. A fol. 14  
 note b. <sup>l</sup>ouertake] 'overcome'. In OED, dated c1375  
 s.v. Overtake 7; the word occurs in Brut-1333 (Brie,  
 p. 65 l.7).

Fol. 23 <sup>a</sup>continance] Presumably 'countenance', but the  
 construction is unclear. <sup>b</sup>knghtes] -i- or -y- om.  
<sup>c</sup>defied] 'declared war on'. <sup>d</sup>Tyncastelle] Error for  
Tyntagel. <sup>e</sup>uolde] The initial letter resembles u  
 rather than n although noide would also make good  
 sense. <sup>f</sup>merlyn ... figure] The Brut is rather confused  
 about the changes of likeness. Uther is in fact  
 changed into the likeness of Earl Gorlois, and Uther's  
 chamberlain Vlphyn is changed into the likeness of  
 Gorlois's chamberlain Iordan. In Geoffrey of Monmouth's  
 account Merlin also changes himself into the likeness  
 of a man called Britaelis. MS. B comes closer to a  
 convincing account but is still confused, calling Earl  
 Gorlois 'Erle Vlphyn'. The confusion in the Brut's  
 account continues when Uther and Ulphyn reach Tintagel,  
 for Earl Gorlois is said to be also in the castle. In  
 Geoffrey of Monmouth's account the Earl places his wife  
 in Tintagel for safe-keeping while he defends himself  
 in a fortified camp called Dimilioc. <sup>g</sup>nõe with hym̃]  
 'took to him', i.e. before Uther leaves the camp.



<sup>h</sup>leones] 'Lyons'.

Fol. 24 <sup>a</sup>fo prisoun] A false start for for, although the scribe then omits in. <sup>b</sup>Aloch] Error for Aloth (correctly named in the chapter-heading); c and t resemble each other closely in many medieval hands. <sup>c</sup>Octa] Poss. Otta here and in succeeding instances; cf. preceding note. <sup>d</sup>feble] 'of poor quality, worn-out'. <sup>e</sup>envemend] This form with transposition of m and n is found elsewhere in ME; see MED s.v. envenimen v. <sup>f</sup>fowoght] 'fought'. <sup>g</sup>Blduph] So MS. for Bladulph.

Fol. 25 <sup>a</sup>brothir] Error for 'nephew'. <sup>b</sup>in sikernesse] 'as security'. <sup>c</sup>leyde] 'gave (hostages)'; MED s.v. leien v. 6(a). <sup>d</sup>this] So MS. for his. <sup>e</sup>for] 'in spite of, notwithstanding'. <sup>f</sup>Thanne] See MS. A fol. 21 note g. <sup>g</sup>Messenrges] So MS. for Messenger(e)s. <sup>g</sup>Almaigne] Cf. Brut-1333 Lymoigne. Geoffrey of Monmouth gives Loch Lomond as the location. <sup>i</sup>Soctes] So MS. for 'Scots'; cf. MS. A fol. 63 note a. <sup>j</sup>thonge] 'tongue'. <sup>k</sup>trewe lipes] 'true lips', i.e. the Lamb always speaks the truth. <sup>l</sup>godeshowses] 'churches'. <sup>m</sup>pasture] 'one who exercises protecting care or guidance over a number of people' (OED s.v. Pastor sb. 3). Brut-1333 has gouvernoure (Brie, p. 72 l.16); the use of pasture here continues the religious imagery of the Lamb.

Fol. 26 <sup>a</sup>hidour] 'hideousness, terribleness' (MED). <sup>b</sup>hitaconis] So MS. for habitaciones; abbreviation-marks on h- and -n- om. <sup>c</sup>aluther] 'a wicked'. <sup>d</sup>the Ile of Sheepe] 'the Isle of Sheppey', Kent. <sup>e</sup>owt Kar] Kar is a representation of Welsh Kaer and is intended to denote a place. It is not carre 'cart, wagon'. (Bodl. Rawl. B171 erron. reads oute of a Kar, but the AN text of BM Cotton Cleo. D III reads hors de Kar.)



<sup>f</sup>ariuees] Corresponds to costes 'coasts' in Brut-1333 (Brie, p. 73 1.19). MED records ?arive n. occurring in 8 MSS. of the Canterbury Tales: 'At lieys was he and at Satalie At many a noble ariuee [vrr. ryuer, armee] hadde he be whan þey were wonne' (Harl. 7334), and gives the meaning as 'a landing or disembarkation of an armed force', conjecturing that the word is probably a scribal misreading of arme 'expedition'. Possibly the sense is 'coast'. Cf. Rive sb.<sup>1</sup> 'the sea-shore' in OED. <sup>g</sup>batailed] So MS. The correct reading should be 'the white battle' (see Brie, p. 73 1.23 and MS. B). <sup>h</sup>And of his bood. And thanne ...] Confused. Cf. Brut-1333: '& of his bloode þan shal þe goote lese miche of his lande ...' (Brie, p. 73 11.25-26). <sup>i</sup>Schenschip] 'disgrace, ignominy' (OED s.v. Shendship). <sup>j</sup>And ther an howge a Gustorne schal mete hem] Cf. Brut-1333: '& þere þai shal bene wip an harde shoure'. The sense of Gustorne is unclear; possibly it is intended to denote 'Gaveston', with association with a var. of ern 'eagle' (cf. ON grn). The association of Gaveston with an eagle is shown on fol. 76<sup>b</sup>a: 'be þe Egle y vndirstonde sire Pieres of Gauastoun', and cf. the translation of the verse 'Prophecies of Merlin' in J. Hall, The Poems of Laurence Minot, Oxford, 2nd ed., 1897, p. 106 1.142: 'þe name off þat Aren es cald Gaunston'. The arms of Gaveston contained six eagles or (see A.C. Fox-Davies, A Complete Guide to Heraldry, rev. J.P. Brooke-Little, London, 1969, p. 179). However, it is still difficult to see the meaning of the passage. <sup>k</sup>brynger] 'bring her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c. <sup>l</sup>schwlen] 'shall'; the scribe has omitted the main verb 'seek'. <sup>m</sup>scha] 'shall'. <sup>n</sup>threst] 'thirst'. <sup>o</sup>a priste] 'thirsty, athirst'. <sup>p</sup>vp] 'upon, on'; see OED s.v. Up prep.<sup>1</sup> 2. Commonly used in MS. A.



Fol. 27 <sup>a</sup>alop̄] 'a spider; a flea'; see MED s.v. loppe n. (1). <sup>b</sup>moldwarpe] 'mole' (etymologically = 'earth-thrower'; see OED s.v. Mouldwarp). <sup>c</sup>a coward as an hare] A proverbial expression; see Whiting, H 122. <sup>d</sup>oldelich] Brut-1333 reads elderliche (Bodl. Rawl. B 171), erdelich (Bodl. Douce 323). Elderliche may be a var. of eldeli 'elderly' (see MED q.v.), though elderly is not recorded in OED till 1611. Oldelich would thus be a synonym based on old (cf. the single quotation in OED dated 1382 s.v. Oldly a.). Erdelich in Bodl. Douce 323 is probably a substitute for the rare elderliche, meaning 'resembling earth' (see MED s.v. ertheli adj. 2, with one quotation dated c1450). Cf. the verse 'Prophecies of Merlin' in J. Hall, The Poems of Laurence Minot, Oxford, 2nd ed., 1897, p. 108 l.218: 'His hide sall be rogh als a gait skin'. <sup>e</sup>tremele as an Aspenlefe] A proverbial simile; Whiting, A 216. <sup>f</sup>aduentureslich] 'by mischance, accidentally' (MED s.v. aventurli). <sup>g</sup>vp] See MS. A fol. 26 note p. <sup>h</sup>with ooste] 'his' om. after with. <sup>i</sup>but of Agee] 'young' om. after but or poss. after of; cf. Brie, p. 77 l.21.

Fol. 28 <sup>a</sup>And kyng Arthur ... pris] A rare moment of tenderness in the Brut. A legitimate and recognized heir was essential to avoid dissension over questions of succession. <sup>b</sup>Ike land] 'Iceland'. <sup>c</sup>discroie] A var. of descriven 'to discern, distinguish, choose'. <sup>d</sup>Ioberu3] Cf. Brut-1333 Loherin3. Prob. a corruption. <sup>e</sup>Gorth] Cf. Brut-1333 Gorie. The identity of the place is unknown to me. <sup>f</sup>felde] Misreading of some form of 'forehead'; see Brut-1333. <sup>g</sup>Taberne] Cf. Brut-1333 Tabourn. A corruption of Geoffrey of Monmouth's Caliburnus (C and T are often similar in form in medieval scripts; cf. MS. A fol. 4 note f).



Fol. 29 <sup>a</sup>they worpi] 'were' om. after they. <sup>b</sup>trauailled] 'exerted themselves, served', rather than 'travelled'. <sup>c</sup>hosden] Long s is used; probably a scribal misreading of holden. <sup>d</sup>made kyng of Irland] Haplographic error for madede (see Brie, p. 80 l.33 and cf. MS. B). <sup>e</sup>Irland] Error for 'Iceland'. <sup>f</sup>salude] 'greeted'; pret. of salue from OF saluer. <sup>g</sup>so hardy with eygen in thyn heede] This sounds like a proverbial phrase or conventional collocation. Cf. si hardi de ouerir loil de la teste (BM Cotton Cleo. D III). <sup>h</sup>owre ij. predecessour] An interesting way of saying 'our predecessor but one'. <sup>i</sup>ffraunce] Error for 'Rome'; see Brut-1333. <sup>j</sup>froo the See] Apparently the result of a scribal misreading followed by a rationalization of the sense: See is superfluous. <sup>k</sup>Beau syrres] The English form of address, fair sires, is also found on fol. 30<sup>b</sup>a. <sup>l</sup>coñe] ? False start for comaunded. <sup>m</sup>freschly] Error for 'freely'. <sup>n</sup>lorchiþ] A phonetically reduced form of 'lordship'; see MED s.v. lordship(e n. <sup>o</sup>maxmyan] So MS. for maximyan.

Fol. 30 <sup>a</sup>pougrh] So MS. for bourgh. <sup>b</sup>phithon] Cf. Brut-1333 Pehito 'Poitou'. <sup>c</sup>Arwblasteres] The -w- occurs on account of a false etymology, analysing the word as 'arrow hurler'. <sup>d</sup>was owt take no more but the Croune] 'had everything except the Crown'. <sup>e</sup>sprade] 'overran, overspread'. <sup>f</sup>for lay] 'raped'. <sup>g</sup>here] Confusion between direct and indirect speech; there would be expected in context. <sup>h</sup>Cosyn] In the general sense of 'relative' since she is named as Hoel's niece above. <sup>i</sup>broughter] 'brought her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c. <sup>j</sup>haunte] 'engage in, practise'. <sup>k</sup>Diabus] So MS. for Dinabus.



Fol. 31 <sup>a</sup>lucye] Lewis Thorpe locates the site of the battle at Saussy in his translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth, The History of the Kings of Britain, Penguin, 1966, p. 247. The Latin texts have a number of variant spellings of Siesia, and possibly lucye represents a corruption of an early identification of the scene of the battle as Saussy. Or it may have been influenced by the name of Lucius, the Roman emperor, or even by the place-name Lucerne. <sup>b</sup>Nouñber] So MS. for Noumber; the macron poss. indicates omission of a minim. <sup>c</sup>kyghtes] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>d</sup>7 an hardy]. Line-division after 7; dittographic error. <sup>e</sup>streighth] So MS. for strength; minim om. <sup>f</sup>kynght hed] The scribe has become confused between kyng and knvght; the correct reading should be 'knighthood'. <sup>g</sup>Thane] See MS. A fol. 21 note g. <sup>h</sup>thi] 'they'; a fairly common variant elsewhere but unique in MS. A. <sup>i</sup>kynerie] Cf. Brut-1333 Kenen 'Chinon'. <sup>j</sup>men peple pought in thouthē] The passage makes sense if and is inserted after men and after peple. <sup>k</sup>Thene] See MS. A fol. 21 note g.

Fol. 32 <sup>a</sup>att the fulle] 'to the full, fully'. <sup>b</sup>and] Error for 'to'. <sup>c</sup>Amguissel] So MS. for Anguissel. <sup>d</sup>douthous] 'ambiguous, obscure, uncertain in meaning' (MED s.v. doutous). <sup>e</sup>Thane] See MS. A fol. 21 note g. <sup>f</sup>his Newew] i.e. Constantine is Arthur's nephew.

Fol. 33 <sup>a</sup>that dref] were om. after that. <sup>b</sup>amoges] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om.; cf. MS. B fol. 43 note c, etc. <sup>c</sup>Curian] In Anglo-Norman tradition Curan is an alternative name for Havelok (found first in Gaimar's Estoire des Engles), but in native English tradition this alternative name seems to be unknown. The Anglo-Norman text reads: 'cesti Curan fust Hauelok filt3 le Roi Kyrkebane de Denemarche' (BM Cotton Cleo. D III).



Through confusion Curan has become the son of Havelok in the English version. For the Anglo-Norman text of BM Royal 20 A 3 and the English text of BM Harl. 2279 see the Lay of Havelok the Dane, ed. W.W. Skeat, EETS E.S.4, 1868, pp. xiii-xvi. See also C.W. Dunn, 'Havelok and Anlaf Cuaran' in Bessinger and Creed (eds.), Linguistic Studies in Honor of Francis Peabody Magoun, London, 1965, pp. 244-9, esp. p. 248. <sup>d</sup>kyng of kyrkelane] A further confusion in the English Brut version of the story. In the French Brut version, King Kirkebain of Denmark (called Birkabeyn in the Lay of Havelok the Dane, ed. W.W. Skeat, EETS E.S. 4, 1868, p. 13, l.408) is the father of Havelok alias Curan. See preceding note. <sup>e</sup>as in anothis place ... this mater] Presumably a reference to the popular Lay of Havelok the Dane. <sup>f</sup>Amys Aduenture] The word-division and capitalization may have been influenced by the adverb amis 'amiss'.

Fol. 34 <sup>a</sup>Saxsounes and affricanes] An unlikely alliance originating in Geoffrey of Monmouth. Cf. Hardyng's Chronicle B 152, where 'Affrycans that then in Ireland were ... To Britayne came'. <sup>b</sup>betten] 'adown' prob. om. <sup>c</sup>Chawht Sparwes bounden] 'caught sparrows [and: om.] bound'. <sup>d</sup>Euessynges] 'eaves'. <sup>e</sup>haibitacionis] So MS.; -ī- is superfluous, and the macron poss. indicates deletion. <sup>f</sup>Englissh men] In apposition to they; possibly 'the' has been omitted. <sup>g</sup>aduenaunt] Var. (unrecorded in MED and OED) of avenaunt 'attractive, comely in appearance'. <sup>h</sup>ande mysbeleue] of om. after ande. <sup>i</sup>Englysshē ... aungelis] The famous pun 'Non Angli, sed angeli' loses somewhat by calling the Angles Englysshē. It is not found in Geoffrey of Monmouth, but is recounted by Bede in his Historia Ecclesiastica, Book I, chpt. 32. <sup>j</sup>Ilede] 'Island'; MED records the



variant ild(e s.v. ile n.(1).

Fol. 35 <sup>a</sup>thaylles of Ryghe and of thornbake] 'tails of ray and of thornback'. ryghe is not recorded as a variant of Ray sb.<sup>2</sup> in OED. The thornback is the common ray or skate of British seas. <sup>b</sup>pallioun] 'A woollen vestment worn by the Pope, and conferred by him on certain ecclesiastics, esp. metropolitans or archbishops (such conferment being a necessary preliminary to the special functions of their office)' (OED s.v. Pall sb.<sup>1</sup> 6a). <sup>c</sup>toke ne rewarde to] 'took no regard or heed of'. <sup>d</sup>wellenward] A variant (not recorded in OED) of woolward 'wearing wool next the skin, esp. as a penance' (OED). Cf. Caxton's welleward in this context and OED s.v. Woollen A. adj. 2. Cf. also OE linenwerd 'clothed in linen'.

Fol. 36 <sup>a</sup>Sedwaladire] 'Cadwallader'. A number of variants, some beginning Ce-, are used. Cf. MS. B. <sup>b</sup>heym] 'themselves'; only instance of this form in MS. A. <sup>c</sup>Neve] 'nephew', not 'knave'. Brut-1333 reads cosyne in this context (Brie, p. 100 l.27). <sup>d</sup>sib Cadewaleyn] 'related to Cadewaleyn'. In early use sib could take a dative with no preposition; see OED s.v. Sib a. and sb.<sup>2</sup> 2, where the latest such quotation is dated c1330. <sup>e</sup>Cadewaleyne But] Line-division after Cadewaleyne; 'and said' om. <sup>f</sup>and preide hym and praide hym] Dittography. <sup>g</sup>Tyntemouth] So MS. for Tynnemouth.

Fol. 37 <sup>a</sup>Mersh] 'Mercia'; cf. MS. A fol. 19 note d. <sup>b</sup>And abattes ... Crounecles] This passage is used as the basis of part of the exordium found in the Extended and Abbreviated Versions (see Vol. I, pp. 154-6 ). <sup>c</sup>for] Undeleted false start for forlay. <sup>d</sup>piloures] 'robbers, plunderers'. <sup>e</sup>that es to seye kyng Godryne]



Either the words 'to the king' have been omitted after Dennemarke or this clause is an afterthought to explain earlier hym.

Fol. 38 <sup>a</sup>well happed] 'have fared or done well'; happed is the past participle of happen and is dependent on earlier haue. <sup>b</sup>venne] 'think'. <sup>c</sup>holdet] 'hold it'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c. <sup>d</sup>maistrie] 'superior force or power'. <sup>e</sup>an Irchounes skyn̄ full of prikkys] 'a hedgehog's skin covered with quills'. <sup>f</sup>turnement] A var. of 'torment' by confusion with 'tournament'; see OED s.v. Torment sb. <sup>g</sup>Londe in] in is superfluous.

Fol. 39 <sup>a</sup>l] Probably an undeleted false start of the h- of hem. <sup>b</sup>frechely] 'eagerly, fiercely'. There is in general some interchange in the MSS. between 'freshly' and 'fiercely', both of which have closely similar forms in some spellings, e.g. fersly can easily become fresly by a simple transposition of r and s. <sup>c</sup>gree] 'victory'. <sup>d</sup>logge] 'building' or 'temple, shrine'. The reference is to erecting a burial chamber over the body before making the burial mound. <sup>e</sup>as ffor heme with owten̄ dowte] 'as regards them with no fear (or uncertainty)'. <sup>f</sup>diyd] The corrector clearly did not like the scribe's dialectal spelling of 'died', for he has altered it on several occasions. The original spelling may have been dide. Similar corrections are made in the succeeding folios and are recorded in the textual notes. <sup>g</sup>make] A word such as 'strife' or 'contak' omitted after make.

Fol. 40 <sup>a</sup>Achilston̄] So MS. for Athilston̄; cf. MS. A fol. 24 notes b, c. <sup>b</sup>Clastenburi] So MS. for Glastenburi. <sup>c</sup>poru takyng of hys wyff] i.e. through the taking of Estrilde for his wife by Edelwolde, whom the king had sent in his stead to consider Estrilde as



his future wife. <sup>d</sup>dought] 'thought'; S.E. spelling, where [θ/ð] > [d]. <sup>e</sup>hader] 'had her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c.

Fol. 41 <sup>a</sup>dispoused] 'married'; a var. of despouse(n) from Latin dēspondēre, dēsponsāre 'to betroth' influenced by espouse(n) from OF espouser. <sup>b</sup>Gossipes] The meaning appears to be 'co-sponsors at baptism' since Edgar's godson is mentioned separately. MED queries this sense s.v. god-sib(be lb. <sup>c</sup>in þe to the fforest] Line-division after þe, which is an undeleted anticipation of the. <sup>d</sup>brynge] 'down' or some such word prob. om. after brynge. <sup>e</sup>mysleuyng] 'evil living'. <sup>f</sup>sche thought Eldrede] 'to make' om. after thought.

Fol. 42 <sup>a</sup>Enne] So MS. for Emme (correctly named below). <sup>b</sup>Edmund Irendies] So MS. (and again below) for Edmund Irensides (correctly named below).

Fol. 43 <sup>a</sup>phought] 'thought'; ph is a 'pleonastic' diagraph resulting from conflation of p and th. <sup>b</sup>hi] So MS. for his. <sup>c</sup>sume] It could be an indefinite or unspecified use, but it is possible that the scribe omitted man (so Brut-1333, and cf. MS. B). <sup>d</sup>wouchid] 'granted, gave'; see OED s.v. Vouch v. 11b, where the first quotation is dated 1594.

Fol. 44 <sup>a</sup>kyng] Error for 'queen'. <sup>b</sup>Irendie] So MS. for Irensides. <sup>c</sup>Audience] 'hearing'. <sup>d</sup>his hated] Line-division after his; 'brother' om. <sup>e</sup>Goñge] 'privy'.

Fol. 45 <sup>a</sup>þe Croune] þe is an error for to; the scribe took Croune as a noun and not the verb which is required here. <sup>b</sup>teitour] So MS. for treitour. <sup>c</sup>Guldesmore] So MS. for Guldesdoun (used below);



more 'moor' has been substituted as a synonym for doun 'down'. <sup>d</sup>Siker] 'assure by a pledge or formal promise'. <sup>e</sup>orrible deth ... his eigen owt of his hede] The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle for 1036 has a ballad on Alfred's death, recording that he was blinded while being taken in chains to Ely. See G.N. Garmonsway, The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, London, 1953, pp. 158-60. Higden (and Trevisa) recount the blinding of Alfred, but assign the disembowelment to every tenth captive surviving the massacre. See J.R. Lumby, Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Rolls Series, London, 1879, Vol. VII, pp. 140-1.

Fol. 46 <sup>a</sup>no maner Erdelich maner] 'no kind of worldly manner(s)'. <sup>b</sup>appelled] 'accused'. <sup>c</sup>al my pelle] pelle is an aphetic variant of ap(p)el 'a formal accusation brought in court'. <sup>d</sup>awardee] 'verdict, sentence'. <sup>e</sup>dulseliche] Brut-1333 diuersiliche (cf. MS. B). The scribe has misread his exemplar and has rationalized the word into one he knew, dulseliche 'sweetly; quietly, with a low voice'. Dulcely is first recorded in OED from 1508, in the first sense only. <sup>f</sup>that h ther] The superfluous h probably arose from the scribe unconsciously taking tha- as 'that'. <sup>g</sup>homage.seruyent seruice] Brut-1333 has homage serment seruice; serment 'an oath' has been misunderstood (cf. also MS. B), and some form of 'servant' seems to have resulted, poss. in an attributive use. <sup>h</sup>drawe] i.e. hang and draw (cf. MS. B). <sup>i</sup>lorde] So MS. for lordes. <sup>j</sup>caste So moch looue to him] 'bestowed so much love on him'.

Fol. 47 <sup>a</sup>salvede] 'greeted'; see MS. A fol. 29 note f. <sup>b</sup>felowes] Here, as in MS. B, the singular should have been used as there are only two pilgrims.



Fol. 48 <sup>a</sup>the most naturell blod] 'the person of the most legitimate lineage'. <sup>b</sup>Thorold] So MS. for 'Harold'.  
<sup>c</sup>Air] Corruption of Aile 'grandfather' in Brut-1333.  
<sup>d</sup>Savdiours] The regular soldiers of his own household; the vast bulk of his army would have been composed of conscripts from the levies, and these have returned home.

Fol. 49 <sup>a</sup>conteyned him] 'behaved, conducted, himself'.  
<sup>b</sup>Geseyne] 'the period after childbirth before the mother might appear in church or the temple' (MED). <sup>c</sup>Iessen] A var. of geseyne (see preceding note). <sup>d</sup>s] False start for smoke. <sup>e</sup>stofed] 'suffocated, stifled'; from OF estofer. <sup>f</sup>al Normandye al] The second al is superfluous.  
<sup>g</sup>william] Written in error by scribe and left undeleted.  
<sup>h</sup>metynge] 'dream'; see OED s.v. Meting vbl. sb.<sup>2</sup> and cf. MS. B fol. 72 note c.

Fol. 50 <sup>a</sup>glaced] See MS. A fol. 2 note h. <sup>b</sup>lette to ferme] 'farmed out'. <sup>c</sup>taskes] 'tax(es)'. <sup>d</sup>henre Beauclerk] M. Dominica Legge points out that Henry's surname occurs first in the AN Brut; see M. Dominica Legge, 'L'influence littéraire de la cour d'Henri Beauclerc', in Mélanges offerts à Rita Lejeune, Vol. I, pp. 679-87, esp. p. 681. <sup>e</sup>talages] In OED s.v. Tallage sb.<sup>1</sup>: 'An arbitrary tax levied by Norman and early Angevin kings upon the towns and the demesne lands of the Crown'. In general use the word also meant simply 'an imposition, levy'. <sup>f</sup>The Thebaud pat was Erle of Belynes] Brut-1333 does not name 'pe Erle of Bleyne', presumably the Count of Blois, Thibaut IV (II of Champagne), who was a formidable opponent of Kings Louis VI and Louis VII. However, the historical narrative has become confused betw. the wars and dealings of Henry and those of his brother, Robert Curthose, Duke of Normandy,



and it is further possible that the title 'Erle of Bleynes (Belynes)' is a confusion with that of Robert of Belesme, earl of Shrewsbury and Arundel and count of Ponthieu and Alençon, who also warred against Henry in Normandy after unsuccessfully warring on him in England.

Fol. 51 <sup>a</sup>a Seynt] a is superfluous. <sup>b</sup>Melett] Also Molete below. Robert Malet, baron, forfeited his estates (221 manors in Suffolk) in 1101, and would appear to be mentioned here, although the historical narrative applies better to the career of Robert of Belesme. See MS. A fol. 50 note f and W. Stubbs, The Constitutional History of England, Oxford, 4th ed., 1896, Vol. I, pp. 333-4. <sup>c</sup>kaunterburi made] 'that' om. after kaunterburi. <sup>d</sup>helder] 'held her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c.

Fol. 52 <sup>a</sup>a thee] a is superfluous. <sup>b</sup>and Thebaud ... ky] The scribe has become confused; and appears to have been about to write kyng but realized that he was writing nonsense. The correct sense should be that Thebaud crowned Stephen. <sup>c</sup>the Castell vp one tyme] i.e. Newcastle upon Tyne; the scribe has confused the phrase with the phrase 'upon a time'. <sup>d</sup>an hous of the temple] 'a (religious) establishment belonging to or for the Knights Templar'. <sup>e</sup>aproued of] 'proved to be'; see MED s.v. ap(p)reven v. 2. <sup>f</sup>Babulons] -s is probably a misreading of -e in the exemplar; Babilon is used below.

Fol. 53 <sup>a</sup>though] 'thought'. <sup>b</sup>that made a fals cristene mane] The construction makes sense if that is taken to begin a new sentence 'A false Christian man caused that, ...'. <sup>c</sup>let doñ heme croyce] 'pledged themselves to engage in a crusade'. <sup>d</sup>the ij day ... faire in his



bed] A number of confusions have arisen in this passage. The first mention of the Archbishop's death appears to be an anticipation of the later mention. Brut-1333 reads: 'the þrid day of Septembre; and the secunde 3ar of his regne Kyng Richard hym-self and Baldewyne the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury, & Huber[t], Bisshop of Salesbery, & Randulf, Erl of Gloucestre, & opere meny lordes of Engeland, went into þe Holy Land. And in þat viage deide þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery' (Brie, p. 151 l.27 - p. 152 l.2). <sup>e</sup>traped withe Eren] 'trapped by (?) chains'.

Fol. 54 <sup>a</sup>Gy Gilliard] Gy is a false start for Gilliard. Château Gaillard was in fact built by Richard and lost by his brother John. See P. Warner, The Medieval Castle, London, 1971, pp. 71-91. <sup>b</sup>and as he 3ede vp on a day And as he 3ede vp on aday] Dittography. <sup>c</sup>aquarel that was enuemenede] It is unlikely that poison was used. Richard died of a gangrenous wound. <sup>d</sup>y y] Line-division after the first y; dittography. <sup>e</sup>was housled] 'had received Holy Communion'. <sup>f</sup>Couent] 'the company of monks, friars, and canons'. <sup>g</sup>confermede hit and sacrede] The scribe has probably omitted hit after sacrede, but as the text stands sacrede can be taken to govern the preceding hit. <sup>h</sup>suspended] The sense is recorded in OED s.v. Suspend v. 2c 'to put a stop to or interdict the use of (a place of worship), esp. temporarily'. <sup>i</sup>pulte] In OED s.v. Pilt v.; no construction with 'with' is noted and it is possibly used transitively here, although OED remarks that no examples in the appropriate senses are found after 1400. The sense here is 'took forcibly'. <sup>j</sup>he] The referent is holi cherch, which is normally referred to by the feminine pronoun; he is therefore the feminine pronoun 'she' (and again below, with the same referent). On the



representation of the Church as a woman, cf. Langland's character Holy Church, and see J.A.W. Bennett, Piers Plowman, Oxford, 1972, p. 104. <sup>k</sup>foure] So MS. for fourme 'form'. <sup>l</sup>wolde] The phrase 'not accord (or assent)' has been omitted after wolde.

Fol. 55 <sup>a</sup>body] The sense is unclear. MED uses this quotation s.v. bodi n. 7 a, taken bodi 'seize or arrest a person', but it is strange that the neuter pronoun hit and not 'him' is used. The suggestion may be that the offender is to be killed and the corpse brought to the king. <sup>b</sup>the ordor of Cisteaux] The Cistercian order, so called from the site of the foundation of the mother house in 1098 at Cîteaux in Burgundy. <sup>c</sup>doñe on] Brut-1333 done wibouten (cf. MS. B). The scribe has confused the sense with the phrase don on 'to place (a question, case, problem) before (sb.) for decision, refer (sth.) to (sb.)' (MED s.v. don v.(1) 6 f). <sup>d</sup>he schal be take] The context requires a negative; probably the scribe omitted ne after he. <sup>e</sup>desgarde] Error for desgrade 'to depose, deprive of ecclesiastical rank'. <sup>f</sup>quitlich] 'completely, altogether'. <sup>g</sup>3e non heir] ne om. after 3e. <sup>h</sup>enhonged] In MED, dated al420 in Lydgate. en- represents the OF prefix en- and occasionally carried intensive force. It was highly productive in ME in forming verbs from nouns and adjectives.

Fol. 56 <sup>a</sup>that passe oueral] Brut-1333 bat shulde passe out of be worlde. Possibly the original phrase has been misread as 'that pass over the world' which has in turn been altered to the phrase found in MS. A. <sup>b</sup>Iustefied] 'punished, corrected'. <sup>c</sup>piges] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>d</sup>NO] So MS. for TQ. <sup>e</sup>to 3oure vnuersite] A formal mode of address to the collective body comprising the members of a body, here the Pope's



retinue. The phrase renders the Latin phrase Noverit universitas vestra. See A.L. Maycock, An Oxford Notebook, 1931, p. 292. <sup>f</sup>fee ferme] 'A feudal estate in land or tenements held in unlimited tenure, subject only to a fixed annual rent; also, the land or tenements constituting such an estate' (MED). <sup>g</sup>Southdeken] 'sub-deacon'. South is from AN suth-, an alteration of OF suiz-, sous-, and occurs in several ME words (see OED s.v. South-<sup>2</sup> prefix). <sup>h</sup>vacaunt<sup>3</sup>] 'vacancies, vacant positions'. <sup>i</sup>realte<sup>3</sup>] 'rights or privileges pertaining to, or enjoyed by, the sovereign'. -ea- is an AN spelling, and the word is not recorded in this sense in OED, although the analogous royalty is, using the Standard French -oy- spelling. <sup>j</sup>Couent] 'College of Cardinals'. <sup>k</sup>enterdited] Probably an error for enterdite, and not a verbal noun 'those under interdict'. <sup>l</sup>encheson hade sent] 'they' om. after encheson. <sup>m</sup>de v Noñ of October] 2nd October (not 30th September, as the Nones fall on the 7th day of October; see H. Nicolas, The Chronology of History, London, 2nd ed., 1838, p. 5). de 'the' is a S.E. relict form from the exemplar.

Fol. 57 <sup>a</sup>Romenemedede] 'Runnymede'. Cf. the form in the Close Rolls for 1244, Rumened, in E. Ekwall, Concise Oxford Dictionary of English Place-Names, 3rd ed., 1947, p. 378. The first element is OE Rūnīeg 'council, assembly island', and forms with -m- have arisen from misinterpretation of the medial three-minim sequence. <sup>b</sup>astronge] A combination of 'as' and 'strong'. <sup>c</sup>kynessone] 'king's son'. <sup>d</sup>and the þorsday in Whitsoñ wike and] The sense is unclear, but is better if the second and is regarded as an error. Brie does this with regard to MS. Rawl. B 191 which also reads weke 2 (Brie, p. 168 l.15), but it is a strange agreement in error between Rawl. B 191 and MS. A. <sup>e</sup>of Of] The



capital Q of Qf is probably intended as the initial of Odyham, but through a slip the scribe rewrote 'of'.

<sup>f</sup>Swalno] An error for Swalo (correctly named below), as is Swalue at the beginning of the chapter. (The letter-forms seem to be n and u, but both could be the same letter, either n or u.) <sup>g</sup>wassail] i.e. a drink or the liquor in which a health would be drunk using this salutation (see MS. A fol. 18 note a). <sup>h</sup>fermorie] 'the monastic infirmary'. <sup>i</sup>trosse] OED does not give a specifically medical sense of 'truss', but sense 6 'to confine or enclose (the body, or some part of it) by something fastened closely round' can apply here. The first quotation for the simple verb (c1440) is medical: 'Trussyn, and byndyn, as menn done soore lymys, fascio' (A. Way, Promptorium parvulorum sive clericorum, Camden Soc., 1843-65, p. 504).

Fol. 58 <sup>a</sup>lette hem croice] 'pledged themselves to engage in a holy war'. <sup>b</sup>the sone of water] A literal translation of 'Fitzwa(1)ter'. <sup>c</sup>vif] There are a few examples of the Kentish spelling y- for f-, but all occur in words derived from 'five', e.g. 'fifty', 'fifteenth'. <sup>d</sup>costages] 'expenses, costs'. <sup>e</sup>hy] So MS. for hys. <sup>f</sup>Quinzime] 'a tax or duty of a fifteenth' (OED, dated 1429). <sup>g</sup>puruiaunce] 'ordinance, statute; purveyance'.

Fol. 59 <sup>a</sup>hade] Error for and. <sup>b</sup>solk] So MS. for folk. <sup>c</sup>gentiles] 'nobles'. <sup>d</sup>hastyng hade ... that 3elde] that has been misplaced by the scribe and should occur after hastyng. <sup>e</sup>clanseliche] So MS. for some variant of cleneliche. <sup>f</sup>newewerk] 'new work' (i.e. building). Not found as one word in OED but see s.v. Work sb. 5b, 'In early use applied spec. ... to the building or repair of a church', especially the 1398 quotation which speaks of bair new werke of Melros.



Fol. 60 <sup>a</sup>shete] Error for gete. <sup>b</sup>And and] Dittography, possibly serving as a catchword. <sup>c</sup>tapites] 'pieces of figured cloth used as hangings'. The origin of the word is possibly OE teped (a WGmc word from late Latin tapētum), which may have been reinfluenced by Latin in its later OE forms tæpped, -et. Or it may have been reintroduced in the 13th cent. from Latin or from Prov. tapit or some other Romanic form. <sup>d</sup>condewitt of Chepe] 'fountain at Cheap'. Stow records that 'The first Cesterne of leade castellated with stone in the Citty of London, was called the great Conduit in west Cheape, which was begunne to bee builded in the yeare 1285' (A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. I, p. 17). See also H.A. Harben, A Dictionary of London, London, 1918, pp. 270-1. <sup>e</sup>knygh] 'knight'. <sup>f</sup>disgise] 'decked out, showily dressed'. <sup>g</sup>noiaunce] 'the condition or fact of being annoyed, troubled, or harmed' (OED). <sup>h</sup>fley al maner strength] 'shunned any test of strength'. <sup>i</sup>vifty] Although l is the numeral for 50, a possible explanation of initial y- may be provided by the use of initial y- in vife 'five'; see MS. A fol. 58 note c. <sup>j</sup>Estren] 'Easter'; the final -n is from OE eastran, -on, pl. of eastre. <sup>k</sup>vndir] 'wonder (i.e. wondrously)'. <sup>l</sup>mystoke hym] 'transgressed, offended'. <sup>m</sup>ferr castyng] 'calculating, scheming, shrewd'. <sup>n</sup>akyght] 'a knight'; -n- or n abbreviation-mark om.

Fol. 61 <sup>a</sup>Surreis] Brie emends his text after TCD 490, to read Shirreyues; Douce 323 and Rawl. B171 read Surreys. Clearly a number of scribes have taken the sense to be the geographical area the Surreys. <sup>b</sup>Dauid was] 'that' om. after Dauid. <sup>c</sup>follich] 'foolishly, rashly', rather than 'fully'. <sup>d</sup>coniectede] 'contrived, plotted'. <sup>e</sup>p] Superfluous letter, influenced by



following vp. <sup>f</sup>msdone] So MS. for 'misdone'. <sup>g</sup>o] Superfluous letter, possibly a false start for Oct(au)o.  
<sup>h</sup>anothir ... aftere .v.] This chapter and the following chapter have been erroneously transposed by the scribe. The last symbol of the chapter-heading may not be v, but a mark to draw the reader's attention. <sup>i</sup>Sottlonde] So MS. for Scottlonde; cf. MS. A fol. 63 note a.

Fol. 62 <sup>a</sup>dusseperes] From OF doze pers, duz(z)e-. Originally the reference was to the 12 great lords or paladins of Charlemagne, and this was extended to apply to the twelve great lords or peers, temporal or ecclesiastic, of France in later times. They are regarded with suspicion in the Brut as a kind of conspiratorial cabal behind the French throne. <sup>b</sup>halfen del atax] 'half of a tax'. <sup>c</sup>Englonde wer] 'that' om. after Englonde.  
<sup>d</sup>Iuges] The corrector has misread the sense and has deleted the correct reading 'Jews' in favour of a synonym for 'Justices', who are also arraigned in this chapter. <sup>e</sup>viftenpe] For the initial v- see MS. A fol. 58 note c. <sup>f</sup>godis meble] Movable or personal goods as opposed to real or landed property. Also used in Brut-1333 (Brie, p. 185 l.30, written c1400), antedating 1418 in MED s.v. god n.(2) 12.a. <sup>g</sup>dousseperes] An extended sense of the term; cf. MS. A fol. 62 note a. <sup>h</sup>a clerk of Englonde] A spy 'planted' in the French court, obviously part of an organized system with a 'contact' in the English court. Philippe de Mézières, one of Charles VI of France's councillors, encouraged the use of spies in the late fourteenth century (see Philippe de Mézières, Le Songe du Vieil Pèlerin, ed. G.W. Coopland, Cambridge, 1969, Vol. II, pp. 382-4; quoted in translation in C.T. Allmand, Society at War, Edinburgh, 1973, pp. 50-1). Allmand also quotes French financial accounts of 1342-3 detailing payments to spies (French



text in BM Addit. Charter 10; translated in Allmand, op. cit., pp. 123-4). <sup>i</sup>wende kyng Edward ... gas dikis him] 'Did king Edward with his long legs think to have captured Berwick all against our will? He goes and plies the pick, and when he has, he goes and ditches himself in'. See R.M. Wilson, The Lost Literature of Medieval England, London, 2nd ed., 1970, pp. 201-3, and the other versions of the verse noted therein and in DOST s.v. dyke v.

Fol. 63 <sup>a</sup>Sottes] 'Scots'; the form frequently occurs and is probably derogatory and punning. Cf. the verse in the following note (also found, in altered form, in Manning and Fabyan) and a verse by Skelton in Poems, ed. A. Dyce, London, 1843, Vol. I, p. 183 ll.29-32: 'Are not these Scottys / Folyys and sottys, / Such boste to make, / To prate and crake'. <sup>b</sup>bus statarand ... fro dunbarr] The sense of the first two words of this mocking verse is unclear. bus is poss. a corruption of bos 'those, these'; statarand is perhaps an early form of stotter 'to stumble, stagger' (a Scottish and N. English word, but only evidenced late, from 1781 in OED s.v.). The latter is more likely to be a corruption of stotayand, from stotay(e) 'to falter, totter' (see OED s.v., quotations from the Morte Arthur and the Pistill of Susan). The sense would be 'These staggering Scots ...' The ending -and is possible in Essex, but it is also the ending in Brut-1333 and is prob. Northern in this case. wrenches 'tricks, wiles'. <sup>c</sup>arrebaude an harlot] 'a base fellow, a villain'. The terms are synonymous, as can be seen from Robert Manning's translation of Langtoft's un ribaud by a foule herlote (T. Hearne, Peter Langtoft's Chronicles as illustrated and improved by Robert of Brunne, Oxford, 1725 (repr. 1810), Vol. I, p. 317). Until the end of the 16th, and occasionally in the 17th



century, harlot could be applied in a number of senses to a person of either sex. The restriction of the word, in one of its senses, to women arose through its frequent use in 16th century versions of the Bible, where it was used as a less offensive term than hoore 'whore' (used by Wyclif). <sup>d</sup>herr] 'theirs' (i.e. their power). <sup>e</sup>come Stryuelyn] to om. after come; Stryuelyn 'Stirling' (also Estreuelyn below). <sup>f</sup>heme ascriede] 'shouted at them'. <sup>g</sup>mountenanse] 'distance'.

Fol. 64 <sup>a</sup>batailled] So MS. for bataille. <sup>b</sup>stirtte vnto amar of maris] 'leapt, bounded, into a marsh (or pool, fen) of marshy ground'. <sup>c</sup>mysdes] So MS. for mysdedes by haplography. <sup>d</sup>ffor ferde] 'because of fear'; see MED s.v. ferd(e n.(1)). <sup>e</sup>male talent] 'ill-will'; from OF mal talent, from mal 'evil' and talent 'disposition, temper'. <sup>f</sup>Trailbastioun] From AN traillebaston, from traille imper. of trailler 'trail' and OF baston 'cudgel, club'. Originally the term applied to the offender (literally 'one who trails or carries a club or cudgel'), but was transferred first to the name of the offence, and then to the legal process dealing with it. See OED s.v. Trailbaston for a fuller account and references. <sup>g</sup>mysbode] 'ill-treated, abused'; from OE misbēodan. <sup>h</sup>vp] See MS. A fol. 26 note p. Similarly on fol. 65<sup>b</sup> in the same context. <sup>i</sup>en ensaump] 'as an example, as a precedent'. The form of the phrase is French. <sup>j</sup>Stone] 'Scone'; the similarity of t and c has confused the scribe. Cf. MS. A fol. 24 notes b, c.

Fol. 65 <sup>a</sup>Comyns] See MS. for Comyn, possibly influenced by the possessive form found 2 lines below. <sup>b</sup>colled him abowte the nekke] 'embraced him'. <sup>c</sup>Brouns] So MS. for Barouns. <sup>d</sup>p] A reduced form of po 'then'. <sup>e</sup>bar him pourgh the body] 'stabbed him through the body'.



<sup>f</sup>kynk] A var. of 'king'; see Vol. I, p.243. <sup>g</sup>doubled] So MS. (and again below) for 'dubbed'; possibly the exemplar read doubbed and the scribe misread b as l.  
<sup>h</sup>Brus in And] The line-division occurs after in; the scribe began to write 'in Scotland' (see textual note), but changed the initial S- to A-, though omitting to delete in. <sup>i</sup>Simond frissell] Simon Fraser. <sup>j</sup>a 3eiens cristesmasse] 'about or near Christmas'. <sup>k</sup>Erle of Achelles] 'Earl of Athol'; the scribe has consistently written Achelles instead of Athelles (c and t are often similar in medieval scripts). Cf. MS. A fol. 24 notes b, c. <sup>l</sup>Achelles wente] 'and' om. after Achelles.  
<sup>m</sup>refutte] 'refuge'; from OF refuite (refuir 'to flee back'). <sup>n</sup>sere] The scribe's preferred unabbreviated form appears to be more in favour of sir(e) than ser(e) from this point onwards, but ser(e) has been retained as the expanded form as it accords with the normal expansion of crossed long s and in any case the scribe's unabbreviated forms are not consistent. Possibly the exemplar read sir(e) and Hand B is simply copying that form.

Fol. 66 <sup>a</sup>Thenne] See MS. A fol. 21 note g. <sup>b</sup>his were vsede] 'and engaged in war' (see OED s.v. Use v. 5b and quotations therein). The phrase makes literal but not contextual sense, and has arisen from a misreading of cesede 'finished, brought to an end' as vsede.  
<sup>c</sup>rath] 'quickly, soon'. <sup>d</sup>this of] of has been inserted in the wrong place and should have preceded this. The corrector probably took the required sense to be 'And Merlin prophecied this of king Edward' instead of 'And of this king Edward Merlin prophecied'. <sup>e</sup>de] 'the'; a relict form from the S.E. exemplar. <sup>f</sup>here] Error for 'his', i.e. John Balliol's. <sup>g</sup>ffor enchesoun ...  
Caustoun] Brut-1333 reads: 'ffor enchesoun þat Kyng



Edwardes sone sette by þe Scottes non force, for þe  
 ryaute of Piers of Gauaston<sup>̄</sup> (Brie, p. 205 ll.4-6; and  
 cf. MS. B). The scribe of MS. A has misplaced and then  
 deleted (possibly later) be the Scottes in the line be-  
 fore, and has omitted the verb. He has also failed to  
 add a cross-stroke to the C- of Caustoun in order to  
 form G. <sup>h</sup>ylde] 'island'; see MED s.v. ile n.(1). <sup>i</sup>the  
 table of golde ... artures] See W. Stubbs, The Consti-  
 tutional History of England, Oxford, 4th ed., 1896,  
 Vol. II, p. 335 note 5 and references therein for de-  
 tails of Gaveston's expropriations. <sup>j</sup>Amery of  
 ffriscomband] Amerigo dei Frescobaldi, Edward II's  
 Florentine banker, who was banished at the same time as  
 Gaveston at the demand of the barons. See G. Holmes,  
The Later Middle Ages, Edinburgh, 1962, p. 111. <sup>k</sup>after  
 wherd fore] Line-division after wher; the d has been  
 added by the corrector in error by reading 'afterward',  
 instead of reading 'wherefore'.

Fol. 67 <sup>a</sup>horesone] 'the son. of a whore', used as a term  
 of abuse from cl300. Gaveston is referring to the  
 speed with which Gloucester's mother married Ralph de  
 Monthermer after the old Earl of Gloucester's death.  
 See A. Bryant, The Age of Chivalry, 1963, p. 193 for  
 this and Gaveston's other nicknames. <sup>b</sup>Broostbely]  
 'broken belly, ruptured man' (MED s.v. broste-beli n.,  
 the single quotation being from Brut-1333). <sup>c</sup>Cherle]  
 'churl'; used as a term of abuse from cl300. See B.  
 White in The Reign of Richard II, Essays in Honour of  
Mary McKisack, 1971, p. 73. <sup>d</sup>kyngestuard] A conflation  
 of 'king's steward'. <sup>e</sup>hm] So MS. for 'him'. <sup>f</sup>Bannokef  
 Borne] So MS. for Bannokes Borne; the scribe has crossed  
 the long s. <sup>g</sup>Maidens of Englonde ... Rombylogh] The  
 first stanza of a contemporary song, now lost, although  
 possibly reworded by the compiler of the Brut. The



refrain with he valogh ... with Rombylogh is distinctive of sailors' songs (cf. Der Mittelenglischen Versroman über Richard Löwenherz, ed. K. Brunner, Wien and Leipzig, 1913, ll.2535-6), and its use here is a reference to Edward's preference for travelling by water. Further examples are given in R.M. Wilson, The Lost Literature of Medieval England, 2nd ed., London, 1970, pp. 206-7, and Wilson also notes that the verse appears in Fabyan's New Chronicles of England and France, ed. H. Ellis, London, 1811, p. 420. That the stanza is based on an original, possibly Scottish, poem is suggested by ffor tynt ze haue lost; tynt is the past participle of the chiefly Scottish and northern verb tine, tyne 'to lose' (see OED). In most Brut MSS. (but not in TCD 490) this has not been recognized, and lost has been supplied, tynt presumably being taken as a noun meaning 'reason' (cf. OED Tent sb.<sup>2</sup> 2 'intent, purpose'). I have noted that this verse also occurs on fol. 40<sup>b</sup> - fol. 41<sup>a</sup> of Lambeth MS. 386, a Latin chronicle from Harold to Henry VI called the Anonymi Epitome Chronicarum Angliae. <sup>h</sup>floc] So MS. for folc. <sup>i</sup>wretten] So MS. for wetten. <sup>j</sup>of the chirche] The phrase is an erroneous corruption of the following of the richest; see Brut-1333 and MS. B. <sup>k</sup>he chalengede the frere carmes chirch] 'he laid claim to the church of the Carmelites', presumably because it had once been the king's hall. 'In 1256 the Carmelites acquired a house on the west of Stockwell (now Worcester) Street in the northern suburb, where they remained till 1317, when Edward II, in fulfilment of a vow made at Bannockburn, granted them his Palace in Beaumont Fields, the site of which is still commemorated by the name of the neighbouring 'Friar's Entry.'" H. Rashdall, The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages, Oxford, 1895, Vol. II, Part II, p. 377, and references therein. <sup>l</sup>the kynges



Marchalsye] The Marshalsea was an ambulatory court held before the king's steward and the knight-marshal of England, originally to administer justice to the sovereign's domestic servants. It held pleas of all trespasses committed within the verge of the court (twelve miles round the sovereign's residence), where only one of the parties was in the royal service. The Marshalsea Prison in Southwark, London, was under the control of the knight-marshal and was established by 1300. See A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. II, pp. 61-2. <sup>m</sup>Duresme] 'Durham'. <sup>n</sup>vnneþth] The corrector's insertion of -th is unnecessary (also again below).

Fol. 68 <sup>a</sup>vndir his his bullis of lede] Line-division between his and his; dittographic error. bullis refers not to the document itself, but to the leaden seals (bullae) appended to it. See R.L. Poole, 'Seals and Documents', in Studies in Chronology and History, Oxford, 1934, pp. 90-111, esp. pp. 95-102. <sup>b</sup>Spensersone] The combination of the surname with 'son' is probably influenced by French 'fitz---'. <sup>c</sup>stakes] i.e. hay-stacks. <sup>d</sup>in the maner of a schilde] 'in the shape of a shield', presumably in a thin curved line so as to outflank and partially surround their enemies. But possibly a reference to the typical Scottish formation, the schiltrom or 'round battle', although this was primarily a static, defensive position (see T.K. Derry and M.G. Blakeway, The Making of Early and Medieval Britain, London, 1968 (1973), p. 149). <sup>e</sup>vnneþeth] See MS. A fol. 67 note n. <sup>f</sup>hoblers] 'light armed horsemen', corresponding to OF hobeleanor. The word derives from ME hobi(n) 'a small horse', a diminutive of Robert, preserved in 'hobby-horse'; such horses did not carry armour and were thus a mobile force. <sup>g</sup>affrett] 'a payment for a favor'



(MED s.v. fret n.(4)). This is the only quotation in MED for this sense of the word, which usually means 'a payment made to secure peace, a fine for a breach of the peace'. <sup>h</sup>endited of forest] Bodl. MS. Rawl. B 171 reads fforfet, Bodl. MS. Douce 323 reads be forest. The most probable explanation of the confusion or alteration is that forest has been taken as an abbreviation of lawes of forest, and that the word refers to a transgression of these laws (cf. Trailbaston, MS. A fol. 64 note f). Forests were often regarded as the game preserves of the monarch (see OED s.v. Forest sb. 2), and had special laws and officers of their own. See W. Stubbs, Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History, Oxford, 9th ed., 1921, pp. 185-8 (Assize of the Forest, A.D. 1184 under Henry II), pp. 344-8 (Charter of the Forest, A.D. 1217 under Henry III), and further laws passed under Edward I in 1306 (Ordinatio Forestae, Statutes, Vol. I, pp. 147-9, quoted in W. Stubbs, The Constitutional History of England, Oxford, 4th ed., 1896, Vol. II, p. 162). A second, less likely, possibility is that forest represents for(e)stal, forestel 'the crime of waylaying or assaulting a traveler on the highway; an ambush; obstruction of a road by force' (MED). <sup>i</sup>battailes] 'troops, companies, battalions'. <sup>j</sup>riche] Error for 'right'; see MS. B. <sup>k</sup>bank made] 'and' om. after bank.

Fol. 69 <sup>a</sup>dromondes] A dromond was a large, fast, sea-going vessel used both in war and commerce. <sup>b</sup>Badelesmer] This is the correct form, although elsewhere in the text Baldesmer is used. <sup>c</sup>encressed hem] A reflexive use is not recorded in OED or MED. <sup>d</sup>att] Line-division after att, which is a false start for atraitour. <sup>e</sup>botelarie] 'butlery'. <sup>f</sup>zelde] 'repaid'. <sup>g</sup>frer precheours] The Dominican (or Black, Jacobin) friars, who were the



major ordo predicantium. See W.A. Hinnebusch, The Early English Friars Preachers, Rome, 1951; R.W. Southern, Western Society and the Church in the Middle Ages, Pelican History of the Church, 1972, pp. 279-99. <sup>h</sup>Ay is in the reed of sum euel shrede] This appears to be a proverbial phrase, meaning either 'There is always a bit of evil in the red-haired man' (see OED s.v. Shred sb. 6), or 'There is always a bit of evil in good counsel'. <sup>i</sup>distaunce] 'discord, warfare, hostility'. <sup>j</sup>ars] So MS. for aros. <sup>k</sup>a fals piled clerk] 'a false tonsured cleric'. The phrase is repeated several times in conjunction with the name of Robert Baldock. <sup>l</sup>Efte] 'afterwards'.

Fol. 70 <sup>a</sup>drauen hem] 'moving, coming'; see MED s.v. drauen v. 3a(b). <sup>b</sup>laske] 'grow weaker'. <sup>c</sup>slake] 'become weaker or less in number'. <sup>d</sup>trautour] So MS. for traitour. <sup>e</sup>3ollyng as a wood wolff] 'yelling like a mad wolf'; cf. Whiting, W 469 and W 441. <sup>f</sup>kepten] So MS., probably for lepten (see Brie, p. 220 l.1 and MS. B). <sup>g</sup>arobbe of Ray] ray was a kind of striped cloth. <sup>h</sup>lave] 'law'. <sup>i</sup>kynde blode] 'native blood'. <sup>j</sup>no nothir on nor othir] 'neither one thing nor the other'. <sup>k</sup>accompede] So MS. for accoupede, pret. of acoupen 'to accuse of a crime'. <sup>l</sup>gewes] Also Iues below. Variants of juwis(e) 'punishment'. <sup>m</sup>Anon ... prece] 'take him out of the crowd immediately'; prece is a variant of press 'crowd'. <sup>n</sup>kyn3t] So MS. for kny3t.

Fol. 71 <sup>a</sup>0 kyng Arthur] A reference to the soubriquet of 'King Arthur' used in a secret correspondence between Thomas of Lancaster and Scotland, engineered by the Earl of Moray, in which Lancaster agreed to recognize Robert Bruce in return for the aid of a Scottish army. <sup>b</sup>Chapelet] Would seem to mean some kind of hat here rather than a wreath, garland, or coronet, since the



fact that it is torn and tattered suggests that it is made of material. The phrase chapelet of thornes signified the Crown of Thorns used in the Crucifixion, and overtones of this are probably being suggested for propaganda purposes since the Brut staunchly supports Thomas of Lancaster, calling him repeatedly 'gentle' and 'noble'. Cf. the chapelettes of scharpe netteles placed on the heads of Hugh Despencer the Elder and Robert Baldock (fol. 75<sup>b</sup>a). <sup>c</sup>in to whome he schorfe him al his life] 'unto whom he confessed his whole life'. <sup>d</sup>loselrie] 'profligacy; rascally conduct', from losel 'a rogue, rascal'. <sup>e</sup>braroun] So MS. for baroun. <sup>f</sup>as wode as alioun] A proverbial phrase; Whiting, L 327. <sup>g</sup>Sepensers] So MS. for Spensers. <sup>h</sup>tariede the englissh men fro day to day] 'impeded the Englishmen from day to day', i.e. they engaged in harrassing guerilla tactics. <sup>i</sup>And namelich þo ... his landes] A foretaste of the miracles later done on account of Thomas of Lancaster. <sup>j</sup>A] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 72 <sup>a</sup>orpede] 'valiant, bold'. <sup>b</sup>wherforore] Ditto-graphic error for wherefore. <sup>c</sup>ha] 'he'. <sup>d</sup>/] The vertical stroke between the and here is used as a punctuation-mark to make clear the division between the clauses. <sup>e</sup>kude] 'known'. <sup>f</sup>Conudom] So MS. for (?) Coundom 'Condom' (a town in Gascony). <sup>g</sup>prisoun] Not an error for 'person' (as MS. B has taken the word), but a figurative use of 'prison'; see OED Prison sb. lc. <sup>h</sup>al naked saff his brech] 'quite naked apart from his under-drawers', as a sign of humility. <sup>i</sup>morimale] 'an inflamed sore, esp. on the leg', probably used vaguely and not with reference to a specific disease. The word derives from OF mortmal (= med. Latin mortuum malum), f. mort 'dead' + mal 'evil'. See OED s.v. Mormal. <sup>j</sup>flixe] A var. of flux 'an attack of diarrhoea', also



used to mean 'dysentery' (see MS. A fols. 100<sup>a</sup>b, 101<sup>b</sup>a).  
<sup>k</sup>Sclaunder] 'discredit, ill repute'. <sup>l</sup>sett to her wages]  
 App. not recorded in OED; the sense is prob. 'placed on  
 a wage'; cf. putt to her wages (MS. A fol. 73 note b).

Fol. 73 <sup>a</sup>for treeten] for = for to is quite common in  
 S.W. dialects, and is app. not a mistake here. <sup>b</sup>putt  
 to her wages] Apparently not recorded as a phrase in OED;  
 the sense is 'placed on a wage'; the sum is given on  
 fol. 77<sup>a</sup>a, xx s in the day. <sup>c</sup>schent] 'ruined, destroyed'.  
<sup>d</sup>wyngesmore] So MS. (and below) for 'Wigmore'. <sup>e</sup>Iohn of  
 [Cry]mewelle] Cf. Brut-1333 Iohn of Cromwell.  
<sup>f</sup>mervailly] An adjective, not an adverb, should have  
 been used. <sup>g</sup>abrocour] 'a commercial agent, a broker'.  
<sup>h</sup>procren] So MS. for procuren.

Fol. 74 <sup>a</sup>Seelanderes] The Count of Hainault was also  
 ruler of Holland and Zeeland. <sup>b</sup>deynte] 'pleasure (in  
 doing something)'. <sup>c</sup>trie] So MS. (by confusion between  
 similar c and t letter-forms) for crie. The resulting  
 reading makes 'specious sense. <sup>d</sup>Tryovrs] That two persons  
 are required suggests that the sense is that found in OED  
 s.v. Trier 2, 'two persons appointed by a court of law  
 to determine whether a challenge made to the panel of  
 jurors, or to any of them, is well founded' (for which  
 the first English quotation is dated 1511, although  
 there is an Anglo-Norman quotation for 1377). <sup>e</sup>owtas]  
 'outcry, clamour'. <sup>f</sup>here hawyn wych] The insertion of  
hawyn 'haven' by the corrector in the margin results  
 from his misreading of the text as 'their [haven] which'  
 instead of the name of the town Harwich. <sup>g</sup>a pousand  
 iiij hundred and xxvj] Error for 1326. <sup>h</sup>And the quene  
 ...] The following passage, including Queen Isabella's  
 letter to the Mayor and citizens of London, to the  
 words my3te seen and redde 7c' on fol. 74<sup>b</sup>b, is not



found in Brut-1333. See the Appendix to the Notes and Commentaries for the French source of the letter and a Latin translation thereof. <sup>i</sup>may or schullen kunne mowe] 'can or shall know how to be able to'. <sup>j</sup>the newe cros in Chepe] For the history of the cross in west Cheap, see A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. I, pp. 265-8. The cross was built in 1290 by Edward I upon the occasion of his wife Eleanor's death. The reason it is called newe here is puzzling, for although Stow records that in 1441 or 1443 John Hatherley, then Mayor of London, received permission to rebuild the cross, work was not started until 1484, and finished in 1486.

Fol. 75 <sup>a</sup>a bye] 'be punished, pay the penalty, suffer'. <sup>b</sup>ffrere carmes] 'Carmelites'. <sup>c</sup>Robous] 'waste material, debris'; the first example in OED in an English text of rubbish. Transcribed wrongly by Brie as robons (p. 238 l.19), but corrected in OED. <sup>d</sup>dispte] So MS. for dispite. <sup>e</sup>samen] Recorded as a Scottish form in OED and its occurrence here presumably reflects an independent development of -n in an oblique case. <sup>f</sup>assentande] 'amenable, willing'; the use of -ande may have been influenced by the use of the French ending in Brut-1333's assentant. <sup>g</sup>ferers] The correct reading should probably be barelles ferers 'barrels or casks with iron hoops' (see Brie, p. 238 l.31 and MS. B), unless this is an unrecorded abbreviated form. Brut-1333 provides the first English quotation of the term (see MED s.v. barel-fere, -ferer). <sup>h</sup>holde] So MS. for hode 'hood'. <sup>i</sup>Arenrendel] Line-division between Aren and rendel causing dittographic error by scribe. <sup>j</sup>adouñ of] of is superfluous, unless taken as governing his dignite jointly with bynome. <sup>k</sup>Vtas of Seynt Hillary] 'the eighth day after Saint Hillary's day'; utas is a reduced form of utaves, a variant plural of octave.



Fol. 76 <sup>a</sup>serre Iohn of Bothum] John Hotham (correctly named above); the name was more correct (Qothum) before the scribe altered Q to B, and it is strange that this error should be found in Brut-1333, MS. A and MS. B. <sup>b</sup>tariede] 'impeded, hindered'. <sup>c</sup>onlich] Error for 'utterly' (cf. Brut-1333 vtterly). <sup>d</sup>Bisshopes] Error for 'barons', of whom Sir Henry Percy is the representative. <sup>e</sup>seriaunte] Var. of sergeanty (see OED where the first quotation is dated 1467), 'a form of feudal tenure on condition of rendering some specified personal service to the king'. Brut-1333 reads seriauntrye, the first use in OED of analogous sergeantry, in the same sense. <sup>f</sup>asingeler man] 'a private man', i.e. one holding no office or special position. <sup>g</sup>y vndirstonde] Brut-1333 reads is vnderstonde. <sup>h</sup>a arme of the in afelde] Line-division after the; see om. <sup>i</sup>vp on sake swale] sake is a misreading by the scribe of swale and should have been deleted. <sup>j</sup>thame] Erroneous conflation of that shame. <sup>k</sup>outputter] 'one who puts or pushes out'. Also in Brut-1333 (written c1400) although OED first cites Caxton's Chronicles of England (1480).

Fol. 77 <sup>a</sup>Merelyn prophciede for sorwe and harme apeple of his lande] The three MSS. used by Brie agree with MS. A's reading, which Brie emends by inserting shuld die betw. harme and a. A simpler emendation would be to transpose for to the position before apeple. <sup>b</sup>fror] So MS. for for. <sup>c</sup>bringer] 'bring her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c. <sup>d</sup>fflour i delice] The letter-form resembling i, which does not have a dash above it representing a modern dot, may be a false start for d. <sup>e</sup>heme] Brut-1333 reads her (i.e. Queen Isabella); heme may denote Queen Isabella and her brother, the King of France. <sup>f</sup>closen] So MS. for cloben (the MS. uses a long s). <sup>g</sup>Was was] Dittography (or possibly an extension of the



concept of the catchword). <sup>h</sup>the de þride] de 'the' is a survival from the South-Eastern exemplar of MS. A; the scribe has 'translated' de to the but has then mistakenly copied the untranslated form. <sup>i</sup>astent] 'stopped'; p. pple. of astinten. <sup>j</sup>attached] 'arrested, taken prisoner'. <sup>k</sup>engelissch men that þe deuel es ded] The scribe has omitted 'said amongst them' after men (see Brut-1333 and MS. B). A proverbial expression (Whiting, D187). <sup>l</sup>þeke] 'those' (see OED s.v. Thilk A adj. b).

Fol. 78 <sup>a</sup>longe berde ... þrifteles] C. Brown and R.H. Robbins, The Index of Middle English Verse, New York, 1943, no. 1934; Whiting, B 111. See R.M. Wilson in Leeds Studies in English V, p. 46; for a note of the verse and of the use of church doors on which to attach political satires and bills, see R.M. Wilson, The Lost Literature of Medieval England, London, 2nd ed., 1970, pp. 191-6. <sup>b</sup>that þe bate] 'that debate'; South-Eastern reverse spelling þ for d. <sup>c</sup>seynt Clementis chirche hawe] 'the yard (properly one enclosed by a fence or hedge) of Saint Clement's church'; see MED s.v. haue n.(1). <sup>d</sup>eggynge] 'urging, incitement'. <sup>e</sup>fee] 'right, privilege' (seen as a prerequisite of his position as Earl Marshal). <sup>f</sup>redressyng] Brut-1333 reads redose, given as a variant of reredos in OED, where the only example in the sense 'back or rear' (spelled reredoos and marked Obs. rare<sup>-1</sup>) is the corresponding passage in Caxton's Chronicles of England (1480). redressyng as the verbal substantive from redress, (first recorded in OED c1449), does not make good contextual sense, and is probably an error for some form of the word reredos in this unfamiliar and rare sense. <sup>g</sup>deptede] So MS. for departede; the scribe has omitted to cross the downstroke of -p- as a sign of



contraction. <sup>h</sup>ij mones in the firmament] The first of a series of ominous natural phenomena that mark this section of the narrative. Cf. Langland, Piers Plowman B, III, ll.323-327, on the appearance of several suns. <sup>i</sup>afrer menour] 'a Franciscan, a Minorite'. <sup>j</sup>laide] 'destroyed, done away with'. <sup>k</sup>Hov Of] Hov is an error. <sup>l</sup>sm] So MS. for 'some'. <sup>m</sup>decesse] 'dis-ease', not 'decease'. <sup>n</sup>pe Chesoun] 'the reason'. <sup>o</sup>pour] So MS. for your. <sup>p</sup>kepper] The context requires 'keeping' (so Brut-1333 and MS. B).

Fol. 79 <sup>a</sup>tretetouresly] So MS. for tretouresly. <sup>b</sup>as spite] Line-division between as and spite; possibly the two words 'a spit' were written as one in the exemplar. <sup>c</sup>gouvernaile] 'guardianship, period of minority'. <sup>d</sup>with ynne age] 'in childhood, under legal age'. <sup>e</sup>Ragaman] The name of the document by which the Scottish nobles in 1291 acknowledged Edward I as their overlord in exchange for the restoration of their estates, which Edward III gives up in this passage (1328). The etymology and the history of the term are unknown (see OED s.v. Ragman<sup>2</sup>), though J. Prebble says that it was so named 'from the tangle of ribbons that hung from their seals' (J. Prebble, The Lion in the North, 1971 (1973), p. 76). <sup>f</sup>the blake croice of Scottlonde] The Black Rood of St. Margaret, taken from Edinburgh by Edward I in 1296, and sent to London together with the Stone of Destiny from Scone abbey, the Scottish regalia, and the national archives. No provision was made in the treaty for the return of the Stone of Destiny. <sup>g</sup>the Scottes the Scottes] Dittography. <sup>h</sup>blorde] So MS. for blode. <sup>i</sup>poruz false] 'counsel' om. after false (cf. Brut-1333 and MS. B).



Fol. 80 <sup>a</sup>de dispite] de is possibly a false start for dispite and not the South-Eastern form of 'the'.  
<sup>b</sup>Morte] At end of line; mer om. at beginning of next line. <sup>c</sup>Vsues] A plural form of issue, 'proceeds from livestock, land, rents, services, fines, etc.' (MED), presumably from the few lands left to Edward by his mother and Mortimer. <sup>d</sup>toke the kynges pris for here penneworthes att good chepe] 'took the king's money (?) as their pennyworth (i.e. share, wages) as a good bargain (or easily)'. <sup>e</sup>slake] 'moderate, diminish the vehemence of'. <sup>f</sup>retynaunt3] 'retainers'. <sup>g</sup>comente] A reduced form of communité 'citizenry, nation, community'. <sup>h</sup>colour] 'trick, ruse, misrepresentation'. <sup>i</sup>disherite sum] A corruption of disheritesoun 'loss of possessions; destitution', used on fol. 81<sup>b</sup>. <sup>j</sup>here] Error for his. <sup>k</sup>heuy] 'annoyed, angry, displeased'.

Fol. 81 <sup>a</sup>hauten] 'proud, haughty, arrogant'. <sup>b</sup>he was callede þourgh oute the kynges crie] Cf. Brut-1333 'he was called so, þrou3 þe Kyngus crie' (Brie, p. 261 ll. 29-30. <sup>c</sup>kyng of folye] Probably his assumed title for tournaments or for his round table. Giles of Argentine called himself 'King of the Greenwood' for a tournament he organized in 1308 (N. Denholm-Young, 'The Tournament in the Thirteenth Century', in Studies in Medieval History, ed. R.W. Hunt et al., Oxford, 1948, p. 267).  
<sup>d</sup>arounde table] 'a round table'; see MS. A fol. 89 note k. <sup>e</sup>of dede of armes allosede] 'famous for deeds of arms'. <sup>f</sup>Horlles] So MS. for Hoelles. <sup>g</sup>pleynloker] -loker is a var. of the comparative adverbial ending (OE -licor); see MS. A fol. 92 note i. <sup>h</sup>los] 'report, rumour'. <sup>i</sup>Cariuan] So MS. by haplography for Carnariuan. <sup>j</sup>a pena 7 a Culpa] 'from punishment and from blame'. <sup>k</sup>riche 3eftes] Repeated in error by scribe from riche 3ieftes above. <sup>l</sup>anhey hertede man] 'a proud-



hearted man'. <sup>m</sup>liuede] Error for liede 'lied'.

Fol. 82 <sup>a</sup>heo] 'he'; a reverse spelling possible in any dialect that has heo/he for 'she' and/or 'they', but only common in W. Midl. It could therefore go back to a W. Midl. exemplar. <sup>b</sup>bolne] 'to swell', i.e. with anger. <sup>c</sup>lefte] (?) 'remaining, left undone'. <sup>d</sup>croner of the kynges housolde] The croner (mod. 'coroner') was an officer of the king's household (there were also local law-officials called coroners). See F. Pollock and F.W. Maitland, History of English Law Before the Time of Edward I, Cambridge, 1923, Vol. I, pp. 534 ff. <sup>e</sup>associede vnto him] 'made an ally or associate of'. <sup>f</sup>preyent] 'print', i.e. made by a seal; thus below the prevnte of his seal. <sup>g</sup>faf] So MS. for saf. <sup>h</sup>agongefermer] 'a cleaner of privies', from gong, gang 'a privy' + fermer 'farmer'. <sup>i</sup>be sette his peneworthes] (?) 'arranged his allowances in kind'; not recorded in OED.

Fol. 83 <sup>a</sup>pure] 'mere, simple', or emphatically 'sheer, perfect, very'. <sup>b</sup>in þe CC<sup>o</sup> and xvij chapitere of this boke] The cross-reference should in fact be to chapter 215 (the same error is found in Brut-1333 and MS. B). <sup>c</sup>shende] 'destroy'. <sup>d</sup>hov so euere he toke on] 'howsoever he acted' i.e. no matter what happened (cf. OED s.v. Take v. 841). <sup>e</sup>h] Superfluous letter, probably a misreading of initial b- in the following word. <sup>f</sup>leue] 'believe'. <sup>g</sup>cheuisel] 'bolster, pillow'; the only example in MED in this sense is from Brut-1333. <sup>h</sup>Aleie ... vndir erthe] A secret tunnel. <sup>i</sup>withouten aspyes] 'without being observed'. <sup>j</sup>al s] Line-division after al. The reduced form als 'also' is possible, but the division is bad if this form was intended; possibly the scribe has simply omitted -o.



Fol. 84 <sup>a</sup>ouer his estat and his wille] 'contrary to his rank and his will'; cf. OED s.v. Over prep. 14.

<sup>b</sup>Turnelabard] So MS. (and two MSS. used by Brie) for Turnetabard (used in Brie's base MS.). The Scots called John Balliol Toomtabard 'empty jacket' (see SND s.v.), and the expression in the Brut is prob. a corruption of this. Turncoat is first recorded in OED in 1557. T] So MS. for Tho; cf. the use of the reduced form p for po. <sup>d</sup>baillos] So MS. for baillols. <sup>e</sup>sere] 'Sire, sir'.

Fol. 85 <sup>a</sup>Sotlonde] See MS. A fol. 61 note i. <sup>b</sup>pult] 'thrust, forced'; cf. Brut-1333 put. See OED s.v. Pilt, pult, v. 2. <sup>c</sup>kinkecorne] Kinghorn in Fife. <sup>d</sup>Seynt Iohnes touñ] Perth, where there is a church dedicated to St. John the Baptist, not St. Johnstone. See J. Hall, The Poems of Laurence Minot, Oxford, 2nd ed., 1897, p. 46. <sup>e</sup>vi (fol. 85<sup>a</sup>b) tailles] vitailles 'provisions, victuals'. <sup>f</sup>trauailled] 'tormented, harassed'. <sup>g</sup>in wyng] 'in his army'. OED records Wing sb. 7 as 'either of two divisions ... of an army' (for which the first quotation is from the Brut); cf. also below a grett hoste ... ordeynede in bre wynges. <sup>h</sup>prekeden] 'spurred'. <sup>i</sup>pe esteres] 'surrounding areas'. <sup>j</sup>serely] Rawl. B 171 reads sorely (Douce 323 reads serely); serely is not recorded in OED as a variant of sorely and the sense here may be derived from sere 'separate, single; various', meaning 'in broken order'. <sup>k</sup>we] So MS. for wel.

Fol. 86 <sup>a</sup>Caskmor] So MS. for Gaskmor. <sup>b</sup>on Arange] 'in file, in a row'; range (from OF renge) was finally superceded by range (from OF range, a variant of renge). <sup>c</sup>Anhonginge boughte of þe moor in astreit passage] 'a steep (or overhanging) bend of the moor in a narrow



passage'. See OED s.vv. Hanging ppl.a. 2 and Bought sb.<sup>1</sup> lb; MED s.v. bught n.(a). <sup>d</sup>foynede] 'stabbed'.  
<sup>e</sup>of þe of the] Line-division after of þe; dittographic repetition. <sup>f</sup>strouonge] -u- could possibly be -n- (although the resemblance is to u), in which case the word can be explained as a dittographic repetition of on. <sup>g</sup>A a] Dittography. <sup>h</sup>scholde him] 'hold' om. after scholde (see Brut-1333). <sup>i</sup>Gounnes and with othir engynnes] Cannon were still in their infancy and other (more reliable) traditional siege engines were used. The English expedition of 1327 against the Scots was equipped with cannon, and although the present guns are said to be shooting stones, by 1346 there were two calibres of guns in England that fired lead-shot. See L. White, Medieval Technology and Social Change, Oxford, 1962, pp. 99-101, 163, and references therein.

Fol. 87 <sup>a</sup>the boughte of the Abbay] Possibly Kelso Abbey, which is close to a bend in the Tweed. <sup>b</sup>7c'] Possibly a misreading by the scribe in his exemplar of following xvi. <sup>c</sup>Thomas of] The text should read Thomas was. <sup>d</sup>batailles] 'divisions'. <sup>e</sup>vaunte Warde] 'vanguard'. <sup>f</sup>dobled] Also doblede, dobbled, etc., below. Presumably a misreading of some form of 'dubbed'; see MS. A fol. 65 note g. <sup>g</sup>halfe bataille] <sup>h</sup>halfe lieu warde] These phrases are attempts to translate the corrupt AN form 'd] lieuwarde' [BM Cotton Cleo. D III], which is apparently a misreading of an AN calque milieu warde, formed on English middleward (see OED s.v.). Occurring near de, this could be wrongly divided as demi lieuwarde. French apparently had no counterpart to middleward. See also OED s.v. Ward sb.<sup>2</sup> 13 with note. On the divisions of the army, cf. Merlin, ed. H.B. Wheatley, EETS O.S. 10, 1865-6, Vol. I, p. 321. <sup>i</sup>wi of Colden] Erroneously inserted by scribe, influenced



partly by following william and preceding of Colden.  
<sup>j</sup>Rrchibalde] So MS. for Archibalde. <sup>k</sup>Orle] 'Earl';  
 see MED s.v. erl for the form orl. <sup>l</sup>pris] 'excellent,  
 choice'. <sup>m</sup>englissh knafes] Rawl. B 171 reads Scottisshe  
knafes, which Brie emends to English knafes. However,  
 Brie and those scribes who use 'English' are mistaken.  
 The AN text reads: 'Mais quant les Garsons qui furent  
 paderere virent telle desconfiture ils poynerent les  
 Chivalx de lour Mestres one esperrons pur lour garder  
 de peryll lessant lour Mestres a null chalour' (Cotton  
 Cleo. D III, fol. 182<sup>b</sup>). It is the Scottish squires  
 who are abandoning the field, and their struggling  
 masters on foot, as the preliminary matter to the  
 romance on the battle attests: 'butt wanne þe knaves &  
 þe Skottisch pages þat weren behinde the Skottes, to  
 kepe her horses, seyen the discomfiture, þei priken  
 her maisters horses away, to kepe hem selfe from  
 perelle; and so þei towke no hede off her maisters'  
 (Brie, p. 287 ll.2-5).

Fol. 88 <sup>a</sup>here banneres displaied] Banners were unfurled  
 as a sign of war (see M.H. Keen, The Laws of War in the  
Late Middle Ages, London, 1965, pp. 105-8). This is  
 one of the charges against Thomas of Lancaster (see MS.  
 A fol. 70<sup>b</sup>). <sup>b</sup>habergoun] 'coat of mail'. It was often  
 worn under plate armour. <sup>c</sup>foysoun] 'strength, power,  
 success'. <sup>d</sup>than xx<sup>ti</sup> schep scholde haue azens v[ife]  
 wolfe] A conventional comparison (Whiting, S 215).  
 An ingenious manner of converting the (to the correc-  
 tor?) unacceptable form vife 'five' to an acceptable  
 form v, i.e. the roman numeral for 'five'; cf. MS. A  
 fol. 58 note c. <sup>e</sup>sottes] See MS. A fol. 63 note a.  
<sup>f</sup>Deo gracias.] A conventional ending to a text, here  
 marking the point at which the Anglo-Norman Brut ended.  
<sup>g</sup>enchesoun þat] Should read enchesoun of. <sup>h</sup>see brynkes]



'shores of the sea'. <sup>i</sup>men] A new sentence begins here.  
<sup>j</sup>þe scottych see] The Firth of Forth. Not recorded in  
 OED. See R. Kaiser, Zur Geographie des mittelenglischen  
 Wortschatzes, Palaestra 205, Leipzig, 1937, map. facing  
 p. 318, and John Shirley's Cronycle of the Dethe and  
 False Murdure of James Stewarde in Miscellanea Scotica,  
 Vol. 2 (1818), pt. 3, p. 11. The phrase is used again  
 on fols. 89<sup>b</sup>, 96<sup>a</sup>. <sup>k</sup>Stella Comata] The Latin term for  
 a comet (literally, 'hairy star') was frequently used  
 in ME. Comets were a bad omen, as Trevisa explains:  
 'Stella comata is a sterre wip a list blasynge crest  
 above, and evere bodeþ pestilence, dep, and werre, oþer  
 some harde happes' (C. Babington and J.R. Lumby,  
Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Rolls Series, 9 vols.,  
 1865-86, Vol. VI, p. 135). The present sighting is in  
 1338, and none of the recorded sightings in the Brut  
 corresponds to Halley's Comet. <sup>l</sup>dowe briddis] 'young  
 doves, squabs'. Doves were privileged birds, and a  
 manor often had a dove-cot. G.M. Trevelyan notes that  
 'in the fifteenth century, the Fellows of King's Col-  
 lege, Cambridge, ate or sold from two to three thousand  
 doves a year from the great dovecot of their Grantches-  
 ter estate' (Illustrated Social History, I, Penguin ed.,  
 1964, p. 55). <sup>m</sup>kyng E] False start for kyng Edward,  
 left undeleted by scribe. <sup>n</sup>Baudekyn] 'Oriental cloth  
 woven of silk, shot through with gold (or silver)  
 thread, or brocaded' (MED). First recorded in Brut-  
 1372. <sup>o</sup>wyldewar] 'fur of wild animals'; from MLG.  
wildware. <sup>p</sup>ffurur] 'fur trimmings; a garment trimmed  
 or lined with fur'. <sup>q</sup>Emesoñe] 'cousin'. <sup>r</sup>seuerte]  
 'surety'.

Fol. 89 <sup>a</sup>gladynge] 'encouraging, comforting'. <sup>b</sup>stifly]  
 'fell' om. after stifly; see Brut-1372. <sup>c</sup>boystous]  
 'powerful; fierce, cruel, brutal'. <sup>d</sup>Cogges] The 'cog'



was a broadly-built, medium-sized ship with a rounded prow and stern, used as both a transport and as a ship of war. On this and other medieval craft, see J. Hall, The Poems of Laurence Minot, Oxford, 2nd ed., 1897, p. 53, and B. Landström, The Ship, London, 1962, pp. 70-3. <sup>e</sup>the dwke of Britayne or Burgoyne] Brut-1372 reads simply be duke of Burgoyne. <sup>f</sup>lachesse] 'sloth, negligence; cowardice'; in MED, dated c1475. <sup>g</sup>distresside] A corruption of dressid 'go, turn' (so Brut-1372), influenced by distressen 'to press upon or harass (somebody); to attack (an enemy)'. <sup>h</sup>wolde come] The sense requires 'and' after wolde; but cf. Brut-1372 (Brie, p. 296 ll.4-5) which uses a different construction. <sup>i</sup>sottes] See MS. A fol. 63 note a. <sup>j</sup>pe turnement at Dunstaple] Dunstable was a favourite place for tournaments, which were not yet the stylized affairs of the fifteenth century, but which were highly dangerous. On the early history and varying fortunes of tournaments (which were often condemned and banned) see N. Denholm-Young, 'The Tournament in the Thirteenth Century', in Studies in Medieval History, ed. R.W. Hunt et al., Oxford, 1948, pp. 240-68. The tournament of A.D. 1150-1350 'is for the most part not a matter of individual jousting, but a mass-meeting of side against side, resulting in a mêlée which differed little from real war' (p. 240). Cf. further the description of a tournament (and the resultant casualties) on fol. 102<sup>b</sup>a. <sup>k</sup>his rounde table] A 'round table' was not simply a tournament but 'a social occasion accompanied by various games, of which jousting with blunted weapons was one' (N. Denholm-Young, op. cit., pp. 254-6). The name reflects the Arthurian cult from about 1150 onwards.

Fol. 90 <sup>a</sup>disgissynēs] Var. of disgising 'newfangled or elaborate alteration in the fashion of attire' (MED).



<sup>b</sup>destant] Var. of distant 'distant, far'; originally a corruption of Brut-1377's reading destitu 'destitute, lacking'. <sup>c</sup>dagede] 'ornamented round the edges with points or incisions'. <sup>d</sup>toslatrede] Brut-1377 reads desslatered, glossed by MED as 'slashed or slit by way of ornamentation'; this instance in the Brut is the example, and MS. A's form can be regarded as a legitimate variant. <sup>e</sup>tapites of Surcottes] 'pieces of figured cloth as surcoats'; possibly suggesting that they were more like hangings or table-covers or the like. <sup>f</sup>lich turmentoures and deueles] 'like executioners and devils', i.e. like these characters in the Mystery and Morality plays. Cf. a 'Poem on the Evil Times of Edward II' in T. Wright, The Political Songs of England, Camden Soc., London, 1839, 'Hii ben degised as turmentours that comen from clerkes plei' (l.285). Cf. also M. Day and R. Steele, Mum and the Sothsegger, EETS O.S. 199, 1934, p. 16 l.117 and p. 98 note. <sup>g</sup>hele] 'cover; conceal'; see MED s.v. helen v.(2). <sup>h</sup>ab] False start for afterwarde. <sup>i</sup>cavillaciouns] 'quibbles, spurious arguments, cavillings'. <sup>j</sup>losed] 'failed to keep'. <sup>k</sup>disquatte] 'broke'; the first instance in MED of this sense. <sup>l</sup>Cadomun] The Latin name for Caen, which is usually called Cane in English. <sup>m</sup>defendi] A past participle. <sup>n</sup>assuñpsioun] So MS. for assumpsoun (possibly the macron indicates the omission of a minim). <sup>o</sup>therr as neuerr aforehande was any manere weye noo passage] Edward's army crossed the Somme estuary at Blanchetaque, midway between Abbeville and the sea, over a concealed causeway where at low tide a man could cross waist-deep. <sup>p</sup>Our feir with drawen hym] 'Our handsome one is retreating'. feir is used as a noun (see MED fair n. b), and Brut-1377 has the correct singular agreement of the verb, wipdraweb. <sup>q</sup>phan] ph is a 'pleonastic' digraph resulting from conflation of p and th. <sup>r</sup>ffrenche] Error



for 'English'. <sup>s</sup>pere folde] So MS. for 'threefold' by confusion by the scribe who anticipated the occurrence of 'there' after were.

Fol. 91 <sup>a</sup>avisement] 'advice, deliberation, consultation'.

<sup>b</sup>meditacioun] Error for 'mediation'. <sup>c</sup>in the Est parties of the worlde therr aroos and be gañ a pestelense 7 dep] The antecedents of the Black Death (see Vol. III p. 264), which probably began in, and radiated outwards from, the district of Semiriechinsk in Central Asia (see R. Pollitzer, Plague, W.H.O. Publication, Geneva, 1954, p. 13). From the Crimea it was brought by Genoese galleys to Sicily in October 1347 and Genoa in January 1348. See P. Ziegler, The Black Death, 1969 (1970), pp. 40-3. <sup>d</sup>enfectede] 'infected, poisonous'. This reading, which makes good sense, has arisen from a misreading, as the MSS. of Brut-1377 show. Corpus Christi Coll. Camb. 174 reads fectid 'effected', and BM Addit. 24859 reads was so effect. <sup>e</sup>sere] 'various, sundry'. <sup>f</sup>renge ... rynge] rynge is a variant (not recorded in OED) of renge 'row, layer'. <sup>g</sup>aliauntes] 'conspirators, those in alliance' (cf. alliance); not recorded in OED, it may be a spurious word arising from confusion with aliens, which is used in Brut-1377.

<sup>h</sup>A Geneweys] 'a Genoese'. <sup>i</sup>mynystres] 'servants, attendants' (OED s.v. Minister sb. 1). <sup>j</sup>fyndir] 'inventor, originator, author' (MED s.v. findere n. 2a). <sup>k</sup>grette pestelence] The Plague of 1348, now known popularly as the Black Death, which name was probably first used in England at some time after 1665 to distinguish the fourteenth-century epidemic from the Great Plague of that year (see F.A. Gasquet, The Black Death of 1348 and 1349, London, 2nd ed., 1908). The phrase probably arose from an over-literal translation of Latin pestis atra or atra mors (see P. Ziegler, The Black Death, 1969



(1970), p. 18). <sup>l</sup>boches] 'buboes, tubercles'. On the buboes which were the most obvious symptom of bubonic plague, see Boccaccio's description in the Decameron, trans. J.M. Rigg, London, 1930, p. 5. <sup>m</sup>this pestelence lastede in london fro Michelmesse in to August nexte folwyng] The Prior of Canterbury had contacted the Bishop of London by the end of September 1348 over the occurrence of plague in the latter's diocese ('Historical MSS. belonging to the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury', Hist. MSS. Commission, Second Report, p. 338). The plague had run its course over most of south-eastern England by the autumn of 1349. <sup>n</sup>deth with owte sorwe ...] The demoralizing effects of the plague are noted by Knighton (Chronicon Henrici Knighton, ed. J. Lumby, Rolls Series 92, Vol. II, p. 120), and John of Reading (Chronicon Johannis de Reading, ed. J. Tait, Manchester, 1914, pp. 109-10). On the moral and religious after-effects, see P. Ziegler, The Black Death, 1969 (1970), pp. 267-88. <sup>o</sup>resute] The correct reading should be refute 'refuge' (so Brut-1377), but the scribe has become confused with respite. Thus he has left the long s uncrossed, and has added a stroke, corresponding to a modern dot, above the u.

Fol. 92 <sup>a</sup>Whoo that fleep ... teyde with agrene] Isaiah xxiv. 18. The text has been taken from a Wycliffite translation of the Bible: 'And it shal be, he that shal flee fro the face of drede, shal falle in to the dich; and he that taketh hymself out of the dich, shal be holden with the grene' (The Holy Bible ... by John Wycliffe and his Followers, ed. J. Forshall and F. Madden, Oxford, 1850, Vol. III, p. 266). The Biblical context is the visitation of God's terrible judgement on the sinful land, and J.A.W. Bennett notes in his edition of Piers Plowman, Oxford, 1972, p. 152, that



Bromyard attributes the mortality of the period to 'a general and public vengeance taken by God for the vices of mankind' in his Summa Predicantium. The use of a Wycliffite translation is interesting, for 'At the Council of Oxford in 1407 the making of any fresh translations of the whole or any portion of the Bible and the use of any translation made 'in the times of John Wycliffe or since' without diocesan or synodical sanction were forbidden. Nevertheless many MSS. of the Wycliffite versions (esp. the Purvey text) continued to be made and used until the appearance of W. Tyndale's and M. Coverdale's work' (The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church, ed. F.L. Cross, 2nd ed., 1974, p. 169).

agrenne] 'a snare, a trap'; var. of grin(e). <sup>b</sup>endeide] So MS. for endede or endide 'ended'; a 'Freudian slip' by confusion with deide 'died'. <sup>c</sup>cheke tep] 'molars'. <sup>d</sup>outylles] 'islands lying away from the mainland' (see OED s.v. Out a. 1b). <sup>e</sup>querte] Brut-1372 and MS. B read 'quiet', but MS. A makes sense; see OED s.v. Quart, quert B. 'health; healthy or sound condition'. <sup>f</sup>enbullede] 'embodied in a papal bull'. <sup>g</sup>stappellede] So MS. for 'staple'; the pret. verb ending is an error. <sup>h</sup>lionelles] So MS. for lionell; possibly the exemplar had a bar across -ll which the scribe of MS. A mistook as an abbreviation-mark. <sup>i</sup>-lokerr] Comparative ending of adjectives and adverbs ending in -li. See K. Luick, Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache, Leipzig, 1913, p. 242. Also used previously on fol. 90<sup>a</sup> coriousloker.

Fol. 93 <sup>a</sup>Scutes] The English name for the French coin écu; cf. Latin scutum 'shield' from which the French name derived since the coin bore on one face three fleurs-de-lys, like a heraldic shield. <sup>b</sup>rialteis] 'magnificent ceremonials, triumphs'; see OED s.v.



Rialty 1.b where the first quotation is dated a1470.

<sup>c</sup>Tayles] 'tallages, taxes'; see OED s.v. Tail sb.<sup>2</sup> 2.

<sup>d</sup>Seynt Thomas of lancastre] Brie's basic texts (from Corpus Christi Coll. Camb. 174, BM Addit. 24859, and BM Royal 17 D XXI) do not call Thomas a Saint. <sup>e</sup>Reyne] Prob. the Rhine; cf. Brut-1377 Ryne. <sup>f</sup>kynge edward ere] 'King Edward's ear', i.e. to his hearing. <sup>g</sup>þe Thownes þat ys to sey ... by þe see costes] Brut-1377 reads: 'þe tounes of Hastynge, Rye, and oþer places & villages on þe see coostes' (Brie, p. 310 ll.1-2). <sup>h</sup>proferinge hem 7 sayde þat he] Cf. Brut-1377: 'profryng to hem þat [that he: BM Addit. 24859; þat he: BM Royal 17 D XXI]'.  
<sup>i</sup>scomed þe See] 'scoured the sea'; variant of scum v. Cf. French écumer la mer.

Fol. 94 <sup>a</sup>Articulerlyche] 'point by point, in detail; specifically' (MED). The word is modelled on Latin articulāriter. <sup>b</sup>stabullissed] 'ordained, or established, permanently'. <sup>c</sup>desstressed] Brut-1377 reads dressid; desstressed may have the sense 'distrain' here (see MED s.v. distressen v. 2). <sup>d</sup>patene with goddis body] The paten is the usually silver dish on which the bread is laid at the celebration of the Eucharist. <sup>e</sup>we .N. And .N.] N is used to indicate that the reader should supply the name of the person concerned. See OED s.v. N 2. <sup>f</sup>hounde flete] 'Harfleur'. <sup>g</sup>token] A superfluous addition to the basic text (see Brie, p. 312 ll.16-17), rendering the sentence ungrammatical. <sup>h</sup>scrowes] 'scrolls'; aphetic formation from AN escrowe. <sup>i</sup>heled] 'covered, clothed'. <sup>j</sup>a grete company of dyuerse naciouns] The actions of such freelance bands of unemployed troops and foreign adventurers are described by Froissart, Oeuvres: Chroniques, ed. K. de Lettenhove, 25 vols., Brussels, 1870-77, Vol. V, pp. 227-9. Since the leaders were English, Edward III threatened with the most severe penalties these breakers of the truce with France (see



Lettres de Rois, Reines et autres Personnages des Cours de France et d'Angleterre, ed. J.J. Champollion-Figeac, Paris, 1847, Vol. II, pp. 170-2). <sup>k</sup>pe white company] Under the leadership of Sir John Hawkwood, an archer and the son of an Essex tanner, who took his mercenaries to Avignon, as the text later implies, and then to Italy. For his career, see A. Bryant, The Age of Chivalry, 1963 (1969), p. 431. <sup>l</sup>seche a wynde] The violent storm of St. Maurice's Day, 15 January 1362, is mentioned by Langland, in Piers Plowman, V, 11.14-20, and in a fifteenth-century carol found in BM Sloane MS. 2593 (R.L. Greene, A Selection of English Carols, Oxford, 1962, No. 73). See Cottle, pp. 107-8; J.A.W. Bennett, Piers Plowman, Oxford, 1972, p. 152 for other contemporary references and comment. <sup>m</sup>y sake] 'shaken'.

Fol. 95 <sup>a</sup>men of lawe ... sholde plete in here modir tonge] This was enacted by the Statute of Pleading, and at this parliament of 1362 the chief justice of the King's Bench gave his opening speech for the first time in English. However, the Statute only allowed verbal operations to be made in English, and it was not until 1430 that written records became written in English. See A.C. Baugh, A History of the English Language, London, 2nd ed., 1959, pp. 176-8. <sup>b</sup>wordir] So MS. for wondir. <sup>c</sup>telthe] A var. of tilth 'tillage, agricultural work'. <sup>d</sup>Souoy] The Duke of Lancaster's palace of the Savoy, first built in 1245 and destroyed in the Peasant's Revolt (see fol. 99<sup>b</sup>). For its history and subsequent rebuilding as a hospital, see A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. II, pp. 93-6. <sup>e</sup>kynge Iva ... firste hem grauntyd to Rome for þe Scole of englond] The institution of Peter's Pence has been attributed either to Ine, king of Wessex (688-726), as here, or to Offa, king of Mercia (757-96).



The tax was abolished by Henry VIII in 1534. <sup>f</sup>pe  
 Pockes] Probably small-pox. <sup>g</sup>heued] 'stood sponsor  
 to'. <sup>h</sup>Bertram Claykyn] A corruption (found also in  
Brut-1377) of the name of Bertrand du Guesclin.  
<sup>i</sup>reue 7 rubbe] 'plunder and rob'. <sup>j</sup>disperplede] 'scat-  
 tered, dispersed'. <sup>k</sup>ouere Sailed] 'run down or sunk by  
 sailing over it' (OED s.v. Oversail v.<sup>1</sup> 2; first quota-  
 tion dated 1449). <sup>l</sup>3et shall danes have these wanes ...  
 Here shall Danes fette here banes] Not noted by R.M.  
 Wilson, but a typical couplet of satirical verse; cf.  
 R.M. Wilson, The Lost Literature of Medieval England,  
 London, 2nd ed., 1970, pp. 187-208. wanes] 'houses,  
 dwelling-places'; fette here banes] 'get their banes',  
 i.e. they will be killed. <sup>m</sup>keter] 'begetter, parent';  
 a voiceless velar stop /k/ in place of a voiced velar  
 stop /g/. Cf. kynk 'king'. <sup>n</sup>knytte] 'bound (in an  
 agreement)'. <sup>o</sup>mys beleuyd] 'heathen, infidel'.

Fol. 96 <sup>a</sup>feyre] 'fiery', not 'fair'. <sup>b</sup>stella Comata]  
 See MS. A fol. 88 note k. This sighting is in 1367.  
<sup>c</sup>boren þe englysshe men on hande] 'accused the English-  
 men'; see MED s.v. beren v.(1) 13(h). <sup>d</sup>þe duchesse of  
 lancastre] Blanche, the first wife of John of Gaunt, in  
 commemoration of whose death Chaucer wrote The Book of  
the Duchess. See F.N. Robinson, The Works of Geoffrey  
Chaucer, London, 2nd ed., 1957, p. 773. <sup>e</sup>dyme] The  
dime was a subsidy or tax consisting of one-tenth the  
 value of one's movable (or personal) property. Eccle-  
 siastical law insisted that clerical assent had to be  
 obtained by the secular ruler who wished to tax eccle-  
 siastical revenues (see R.W. Southern, Western Society  
and the Church in the Middle Ages, 1970, pp. 40-1).  
<sup>f</sup>for saye] See MS. A fol. 26 note p.



Fol. 97 <sup>a</sup>þe king ffraunce] king is written by the scribe in the margin, but he has omitted to add of. <sup>b</sup>þ opere ... 7 deden ful] Corrupt; cf. Brut-1377: 'as opere Citees in Guyene dede, for'. <sup>c</sup>in portable] Var. of unportable 'too heavy to be borne, intolerable'. <sup>d</sup>chargeable] 'burdensome, heavy'. <sup>e</sup>7 in turnyd] Brut-1377 reads and in turnyng. The scribe originally wrote 7 turnyd 'and turned', but noticed that he had omitted the in of his exemplar, which he added in the margin, without, however, converting the preterite turnyd to the correct verbal substantive turnyng. <sup>f</sup>he toke þe forsaide Cetee ... And slowe alle þat euere he fonde in þat Cetee] The story of a general massacre is also recounted by Froissart, Chroniques, Vol. VIII, p. 41, but as it was omitted from his later, revised accounts there is some doubt as to its accuracy. However, the cruelty and violence of the Black Prince were exceptional, and his chivalric reputation and the English cause in France both suffered severely on account of this episode. <sup>g</sup>chambryng] So MS., probably for chambrvgg 'Cambridge'. <sup>h</sup>whan whan] Line-division after first whan; dittographic error. <sup>i</sup>I greted] Prob. a misreading, left undeleted, of following I graunted. <sup>j</sup>Petres dou3tes some kynge] So MS. for Petres dou3teres some tyme kynge. <sup>k</sup>vñ wetinge hem þat þey weren of þat contre] 'not knowing that they were from that country', i.e. not realising that they were Flemings. An absolute construction; see OED s.v. Unwitting ppl. a. 2. <sup>l</sup>passedenden] Dittographic repetition of -den. <sup>m</sup>Rochechel] Dittographic repetition of che when scribe was trying to correct MS. Roche. <sup>n</sup>a serteyne parlement] i.e. the parliament of 1371 (see fol. 97<sup>a</sup>b). <sup>o</sup>rapere þat] The scribe should have deleted þat when he inserted rapere. <sup>p</sup>7 many men.'lete hem gone] Brut-1377 (CCC Camb. 174) reads similarly, but BM Addit. 24859 and BM Royal 17 D XXI



insert and before lete (see Brie, p. 326 l.27 and note). The punctus elevatus in MS. A suggests that many men should be taken as part of the preceding clause and not as the subject of lete gone, which should be taken as suppressed he.

Fol. 98 <sup>a</sup>3oke Th] 3oke: so MS. for 3orke. Th is probably a false start for Thomas on the next line; the small hole in the vellum after Th may, however, be the result of an erasure. <sup>b</sup>hool] 'entirely, fully; (poss. freely, safely?)'. <sup>c</sup>mynte] 'purposed, intended' (OE myntan). <sup>d</sup>good] 'money'; see MED s.v. god n. (2) 12(c). <sup>e</sup>Quare impedit] Latin, literally 'why he impedes or hinders'. 'A form of writ issued in cases of disputed presentation to a benefice, requiring the defendant to state why he hinders the plaintiff from making the presentation' (OED, where the first quotation in an English context is dated 1498-9). <sup>f</sup>I wyted 7 put vpon] 'blamed on and attributed to' (so Cottle, p. 93). <sup>g</sup>pe Ile of Constantyne] ? Jersey, ? Guernsey. <sup>h</sup>Bratran] So MS. for Bertram (see MS. A fol. 95 note h). <sup>i</sup>peled] 'pillaged, stripped of their possessions'. <sup>j</sup>chaffare] 'goods, merchandise'. <sup>k</sup>lemmam] So MS. for lemman 'paramour, lover'. <sup>l</sup>freelte] 'sinfulness, moral weakness'. <sup>m</sup>exytinge] 'urging, encouraging'. <sup>n</sup>sterynge] 'incitement, prompting, persuasion'. <sup>o</sup>a nobere Ectoure] Cf. Trevisa's phrase in his translation of Higden: '3if we wil mene þat þey beþ stronge, we clepeþ hem Troians; 3if hardy, we clepeþ hem Ector' [so MS., emended by ed. to Hectores] (Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, ed. C. Babington and J.R. Lumby, Rolls Series 41, 1865-86, Vol. II, p. 255). <sup>p</sup>whyle þey leueden 7 weren in good poynte] 'while they lived and were in good health'; Brut-1377 reads he (i.e. Prince Edward) for þey (with singular verbs), which gives an



improved sense.

Fol. 99 <sup>a</sup>horlynge] 'rebellion'. <sup>b</sup>Sere Iohn of Mosteroworpe]  
 Sir John Munsterworth. <sup>c</sup>spilte] 'ruined; killed'.  
<sup>d</sup>kynge edwarde 3af ... at wyndesore resseyved þe ordre  
 of kny3t hode] The text has confused two constructions;  
 cf. Brut-1377: 'King Edward 3af to Richard of Burdeux,  
 his eyr, that was Pryns Edwardes sone, att Wyndesore,  
 the ordre of knyghthood' (Brie, p. 332 ll.14-16). <sup>e</sup>g]  
 False start for god, occurring at the end of a line.  
<sup>f</sup>'Amen.'] The continuation to 1377 ends at this point  
 (see Vol. I, pp. 39-45). Certain MSS. add a chapter on  
 the character of Edward III (see Vol. I, p. 43 and Brie,  
 pp. 333-4 for the text). <sup>g</sup>for] 'occurred'; pret. of  
faren. Brut-1419 reads fil. <sup>h</sup>stonore] Stonar by Sand-  
 wich in Kent, a now lost port. See M. Beresford, The  
Lost Villages of England, London, 1954, pp. 359 and 415.  
 The form found in MS. A is more accurate than that  
 found in Brut-1419 (Stormore). <sup>i</sup>þe hurlyng tyme] A name  
 given to the Peasants' Revolt, first found in the Brut,  
 and found later in Gregory's Chronicle and the Short  
 English Chronicle (a version of the Brut) (see quota-  
 tions in MED s.v. hurling(e. l(c))). <sup>j</sup>South worwerke]  
 So MS. for 'Southwark'. <sup>k</sup>þe marchalsye] See MS. A  
 fol. 67 note 1. <sup>l</sup>cauntylbery] So MS. for cauntyrbery.  
 The error is repeated several times in MS. A. <sup>m</sup>Sery]  
 So MS. for Sere. <sup>n</sup>þe Sauoye] See MS. A fol. 95 note d.  
<sup>o</sup>Seint Iohnes] St. John's Priory, Clerkenwell, of which  
 the Prior was Robert Hales who was executed by the  
 rebels. He was also the Treasurer of England and close-  
 ly connected with the hated poll tax. <sup>p</sup>Seint warie]  
 'sanctuary'. <sup>q</sup>gryth] 'sanctuary, immunity'. <sup>r</sup>þe Temple]  
 The Temple was given to the Knights Hospitallers of St.  
 John in 1324, and they rented it to the lawyers. See  
A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford,



Oxford, 1908, Vol. II, pp. 50-1. <sup>s</sup>counters] The name given to two prisons in London (and others elsewhere) used especially for debtors. They were situated in Bread Street and the Poultry (see A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. I, pp. 263, 296, 350). <sup>t</sup>rowde] 'rude' (not 'rowdy', which is a word of American origin first recorded in OED in 1819). <sup>u</sup>Iacke strawe] In fact, it was Wat Tyler whom Walworth killed. A similar error is noted in Cottle, p. 132 in a bilingual English and Latin poem on the revolt (R.H. Robbins, Historical Poems of the XIVth and XVth Centuries, New York, 1959, No. 19).

Fol. 100 <sup>a</sup>pe gret erthe quave] 'the great earthquake'. For the spelling quave see MED s.v. erthe n.(1) 13(gg). Cf. the verse in the Vernon MS. interpreting the earthquake: 'þe meuyng of þis eorþe, iwis, / þat schulde bi cuynde be ferm & stabele, / A pure verrey toknyng hit is / þat mennes hertes ben chaungable / And þat to falshed þei ben most able, / ffor with good feiþ wol we not fare. /' (quoted in Cottle, p. 133). <sup>b</sup>croyserie] 'crusade'; cf. MED s.v. croiserie (b). <sup>c</sup>pe se þe] se is written as a correction above the second þe, which is undeleted. <sup>d</sup>duche] 'German'. See F.P. Magoun, Jr., 'Chaucer's Mediaeval World outside of Great Britain', Mediaeval Studies XVII (1955), p. 125. <sup>e</sup>cetete] So MS. by dittography for cete. <sup>f</sup>þe Blake heth] The traditional meeting-place (e.g. during the Peasants' Revolt) and place of official welcome (as here) of the city of London before being escorted into the city. See Lydgate's poem on Henry VI's entry into London in H.N. MacCracken, The Minor Poems of John Lydgate, Part II, EETS O.S. 192, 1933, p. 632 ll.50 ff. <sup>g</sup>Portingale] 'Portugal'. See F.P. Magoun, Jr., 'Chaucer's Mediaeval World outside of Great Britain', Mediaeval Studies XVII



(1955), pp. 135-6. <sup>h</sup>Cambrynge] So MS. for 'Cambridge'; a similar error appears earlier. <sup>i</sup>Ermonye] 'Armenia'. <sup>j</sup>was] 'that' om. before was. <sup>k</sup>en armed] For en, see MS. A fol. 55 note a.

Fol. 101 <sup>a</sup>turment] So MS. for 'tournament'; cf. the reverse influence noted in MS. A fol. 38 note f. <sup>b</sup>pe .xxiiij. kny3tes of pe Garter] The Order of the Garter, founded by Edward III in 1344 or 1348/9, consists of 25 knights companions with the sovereign and other members of the royal family. <sup>c</sup>all of sute] 'dressed or garbed alike'. <sup>d</sup>pe whyche herte was pe kynges lyuerey] The white hart was first given as a badge at this tournament, as the Monk of Evesham states (Vita Ricardi Secundi, ed. T. Hearne, 1729, p. 122). For its history see M.V. Clarke, Fourteenth Century Studies, Oxford, 1937, pp. 276-8 and Plates 1 and 2. It was probably a device punning on his name, 'Rich-hart'; see A.C. Fox-Davies, A Complete Guide to Heraldry, rev. J.P. Brooke-Little, London, 1969, p. 358. <sup>e</sup>Squye] So MS. for 'squire'; -r or -er- abbreviation-mark om. <sup>f</sup>chariotis] 'carts'. <sup>g</sup>aventur] 'enterprise'. <sup>h</sup>a venture] 'send'; see MED s.v. auntren v. 2(b). <sup>i</sup>assines] 'agents, representatives'. <sup>j</sup>cowped] 'clashed, engaged in combat'. <sup>k</sup>hors brede] 'bread for horses' (made of bean meal, pease meal, etc.). <sup>l</sup>Ostry hous] 'hostelry, inn'; see OED s.v. Hostry b, where the first quotation for hostry house is dated 1507-8.

Fol. 102 <sup>a</sup>chaunbur] So MS. for 'chamber'. The 'chamber' is the treasury or exchequer. <sup>b</sup>pe cheker] 'the Exchequer'. <sup>c</sup>pe comen place] The Court of Common Pleas, where civil cases were tried. <sup>d</sup>Sothereye] 'Surrey'; cf. OE Suberge. <sup>e</sup>vyses] 'mechanical contrivances' (see OED s.v. Vice sb.<sup>2</sup> 2 b), probably referring to a pulley



with a screw attachment or a winch operating or regulating it. <sup>f</sup>hyt] Prob. the past pple. of hit; see MED s.v. hitten v. 1.(e). <sup>g</sup>reden ... serteayne courses] 'made ... a certain number of charges'. <sup>h</sup>hit] See MS. A fol. 102 note f. <sup>i</sup>lasse pan pen] lasse pan 'unless'; pen is probably a scribal error under influence from pan and bey (cf. the repetition of this passage in the bottom margin of the leaf, recorded in the textual notes). <sup>j</sup>forwardis] 'terms of the agreement, pledges'. <sup>k</sup>composiciouns] 'terms of the agreement'.

Fol. 103 <sup>a</sup>werned] 'forbidden, excluded from'. <sup>b</sup>with alle heremenye] 'with all their company' (cf. following alle here manye). <sup>c</sup>euery man in his clothinge of his crafte] On the liveries used by Companies and Crafts, see J.E. Cussans, Handbook of Heraldry, London, 4th ed., 1893, pp. 337-40. <sup>d</sup>sonde] 'sending, message'; var. of sand (see OED s.v. Sand sb.<sup>1</sup>). <sup>e</sup>pe grete parlemen] The first quotation in OED (s.v. Parliament sb.<sup>1</sup> 8) is from Davies's Chronicle, a late version of the Brut, and is dated c1465. <sup>f</sup>as þem leste] 'as they wished'. <sup>g</sup>maynteing] So MS. by haplography for maynteining. <sup>h</sup>bouche of court] 'An allowance of food and drink granted by a king or nobleman to a member of his household or of the retinue of a guest [cp. OF bouche à court]'. (MED).

Fol. 104 <sup>a</sup>aseled] 'sealed', i.e. the gloves were placed in some receptacle and then it was fastened by a seal. <sup>b</sup>þe Batayle Ioyned 7 þe Batayle Ioyned] Dittography. Ioyned is an aphetic form of 'enjoined', i.e. 'appointed, prescribed'. <sup>c</sup>quarell] So MS. for quarell. <sup>d</sup>Northfull] So MS. for 'Norfolk', poss. Northfulk. <sup>e</sup>blank Charters] i.e. with blank spaces to be filled in, either



with the names or the conditions of the charter. The Short English Chronicle informs us that in 1399 (after Richard's deposition) 'were all the seales of blanke chartours brent at the Standarde of Chepe' (in Three Fifteenth-Century Chronicles, ed. J. Gairdner, Camden Soc., N.S. 28 (1880), p. 52). <sup>f</sup>kere] So MS. for here. <sup>g</sup>Cauntylbury] So MS. for Cauntyrbury; cf. the same error in MS. A fol. 99 note 1. <sup>h</sup>haue] So MS. for 'haven', poss. hauene (i.e. the scribe took u as n).

Fol. 105 <sup>a</sup>zerde] 'staff', i.e. the steward's staff of office. <sup>b</sup>Berstowe] So MS. for Brestowe 'Bristol'. <sup>c</sup>scape] 'harm, damage'. <sup>d</sup>how] Error for 'after'. <sup>dbis</sup>euere] So MS. for ouere. <sup>e</sup>in to foure of .v. dayes] Brut-1419 and MS. B read or. There is evidence for of 'or'; see 'On the Follies of Fashion' (dated in MED a1325) in C. Brown, English Lyrics of the XIIIth Century, Oxford, 1932, p. 134 l.30, and K. Malone, 'Notes on Middle English Lyrics', ELH (A Journal of English Literary History), Vol. 2, No. 1 (April, 1935), p. 64; Charles of Orleans: The English Poems, Vol. I, ed. R. Steele, EETS O.S. 215, 1941, p. 14 l.393; anonymous translation (c1475) of Mondeville's Surgery: Second Treatise in Wellcome MS. 564, fol. 150<sup>b</sup>a: 'þe sunnere þat þe wounde is sewid, of þe newere þat þe wounde be, þe sunnere 7 þe bettere schal þe wounde be hee lid'. See also H. Bradley's ed. of F.H. Stratmann, A Middle-English Dictionary, Oxford, 1891, s.v. of<sup>2</sup> conj. <sup>f</sup>þat he] Prob. an erron. anticipation of the following þat he. <sup>g</sup>be wreyed] 'betrayed, revealed, made known'. <sup>h</sup>on polis on polis] The scribe has repeated on polis of the text in his marginal insertion. A similar instance occurs on fol. 107<sup>a</sup>b (and see note), and possibly the words are repeated to indicate precisely where the marginal matter should be inserted. <sup>i</sup>holondon] So



MS. for holond, with double hyphen betw. ho- and london; as he began a new line to write lond, the scribe became confused with the name of the city of London.

Fol. 106 <sup>a</sup>Iustes] Brut-1419 reads Iustice, but MS. A's reading possibly represents the singular form. <sup>b</sup>hedens] 'heads'; two plural endings have been used, -en and -s. This might arise, particularly in this context, from 'heden smeten of', i.e. the following s- of smeten 'metanalysed' as forming a double plural. <sup>c</sup>ffrere Menoures] 'Franciscan friars, Minorites'. <sup>d</sup>Caryage] 'baggage train'. <sup>e</sup>for lesinge] 'to prevent loss'; see MED s.v. lesing(e) ger. (3) 1(a). <sup>f</sup>Spruse] 'Prussia'; the form is said by OED to be an alteration of Pruce (f. AN Pruce), recorded from 1378. <sup>g</sup>stella comata] See MS. A fol. 88 note k. This sighting is in 1403. <sup>h</sup>pe kyng comaunded ... lord 7 emperoure] Cf. Brut-1419: 'pe King commawnded al maner officers pat he schulde be serued as worthily & as ryaly as it longith to such a worthi lorde & Emperour' (Brie, p. 364 ll.16-19). The reading of MS. A suggests that the king is providing officers (i.e. of the household) for the emperor. Possibly a line has been missed in the textual transmission and the sense has altered accordingly. <sup>i</sup>in pe Swyn] The harbour of Zwyn, not mentioned in Brut-1419 (see Brie, p. 365 ll.20-21). <sup>j</sup>Gene] 'Genoa'. <sup>k</sup>Caumbre] 'harbour'; a var. of camere (q.v. in MED). <sup>l</sup>canted] 'divided, shared'. <sup>m</sup>Serle 3eman of pe king Richard Robes] William Serle was one of the murderers of Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester (see fol. 103<sup>a</sup>b). See C.L. Kingsford, Chronicles of London, Oxford, 1905, p. 64. His position as Yeoman of the Robes to Richard II was no sinecure considering Richard's love of fine clothes. <sup>n</sup>grecching] 'grumbling, complaint'; a var. of grucching. <sup>o</sup>lesinges] 'lies, untrue stories'.



Fol. 107 <sup>a</sup>hit] See MS. A fol. 102 note f. <sup>b</sup>pe priori of Seint Mary Ouereys in South werke] See A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. II, pp. 56-9. <sup>c</sup>hors bere] 'horse litter', from OE hors-bær. <sup>d</sup>pe whyte ffreres in flete strete] See A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. II, pp. 46-7. <sup>e</sup>london in denmark] (?) A corruption of 'Leire' or 'Tondern'. It is unlikely that Lund or Lunden (in Schleswig-Holstein) is the place in question. <sup>f</sup>Swethe] 'Sweden'. Cf. OE Swéoland, AN Suane, Swane. The -th- (and hence -d-) forms probably arose under influence of OE Swéopéod, ON Svíþjóð (literally, 'Swede-people'). MS. A's form is paralleled in The Myroure of oure Ladye, ed. J.H. Blunt, EETS E.S. 19, 1873, pp. 18 and 20. <sup>g</sup>pe walse clerke walshe clerke] Cf. a similar repetition in a marginal insertion on fol. 105<sup>b</sup> (and see note). <sup>h</sup>amerell of england] The first appointment of a single commander-in-chief of the navy was in 1360. In 1294 William Leyburne was appointed, with others, for the defence of the coasts; Walsingham and Rishanger give them the title of Admiral (see W. Stubbs, The Constitutional History of England, Oxford, 4th ed., 1896, Vol. II, p. 302), and Leyburne is called amiral de la mer in 1297 (in Thomas Rymer's Foedera (1816-69), Vol. I, p. 861a). The title derives ultimately from Arabic; see OED s.v. Admiral and MED s.v. amiral. <sup>i</sup>auntres] 'adventures, knightly enterprises'. <sup>j</sup>of of] Line-division betw. of and of; dittography.

Fol. 108 <sup>a</sup>ta] Poss. an assimilation to following alle. <sup>b</sup>Smethefed] So MS. for Smethefeld. <sup>c</sup>Oldecaste] So MS. for Oldecastel. <sup>d</sup>Senclowe] 'Saint-Cloud', a town outside Paris. The English represents a phonetic spelling of the French pronunciation. <sup>e</sup>moumbir] So MS. for noumbir. <sup>f</sup>arminackis] So called as supporters of the



constable Armagnac and of the dauphin Charles; under Bernard VII (d. 1418), the name was given in France to the party of the house of Orleans, the bitter enemies of the house of Burgundy. <sup>g</sup>vengage] Brut-1419 reads vyntage 'the season's yield of wine from the district'; prob. an error for ventage. <sup>h</sup>Sryne] So MS. for Scryne. <sup>i</sup>pe abbay of Seint Petirs of westmynster] Westminster Abbey.

Fol. 109 <sup>a</sup>a tonne full of tenyes balles] 'a barrel (or cask) full of tennis-balls'. The tennis-balls story is probably a fable, but was believed by Henry's contemporaries (see T.H. Wylie, The Reign of Henry V, 3 vols., Cambridge, 1914-29, Vol. I, pp. 425-30). <sup>b</sup>a dev] 'adieu, good-bye'. <sup>c</sup>lucur of money] 'acquisition of money'; see OED s.v. lucre sb. 2b. <sup>d</sup>trayne] 'trick, stratagem'; see OED s.v. Train sb. <sup>2</sup> 1b. <sup>e</sup>perlous] 'dangerous; cunning'; a syncopated form of perilous. <sup>f</sup>kedy kaux] Representing French quais de Caux. Caux is the name of the chalky tableland of Normandy forming a triangle between Rouen, Le Havre, and Dieppe, bounded by the Seine and the English Channel. <sup>g</sup>Tripgetes] 'trebuchets'. The form is an imitation of OF trebuchet. The trebuchet was a standard siege engine, powered by a swinging counterweight and thus using gravity to throw a heavy stone. L. White records that a trebuchet with a 50-foot arm and a 10-ton counterweight can throw a 200-300 pound stone about 300 yards, and, according to John Buridan, in the late fourteenth century 1,000 pound projectiles could be used. See L. White, Medieval Technology and Social Change, Oxford, 1962, pp. 102-3. <sup>h</sup>he fayled of neuere a chaas in all pat game] The game is, of course, Real or Royal tennis. A 'chase' is a technical term in this; see OED s.v. chase sb. <sup>1</sup> 7 for a full definition. <sup>i</sup>crafty] 'skilled in a trade or craft'. <sup>j</sup>nam] So MS.



for man. <sup>k</sup>betake] 'be captured'; that the scribe has written one word probably indicates an unconscious association with betake 'to deliver, surrender, entrust'. <sup>l</sup>vaward] 'vanguard'; reduced form of vaumward. <sup>m</sup>pyzte] 'thrust, driven'; see OED s.v. Pitch v. <sup>l</sup> <sup>n</sup>a slope] 'at an angle'; prob. from on slope, although the noun is not attested until later (so MED). Slope as a noun is first recorded in OED in 1611 (s.v. sense 2), and is derived in OED from the adverb aslope. For an indication of some of the etymological problems, see OED s.v. Aslope a. and adv. <sup>o</sup>bronte] 'rush, attack'. <sup>p</sup>howting] 'noise, (derisive) shouting'. <sup>q</sup>pleyed oure king ... a blank of here money] That is, the French gambled with dice for the prisoners whom they expected to take; the archers, worthless for ransom, were valued at a blank or blanc, which was a small French coin, originally of silver but afterwards of copper, or a silver coin of Henry V used in the areas of France controlled by the English. They were called blancs from being silvered over to hide the baseness of the metal (H. Noel Humphreys, The Coin Collector's Manual, London, 1853, Vol. II, p. 533). See also R.A.G. Carson, Coins, London, 1962, p. 289.

Fol. 110 <sup>a</sup>pe morne A roes þe day gan springe] This line is clearly an echo of a ballad original. The narrative concerning the siege of Harfleur and the battle of Agincourt is 'based upon some current ballads of the time, whether those which have survived or others that have perished' (C.L. Kingsford, English Historical Literature in the Fifteenth Century, Oxford, 1913, p. 116, cf. p. 239). As R.M. Wilson points out, 'since some of the phrases have no parallels in the remaining poems, the Brut would appear to preserve traces of one or more that have been lost' (R.M. Wilson, The Lost Literature



of Medieval England, London, 2nd ed., 1970, p. 198).  
<sup>b</sup>pershed] 'destroyed, killed'; var. of perish (Brut-  
1419 reads perished; see OED s.v. Perish v.). <sup>c</sup>pey  
shetten þat day for a wayger] An ironic reference to  
the Frenchmen's gambling for prisoners of the night  
before (see MS. A fol. 109 note q). <sup>d</sup>hym fell to fy3te  
þat day his owne handis] Brut-1419 inserts with before  
his (see Brie, p. 379 l.1 and note 1-1), but cf. MS. B  
which contains the same reading as MS. A. <sup>e</sup>of grete  
alyaunce of cote armoures] 'of distinguished family of  
people entitled to bear heraldic arms'; see MED s.vv.  
allia(u)nce 3(a) and cote-armure (b). <sup>f</sup>þe nexte way]  
'the shortest, most convenient, or direct route'.  
<sup>g</sup>reuersed] 'in their ecclesiastical vestments'; reverse  
is an incorrect form of revers (from revest); see OED  
s.vv. Reverse v.<sup>2</sup>, Revesh, revers, Revest v.<sup>1</sup> <sup>h</sup>Beeme]  
'Bohemia'. <sup>i</sup>aswere] So MS. for answere.

Fol. 111 <sup>a</sup>Seint Markes day þat was þat tyme hoctewesday]  
In fact, in 1417 St. Mark's Day fell on a Sunday. MS. A  
agrees with the CV/1430 in this point, and not with the  
CV/1419 (r7g), which reads Hocwednysday. See C.L. Kings-  
ford, English Historical Literature in the Fifteenth  
Century, Oxford, 1913, p. 303 note 2 and p. 301. <sup>b</sup>þat  
is to] 'say' om. after to. <sup>c</sup>Sowes] A sow was a moveable  
structure, covered with fresh skins to prevent fire,  
under the protection of which miners or sappers could  
work at the foot of a castle's or town's walls. For  
this and other siege engines see Christine de Pisan,  
Le Livre des Fais et Bonnes Meurs du Sage Roy Charles V,  
ed. J.F. Michaud and J.J.F. Poujoulat, Paris, 1836,  
Vol. II, pp. 54-6. Barbour describes a sow used in the  
siege of Berwick: 'Of gret gestis aȝe sow thai maid, /  
That stalward heling owth it had, / With armyt men enew  
thar-in, / And Instrumentis als for to myne' (The



Bruce, ed. W.W. Skeat, EETS, 1870-89, Vol. II, Bk. XVII, ll. 597-600). <sup>d</sup>Bastiles] 'assault towers', usually mounted on wheels. <sup>e</sup>malles] 'heavy hammers'; see OED s.v. Maul, mall, sb.<sup>1</sup> 2. <sup>f</sup>pekeys] 'picks'. <sup>g</sup>paueyes] The 'pavise', a large convex shield, is described in F.W. Fairholt, Costume in England, London, 3rd ed., 1885, Vol. II, pp. 312-3, 'Pavise. A large shield, covering the whole body, having an inward curve, with a pointed end sticking in the ground, and managed by a pavisor or soldier, who attended to it, and who was placed in front of an archer. Henry V., on the occasion of his expedition to France, ordered a pavise to be made for every two men, that one might hold it while the other shot'. They were originally made at Pavia in Italy, whence (via OF) the name. <sup>h</sup>bone] 'bows'. <sup>i</sup>pypis full] (?) 'full casks'; Brut-1419 adds of, arowez, and it may be that the scribe of MS. A has omitted this phrase in error. Alternatively, he may have meant fulle to be taken as an adverb 'quite, just, completely', to be taken with the following phrase as neded. On the preceding list of the 'habyllementes of werre' see Caxton's translation (from Christine de Pisan) of The Book of Fayttes of Armes and of Chyualrye, ed. A.T.P. Byles, EETS O.S. 189, 1932, pp. 154-160. Cf. also the indenture of 29 September, 1475, listing the weapons and other items comprising the artillery of Edward IV which were sent to France. The original text is in Public Record Office, London, E 101/55/7; printed in J. Calmette and G. Périnelle, Louis XI et l'Angleterre, Paris, 1930, pp. 358-61 and C.T. Allmand, Society at War, Edinburgh, 1973, pp. 66-9. <sup>j</sup>weste] So MS. for wente. <sup>k</sup>Hulkes] A hulk was a type of warship. <sup>l</sup>rowte] 'assemble; move'; see OED s.v. Rout v.<sup>7</sup> 1, 2 and cf. 3 'to be riotous', which may also be suggested. <sup>m</sup>his] So MS. for hit. <sup>n</sup>deliuary] 'deliver, send'; the -y ending



to the infinitive represents a final unstressed vowel elsewhere realizable by -e. <sup>o</sup>stetis] So MS. for stretis. <sup>p</sup>worth] 'worthy'; a possible form, though usually in predicative use. See OED s.v. Worth a. 6. <sup>q</sup>forteyses] 'fortresses'. Brut-1419 reads fortalicez, from OF fortelesse, ML fortalitia, which is a rare word (only this example in OED). MS. A's form appears to be a cross between this and forteresse in the same sense. <sup>r</sup>wy3th] The Isle of Wight. <sup>s</sup>balyngers] A 'balinger' was a small, fast naval vessel, apparently without forecastle.

Fol. 112 <sup>a</sup>an antony pygge] 'a Saint Anthony pig', the smallest of a litter; so named after St. Anthony, the patron saint of swineherds, it belonged to the clergy and was allowed to roam. See M.A. Andel in Janus 18.627. First recorded in the Brut. See MED s.v. Anton(y ; Whiting, A 133. <sup>b</sup>pe laste pe laste] Dittography, prob. influenced by the following phrase pe lord. <sup>c</sup>werlegoge] Brut-1419 reads whirlecole (CUL Kk.1.12 and BM Royal 17 D XXI), whirlecote (BM Addit. 24859), 'coach, carriage'; whirlecole appears to be the original form (see OED s.v. Whirlecote), from the verb 'whirl' and unidentifiable cole. MS. A has altered to werlegoge, a var. of 'whirligig', in the sense of 'a large cage suspended so as to turn on a pivot, used as an instrument of punishment'; cf. OED s.v. Whirligig 2 (first recorded in 1477-8 in this sense; first recorded in the sense 'a child's toy' c1440). In context, the originator of the alteration must have conceived of such a cage erected on a wagon. <sup>d</sup>displayed here Baneres] For the significance, see MS. A fol. 88 note a. <sup>e</sup>he toke hem non to kepe] 'he had given them none (i.e. no city) to keep (i.e. hold for him)'. The inhabitants of Rouen dispute Henry's claim to overlordship. Cf. John Page's Siege of Rouen in Brie, p. 410 ll.24-31. <sup>f</sup>my Maister



Neuyle þe erles Sone of westmorland] Brut-1419 omits my. This must refer to Richard Neville (1400-1460), the son of Ralph Neville (1364-1425), who was created first earl of Westmorland in 1397. Richard became Earl of Salisbury in right of his wife in 1429. If my is not an error, then it perhaps suggests that a precursor of the present MS. was written by a scribe with some connection to the Neville household, at a time before 1429. <sup>g</sup>vp peyne] See MS. A fol. 26 note p.

<sup>h</sup>disturbelacioun] 'interference, hindrance'; Brut-1419 reads dysturbaunce, and MS. A's form does not appear to be recorded in MED or OED. For the -l-, cf. distourblaunce; for the prolific and fertile suffix see OED s.v. -ation. <sup>i</sup>tyl þat an abbay þat was in trete was 3elde] Cf. Brut-1419: 'til þat þe abbey intret, and was yolde' (Brie, p. 389, ll. 7-8).

Fol. 113 <sup>a</sup>come of Glowcestre] 'the duke' om. before of (cf. Brut-1419). <sup>b</sup>he logged he logged] Dittography. <sup>c</sup>of here owne contre gise] 'dressed, or armed, in the manner of their own country'. <sup>d</sup>hys his] So MS. for hys hand (see Brut-1419). <sup>e</sup>7 manfully counterd with owre englisshe men.] These words mark the end of the continuation from 1377 to 1419 (men) (see Vol. I, pp. 44-9 ). Since they also mark the end of Hand C's section of text, it is probable that the original exemplar of MS. A ended at this point. See Vol. I, pp. 60, 220. <sup>f</sup>to pay to pay] Dittography. <sup>g</sup>kateremes] 'duties of a fourth part levied on certain commodities'; a var. of quatreme. See OED where the first quotation dates from c1460. MED gives a word katerin 'a small Continental coin' which may also be taken into account. <sup>h</sup>in rulle 7 in gouernaunce] The final words of the 1419(r7g) continuation (see Vol. I, pp. 49-62 ). <sup>i</sup>fallyn̄g at wordes 7 debate] 'falling into an argument'.



Fol. 114 <sup>a</sup>slefe] So MS. for selfe. <sup>b</sup>Benigne fac domine] Brie expands the contracted form dñe wrongly as 'dunc' (Brie, p. 493 l.13). The verse is verse 20 in Psalm 50 in the Biblia Sacra, Paris, 1844 (Psalm 51 in the Authorised Version). <sup>c</sup>doubted] 'feared'. <sup>d</sup>chare] 'hearse, wagon, carriage'. <sup>e</sup>was was] Dittography. <sup>f</sup>how beit before in hys yougth ... changed in to A newe mañ] The stories of Henry V's riotous life while Prince of Wales go back to his own lifetime, and are found in Thomas of Walsingham and in Tito Livio's Vita Henrici Quinti. Cf. also the account in Lambeth MS. 84, a peculiar version of the Brut, printed in Brie, pp. 594-5. Passing through Fabyan, Stow, Hall and Holinshed, these stories received their most famous exposition in Shakespeare. <sup>g</sup>deole] 'dole, alms'. <sup>h</sup>termente] 'memorial service'. <sup>i</sup>saynt bennettes order] 'Order of St. Benedict'. <sup>j</sup>7 peñ] The full continuation to 1461 (see Vol. I, pp. 81-9) is printed in Brie, pp. 491-533.

#### Commentary and Notes on MS. B

Fol. 2 <sup>a</sup>lellyth] So MS. for tellyth. <sup>b</sup>wonderdyrfull] Dittography caused by confusion of two variant spellings. <sup>c</sup>thre] So MS. for ther. <sup>d</sup>trewys] Prob. a misreading of 'lives'; cf. BM Harl. 4827 lyues. <sup>e</sup>prothogoll] In OED, first dated 1541 s.v. Protocol sb. The occurrence of the word here (and in other EV and AV exordia) renders erroneous the small-type etymological note in OED, by showing the word to have been part of general vocabulary in the fifteenth century. The sense is one not found in OED, and is close to the sense of the Greek etymological source 'the first leaf of a volume, a fly-leaf



glued to the case and containing an account of the MS.' From the word-pair prothogoll or prologe it would appear that it refers to the exordium. This sense does not appear to have developed in medieval Latin or French (see du Cange, Glossarium Mediae et Infimae Latinitatis, 1883-7 (repr. 1954), Vol. VI, p. 542; E. Littré, Dictionnaire de la Langue Française, 1885, Vol. III, p. 1366, but cf. sense 5: 'Familièrement, Préambule'; P. Robert, Dictionnaire ... de la Langue Française, 1962, Vol. V, p. 662. <sup>f</sup>casuelly] 'accidentally, by chance'. <sup>g</sup>be hys] Cf. MS. A by hys letters. <sup>h</sup>parage] 'rank, lineage'.

Fol. 3 <sup>a</sup>so] Error for to; cf. BM Harl. 4827 Bisekyng hym to sett a remedye. <sup>b</sup>prefixed] 'appointed beforehand'; OED, dated c1420.

Fol. 4 <sup>a</sup>po develis] The corrector has confused the sense by making the noun plural. <sup>b</sup>a damesell þe wyche was his leman wyche was /Eneas wyffe] Cf. MS. A. The text has confused leman 'lover, sweetheart' with the name of Eneas's wife, given in Brut-1333 as Lamane. <sup>c</sup>in chyldyng] 'in the act of giving birth'. <sup>d</sup>clenchyd] Prob. a variant of glenchen 'to strike obliquely, glance', first recorded in MED in 1441; poss. influenced by clenchen '? to beat (sth.) back; ? strike back' (see MED s.v., 2(a)). <sup>e</sup>kyngis] Prob. a misreading of kynnis. <sup>f</sup>the wer] 'which' om. after the.

Fol. 5 <sup>a</sup>tharldon] Error for tharldom, a var. of thraldom (see OED s.v.). <sup>b</sup>3our] Error for our. <sup>c</sup>pat day þey] The corr. has failed to recognize day as a S.E. form of 'they' but has taken it as 'day' and has inserted þey 'they'. <sup>d</sup>scracrifyce] So MS. for sacrifyse by anticipation of -cr-.



Fol. 6 <sup>a</sup>wevyd hyme fawe] 'conveyed them gladly'; see OED s.v. Weve v. 2 and MED s.v. fain adv. <sup>b</sup>counand mane] 'covenant man', i.e. one bound by legal contract as servant or liegeman. See MED s.v. covenaunt n. 1d(b), where the compound is first recorded in 1458-9.

Fol. 7 <sup>a</sup>of fott] Prob. a line omitted after of. <sup>b</sup>cosyn] Cf. MS. A nevewe. <sup>c</sup>And forth þey aftyrward þey a Reyvyd] The corr. has not recognized the original S.E. reverse spelling þey 'day' and has therefore stroked out the scribe's original þey 'they'; cf. MS. A. The original sense was: 'and the fourth day afterward they arrived'.

Fol. 8 <sup>a</sup>þe kny3th] The Kennet, which joins the Thames at Reading. See E. Ekwall, English River-Names, Oxford, 1928, pp. 225-6. <sup>b</sup>brteyne] ? A corruption of 'Britain', with preceding in om.

Fol. 9 <sup>a</sup>to-þe-wennt] Cf. MS. A vnto darwent. <sup>b</sup>wedder] 'wed her'; cf. MS. A fol. 15 note c. <sup>c</sup>a mongys] 'from time to time, at intervals'; see MED s.v. among(es adv. 5.

Fol. 10 <sup>a</sup>þat] Error for þan. <sup>b</sup>Swethiñ] A corruption of 'Severn'; see MS. A. <sup>c</sup>gorverned] Scribal error compounded by corr. <sup>d</sup>þer] So MS. for þes. <sup>e</sup>a] 'he'. <sup>f</sup>callyllyd] Dittography.

Fol. 11 <sup>a</sup>he] So MS. for the. <sup>b</sup>Ierusalen] So MS. for Ierusalem.

Fol. 12 <sup>a</sup>Reftyn] 'deprived, robbed, of'. <sup>b</sup>euyry] Error for euyr; day is a S.E. form of 'they'.

Fol. 13 <sup>a</sup><sub>hyme</sub><sup>e</sup>] The scribe has written e above y but without deleting the latter; both hyme and heme can mean 'him' or 'them' in MS. B. <sup>b</sup><sub>schesyn</sub>] As it stands, a form of the infin. 'choose', but the word should be a variant of sechen 'seek'. <sup>c</sup><sub>wyt ony</sub>] So MS. for wyt out ony. <sup>d</sup><sub>one</sub>] Cf. MS. A ouere; the scribe of MS. B has prob. omitted an abbreviation-mark.

Fol. 14 <sup>a</sup><sub>leire</sub>] The rubricator has misread 'her', either in the exemplar or in a guide rubric supplied by the scribe; cf. MS. A. <sup>b</sup><sub>pepartyth</sub>] 'divided [it]'; S.E. reverse spelling with p- for d-. <sup>c</sup><sub>Do</sub>] 'then', i.e. S.E. spelling of tho. <sup>d</sup><sub>holded</sub>] 'held it'; cf. MS. B fol. 9 note b. <sup>e</sup><sub>welbebelouyd</sub>] Dittography caused by word-division at line-ending between -be- and -be-. <sup>f</sup><sub>his sone3 pat he is waxin</sub>] pat he is is errone.; cf. BM Harl. 4827 his two sonnes wexed.

Fol. 15 <sup>a</sup><sub>knyttys</sub>] 'knights'; error for 'knives'. See MS. A.

Fol. 16 <sup>a</sup><sub>euyr</sub>] Error for neuyr. <sup>b</sup><sub>Belynere</sub>] The -er that has been added to Belyn (see MS. A) here and in the following chapters prob. arose from a false expansion of a looped macron above -n. Accordingly, all such macrons over -n in the name Belyn in MS. B have been expanded as -er, except in one instance where the macron has been erased. <sup>c</sup><sub>ostys</sub>] c- prob. om.; cf. MS. A.

Fol. 17 <sup>a</sup><sub>s</sub>] Long s is false start for folke.

Fol. 18 <sup>a</sup><sub>gouend</sub>] er abbreviation-mark prob. om. after u.

Fol. 19 <sup>a</sup><sub>dauyd</sub>] This king is not recorded in the CV, where Morwith reigns after Howan. Geoffrey of Monmouth



lists Kinarius, Danius (Kinarius's brother), and Morvidus (Danius's son), and dauyd is prob. a corruption of Danius. The length of his reign is not given in MS. B. <sup>b</sup>bonore] 'good-natured, gentle'. See MED s.v. bonair(e) and cf. MS. A.

Fol. 20 <sup>a</sup>kygnes] So MS. for kynges. <sup>b</sup>pethe] 'death'; S.E. reverse spelling. <sup>c</sup>cuntas london] So MS. for ciuitas london, prob. modelled on Caesar's ciuitas Trinobantum (see A Survey of London by John Stow, ed. C.L. Kingsford, Oxford, 1908, Vol. I, p. 3). <sup>d</sup>storyne] Var. of stern 'strong, bold'.

Fol. 22 <sup>a</sup>Breton3] The corrector's error, for the text should read 'Romans'. The misunderstanding continues in the next line where A breton is a mistaken insertion. Cf. MS. A. <sup>b</sup>wyt his hown handys] Cf. MS. A. Prob. a careless misreading and anticipation by the scribe.

Fol. 23 <sup>a</sup>he Callyd ... Gloucestyr] Cf. Brut-1333: 'lete calle þe toune after his owen name Clauestre, þat now is callede Gloucestr'' (Brle, p. 35 ll.26-28). <sup>b</sup>westyner] Also westiner, prob. from a misreading of -m- as -in-. <sup>c</sup>coste] So MS. for hoste.

Fol. 24 <sup>a</sup>in þe hey wey] Cf. MS. A. The insertions are rationalizations by the corrector. <sup>b</sup>sterred] Apparently a complete corruption; cf. BM Harl. 4827 whiche stant here 3itte in to bis day. <sup>c</sup>makyne] Conflation of an infin. and in 'in'.

Fol. 25 <sup>a</sup>theth] Poss. thoth 'thought' (cf. MS. A), with some words omitted. But poss. a misreading and confusion of forms of 'hate' and 'thought', or a reverse spelling of 'death'. <sup>b</sup>w] False start for 'when'.

<sup>c</sup>to] Poss. error for te 'the'.

Fol. 26 <sup>a</sup>afterwas] Anticipation of following was in writing afterward. <sup>b</sup>Cyrstēn] So MS. for Crystēn.  
<sup>c</sup>goueryd] So MS. for 'governed'. <sup>d</sup>conrwall] So MS. for cornwall. <sup>e</sup>for all hys felleschep] 'all his fellowship'; cf. MS. A for his falsnesse.

Fol. 27 <sup>a</sup>for the ... þis lond] The scribe has been misled by the words lond of Armorycan which occur earlier in the chapter and has copied out the following matter for a second time. A comparison of the two passages shows only minor changes. <sup>b</sup>for] Prob. error for from.

Fol. 28 <sup>a</sup>so faw] Cf. MS. A so fair. <sup>b</sup>womanly] 'in a womanly manner; like a woman' (OED).

Fol. 29 <sup>a</sup>predicacioun] 'preaching'. <sup>b</sup>knowyngly] 'so as to be known'; see MED s.v. knouingli adv. <sup>c</sup>feyd] Cf. MS. A ffley. The corrector has failed to change the initial f- to s-. <sup>d</sup>and ... kyng] The scribe's eye has been caught by the repetition of Constantyn below.

Fol. 30 <sup>a</sup>hend] Prob. originally an error for 'own'; cf. MS. A.

Fol. 32 <sup>a</sup>cotre] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>delle] Cf. MS. A dwelle; poss. confusion with delen 'to act, have dealings'.

Fol. 33 <sup>a</sup>Rondell] 'a circular shape'; cf. OED s.v. Rondel 1. <sup>b</sup>A Reme] Prob. corrupt. There are various possibilities: 'by oar', 'by rein', 'to count up, reckon' (= a rime), 'with his company' (a rewe 'a row, in a line'). <sup>c</sup>latener] 'interpreter'; see OED s.v.



Latimer and MED s.v. latimer n., where this spelling is recorded only in surnames.

Fol. 34 <sup>a</sup>confecioun] 'confusion'. <sup>b</sup>feffyd] 'invested, bestowed, enfeoffed'; see MED s.v. feffen v. Cf. MS. A sessed; the present reading has arisen through misinterpretation of long s as f, but makes good sense. <sup>c</sup>b] Prob. a false start for be. <sup>d</sup>a bowte þe blake hethe ... ys shewe] A detail not found in the CV. <sup>e</sup>Schyr of Dyshalf] A confused, rationalized misreading of the normal text; cf. MS. A. <sup>f</sup>th] Superfluous letters.

Fol. 35 <sup>a</sup>delyidd] Error for 'delivered'.

Fol. 36 <sup>a</sup>be werke] Cf. MS. A. The scribe may have missed a line; otherwise be werke could be an instance of a rare verb meaning 'work, adorn' (see OED s.v. Bework v. 2). MED records only the past participle bewroght, found in Sir Eglamour. <sup>b</sup>long long] Dittography rather than emphatic repetition. <sup>c</sup>profitly] 'profitably'. Not recorded in OED, although OED does record one instance of an adjective profitly in Le Morte Darthur (dated 1485, in the superlative form profytelyvest). <sup>d</sup>he] Erron. alteration by corrector from the scribe's original ho 'who'.

Fol. 37 <sup>a</sup>mynd] 'mine'. <sup>b</sup>Rau] So MS. for Cau 'cave'.

Fol. 39 <sup>a</sup>strustid] s- is erron., influenced by preceding strongly. <sup>b</sup>we] Prob. an anticipation of wengyd.

Fol. 40 <sup>a</sup>tilyd] 'reached, extended'; OED s.v. Till v.<sup>2</sup>. <sup>b</sup>lemnygs] So MS. for lemyns 'flashings of light, lightnings'. <sup>c</sup>bodely] Cf. MS. A boldely.

Fol. 41 <sup>a</sup>tabyd] 'to abide'. <sup>b</sup>hyng] 'persisted, endured,

hung on'; cf. MED s.v. hongen v. 8(b). <sup>c</sup>E] False start for Erle.

Fol. 42 <sup>a</sup>fre] 'readily, easily'. <sup>b</sup>att tendans] The line-ending occurs after att. Such instances are usually regarded as scribal errors, but possibly the doubled consonant at the line-end has a function analogous to that of a catchword at a page-end.

Fol. 43 <sup>a</sup>p] An unstressed form of 'the', placed in the wrong position. <sup>b</sup>drongen] 'drank'. <sup>c</sup>Amog] 'among'; -g has a tail, but this is usual with final -g and there is no separate macron above the word to denote abbreviation. The omission of a macron in this position is common in MS. B. <sup>d</sup>bot] Prob. 'both'. <sup>e</sup>as as] Dittography.

Fol. 44 <sup>a</sup>Resayvid] Cf. MS. A rescued. A scribal misreading. <sup>b</sup>lemoygn̄] See MS. A fol. 25 note h. <sup>c</sup>vn bras] 'embrace'; cf. MS. A. <sup>d</sup>hopyn̄] The original text prob. read 'war upon' (cf. MS. A), but 'war' dropped out and the form of 'upon' was mistaken as a form of the verb 'open'.

Fol. 45 <sup>a</sup>Alther next] 'very close to'; alther is a var. of alder, originally the genitive plural of al. See MED s.v. alder- prefix. <sup>b</sup>ball] Error for bat, influenced by following shall. <sup>c</sup>flowr þe lysse] 'fleur-de-lys'; cf. MS. A flour of lyfe. Prob. a misreading of f as long s, the misreading being supported contextually by the reference to France. <sup>d</sup>messurabyly] 'moderately, in moderation'. Equivalent to MS. A's vp on right and resoun̄. <sup>e</sup>tothis] 'teeth'. OED s.v. Tooth sb. gives tōpas as an eleventh-century and tothes as a sixteenth-century plural form. <sup>f</sup>blanke] Presumably erron. for



'bank'. <sup>g</sup>Moldwrpp] It is possible that the first p is an alteration of original q, in which case the error was originally one of transposition of the letters q and r.

Fol. 46 <sup>a</sup>his See] -d om., prob. from influence of preceding See 'sea'. <sup>b</sup>pepartyd] 'divided'; see MS. B fol. 14 note b. <sup>c</sup>submetthem] 'submitted themselves'; cf. MS. B fol. 9 note b, fol. 14 note d. <sup>d</sup>Sottys] See MS. A fol. 63 note a. <sup>e</sup>waff] So MS. for 'wife'. <sup>f</sup>Amog] See MS. B fol. 43 note c. <sup>g</sup>body for body] 'person to person, man to man'; cf. MED s.v. bodi n. 7b(b). <sup>h</sup>by pem partyd] The macron above pe may have been added by the corrector, who may have misunderstood the scribe's spelling of an original phrase meaning 'be departed (i.e. divided)', in which d- was represented by p- (a S.E. reverse spelling; see fol. 14 note b).

Fol. 47 <sup>a</sup>s] False start for Chastysyd. <sup>b</sup>diffeffyd] 'rewarded, endowed with land'. No corresponding infinitive is recorded in OED or MED. It appears to be an English formation from de- (see OED s.v. De- prefix I 2 b 'away from oneself'; cf. de- in delegate) and feffen (see MED q.v.). <sup>c</sup>Sotlond] Cf. MS. B fol. 46 note d and MS. A fol. 61 note i.

Fol. 48 <sup>a</sup>pad] 'that'. <sup>b</sup>Snyit[h]] Erron. for 'smite (smote)'. <sup>c</sup>of] 'Rome' om. <sup>d</sup>xx<sup>iiii</sup> M<sup>l</sup>] 'four score thousand, 80,000'; the normal form of writing these roman numerals is used in MS. A. <sup>e</sup>trabell] 'treble'; see OED s.v. Treble a. and adv. A adj. 1 c, where the first recorded instance is dated 1423. <sup>f</sup>schour] 'assault, attack'; see OED s.v. Shower sb.<sup>1</sup> 5.

Fol. 49 <sup>a</sup>amog] See MS. B fol. 43 note c.



Fol. 50 <sup>a</sup>lake hys chaunce] Error for take hys chaunce  
 'submit to his fate, take his chance'; see MED s.v.  
chaunce n. 3. <sup>b</sup>A ventur] Misreading of Avion (Avalon).  
 Preceding born has possibly been misread as 'born'  
 instead of 'borne'. <sup>c</sup>regayd] So MS. for regnyd.  
<sup>d</sup>distoyd] -r- om. <sup>e</sup>payñs] So MS.; the macron may be  
 intended as an abbreviation-mark of a general kind.  
<sup>f</sup>nettys and stake] Cf. MS. A; the scribe of MS. B  
 seems not to have grasped the sense.

Fol. 51 <sup>a</sup>Chestyr] Cf. MS. A and Brut-1333 'Chichester'.  
<sup>b</sup>Machantys] So MS.; -r- om. <sup>c</sup>Rascauyd] 'rescued'.  
<sup>d</sup>synt Greger and synt Avsten sent] Cf. MS. A. The  
 scribe of MS. B has misunderstood his exemplar and has  
 added sent in an attempt to make sense. Clearly he has  
 misunderstood the exemplar to say 'saint Austen', not  
 'sent Austen'. <sup>e</sup>and and] Dittography. <sup>f</sup>Scatys taylys]  
 'tails of skate'. Neither the thornback of MS. A nor  
 the skate of MS. B appears in Brut-1333. The thorn-  
 back is in fact a type of skate. <sup>g</sup>seng] 'saint', by  
 assimilation to following G-. <sup>h</sup>premat] Cf. MS. A, but  
 poss. the expanded form intended is promot, which would  
 make sense of the following plural form Archbeshopys.

Fol. 52 <sup>a</sup>dellyth] Cf. MS. A dwellede and MS. B fol. 32  
 note b. <sup>b</sup>conertyd] -u- om. <sup>c</sup>lyue lod] 'property, land';  
 see MED s.v. lif-lod(e n. 2(a).

Fol. 53 <sup>a</sup>dystoryd] So MS. for dystroyd. <sup>b</sup>s] Prob. a  
 false start for Cawse. <sup>c</sup>Pranda] So MS. for Peanda.  
<sup>d</sup>The two following chapters constitute the 'Cadwallader  
 episode', which is not found in the Anglo-Norman text,  
 the original English translation thereof, and in certain  
 other groups of texts. It has been translated from  
 Geoffrey of Monmouth (see Vol. I, pp.102-3). <sup>e</sup>discense]



Cf. BM Harl. 4827 discorde. MS. B's form is prob. a confusion of this with 'dissension' (see MED s.v. dissencioun), but cf. MED s.v. descense (also discense), 'downward movement; an attack or assault'.

Fol. 54 <sup>a</sup>scraf] Poss. an error for straf, a metathesized form of starf 'starved', 3rd sing. pret. <sup>b</sup>wementacioun] 'lamentation'; see OED s.v. Waymentation. <sup>c</sup>Dedisti nobis Domine] The scribe left a space in the text but wrote the full quotation in the margin as a guide for later rubrication, but since there was insufficient space for the full quotation, the rubricator underlined the marginal quotation in red. See the textual note for the full quotation and Vol. I, p. 102 for its source. <sup>d</sup>inhatacons] So MS. for 'inhabitations' (see MED s.v. inhabitacioun n., where the first quotation is dated ? a1475 (? a1425 from Higden); the MS. has an a/au abbreviation-mark above -n-. <sup>e</sup>oñ of the them] Cf. BM Harl. 4827: 'and moche peple sprong 7 come of hem'. <sup>f</sup>chydryne] -l- om. <sup>g</sup>s] Superfluous letter. <sup>h</sup>amogys] See MS. B fol. 43 note c. <sup>i</sup>prosecuone] So MS. for 'persecution'. <sup>j</sup>prophecoers] 'prophesters'; see OED s.v. Prophecier, where the first recorded instance is dated 1477. <sup>k</sup>Auis wer] The correct reading is 'answer', but since Auis occurs at a line-ending, poss. the scribe intended 'advice'. The three minims could be read simply as an error for n. <sup>l</sup>dyspocioun] Var. of 'disposition'; cf. dyspsicioun below and var. forms in MED s.v. disposicioun n. <sup>m</sup>irrupcioun] 'invasion', from Latin irruptio. MED records one example s.v. irription dated ?a1425; OED records examples from 1577 onwards s.v. Irruption.

Fol. 55 <sup>a</sup>Iobbers] So MS. for Robbers; cf. BM Harl. 4827 befes 7 robbours. <sup>b</sup>swondyr] The first letter has the



form of a long s, but is prob. a partly formed f, a false start for fayr. <sup>c</sup>deddyd] 'did it' rather than verb + preterite ending -yd; cf. MS. B fol. 9 note b. <sup>d</sup>leffe] 'darling, wife'; from OE leof n. <sup>e</sup>pispyte] 'despite'; poss. a conflation of be or bis with despite (or dispite), using a S.E. reverse spelling p for d. <sup>f</sup>had ... had] Redundancy caused by the fact that potentially the auxiliary verb could occupy either position.

Fol. 56 <sup>a</sup>to] Superfluous; clearly written and apparently not an error for te 'the'. <sup>b</sup>had had] Dittography caused by occurrence of line-ending after first had. <sup>c</sup>born] i.e. Buryne. <sup>d</sup>A Raysyd] Error for 'arrived'; cf. MS. A. <sup>e</sup>distoryd] So MS. for distroyd; see also MS. B fol. 53 note a. <sup>f</sup>fusioun] 'success, strength'; see MED s.v. foisoun n. 3. <sup>g</sup>nothyng[a] in] The MS. originally had the correct reading nothyngam 'Nottingham', but the eraser misunderstood the sense.

Fol. 57 <sup>a</sup>turnyd] Cf. MS. A turnement.

Fol. 58 <sup>a</sup>Sodend partyd] Corrupt.

Fol. 59 <sup>a</sup>w] False start for a repetition of wer. <sup>b</sup>of westyner and pe lond] Cf. Brut-1333 of Westmerlande. The present reading is a corruption. <sup>c</sup>pryd] Cf. MS. A pray. <sup>d</sup>sdessesyd] The initial s- is the start of the correct reading 'seized' (cf. MS. A), but for some reason the scribe has decided to emend this to the present erron. reading; decesen 'to die' makes no sense here.

Fol. 60 <sup>a</sup>old] Misreading of 'wild'; cf. MS. A. <sup>b</sup>fest] Cf. MS. A; fest is at the beginning of a line and possibly the scribe, glancing at the preceding line, took



the concluding -te of Solempnite as the end of grete, thus omitting several words.

Fol. 61 <sup>a</sup>A buot] So MS. for A bout. <sup>b</sup>honys dryng] 'drink once'. <sup>c</sup>onoe] 'one, a'. <sup>d</sup>hym] Error for 'her'; see MS. A.

Fol. 62 <sup>a</sup>7] Occurs at the end of a line but through oversight has not been deleted. <sup>b</sup>the de dethe] The scribe has been confused by his dialectal form de 'the' occurring before dethe, and has thus written two forms of the definite article. <sup>c</sup>pe knyth] Poss. there was some confusion in the scribe's mind between the identical forms he uses for 'Cnut' and 'knight'. <sup>d</sup>dellyd] Cf. MS. A dwelde and MS. B fol. 32 note b. <sup>e</sup>ter] ? Poss. a false start for th- in 'thought', with the loop of h resembling an er abbreviation-mark.

Fol. 63 <sup>a</sup>wyt oute] The text should read simply wyt. <sup>b</sup>Edrith] So MS.; cf. the confusion between t and c noted in MS. A fol. 24 notes b, c. <sup>c</sup>had at] The correction is an error. <sup>d</sup>brothe] Prob. an abbreviation-mark has been omitted. <sup>e</sup>pay] Cf. MS. A per. Poss. an error for bat; it adds to the general confusion of this passage in MS. B occasioned by inept abbreviation of the narrative. <sup>f</sup>sche] Cf. MS. A he (i.e. the king); a misunderstanding of the sense in MS. B.

Fol. 64 <sup>a</sup>kynth] So MS. for knyth. <sup>b</sup>he wold fle þe watyr] The sense requires a negative; see MS. A. <sup>c</sup>not bydhyr] 'not abide here'. A clever alteration, but unnecessary, as the original reading no nothyr 'no other' makes sense if taken in contradistinction to bat god. <sup>d</sup>ryght] Cf. MS. A riche.



Fol. 65 <sup>a</sup>of hemewe have spoke] 'of whom we have spoken'; the original reading was prob. of hemewe havr spoke 'of whom we earlier spoke', prob. a misreading of the exemplar (cf. MS. A haue spoken). <sup>b</sup>wenschestyr] This is the last word of the chapter recounting the reign of Hardicanute in Brut-1333 and MS. A. Harold Harefoot is said to lie in Westminster. <sup>c</sup>one and] Prob. erron. for one end 'an end'; cf. MS. A. <sup>d</sup>hodyr brodyr] Corrupt; hodyr is prob. a corruption of 'oath'. Cf. MS. A.

Fol. 66 <sup>a</sup>take keppe] 'take notice, observe'; see MED s.v. kep n. 1. <sup>b</sup>bouys] 'bowels'; this variant is not listed in MED or OED, but is used again below. It is unlikely that bonys 'bones' is intended; it is rather a phonetically reduced form of 'bowels'. <sup>c</sup>Alluryryd] An error of dittographic type, although the order of the two repeated letters is reversed. <sup>d</sup>fleud] 'fled'; a confusion between two preterite forms fleu and fled. <sup>e</sup>in honest of clenness] 'in purity of propriety (or virginity)'; the text is defensible in this sense, but is prob. a corruption (BM Harl. 4827 reads in honeste 7 clenness). See MED s.vv. honeste n. 4 and clenness n. 2. <sup>f</sup>manours] 'manners, good usages'; this spelling is not listed as a variant in OED s.v. Manner sb.<sup>1</sup> or MED s.v. maner(e n.

Fol. 67 <sup>a</sup>harryd] Cf. MS. A hasted. It is difficult to view the form as a variant of 'hurry' (which is first recorded definitely as a verb in 1590 in OED; see sense 2). There is a similar word used in Cleanness, written cl400 but composed cl380: 'þe 3onge men ... by þe hondez hym hent and horyed hym wythinne'. MED conjectures that the hypothetical infinitive horien is poss. a variant of herien v. (2), with the meaning 'to impel (sb.) rapidly, hurry (sb.)'. The present form harryd may represent the preterite of a variant form of horien.



<sup>b</sup>besehe] So MS. for beseche. <sup>c</sup>Enmysse] Cf. MS. A ffrendes. <sup>d</sup>but] 'put'.

Fol. 68 <sup>a</sup>honharbe halfe] The corrector(?) has taken honharbe as the name of the queen and has thus deleted halfe, whereas the original reading meant 'on her behalf (i.e. side)'. <sup>b</sup>Iore] So MS. for Ioye. <sup>c</sup>mayd] 'virgin'. St. John himself was said to be a virgin, like King Edward, for example, by Dan Michel: 'Saint Ion þe ewangelist, þet was mayde, wes amang þe apostles þe meste belouede of oure lhorde' (Avenbite of Inwyte, ed. R. Morris, EETS O.S. 23, 1866 (repr. 1895), p. 230 l.13). <sup>d</sup>þanthane] Dittography; prob. the scribe began to write thankyd but changed his mind and repeated the word 'then'.

Fol. 69 <sup>a</sup>laydis] 'laid us'; cf. MS. B fol. 9 note b. <sup>b</sup>Schipperdesse] 'shepherds', not 'shepherdess'; the following verb is plural. Cf. the plural ending of matenyse 'matins' below. <sup>c</sup>Chipperders] Not listed as a variant of Shepherd sb. in OED, but poss. a valid form (cf. modern Dutch schaapherder, but MDu. schâphirde). <sup>d</sup>þay þat ... vndyrfong] Cf. the sense of MS. A. Primarily it has been altered in MS. B by a misreading of þay, a valid S.E. reverse spelling of day, as meaning 'they'. <sup>e</sup>bothe] Prob. a corruption; cf. MS. A abode. But poss. a valid aphetic form using a reverse spelling -th- for -d-. <sup>f</sup>most kyndyst] 'most legitimate'; cf. MS. A and note, MED s.v. kind(e) adj. 3.

Fol. 70 <sup>a</sup>Aiell] 'grandfather'. <sup>b</sup>deuyr] 'duty'; see MED s.v. dever n. 1.

Fol. 71 <sup>a</sup>þe best] Scribal misreading of hervest. <sup>b</sup>ather] A confusion between at the and ther. <sup>c</sup>possensyons] -n-



is superfluous.

Fol. 72 <sup>a</sup>cunrte] Confusion between cuntre 'country' and curte 'court'. <sup>b</sup>to litell by a fadyme fendell] Cf. BM Harl. 4827 to litell bi be half fendell. The scribe has confused halfendel 'half-part' with 'fathom'. <sup>c</sup>mett] 'dreamt'. <sup>d</sup>dyspyte] 'disparaged, looked down on'; see MED s.v. despiten v. (first recorded c1440). <sup>e</sup>tredyd all a brod] Misreading; cf. BM Harl. 4827 threwe it all a brode 'scattered it about'. <sup>f</sup>be kensone] Poss. a misreading of 'betoken', but see MED s.v. bikennen v. 1 'to signify (sth.), betoken', with one quotation from Havelok. In MS. B, sone could be an error for some, and the passage would make good sense.

Fol. 73 <sup>a</sup>Irla<sup>n</sup>] Misreading of the abbreviated form of 'Jerusalem'; cf. MS. A. <sup>b</sup>sayd] Corruption of 'seized'. <sup>c</sup>ys louf] A corruption of 'Louis', arising from a misreading of the name as two elements meaning 'love is'. <sup>d</sup>in spousyd] enspousen 'to wed, marry' is not recorded in OED or MED, but see MS. A fol. 55 note a on the fecundity of the prefix en-. In this context, however, it could have arisen as a re-interpretation of the p. pple. had yspousyd. <sup>e</sup>lokyd] Prob. corrupt, though some meaning could be obtained from MED s.v. loken v. (2) 12b(a), 'to guard (a place ...); defend or watch over', if following for is altered to of.

Fol. 74 <sup>a</sup>Erched kent] Cf. MS. A Archedeken. <sup>b</sup>rNormandy] r- is erron., prob. in anticipation of medial -r- since it occurs after the o of to.

Fol. 75 <sup>a</sup>E1e] So MS. for Erle.

Fol. 76 <sup>a</sup>3e] False start for 3er. <sup>b</sup>Irlom] Cf. MS. B



fol. 73 note a. The scribe has here retained the original final -m of the abbreviation for Jerusalem. <sup>c</sup>incornacioun] Confusion between 'incarnation' and 'coronation'.

Fol. 77 <sup>a</sup>fyt3 vrs berson in Englysch] The necessity for the aside, found in Brut-1333, explaining the meaning of fyt3 vrs recalls Trevisa's comments on the status and currency of French in England in 1385 (see C. Babington and J.R. Lumby, Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Rolls Series, 1865-86, Vol. II (1869), p. 161). <sup>b</sup>bethe] ? Poss. a misreading of some form like be lre 'by letter' in the exemplar; the earlier superfluous letter in the text may be b, a false start for 'by letter' which the scribe intended to write at the end of the sentence. <sup>c</sup>hem heuyr] The scribe originally wrote he heuyr, omitting hem 'them'; cf. MS. A. <sup>d</sup>fer] Cf. MS. A faire in his wey.

Fol. 78 <sup>a</sup>multon] 'melted'. <sup>b</sup>Sextens] Poss. Sexteus 'Cistercians', but prob. a confusion with 'sextons'. <sup>c</sup>hym be kynge of fraunce] The scribe has omitted a line, his eye being caught by the repetition of kynge in the exemplar's text (cf. MS. A). The insertion of be is a rationalization of the sense. <sup>d</sup>hes] Confusion between his and hed.

Fol. 79 <sup>a</sup>pat graunte thyng] graunte should have been inserted before pat. <sup>b</sup>monkyus] 'monks'; the scribe prob. began to write the plural ending -ys before changing to the -us abbreviation-mark.

Fol. 80 <sup>a</sup>Scryffe] 'sheriff'. <sup>b</sup>taske] 'tax'. <sup>c</sup>Dyscressioun] 'authority, power'; see MED s.v. discrecioun n. 3.

Fol. 81 <sup>a</sup>dyschard] 'dispossess of office'; an erron.

variant of dischargen (see MED q.v.), not of discard, which is a late sixteenth-century word (see OED q.v.).

<sup>b</sup>w] Superfluous letter. <sup>c</sup>comadement] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om.

Fol. 82 <sup>a</sup>d] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 83 <sup>a</sup>f] Superfluous letter, prob. a false start for from. <sup>b</sup>houth] 'oft, often'; not listed in OED as a variant s.v. Oft adv., adj., but cf. owghte. On fol. 55<sup>b</sup> the corr. misunderstood another variant in owthvñ tyme (= BM Harl. 4827 oft tymes) and has stroked it out. Such reverse spellings are quite frequent in the fifteenth century, and arise from the opposite change of [χ] to [f] (as in enough, cough, rough, etc.).

Fol. 84 <sup>a</sup>h] False start for Howe. <sup>b</sup>lewlyn] Error for lewys 'Louis'. <sup>c</sup>allyll] So MS. for 'a little'; the final ls are crossed, but this does not necessarily indicate abbreviation. Or it could be an error for lytt, a common Southern form for 'little'.

Fol. 85 <sup>a</sup>wrorthē] So MS. for worthē. <sup>b</sup>þird yeer] The rubricator has misunderstood the sense; cf. MS. A. <sup>c</sup>kyng] Error for 'legate'; see MS. A.

Fol. 86 <sup>a</sup>when] 'went', by assimilation to following t-. <sup>b</sup>Somfyte] So MS. for Scomfyte. <sup>c</sup>in the] 'sea' om.; see MS. A. <sup>d</sup>presiners] Poss. preoneris, with medial s om.

Fol. 87 <sup>a</sup>Anone A none] Dittography, but possibly serving the purpose of a catchword. <sup>b</sup>Cauntyrbury] Error for 'Provence' or 'France'. <sup>c</sup>Sotlond] See MS. B fol. 47



note b. <sup>d</sup>Chyrches] Error for 'charter'. <sup>e</sup>bopyr] So MS. for brobyr. <sup>f</sup>netyrcis] Erron. for 'nettles'; prob. the scribe misread an l as a c with a looped abbreviation-mark above it. <sup>g</sup>and dishit] Cf. MS. A were disherited; an abbreviation-mark has been omitted on dishit.

Fol. 88 <sup>a</sup>same] 'year' om. <sup>b</sup>pey wer] 'they were'; cf. MS. A the werre 'the war'. <sup>c</sup>it] A misreading of an abbreviation for 'Jesus', poss. ic. <sup>d</sup>Edwardis] Error for 'Henry's'.

Fol. 89 <sup>a</sup>waly] 'Wales'; prob. influenced by following send. <sup>b</sup>a wysse mente] From the word-division it seems probable that the scribe misread his exemplar as three words, taking a as the indefinite article, wysse as the adjective 'wise' and mente as a variant of the Scottish and northern mint 'purpose, intention' (see OED s.v. Mint sb.<sup>4</sup> 1). <sup>c</sup>sente] Aphetic form of 'assent'. <sup>d</sup>estatus] Cf. MS. A statut3. <sup>e</sup>Sone] 'message'; see MS. A fol. 103 note d. <sup>f</sup>lawlys] So MS. for lawlyns. <sup>g</sup>Solempnite] Cf. MS. A semblaunt.

Fol. 90 <sup>a</sup>7 and] Cf. MS. B fol. 87 note a. <sup>b</sup>pat] Error for pan; cf. MS. A po. <sup>c</sup>brothe] So MS. for 'brother'; -r or er abbreviation-mark om. <sup>d</sup>gre] 'satisfy'; see MED s.v. green v. <sup>e</sup>of of] Dittography; words separated by line-ending.

Fol. 91 <sup>a</sup>Cystoste] Cf. MS. A Tiptott, and MS. A fol. 4 note f. <sup>b</sup>in in] Dittography; words separated by line-ending. <sup>c</sup>all all] Dittography. <sup>d</sup>Eo] Prob. the start of a misreading of for. <sup>e</sup>Syne] 'saint', by assimilation to following I-.



Fol. 92 <sup>a</sup>tachynge] ? 'arresting, seizing'; see taching  
 vbl. sb. in OED s.v. Tache v.<sup>2</sup> <sup>b</sup>Rone] So MS. for Rome.  
<sup>c</sup>subieccyoun] Cf. MS. A suggescioun. <sup>d</sup>to tre] False  
 start for to trett. <sup>e</sup>wythssmen] So MS. for 'Welshmen'.  
<sup>f</sup>Eng legemen] The line-division occurs after Eng, and  
 the corrector appears to have failed to read this syl-  
 lable and then to have tried to alter the remainder of  
 the word to 'liegemen'. <sup>g</sup>escapyd] Cf. MS. A asspiede.  
<sup>h</sup>A nyglysse] So MS. for 'an English'. <sup>i</sup>Cardenall] The  
 final -l is crossed, which could indicate the abbrevia-  
 tion of a plural -ys ending. The correct reading is  
 plural (cf. MS. A) and thys can be the plural form of  
 the demonstrative article, but since MS. B uses the  
 singular A Cardenall on fol. 92<sup>a</sup>, the singular has been  
 retained here. <sup>j</sup>wyt hym] So MS. for 'within'; see MS. A.

Fol. 93 <sup>a</sup>pe pe] Dittography. <sup>b</sup>hys broders] Prob. a mis-  
 reading of 'this Robert'. <sup>c</sup>Resayve] Prob. erron. for  
 'rescue'. <sup>d</sup>Ryr] So MS. for Syr. <sup>e</sup>dyscomfetetur] Line-  
 division after dyscomfet; dittography.

Fol. 94 <sup>a</sup>delyidd] So MS. for 'delivered'; cf. also MS. B  
 fol. 35 note a. <sup>b</sup>delyueraune] So MS. for delyueraunce.  
<sup>c</sup>d] False start for dystroy.

Fol. 95 <sup>a</sup>weld] So MS. for wedd. <sup>b</sup>hall] False start for  
halmost. <sup>c</sup>in famyld] So MS. for in famynd. <sup>d</sup>K ng] So MS.  
 for 'King'. <sup>e</sup>lond done] Misreading of 'London'.  
<sup>f</sup>chausse] Poss. confused with chansse 'occurrence, event'.  
<sup>g</sup>into dirfong] Something omitted; cf. MS. A.

Fol. 96 <sup>a</sup>hy] So MS. for hym. <sup>b</sup>knyg] Letters transposed;  
 so MS. for kyng. <sup>c</sup>the kyng] Erron.; see MS. A. <sup>d</sup>tyne]  
 Erron. for tyme. <sup>e</sup>Anothyr anothyr] Dittography. <sup>f</sup>tyme]  
 Cf. MS. A myle. <sup>g</sup>cone] So MS. for come.



Fol. 97 <sup>a</sup>hope] Cf. MS. A helpe. <sup>b</sup>dragone] 'drawn'.  
<sup>c</sup>Cosyne] Confusion with Comyne. <sup>d</sup>Ryr] So MS. for Syr;  
 see also MS. B fol. 93 note d. <sup>e</sup>Cossyne] Cf. MS. B  
 fol. 97 note c. <sup>f</sup>ij] The Roman figures for 'two'; so  
 MS. for the preposition 'to'. <sup>g</sup>A weingemens] ? Confu-  
 sion between 'advancement' and 'vengeance'. <sup>h</sup>hys] Cf.  
 MS. A heigh 'high'. <sup>i</sup>drw] So MS. for 'driven (drove)'.  
<sup>j</sup>dubbe<sup>m</sup>] Prob. an erron. conflation of 'dubbed them';  
 cf. MS. B fol. 46 note c. <sup>k</sup>Sottys] See MS. B fol. 46  
 note d.

Fol. 98 <sup>a</sup>Symod] n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>hond vppo<sup>n</sup>] Dittography, using two different forms. <sup>c</sup>uuold] Poss. nnold, nuold, since the sense requires a negative. Or omission of the negating word. <sup>d</sup>sche] Error for 'he'.

Fol. 99 <sup>a</sup>nyzte] So MS. for 'nigh'. <sup>b</sup>chosse] Cf. MS. A closen. <sup>c</sup>defendyd] Misreading; cf. MS. A deseruede.  
<sup>d</sup>me] Error for ne.

Fol. 100 <sup>a</sup>grocchid] 'complained, were dissatisfied, were angry'; see MED s.v. grucchen v. <sup>b</sup>worthus] 'worthiest'; prob. an error for worthus. <sup>c</sup>norlond] Cf. MS. A anothir lond; poss. intended to signify 'northland' (see OED s.v.). For the spelling, cf. norhumbrelonde below.  
<sup>d</sup>pesse] Error for presse. <sup>e</sup>hy] So MS. for hym. <sup>f</sup>a none] Cf. MS. A nome. <sup>g</sup>Archurs] Error for Arthurs.

Fol. 101 <sup>a</sup>at hy] So MS. for at hym 'for, towards, him'.  
<sup>b</sup>Comfytyd] A shortened form of 'discomfited', not recorded in MED or OED, but cf. the similarly shortened form 'scomfit'.

Fol. 102 <sup>a</sup>medeyis] Conflation of meny 'many' and devis 'days'. <sup>b</sup>doun fled] ? A corruption of 'toward Durham';

see MS. A. <sup>c</sup>Mast] So MS. for Mastyr; yr abbreviation-mark om. <sup>d</sup>mett] So MS. for smett. <sup>e</sup>Sertowne3] A corruption of 'four towns'. <sup>f</sup>ac] 'also, as well as'; a var. of ek adv. and conj. rather than an instance of ac conj. (see MED svv.). It could, however, be a mere assimilation of and (an, ā) to the following Q-.

Fol. 103 <sup>a</sup>schannos] 'canons'; -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>howe] A possible form for 'own', though howne would be more normal. <sup>c</sup>wengeng] 'vengeance'; misreading of 'wing in' (cf. MS. A). <sup>d</sup>honned] Var. of uneath 'scarcely, hardly', not listed in OED s.v. Uneath adv. <sup>e</sup>hollers] So MS., and again below, for hoblers. <sup>f</sup>me] False start for meny at end of line. <sup>g</sup>ferd] So MS., presumably for fred; see MS. A fol. 68 note g.

Fol. 104 <sup>a</sup>atred] Corrupt; cf. MS. A trette. MED atreden v. 'to surpass in counsel, outwit' does not give the required sense. <sup>b</sup>spowsys] So MS. for 'spoused'. <sup>c</sup>hiyr] 'their'; yi and iy spellings are quite common in the E.Midl., though rarer elsewhere. <sup>d</sup>hyt] So MS. for hys.

Fol. 105 <sup>a</sup>in in] Dittography; words separated by line-ending. <sup>b</sup>he] 'she'. <sup>c</sup>but] 'put'. <sup>d</sup>the] 'king' om.

Fol. 106 <sup>a</sup>Irlond] Error for 'earldom'; see MS. A. <sup>b</sup>anon] Misreading of nome; see MS. A. <sup>c</sup>god he] Cf. MS. A god quob he; prob. the scribe misread god, which he had just written, as quod 'said'. <sup>d</sup>hond] 'own'.

Fol. 107 <sup>a</sup>vngowerne] 'uncontrolled, intemperate'; not recorded in OED, but cf. ungoverned ppl. a.<sup>1</sup> (first recorded in 1591, and of persons in 1594). <sup>b</sup>vnche] So MS. for vncle. <sup>c</sup>sone] So MS. for 'some'.



Fol. 108 <sup>a</sup>wyt] So MS. for 'without'. <sup>b</sup>and afeyr hathe]  
 Cf. MS. A in afaire halle. <sup>c</sup>vpred] So MS. by haplo-  
 graphy for vprered 'raised up, elevated, erected'; see  
 OED s.v. Upreamed 2, where the first quotation is dated  
 1422. <sup>d</sup>slengas] Corruption of 'fleeing as'.

Fol. 109 <sup>a</sup>fayr] Error for 'friar'. <sup>b</sup>b] False start for  
 the scribe's form of passyng using b-; cf. his use of  
but 'put', etc. <sup>c</sup>thethe] 'death'; reverse spelling th-  
 for d-. <sup>d</sup>hongelys] 'uncle's'. <sup>e</sup>but] 'put'. <sup>f</sup>3oir]  
 Corruption of bour 'through'. <sup>g</sup>spend] So MS. for  
 'Spensers'. <sup>h</sup>sawe] Error for 'gave'. <sup>i</sup>preucie] Cf.  
 MS. A preiudice. <sup>j</sup>puch] So MS. for 'through' (prob.  
burch).

Fol. 110 <sup>a</sup>fyne] 'find'. <sup>b</sup>l] False start at end of line  
 for lakkyd. <sup>c</sup>enche] So MS. for encheson.

Fol. 111 <sup>a</sup>court] Error for 'country'; see MS. A. <sup>b</sup>per]  
 Misreading of ver 'year'. <sup>c</sup>gret] So MS. for gert 'girt'.

Fol. 112 <sup>a</sup>clayed] Cf. MS. A cleuede; prob. association  
 with clei, clai 'clay'. <sup>b</sup>reprevis] ? Possibly a mis-  
 reading of a conjectured crepelis 'cripples' in the  
 scribe's exemplar. <sup>c</sup>goone] So MS. for goode. <sup>d</sup>f] False  
 start for 'four'. <sup>e</sup>hyr] So MS. for hys.

Fol. 113 <sup>a</sup>Stremes] Cf. MS. A temese 'Thames'. <sup>b</sup>lesse]  
 Cf. MS. A sese 'seize'; poss. confusion with lessen v.  
 'reduce the extent of (landed possessions)' (MED s.v.,  
 sense 2 a (a)). Cf. also lesen v. (3), (4) in MED.  
<sup>c</sup>somed] Cf. MS. A sompnede.

Fol. 114 <sup>a</sup>lorst] So MS. for lost. <sup>b</sup>hukkyl vncle] Two  
 attempts at 'uncle'. <sup>c</sup>he] 'she'. <sup>d</sup>Ryr] So MS. for Syr;

cf. MS. B fol. 93 note d.

Fol. 115 <sup>a</sup>tethe] 'death'; cf. MS. B fol. 109 note c.  
<sup>b</sup>d] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 116 <sup>a</sup>markys] So MS. for 'market'. <sup>b</sup>cortres] So MS.  
 for contres, prob. by confusion of the phrase 'low  
 countries' with 'law courts'. <sup>c</sup>mance] So MS. for manace.  
<sup>d</sup>menstrell] Cf. Mounstrevll below. <sup>e</sup>in in] Dittography;  
 line-ending separates words. <sup>f</sup>haue hawe] Dittography  
 using two different spellings.

Fol. 117 <sup>a</sup>d] Superfluous letter. <sup>b</sup>h] Superfluous letter,  
 prob. false start for 'have'; cf. MS. A nade neuer y  
come. <sup>c</sup>3eld all] Misreading of 'Guildhall'; see MS. A.  
<sup>d</sup>pe comens ... Ryrth hond] Corrupt; prob. a line or more  
 omitted; see MS. A.

Fol. 118 <sup>a</sup>comad] -n- or n abbreviation-mark om.; cf.  
 MS. B fol. 174 note c. <sup>b</sup>as] Cf. MS. A at. <sup>c</sup>on] Error  
 for on to. <sup>d</sup>byssshop] Misreading of 'ship'. <sup>e</sup>ij 3er]  
 Misreading of 'to rear' (prob. to rer).

Fol. 119 <sup>a</sup>han] 'and'. <sup>b</sup>dy] So MS. for dys 'this'.  
<sup>c</sup>depsyd] So MS. for 'deposed'.

Fol. 120 <sup>a</sup>pas] So MS. for pat. <sup>b</sup>kyn3t] So MS. for kny3t.  
<sup>c</sup>b] False start of scribe's spelling of patente with b-.  
<sup>d</sup>Senler] 'holding no office; having no special position;  
 private' (OED s.v. Singular a. 4). <sup>e</sup>warthe] Corruption  
 of 'writ'; cf. MS. A write. <sup>f</sup>sumyng] Cf. MS. A  
sompnyng and MS. B fol. 113 note c. <sup>g</sup>hen] False start  
 for henaud.



Fol. 121 <sup>a</sup>pe partyd] See MS. B fol. 14 note b. <sup>b</sup>londe]  
 Cf. MS. A hande. <sup>c</sup>contrake] Cf. Brut-1333 contak and  
 MS. A contakte. <sup>d</sup>out] Error for 'how'. <sup>e</sup>prosone] So  
 MS. <sup>f</sup>v] Superfluous letter. <sup>g</sup>form] So MS. for from.  
<sup>h</sup>cokys] So MS. for cotys. <sup>i</sup>hepe] So MS. for helpe;  
 cf. MS. B fol. 97 note a, hope for 'help'.

Fol. 122 <sup>a</sup>l] Superfluous letter; ? poss. the start of b,  
 a false start for by. <sup>b</sup>myzte] Cf. MS. A nyght.  
<sup>c</sup>mysdoñ] Cf. MS. A myght be doñ. <sup>d</sup>ned] So MS. for  
 'end'. <sup>e</sup>the] 'king' om.; cf. MS. B fol. 105 note d.

Fol. 123 <sup>a</sup>S] Superfluous letter. <sup>b</sup>crussyd] Erron. for  
 'cursed' (see MS. A) by confusion with crossen 'to  
 become a crusader' or cruschen 'to smash, shatter'  
 (although figurative senses of crush 'to overcome, sub-  
 due completely' are not recorded until 1596 in OED).  
<sup>c</sup>shuld] Cf. MS. A suech 'such'. <sup>d</sup>louyd] 'loved'; cf.  
 MS. A leuyd 'believed'. <sup>e</sup>brekle] So MS. for berkle.  
<sup>f</sup>quill] 'kill'; confusion in form with quellen. <sup>g</sup>wer]  
 Cf. MS. A Warde. <sup>h</sup>send] 'seen'. <sup>i</sup>as the knyzt myzt]  
 Cf. MS. A as thei myghte.

Fol. 124 <sup>a</sup>crowyng] So MS. for 'crowning'. <sup>b</sup>Pers] Mis-  
 reading of Pees; see MS. A.

Fol. 125 <sup>a</sup>pas] So MS. for pat; cf. MS. B fol. 120 note a.  
<sup>b</sup>me] So MS. for be.

Fol. 126 <sup>a</sup>Away] 'remove'; see MED s.v. aweien v. (b).  
<sup>b</sup>hucolys] 'uncles'. <sup>c</sup>lond] Cf. MS. A london. Poss. a  
 misreading of the phrase as 'landowners, men of prop-  
 erty'. <sup>d</sup>s] Superfluous letter. <sup>e</sup>j] ? Poss. the scribe  
 intended to write a number in Roman numerals. <sup>f</sup>h]  
 Superfluous letter, poss. start of repetition of he.

<sup>g</sup>w] Superfluous letter, prob. false start for wyt.

Fol. 127 <sup>a</sup>hy] So MS. for hys. <sup>b</sup>s] Superfluous letter, poss. false start for Concellyd. <sup>c</sup>pouch] So MS. clearly for 'thought'.

Fol. 128 <sup>a</sup>Swerynge] Erron.; cf. MS. A werynge.

<sup>b</sup>transladyd vn to þe tyme] The scribe's eye has been caught by the repetition of 'translated' in the text and he has omitted a short passage; see MS. A.

<sup>c</sup>[p]lesynge] The scribe's original word was plesynge 'blessing'; cf. his spelling but 'put'. <sup>d</sup>Crose] So MS.; also Crosse below. The scribe has misread f as the similarly written long s.

Fol. 129 <sup>a</sup>beryd] Cf. MS. A be highte; prob. a misreading as 'bore it'. <sup>b</sup>corntre] The scribe has made the correction above but has omitted to delete the erron. letter in the text. <sup>c</sup>quod] Erron. word. <sup>d</sup>lettyrys] The word occurs at the end of a line and the scribe has used the normal ys abbreviation-mark.

Fol. 130 <sup>a</sup>þeir] Erron. for 'your'; cf. MS. B fol. 111 note b, where þ is confused with ȝ. Some medieval scribes used þ for ȝ, but this is not normal practice in MS. B and is best regarded as an error here. <sup>b</sup>lond] Cf. MS. A lorde, although the alteration makes good sense. <sup>c</sup>pryn] False start for prynt at end of line; the stroke through -n poss. indicates the scribe's wish to delete the word. <sup>d</sup>lettyrys] See MS. B fol. 129 note d. <sup>e</sup>contre] Cf. MS. A courte; the reverse of the error court for contre (see MS. B fol. 111 note a and cf. MS. B fol. 116 note b and fol. 129 note b). <sup>f</sup>yeur hym] 'your uncle' (see MED s.v. em n. (1), where this variant is not listed); in fact, Edmund was Edward's



brother (see MS. A). <sup>g</sup>pe was enched] Corrupt; cf. MS. A he was enpechede. <sup>h</sup>Que] -n or n abbreviation-mark om.

Fol. 131 <sup>a</sup>oppan] Conflation of 'upon pain'.  
<sup>b</sup>conuersacione] ? A rationalization of the (to the scribe unknown) work gongefermer (see MS. A). <sup>c</sup>Elre] So MS. for Erle. <sup>d</sup>contenanse] Cf. MS. A coueitouse.  
<sup>e</sup>per tresone] Cf. MS. A pure resoun. <sup>f</sup>phy[.]is] The letter represented as [.] is a superimposition of p, h, and poss. l, i.e. a confusion of the words phylp his.  
<sup>g</sup>myr3t] So MS. for 'might'; long r used, (?) poss. -i-.  
<sup>h</sup>pet] Apparently a corruption of 'death'.

Fol. 132 <sup>a</sup>and all] Cf. MS. A an Aleie. <sup>b</sup>sche] Misreading of so he; see MS. A.

Fol. 133 <sup>a</sup>conquer] Error for enquer 'inquire'.

Fol. 134 <sup>a</sup>but] Cf. MS. A lette; prob. a misreading.  
<sup>b</sup>tyll] So MS. by haplography for 'title'.

Fol. 135 <sup>a</sup>ordyd] So MS. by haplography for ordynvd.  
<sup>b</sup>nautteuī] -te does not possess a recognized abbreviation-mark and the final flourish is prob. not intended as one; poss. meñ, immediately above in the previous line, influenced the scribe's writing. <sup>c</sup>s] Superfluous letter. <sup>d</sup>remnant] Cf. MS. A reame.

Fol. 136 <sup>a</sup>bryng] So MS. for 'being'. <sup>b</sup>ordefulte] 'or default'; cf. MS. A or deficultif. <sup>c</sup>condedryng] So MS. for 'considering'. <sup>d</sup>v] Superfluous letter. <sup>e</sup>g] Prob. a false start for crowne using the spelling g for c.  
<sup>f</sup>wych] So MS. for wyth.

Fol. 137 <sup>a</sup>l] Superfluous letter, prob. false start for 'London'. <sup>b</sup>his] Cf. MS. A hit; possibly defensible as his 'is', but the scribe confused the sense by altering the construction of the following phrases by substituting hard 'heard' for 'ear' (cf. MS. A). <sup>c</sup>Sell wych] So MS. for 'slay with'.

Fol. 138 <sup>a</sup>Ebbarbys] So MS. for 'suburbs'. <sup>b</sup>marchandyys] Cf. MS. B fol. 79 note b. <sup>c</sup>s̄nyd] Corrupt; cf. Brut-1377 scymed. <sup>d</sup>sent] 'seen'. <sup>e</sup>wars] ? Poss. error for was, which would be superfluous since wer occurs later in the sentence. <sup>f</sup>l] Superfluous letter (? poss. start of h or b). <sup>g</sup>g] Superfluous letter; cf. the similar (but stroked out) start for Regeunt on fol. 138<sup>a</sup>.

Fol. 139 <sup>a</sup>borrows] Error for 'barons'; see MS. A. <sup>b</sup>hodys] 'oaths'. <sup>c</sup>houdyn̄] 'hold'; cf. MS. B fol. 120<sup>a</sup>, hodyn̄ 'held'. <sup>d</sup>wy] So MS. for by. <sup>e</sup>lyuely] Corrupt; cf. MS. A leuyng 'leaving'. <sup>f</sup>Plasys] So MS. for 'palace'. <sup>g</sup>Sonyne] 'sung'.

Fol. 140 <sup>a</sup>constrary] So MS. for 'contrary'. <sup>b</sup>Schippis] Misreading of 'eclipse'. <sup>c</sup>bernys] 'unproductiveness; unfruitfulness'; cf. Brut-1377 barevnes and see MED s.v. barainnesse n. 2. <sup>d</sup>repytaunce] Corruption of 'reputation'. <sup>e</sup>lettys] 'leaders'; the abbrev. form of 'letters = epistles' is used. <sup>f</sup>callyd in þe wyche company] Cf. MS. A; the scribe of MS. B has confused wythe 'white' and wyche 'which'. <sup>g</sup>mowe] ? A misreading of 'much'; cf. MS. A mokell.

Fol. 141 <sup>a</sup>þe þ] Dittography using two forms; the words are separated by the line-ending. <sup>b</sup>they tyllýd and Sew in] Prob. a series of misread words; cf. MS. A þe telthe 7 sowyng. <sup>c</sup>Adone] ? 'undone', though a- for



un- is not recorded in MED. Possibly the sense is 'left to do', i.e. 'to be done'; see OED s.v. Ado sb., properly v. infin., though this is mainly northern in phrases other than have ado.

Fol. 142 <sup>a</sup>Abatte] 'a debate'; the indefinite article + an aphetic form of 'debate'. <sup>b</sup>the See] A misreading of 'these'. <sup>c</sup>fythyng] Cf. MS. A effectinge. <sup>d</sup>Scour] So MS. for 'succour'. <sup>e</sup>banes] ? Poss. vanes; cf. MS. A wanes.

Fol. 143 <sup>a</sup>eny] Prob. a misreading of an abbreviated form of 'every' (cf. MS. A), followed by the omission of 'day'. <sup>b</sup>wyff] Error for wyss 'wise'; see Brut-1372. <sup>c</sup>sleff] So MS. for 'self'. <sup>d</sup>host] Error for 'oath'; prob. a misreading of hoth. <sup>e</sup>neuyr] Error for euyr 'ever'. <sup>f</sup>the foule] 'defoul'; reverse spelling th- for d-. <sup>g</sup>be posyd] So MS. for de posyd. <sup>h</sup>waw on] Misreading of saw on 'save one, except for one'; cf. BM Harl. 4827 saf on. <sup>i</sup>help] So MS. for 'heap'; cf. MS. A. Cf. the reverse error in MS. B fol. 121 note i.

Fol. 144 <sup>a</sup>pay be tyne on] Corruption of 'the chieftain'. <sup>b</sup>payne] s- om. <sup>c</sup>And and] Dittography.

Fol. 145 <sup>a</sup>bropen] Apparently the p.pple. of brethen 'to go to ruin', in the sense 'broken' here. See OED s.v. Brethe v. and MED s.v. breben v. (2). Also found in MS. B fol. 149. <sup>b</sup>mañ] Error for 'woman'. <sup>c</sup>Castell] Error for 'Calais'. <sup>d</sup>wyche] Misreading of wythe 'white'; cf. MS. B fol. 140 note f. <sup>e</sup>mestmestyr] So MS. for westmestyr. <sup>f</sup>exelyd] Cf. MS. A axed 'asked'. <sup>g</sup>lyff] Conflation of 'lay fee'; cf. MS. A.

Fol. 146 <sup>a</sup>begyngynnyng] Dittography. <sup>b</sup>pas] See MS. B fol. 120 note a. <sup>c</sup>he] So MS. for her.

Fol. 147 <sup>a</sup>7 vp on lecherye] Cf. MS. A an open lecchoure. <sup>b</sup>wyne] 'wind'.

Fol. 148 <sup>a</sup>enyodyd] So MS. for 'enjoined'; -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>or be deternyte out] Corrupt; cf. MS. A or bat bey determyned oust. <sup>c</sup>damys] Corruption of 'dime'; cf. MS. A dysme.

Fol. 149 <sup>a</sup>dytroyd] So MS. for dystroyd. <sup>b</sup>bropen] See MS. B fol. 145 note a. <sup>c</sup>huclyng] Misreading of hurlyng. <sup>d</sup>ouyry] Conflation of of and euyry; see MS. A.

Fol. 150 <sup>a</sup>Cleff] So MS. for Cheff. <sup>b</sup>outh] See MS. B fol. 83 note b. <sup>c</sup>l] Superfluous letter; poss. the start of b, i.e. a false start for breng. <sup>d</sup>to Caley] 'two galleys' (cf. MS. A be Galeys), using the spelling c for g. Not an error, but highly ambiguous, as 'Calais' would be plausible in context.

Fol. 151 <sup>a</sup>duches] 'duke's'. <sup>b</sup>per] Cf. Brut-1419 taare 'tore up', MS. A to tare; t for p does occur in S.E. (parallel to d for p), and the word could therefore be a reverse spelling, though M.L. Samuels informs me that similar cases are rather rare. <sup>c</sup>rewyllys] Misreading of 'rebels' (poss. rebbyllys); see Brut-1419.

Fol. 152 <sup>a</sup>wesched] Cf. MS. A vansched 'vanished'; prob. -n- or n abbreviation-mark om. <sup>b</sup>north wyche] 'Norwich' (OE Norbwic). <sup>c</sup>crower] Cf. MS. A croyserie. <sup>d</sup>pesage] Cf. MS. A delage, Brut-1419 pelege (but CUL K1.1.12 peseage). OED gives pesage as a var. of peisage 'a duty paid for the weighing of goods', with a Latin



quotation of date 1321 and a first English quotation of date 1455. The sense here is not the duty but the cargo of goods itself. <sup>e</sup>Segre] So MS. for Sege.

Fol. 153 <sup>a</sup>l] Superfluous letter. <sup>b</sup>entre] So MS. for entret.

Fol. 154 <sup>a</sup>Regnyd] 'reign'; for the expanded form see MS. B fol. 155<sup>b</sup>. For -d see Vol. I, p. 243. <sup>b</sup>Rattekocce] So MS. for Rattekote.

Fol. 155 <sup>a</sup>h] Prob. a misreading of v in vp and not to be taken as the initial letter of hvp. <sup>b</sup>g] False start of the scribe's spelling of cutt with g-. <sup>c</sup>3er] Erron. insertion by scribe anticipating the end of a phrase. <sup>d</sup>turment] See MS. A fol. 101 note a. <sup>e</sup>Carter] 'Garter', using the spelling c- for g-. <sup>f</sup>her] Error for 'he' or 'they'. <sup>g</sup>la] Start of 'ladies', occurring at the line-end. <sup>h</sup>mañ] Misreading of an abbreviated form of 'Naverne' (cf. MS. A). <sup>i</sup>Glaucastre] Confusion between 'Lancaster' (the correct reading) and 'Gloucester'. <sup>j</sup>talle] So MS. for 'title'. <sup>k</sup>Oroune] So MS. for Croune.

Fol. 156 <sup>a</sup>w] False start for wyff, prob. occasioned by scribe's reading duches as 'duke's'. <sup>b</sup>ps] False start for spayne, with initial letters transposed. <sup>c</sup>Cchanceler] So MS. <sup>d</sup>gevous] So MS. for grevous. <sup>e</sup>f] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 157 <sup>a</sup>v] Superfluous letter, prob. false start for vn to. <sup>b</sup>l] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 158 <sup>a</sup>come come] Dittography.

Fol. 159 <sup>a</sup>sold] 'soul'. <sup>b</sup>frennce] Has superfluous au

abbreviation-mark normally found with fraunce.

<sup>c</sup>Menstrellys] Error for 'ministers'; see MS. A.

Fol. 160 <sup>a</sup>send] 'sending, message'; see MS. B fol. 89 note e. <sup>b</sup>Comandemet] -n- or n abbreviation-mark prob. om., but the same form is used previously on MS. B fol. 114<sup>b</sup>.

Fol. 161 <sup>a</sup>man] So MS. for maner; the -er abbreviation-mark has been om. <sup>b</sup>3et] Cf. MS. A 3eue. <sup>c</sup>tr] Superfluous letters. <sup>d</sup>h] Superfluous letter, poss. false start for heme. <sup>e</sup>muiltytud] Cf. MS. B fol. 75<sup>a</sup> muiletude and textual note. <sup>f</sup>vittery] Confusion of 'utterly' (the correct reading; see MS. A) with 'victory'.

Fol. 162 <sup>a</sup>Ingelond] Misreading of 'judgement'. <sup>b</sup>Notyng he] The line-division occurs between the words; the scribe has omitted to finish the word at the end of the line. <sup>c</sup>vnterrley] So MS. for 'utterly'. <sup>d</sup>Contre] Misreading of 'Coventry'; see MS. A. <sup>e</sup>pay] 'day'; reverse spelling p for d. <sup>f</sup>per] Error for pe.

Fol. 163 <sup>a</sup>welscher] 'Wiltshire'. <sup>b</sup>he hym anoñ] Cf. MS. A to hym come none. <sup>c</sup>hous shold] Elements of word separated by line-ending. <sup>d</sup>stott] 'stood'. <sup>e</sup>hevery] So MS. for 'Henry'; the scribe prob. mistook n for u in his exemplar.

Fol. 164 <sup>a</sup>desspsyd] So MS. for 'deposed'. <sup>b</sup>res] At end of line; the scribe has failed to complete the word ('resigned'; see MS. A) on the next line.

Fol. 165 <sup>a</sup>Cauntyrburyry] Dittography of last syllable. <sup>b</sup>kewe] 'knew'; a valid form, found mainly in Sussex.



<sup>c</sup>whos] 'soul' om.

Fol. 168 <sup>a</sup>p] False start of the scribe's spelling of berryd with p-. <sup>b</sup>tIn] I is written partly over t, which represents a false start for trappyd; cf. Brut-1419 were trappid yn. <sup>c</sup>betyne] 'adorned', i.e. with coats of arms embroidered on the horses' trappings. See MED s.v. beten v. (1) b(b). <sup>d</sup>berying] See textual note and cf. Brut-1419 brennyng. <sup>e</sup>ij] Used in error for the preposition to; cf. MS. B fol. 97 note f. <sup>f</sup>hancertres] So MS. for hancestres.

Fol. 169 <sup>a</sup>sege] 'such'; cf. MS. A seche and MS. B fol. 173 note c. <sup>b</sup>possyd] So MS. for 'purposed'; ur abbreviation-mark om. <sup>c</sup>Iugd] Cf. MS. A ymaged. <sup>d</sup>Guynys] Poss. a misreading of Gynnes, influenced by preceding gonnys. <sup>e</sup>p] False start of the scribe's spelling of ballys with p-. <sup>f</sup>l] Superfluous letter.

Fol. 170 <sup>a</sup>d] False start for de 'the'. <sup>b</sup>he holdyng] So MS. for be holdyng. <sup>c</sup>pay] 'day'.

Fol. 171 <sup>a</sup>pay] 'day'. <sup>b</sup>Alyons] Cf. MS. A alvaunce.

Fol. 172 <sup>a</sup>fyne fast] 'perfectly safe'. <sup>b</sup>relygiuus] The scribe uses the -us abbreviation-mark; cf. MS. B fol. 79 note b. <sup>c</sup>do] ? 'too'. <sup>d</sup>Reuerencyd] Cf. MS. A reuersed. <sup>e</sup>thanke] Cf. MS. A ban. <sup>f</sup>wartryn] So MS. for 'Watering'. <sup>g</sup>Resayuyd] Cf. Brut-1419 restid.

Fol. 173 <sup>a</sup>onyd lay] Cf. MS. A any delay and the scribe's habit of adding -d to various words (see Vol. I, p. 243). <sup>b</sup>hocletid] Presumably a corruption of hocketid; see OED s.v. Hocketide, MED s.v. hok(e n. (a). <sup>c</sup>sege] 'such'; cf. MS. B fol. 169 note a. <sup>d</sup>Th] Start of misreading of

trypgetys. <sup>e</sup>ber yng] So MS. for her yng. <sup>f</sup>in trippth]  
 'interfered with, destroyed'; var. of interrupten  
 (see MED s.v., where the earliest quotation is dated  
 a1420).

Fol. 174 <sup>a</sup>trenth] So MS. for strenth; ? poss. a mis-  
 reading as treuth <sup>b</sup>a nothyr] Cf. MS. A a none be.  
<sup>c</sup>Comadyd] n or -n- abbreviation-mark om. <sup>d</sup>be lyuere]  
 'deliver'. <sup>e</sup>Prayd] Cf. MS. A py3te.



### Appendix: The Source of Queen Isabella's Letter

Queen Isabella's letter was originally written in French<sup>1</sup>, and appears in the Short Version of the Anglo-Norman Brut<sup>2</sup>, which probably used a copy of the original letter. It is probable that the English translation was made from the Anglo-Norman Brut for incorporation in the English Brut. The letter is not found in the Anglo-Norman Long Version, which accounts for its absence from the CV/1333 and from groups using a CV/1333 text as an integral base.

The Anglo-Norman text given below is from BM MS. Cotton Dom. A X.

Et si tost com ils feurent ariuez ils manderent lor lettres au Maire 7 ala communalte de loundres qe eux feussent aidanz en la querele qe la roine 7 sire Edward son fiz heir de la contre auoient comencee a destruire les enemis de la terre mes nul respounce ne fust a eux maunde a cele foiz par doute du roi 7 les deux despensers 7 dautres lu (?) a donques feurent a la tour de loundres par qei la roigne 7 son fiz maunderent vn altre lettre a loundres ouerte ensealee de lour deux seals pendaunz 7 fu fichi en laube de iour sur la nouele croiz en chepe 7 la copie de la lettre fu fiche par aillours sur fenestres qe plusors la poiet lire 7 ceo fu le Ioeuedi en la feste de seint denys qe les bones genz de loundres fuissent aidaunz a destruire sire hugh le despenser 7 altres

<sup>1</sup>See A.H. Thomas, Calendar of Plea and Memoranda Rolls ... 1323-64, Cambridge, 1926, pp. 41-2, which calendars the French version from Roll A 1b Membr. 10 (12) in the Guildhall. A further letter and reply are also found in the Guildhall roll; see A.H. Thomas, op. cit., p. 42.

<sup>2</sup>See D.C. Cox, 'The French Chronicle of London', Medium Aevum XLV No. 2 (1976), p. 204. Cox also mentions other London chronicles in which the letter is found.



enemis pur le commun profist de tut le roialme 7 qe la  
communalte lor deueroit sur ceo lor volunte maunder. Ceo  
 est la copie de la lettre. ¶ Isabell par la grace de dieu  
 roigne dengleterre Dame dirlaunde 7 Countesse de Pountif  
 7 nous Edward aisne fi3 au roi dengleterre duk de Guyene  
 Counte de Cestre de Pountif 7 de Moustroill a tute la  
communalte de loundres salu3 Come nous vus auoins autrefois  
 maunde par no3 lettres coment nous sumes venu3 en ceste  
 terre one [?read; ouec] bon arraie 7 en bone manere pur  
 lonur 7 le profit de seint eglise 7 de nostre tres cher  
 seignur le roi 7 de tut le roialme a maintenir 7 garder  
 a nostre poer sicome nous 7 toutes les bones gen3 du dit  
 roialme sumes tenu3 a faire. Et sur ceo nous vus auoins  
 prie par no3 dites lettres qe vus nous soiez aidant tant  
 come vus purrez en ceste querele qest pur le commun  
profist de tut le roialme. Et nous naioins onquore en nule  
 respounse des dite3 lettres ne nesauoins rien de vostre  
 volunte si enuoioins a vus de rechief 7 vus maundoins 7  
 prioins qe vus vus portez issint deuers nous. qe nous  
 neioins cause de vus greuer oxs qe vus nous soiez aidant  
par toutes les voies qe vus sauerez 7 purrez toutes fois  
 qe nous vus enprioins ou qe vus verrez leu 7 temps. qar  
 soiez certain qe nous 7 tou3 ceux qi sont venu3 oduesqi  
 nous en ceste terre ne pensoins a faire ne ne ferroins  
 si dieu plect chose qe ne serra pur le commun profit  
 de tut le roialme salue a destruire hugh le despenser  
 nostre enemy 7 a tut le dit roialme sicome vus bien  
 sauez . purqei nous vus prioins 7 chargeoins sur la foi  
 qe vus deuez a nostre dit seignur le roi 7 a nous sur  
 quan3 vus purrez forfaire deuers nous qe si le dit hugh  
 le despenser nostre enemy viegne de den3 vostre poer qe  
vus le face3 hastiument prendre 7 sauement garder tanq3  
 nous eioins ordene de li nostre volunte. Et ceo ne lessez  
 en nule manere sicome vus desirez honur 7 profist de nus  
 tu3 7 de tut le roialme. Et si vus le fetes sachez qe



nous serroins touz iours le meultz tenuz a vous . 7 si engainerez asse3 de honur 7 profist si nous enmandez hastiement tute vostre volunte. Doñ a Baldok le .vj. iour Doctobre. [fols. 85<sup>b</sup> - 86<sup>a</sup>]

A Latin translation of the letter is found in the Historia Aurea, which ends in 1347 and was probably written soon after this date. This text was collated with the French text in the Guildhall by A.H. Thomas for V.H. Galbraith, and I reproduce it here.<sup>1</sup>

Hoc anno regina Anglie cum Edmundo comite Cancie fratre regis et primogenito suo Edwardo 3<sup>o</sup>, Rogero de Mortuo Mari, necnon parva manu Hunaldorum mensi Septembri Angliam in Estsexia apud Herewiche applicuit, ubi et civibus Londoniarum litteras scripsit quatinus ad proditorum regni destruccionem populique proteccionem manus sibi porrigerent adiutrices litterasque voluntatem eorum declarantes remitterent sine mora. Cives autem regem consiliariosque suos formidantes responsum vice illa mittere omiserunt. Regina vero cum filio suo litteram patentem utriusque sigillo signatam super crucem in medio London' ac eiusdem copiam super diversas fenestras in aurora diei Iovis in festo sancti Dionisii affigi fecit; cuius tenor in Gallico talis fuit: 'Ysabella dei gracia regina Anglie domina Hibernie comitissa Pontunii et nos Edwardus primogenitus regis Anglie dux Aquitanie comes Cestrie Pontunii et Moustroll' toti communitati Londoniarum salutem. Cum alias litteras nostras vobis direximus qualiter terram istam pro honore et comodo sancte matris ecclesie, domini nostri regis, ac tocus regni pro posse

---

<sup>1</sup>V.H. Galbraith, 'Extracts from the Historia Aurea and a French "Brut"', English Historical Review 43 (1928), pp. 211-2.



nostro sicut de iure tenemur conservando intravimus vosque per litteras nostras rogavimus quatinus in querela nostra sive causa pro tocius regni comodo quantum in vobis est auxilium porrigatis, nullumque adhuc litterarum responsum nec eciam voluntatem vestram transmittere curastis, hinc est quod vobis iterum mandamus atque rogamus quatinus sic erga nos amiciciam vestram ostendatis quod causam in posterum gravandi non habeamus, set potius sitis auxiliantes omnibus modis quibus sciveritis quando fueritis requisiti aut tempus videritis expedire; nam non intendimus nec deo auctore temptabimus contra regni utilitatem quicquam ut nostis nec comodum;<sup>1</sup> quare vos rogamus insuper et oneramus in fide qua domino nostro regi et nobis tenemini et super quantum nobis forisfacere poteritis quod, si Hugo Dispensator inimicus noster infra potestatem vestram intrare contigerit, ipsum capiatis et quousque nostrum beneplacitum de ipso fuerit factum in salvo custodiatis. Si vero sic studiose egeritis imperpetuum vobis arcius sencietis nos obligatos. Voluntatem vero vestram circa premissa nobis cicius transmittatis cum effectum. Data apud Baldok, 6 die Octobris.'

---

<sup>1</sup>The French text adds here: 'Sauve tant qe nous ententoms a destruire Hugh le Despenser qest enemy a nous et a tout le dit roialme sicome vous bien savez.'



My task is done - my song hath ceased - my theme  
 Has died into an echo; it is fit  
 The spell should break of this protracted dream.  
 The torch shall be extinguish'd which hath lit  
 My midnight lamp - and what is writ, is writ -  
 Would it were worthier! but I am not now  
 That which I have been - and my visions flit  
 Less palpably before me - and the glow  
 Which in my spirit dwelt is fluttering, faint, and low.

Byron, Childe Harold's Pilgrimage

¶ Explicit ... longissima prolixissima ¶ tediosissima  
 scribenti . Deo gratias . Deo gratias . ¶ iterum Deo  
gratias.

New College, Oxford, MS. 121, fol. 376<sup>b</sup>a

